

---

This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

Google™ books

<https://books.google.com>





AF 8030.10



Harvard College Library

FROM THE BEQUEST OF

CHARLES SUMNER, LL.D.,  
OF BOSTON.

(Class of 1830.)

"For Books relating to Politics and  
Fine Arts."

11 Dec. 1901.









**RECORDS OF SOUTH-EASTERN AFRICA.**





RECORDS  
OF  
SOUTH-EASTERN AFRICA

COLLECTED IN VARIOUS LIBRARIES AND ARCHIVE  
DEPARTMENTS IN EUROPE

BY  
GEORGE McCALL THEAL, D. LIT., LL.D.,  
HISTORIOGRAPHER TO THE CAPE GOVERNMENT.

VOL. IV.

PRINTED FOR  
THE GOVERNMENT OF THE CAPE COLONY.

1899.

APR 30 1910  
~~7.6.11~~



*Summer fund.*

LONDON :

PRINTED BY WILLIAM CLOWES AND SONS, LIMITED,  
STAMFORD STREET AND CHARING CROSS.

## CONTENTS.

---

DATE		PAGE
	Papers concerning Sofala and Mozambique . . .	1
	Expenditure in the Fortresses of Sofala, Mozambique, and Sena . . . . .	2
24 March 1584.	Letter from the King to the Viceroy of India . . .	9
	Record of the Orders carried with them by the Captains of the Fortresses of Mozambique and Sofala	11
	Letters from the King to the Viceroy of India from 1585 to 1589 . . . . .	28
	Information concerning the Kingdom of Monomotapa, by Friar Augustine da Zevedo . . . . .	33
	Letters from the King to the Viceroys of India from 1593 to 1618 . . . . .	37
7 Feb. 1619.	Report of the Governor-General Diogo da Cunha de Castelbranco . . . . .	147
	Letters from the King to the Viceroys of India from 1619 to 1631 . . . . .	162
31 April 1631.	Letter from the King to the Monomotapa . . .	224
	Letters from the King to the Viceroys of India from 1632 to 1666 . . . . .	227
9 Jan. 1668.	Letter from the Viceroy of India to the King . . .	344
	Letters from the King to the Viceroys of India from 1669 to 1688 . . . . .	344
	Opinion upon a Letter from Antonio Alvares Pereira to the King concerning the Rivers of Cuama . . .	433
	Account of Mozambique in 1688 . . . . .	436
	Letters from the King to the Viceroys of India from 1688 to 1699 . . . . .	445

BC

41

10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40

41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60  
61  
62  
63  
64  
65  
66  
67  
68  
69  
70  
71  
72  
73  
74  
75  
76  
77  
78  
79  
80  
81  
82  
83  
84  
85  
86  
87  
88  
89  
90  
91  
92  
93  
94  
95  
96  
97  
98  
99  
100

101  
102  
103  
104  
105  
106  
107  
108  
109  
110  
111  
112  
113  
114  
115  
116  
117  
118  
119  
120  
121  
122  
123  
124  
125  
126  
127  
128  
129  
130  
131  
132  
133  
134  
135  
136  
137  
138  
139  
140  
141  
142  
143  
144  
145  
146  
147  
148  
149  
150

151  
152  
153  
154  
155  
156  
157  
158  
159  
160  
161  
162  
163  
164  
165  
166  
167  
168  
169  
170  
171  
172  
173  
174  
175  
176  
177  
178  
179  
180  
181  
182  
183  
184  
185  
186  
187  
188  
189  
190  
191  
192  
193  
194  
195  
196  
197  
198  
199  
200

# RECORDS OF SOUTH-EASTERN AFRICA.

---

## PAPERS CONCERNING SOFALA AND MOZAMBIQUE.

---

[The following documents are taken from a manuscript volume of reports and other papers in the Portuguese language in the Library of the British Museum—Ad. 28433. They are not dated, but the first must be of about the period 1580 to 1584. The volume was once the property of the reverend Richard Hakluyt, and is in a perfect state of preservation.]

---

### SOFALA.

Esta fortzª não tẽ nhũ Rendim<sup>to</sup> pera el Rei nosso sör senão algũ marfim q̄ se ahi Resgata q̄ ja agora he pouquo & q<sup>do</sup> se Resgata gastase na propria fortzª, Resgatandose os tempos pasados nella ouro & muito marfim de q̄ se a fortzª prouia & assi a de mosambique esta esta fortzª separada & governaça sobre si.

### MOSAMBIQUE.

Esta fortzª não tẽ nhũ Rêdim<sup>to</sup> proprio pª el Rei noso sör, & algũ Resgate de marfim do dio se gasta tambẽ na propria fortzª sã della vir nhũ a india pª a fzª do dito sör como dantes se fazia, sustentauase do prouimento q̄ lhe hia da india, o q̄ se agora não faz p estar estes annos atras separado do governo da india.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

### SOFALA.

This fortress yields no revenue to our lord the king, except a small trade in ivory which is now much diminished, and when it is carried on the profit is spent upon the fortress itself, though in

times past there was an extensive trade in gold and ivory, from which this fortress was provided and also that of Mozambique. This fortress is separate and governs itself.

#### MOZAMBIQUE.

This fortress produces no revenue for our lord the king, and if at the present day any trade in ivory is carried on, the profit is also spent on the fortress itself, and none of it is sent to India for the service of our said lord, as was formerly done. It was maintained by the provisions sent thither from India, which is not done at present, as it has been separated from the government of India for some years past.

---

[The following is taken from the same volume, but the date is later,—about the year 1590 or 1591.]

#### DESP<sup>a</sup> Q<sup>e</sup> SE FAZÊ CÕ A FORTZ<sup>a</sup> DE SOFALA E MÕSAMBIQUE E SENA.

Ho Capitaõ da dita Sofala fortz<sup>a</sup> tẽ quatro cẽtos e dezoito mil Rẽ dordenado p<sup>a</sup> año.

Ho alcaide mor e feitor tẽ dordenado cẽto e Vinte mil Rẽ e deza oito de mãtim<sup>to</sup>.

Ho escriuaõ da dita feitoria tẽ dordenado oitẽta e dous mil Rẽ p<sup>a</sup> año cõ seu mãtim<sup>to</sup>.

Ho alcaide e goarda da dita fortz<sup>a</sup> tẽ uinte e noue mil Rẽ p<sup>a</sup> año o q̃l taõbẽ serue de mr<sup>o</sup> e p<sup>a</sup> isso se lhe dá huũ homẽ cuja desp<sup>a</sup> vai adiante.

Ho Condestabre da dita fortz<sup>a</sup> tẽ trinta e oito mil Rẽ p<sup>a</sup> año.

Ho feitor tẽ oito homẽs q̃ uẽce de seu soldo e mãtimẽto nouẽta e seis mil Rẽ p<sup>a</sup> año a Rezaõ de doze mil Rẽ cada hũ.

Ho escriuaõ da dita feitoria tẽ hũ homẽ ao q̃l se paga seu soldo e mãtim<sup>to</sup> de homẽ darmas q̃ saõ doze mil Rẽ p<sup>a</sup> año a Rezaõ de mil Rẽ p<sup>a</sup> mes.

Ho alcaide e goarda da dita fortz<sup>a</sup> q̃ serue de fr<sup>o</sup> della tẽ dez mil e oito cẽtos Rẽ a Rezaõ de noue cẽtos Rẽ p<sup>a</sup> mes de seu soldo e mãtim<sup>to</sup>.

Estã em ordenaça p<sup>a</sup> a dita fortz<sup>a</sup> huũ bonbardr<sup>o</sup> ao q̄l se lhe dá vinte e none mil R̄s p̄ año.

São ordenados a dita fortz<sup>a</sup> seis moradores aos q̄s se pagua seus soldos e m̄tim<sup>to</sup>, e se lhes faz cõta a doze mil R̄s p̄ año e q̄ se mõta setêta e dous mil R̄s p̄ año.

Despêdese ã cada hũ año na dita fortz<sup>a</sup> ã prezêtes q̄ se daõ aos sõres das tr<sup>as</sup> sêto uinte mil R̄s e sêdo necesario despêdese mais a dita Conta se farã p̄ m̄lado do Capitaõ.

Aos q̄s officiais e pessoas ordenadas a dita fortz<sup>a</sup> alê do soldo e ordenados q̄ leuãõ ã seu tit<sup>o</sup> se dã mais a cada hũ delles m<sup>o</sup> fardo de milho p̄ mes q̄ ual cêto sesêta e tres mil e duzêtos R̄s por anno a Rezaõ de quatro çêtos R̄s p̄ mes q̄ sao trinta e quatro officiais e pessoas.

Despêdese no coregim<sup>to</sup> e cobrim<sup>to</sup> da fortz<sup>a</sup> e na Remada Igrejas em outras cousas desta calidade sesenta mil R̄s.

*Desp<sup>a</sup> q̄ se fazê cõ a Igreja da dita fortz<sup>a</sup>.*

Ho uigr<sup>o</sup> da dita fortz<sup>a</sup> tẽ trinta e quatro mil R̄s dordenado per año.

Da se mais ao dito uigr<sup>o</sup> uinte mil R̄s p<sup>a</sup> as desp<sup>as</sup> de sancristia e uinho azeite cera farinha p<sup>a</sup> as ostias q̄ he o q̄ se acostumou sêpre a dar. E assi se dà mais ao dito uigr<sup>o</sup> p<sup>as</sup> misas q̄ diz p<sup>o</sup> infante dom enrique dous mil e quatro cêtos R̄s.

He ordenado q̄ sirua cõ o dito uigr<sup>o</sup> hũ capelaõ q̄ tẽ uinte e sete mil quatro cêtos R̄s ualê as desp<sup>as</sup> de Sofala hũ cõto trezêtos sincoenta e hũ mil oito cêtos R̄s.

*Desp<sup>a</sup> q̄ se faz cõ a fortz<sup>a</sup> de m̄sambique.*

Ho alcaide mor e feitor da dita fortz<sup>a</sup> tẽ cẽ mil R̄s dordenado p̄ anno.

Ho ouuidor da dita fortz<sup>a</sup> tẽ cẽ mil R̄s e sêdo letrado tẽ duzêtos mil R̄s p̄ ano.

Ho fiziquo q̄ taõbê serue no ospital da dita fortz<sup>a</sup> tẽ corêta e dous mil R̄s.

Ho alcaide mor e m<sup>to</sup> tẽ uinte e noue mil R<sup>a</sup>.

Ho barbr<sup>o</sup> q̄ serue de solorgiaõ uinte e noue mil R̄s.

Ho Condestabre tẽ p̄ ano sincoêta mil R̄s per Regim<sup>to</sup> de fr<sup>co</sup> br<sup>to</sup>.

Ho fereiro tẽ p̄ ano dezanoue mil R̄s.



Ho tanceiro tẽ p ano uinte e sete mil R̄s.

Leuão os Capitães das ditas fortz<sup>as</sup> sincoëta criados ê q̄ entraõ tres parêtes aõs q̄s se paga seus soldos e matim<sup>tos</sup> q̄ ualẽ setesêtos corêta e quatto mil R̄s fz<sup>to</sup> se cõta aos parêtes a Rezaõ de sesêta mil cada hũ e aos criados a doze mil R̄s.

Ho feitor da dita fortz<sup>a</sup> tẽ oito homẽs per Regimen<sup>to</sup> e prouizoẽs aos q̄s se paga seus soldos e m̄tim<sup>tos</sup> q̄ ualẽ nouêta e seis mil R̄s a doze mil R̄s cada hũ p ano.

Ho escriuão da dita feitoria tẽ dous homẽs a q̄ se paga seus soldos e m̄tim<sup>tos</sup> q̄ ualẽ uinte e quatro mil R̄s a doze mil R̄s cada hũ q̄ tẽ per Regim<sup>to</sup> e outro per prouizaõ de fora.

Aos setêta e huũ officiais e pessoas q̄ seruẽ na dita fortz<sup>a</sup> de mosãbique alẽ de seus soldos e ordenados q̄ leuaõ ê seus tit<sup>os</sup> se da a cada hũ deles per mes meo fardo de milho q̄ ualẽ trezêtos corêta mil e oito cêtos R̄s a Rezaõ de quatto cêtos R̄s o dito m<sup>o</sup> fardo.

Da se aos padres de Saõ domingos q̄ Rezidẽ na dita fortz<sup>a</sup> de mosãbique p<sup>a</sup> sua sostêtaçaõ trinta e seis mil R̄s a cẽ r̄s p dia.

*Desp<sup>o</sup> q̄ faz a igreja da dita fortz.*

Ho uig<sup>ro</sup> da dita fortz<sup>a</sup> tẽ sesêta mil R̄s per prouizaõ do g<sup>or</sup> f<sup>co</sup> barreto.

Ho Capelaõ q̄ serue na Igreja tẽ uinte noue mil R̄s.

Da se p<sup>a</sup> as ordinarias da dita Igreja cõuẽ a saber uinho azeite farinha lenha sesêta hũ mil q<sup>tro</sup> cêtos cesêta hũ R̄s.¶

Da se p<sup>a</sup> o ospital da dita fortz<sup>a</sup> quatto cêtos mil R̄s.

Sêdo Necessario p causa de inuernarẽ na dita fortz<sup>a</sup> as naos do R<sup>oo</sup> ou uirẽ tẽr a ella.

Ho Mr<sup>o</sup> tẽ oito piaís quando ha naos do Reino per prouizoẽs cõ q<sup>tro</sup> cêtos R̄s p mes Cada hũ q̄ ualẽ trinta e oito mil e q<sup>tro</sup> cêtos R̄s p anno.

As almadiãs q̄ andaõ seruindo na fortz<sup>a</sup> e feitoria ia caretar pedra sal e lenha pagaõ se lhes trinta mil R̄s ou o q̄ nelas se despẽde q̄ hora pode emportar cincoëta mil R̄s p ano.

Despẽdese cõ cs pedr<sup>os</sup> cauogr<sup>os</sup> e outros officiais q̄ seruẽ nas obras da dita fortz<sup>a</sup> hũ cõto e duzêtos mil R̄s p tres mil cruzados.

Da se ê cada hũ anno p<sup>a</sup> todas as ditas fortz<sup>as</sup> huũ butiqua de meizinhas q̄ pode ualer cẽ mil R̄s p anno.

Saõ Concedido pelo Regim<sup>to</sup> nouo ao ouuidor da dita fortz<sup>a</sup>

dous homês aos qês se paga seu soldo e mâtimo de homê darmas q̄ uale uinte q<sup>tro</sup> mil R̄s a doze mil R̄s a cada hũ.

Val ao todo a desp<sup>a</sup> q̄ se faz cõ a fortz<sup>a</sup> de mosâbique tres contos oito cêtos uinte noue mil seis centos sesenta e hũ R̄s.

*Desp<sup>a</sup> q̄ se faz cõ a fortz<sup>a</sup> de Sena.*

Ho feitor e alcaide mor da dita fortz<sup>a</sup> tê cento e corêta mil R̄s dordenado por ano per prouizaõ do g<sup>or</sup> uasco f<sup>o</sup> homê.

Da se mais ao dito feitor sincoenta e quatro mil R̄s p<sup>a</sup> soldo e mâtimo de sinquo escrauos a Rezaõ de noue cêtos R̄s a Cada hũ p̄ mes.

Ho escriuaõ da feitoria tê oitêta mil R̄s p̄ ano.

Da se mais ao dito escriuaõ dous escrauos p<sup>a</sup> seu seruiço aos qês se pagão uinte e hũ mil e seis cêtos R̄s p̄ ano a Rezaõ de noue cêtos R̄s a cada hũ por mes per prouizaõ do g<sup>or</sup> uasco f<sup>o</sup> homê.

Ho vig<sup>ro</sup> da dita fortz<sup>a</sup> tê cê mil R̄s dordenado e ordinario p̄ ano per prouizaõ do dito g<sup>or</sup>.

Ho Condestabre da dita fortz<sup>a</sup> tê uinte e q<sup>tro</sup> mil R̄s dordenado p̄ ano per prouizaõ do dito g<sup>or</sup>.

Dous feradores e dous ferrazês tê sento nouêta e Dous mil R̄s p̄ ano a Rezaõ de doz mil R̄s a cada hũ p̄ mes.

Val a desp<sup>a</sup> de Sena seisçêtos e onze mil e seis cêtos R̄s.

*[Translation of the foregoing.]*

EXPENDITURE IN THE FORTRESSES OF SOFALA,  
MOZAMBIQUE, AND SENA.

The captain of the said Sofala's fortress has a salary of four hundred and eighteen thousand reis per annum.

The chief magistrate and factor has a salary of a hundred and twenty thousand reis and eighteen thousand for his maintenance.

The notary of the said factory has a salary of eighty-two thousand reis per annum with his maintenance.

The bailiff and keeper of the said fortress has twenty-nine thousand reis per annum, and also serves as master, for which he is allowed a man, at the expense hercafter stated. The chief

gunner of the said fortress has thirty-eight thousand reis per annum.

The factor has eight men, whose pay and maintenance amount to ninety-six thousand reis per annum, at the rate of twelve thousand reis each. The notary of the said factory has a man who receives the pay and maintenance of a mau-at-arms, which is twelve thousand reis per annum, at the rate of a thousand reis a month.

The bailiff and keeper of the said fortress, who serves as master thereof, has ten thousand eight hundred reis at the rate of nine hundred reis a month for his pay and maintenance.

A bombardier is appointed to the said fortress, who is paid twenty-nine thousand reis per annum.

Six residents are appointed to the said fortress, who receive pay and maintenance, and are reckoned at twelve thousand reis per annum, which amounts to seventy-two thousand reis per annum.

A hundred and twenty thousand reis are spent in this fortress every year on presents for the chiefs of the country, and when necessary more is spent for that purpose by order of the captain.

To all the officers and persons appointed to the said fortress, besides the pay and allowances to which they are entitled, there is further given to each of them half a fardo of millet a month, which is worth one hundred and sixty-three thousand two hundred reis per annum, at the rate of four hundred reis a month, there being thirty-four officers and other persons.

Sixty thousand reis are also expended in the repair and defence of the fortress, for the church and similar things.

*Expenditure for the church of the said fortress.*

The vicar of the said fortress has a salary of thirty-four thousand reis per annum.

The said vicar receives further twenty thousand reis for the expenses of the sacristy, and wine, oil, wax, and flour for the hosts, which is what it has always been customary to give. The said vicar also receives two thousand four hundred reis for the masses which he says for the Infante Dom Henrique.

It is appointed that there be a chaplain to serve with the

said vicar, who has twenty-seven thousand four hundred reis. The total expenditure of Sofala amounts to one million three hundred and fifty-one thousand four hundred reis.

*Expenditure of the fortress of Mozambique.*

The chief magistrate and factor of the said fortress has a salary of a hundred thousand reis per annum.

The auditor of the said fortress has a hundred thousand reis, and if he is qualified as a lawyer he has two hundred thousand reis per annum.

The doctor, who also serves the hospital of the fortress, has forty-two thousand reis.

The master has twenty-nine thousand reis.

The barber, who also serves as surgeon, has twenty-nine thousand reis.

The chief gunner has fifty thousand reis per annum, by order of Francisco Barreto.

The blacksmith has twenty-nine thousand reis per annum.

The cooper has twenty-seven thousand reis per annum.

The captains of the said fortresses are allowed fifty servants, in which are included three of their relations, who receive their pay and maintenance, which amounts to seven hundred and forty-four thousand reis, at the rate of sixty thousand to each of the relations, and twelve thousand to the servants.

The factor of the said fortress has eight men by the orders and regulations, who receive their pay and maintenance, which amounts to ninety-six thousand reis, at twelve thousand reis each per annum.

The notary of the said factory has two men who receive their pay and maintenance, which amounts to twenty-four thousand reis, at twelve thousand reis each, which is allotted to them by the regulations and by another order besides the latter.

The seventy-one officers and persons who serve in the said fortress of Mozambique, receive beside the pay and allowances which belong to their offices, half a fardo of millet monthly, which amounts to three hundred and forty thousand eight hundred reis, at the rate of four hundred reis the said half-fardo.

Thirty-six thousand reis are given to the Dominican Fathers

who reside in the said fortress of Mozambique, for their maintenance, at the rate of a hundred reis a day.

*Expenditure for the church of the said fortress.*

The vicar of the said fortress has sixty thousand reis, by order of the governor Francisco Barreto.

The chaplain who serves the church has twenty-nine thousand reis.

For the ordinary expenses of the church, namely wine, oil, flour, and wood, there is paid sixty-one thousand four hundred and sixty-one reis.

To the hospital of the said fortress four hundred thousand reis are paid.

If necessary on account of ships from Portugal wintering at the fortress or coming thither,

The master has eight men, when there are ships from Portugal, by order, with four hundred reis a month apiece, which amount to thirty-eight thousand four hundred reis per annum.

The boats which serve the fortress and factory in carrying stone, salt, and wood, are paid thirty thousand reis, or whatever the necessary expense may be, which at present is about fifty thousand reis per annum.

The masons, quarrymen, and other workmen engaged in the works of the fortress cost a million and two hundred thousand reis or three thousand cruzados. Every year there is given for all the said fortresses a provision of medicines, which costs about a hundred thousand reis per annum. By the new regulations two men are granted to the auditor of the said fortress, who receive the pay and maintenance of men-at-arms, which amounts to twenty-four thousand reis, at twelve thousand reis each.

The expenditure of the said fortress of Mozambique amounts in all to three millions eight hundred and twenty-nine thousand six hundred and sixty-one reis.

*Expenditure of the fortress of Sena.*

The factor and chief magistrate of the said fortress has a salary of a hundred and forty thousand reis per annum, by order of the governor Vasco Fernandes Homem. The said factor further receives fifty-four thousand reis for the pay and maintenance of

five slaves, at the rate of nine hundred reis each a month. The notary of the said factory has eighty thousand reis per annum.

The said notary is further allowed two slaves for his service, who are paid twenty-one thousand six hundred reis per annum, at the rate of nine hundred reis a month each, by order of the governor Vasco Fernandes Homem.

The vicar of the said fortress has a hundred thousand reis salary and allowance per annum, by order of the said governor.

The chief gunner of the said fortress has a salary of twenty-four thousand reis per annum, by order of the said governor.

Two farriers and two smiths have a hundred and ninety-two thousand reis per annum, at the rate of twelve (four?) thousand reis a month each.

The expenditure of Sena amounts in all to six hundred and eleven thousand six hundred reis.

---

EXTRACTS FROM THE VOLUMES ENTITLED  
*AUTHENTIC COLLECTION OF ALL THE LAWS,  
INSTRUCTIONS, CHARTERS, AND OTHER ORDERS  
WHICH HAVE BEEN SENT TO INDIA SINCE THE  
ESTABLISHMENT OF THE CONQUESTS THERE,  
MADE IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE DECREE OF  
THE 28TH OF MARCH 1754.\**

Agostinho de Souto mayor, que destes Reinos foy para mineiro das minas de Monamotapa, vos emcomendo entretenhais athe eu mandar, e entender neste negocio fazendo lhe a favor, que for razaõ, e que seus ordenados lhe Sejaõ bem pagos de maneira q̃ fique elle satisfeito, e possa acudir as suas nescessid<sup>es</sup> e delle vos enformareis quando agora passardes para Mossambique do Estado das minas e do mais que tocar esta materia.

No que toca as minas de Monamutapa hei p̃ meu seruico (alem

\* "*Collecção authentica de todas as Leys, Regimentos, Alvaras, e mais Ordens que se expediram para a India desde o estabelecimento destas Conquistas; ordenada por Provisam de 28 de Março de 1754.*" Forty volumes of original manuscript, now in the Library of the British Museum. The earliest documents must have been lost before this collection was made, and even from 1584 onward there are many wanting.

do que nesta materia vos digo nas ditas instruçoens) que quando passardes p̄ Mosambique entre as dilligencias que haveis de fazer seja huma dellas verdes os Regimentos daquellas fortalezas asim o antigo, como o que o Sn̄r Rey Dom Sebastiaõ meo Subrinho que Deo's tem mandou dar no anno de 62 a Fernãõ Miz' Frere, quando entãõ da qui partio prouido do Capitaõ das ditas Fortalezas, e deis ordem como se cumpra intieramente no particular dos resgates notificando ao Capitaõ feitor e mais officiaes que haõ de correr daquy em diante por conta da minha fazenda reseruando vos para o d<sup>o</sup> Cap<sup>m</sup> e officiaes algumas Commodidades com a moderaçaõ que vos bem parecer: e poreis em pratica asim em Mossambique como na India as sortes e quantid<sup>e</sup> de mercadorias, que seraõ de mais proueito, e de melhor expediente para este resgate, e ordenareis como se conuiem as necessarias para elle com pauta dos prelos a que se hajaõ de vender, e declaracaõ da contia com que o Capitaõ, e mais officiaes hajaõ de responder por ellas a minha fazenda, e de tudo me avizareis e me enuiareis o treslado dos ditos regimentos e do que na conformidade delles lhe ordenardes, e das mais prouizoens q̄ fizerem a esto caso.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

To the Viceroy Dom Duarte de Menezes, from the King.

I charge you to maintain Agostinho de Soutomayor, who went from this kingdom as miner of the mines of Monomotapa, until I further order and proceed in this matter, granting him what is within reason, and seeing that his salary is paid in such a way as to satisfy him and that he may be able to provide for his wants; and when you pass through Mozambique you are to obtain information from him of the state of the mines and whatever else relates to this matter.

In what concerns the mines of Monomotapa, it is for my service (besides what is said upon the subject in the said instructions) that in passing through Mozambique you should among other things inspect the administration of those forts, both of the old one and that which my nephew, the king Dom Sebastian (now with God), gave to Fernãõ Miz Frere in the year 1562, when he went from this place as commander of the said forts. And you shall give orders that the commands concerning the

trade are to be fully complied with, giving notice to the captain, factor, and other officials that in future it is to be carried on for the profit of my exchequer, reserving a few commodities in moderation for the commander and officials, as you think fit; and this is to be done both in Mozambique and in India, providing such sorts and quantity of merchandise as will have the most advantageous and ready sale, ordering all things necessary for the same, and seeing that an account is kept of the sales and a declaration of the sums for which the said commander and officials are responsible to my exchequer. You shall inform me of all particulars, and send me a copy of the said instructions and of the orders you give, as well as of the other measures you take in this matter.

24th March 1584.

---

[The following documents, forwarded from the viceroy to the king, show how some of the above instructions were carried out. They are taken from the manuscript volume already mentioned—Ad. 28433—in the Library of the British Museum, but I include them in this series as their fitting place.]

### TITULO DAS PROUIZÕES Q̃ LEUÃO OS CAPITAËS DA FORT<sup>za</sup> DE MONSAMBIQUE E SOFALA.

Dom dr<sup>te</sup> de Menezes &c. ei por bem e me práz dar lhe l<sup>ca</sup> en nome do dito sōr p<sup>a</sup> q̃ posa prouer a Capitania da naao ou Carauela em q̃ for a Sofala a huã pesoa q̃ lhe pareser e for auto e soficiente p<sup>a</sup> isso q̃ auerã cō ella o ordenado q̃ per Regimento lhe estiuer asentado e todos os gazalhados prēs e percalços q̃ lhe dr<sup>ta</sup> mēte pertēcerẽ e o Juramento dos santos auāgelhos q̃ lhe dara o ouidor da fort<sup>a</sup> de mosambique p<sup>a</sup> q̃ proceda bẽ goardando en todo o seruico de sua mg<sup>e</sup> e as partes seu dr<sup>to</sup> e na prouizão q̃ o dito alferes mór lhe disso pasar se tresladarã este meu aluarã p<sup>a</sup> se saber Como per uertude delle o fez Notifico assi.

Dom dr<sup>te</sup> de menezes &c. eij per bẽ e me pras q̃ a Contẽcendo elle dito dom Jorge de menezes posa mãdar a dita naao ou nauio q̃ se assi tomar cō as fz<sup>as</sup> q̃ se aCharé a fort<sup>za</sup> dormús e nella se uẽda tudo p̃ inventr<sup>o</sup> q̃ mãdara fz<sup>er</sup> plos officaes p<sup>a</sup> isso deputados



e do procedido se faça a dita Repartição de modo q̄ sua mg<sup>e</sup> aya a parte q̄ lhe Couber per Regim<sup>to</sup> e se Carregue em Receita sobre o feitor da dita fortz<sup>a</sup> de mósambique p<sup>a</sup> dar Rezão della na Conta q̄ der do dito Cargo e os Capitães e soldados q̄ na tal preza se aCharê a que della lhes couber per ordem do dito Regim<sup>to</sup> visto como he mais proueitoso leuar-se a ormus p<sup>a</sup> la se desbaratarê p̄ causa da grãde escala q̄ habi hà que uenderê se em mosambique—Notefiquo o assi.

Dom dr<sup>te</sup> de menezes et. mãdo a uos belChior Rõiz dãdrãde f<sup>or</sup> del Rei meu sôr ã esta Cidade de goa q̄ pagueis a sincoenta Criados de dom Jorge de menezes alferes mor q̄ ora uai p̄ Capitaõ das fortz<sup>as</sup> de sofala e mosambique a Cã hũ seu Quortel de seus soldos e uẽcimẽtos p<sup>a</sup> ajuda de se apreseberê e aCompanharê ao dito Capitaõ auẽdo Resp<sup>to</sup> a Jrê seruir as ditas fortz<sup>as</sup> e estar assi em Curtume e p̄ este cõ seus conhichim<sup>tos</sup> e descõtros de seus tit<sup>os</sup> q̄ o escriuão da matr<sup>a</sup> geral fará mãdo aos Contadores q̄ uos leuê em Conta o q̄ se nisso mõtar cumpri assi etc.

Dom dr<sup>te</sup> de menezes etc. faço saber a uos Joaõ aluares soares uedor da f<sup>za</sup> del Rei meu sôr nestas partes da india q̄ eu fui enformado estar o espirital q̄ o dito sôr tẽ em mosambique falto de butica e merzinhas e de Roupa brãca p<sup>a</sup> os pobres e emfermos e per q̄ cumpre ao seruico de deos e de sua mg<sup>e</sup> ser prouido pera não pereserê uos mãdo deis ordẽ ou q̄ se lhe emuie a dita butiqua e merzinhas e alguã Roupa brãca p<sup>a</sup> o dito ospital e pobres q̄ tudo fareis entregara p<sup>a</sup> q̄ uos nomear o alferes mor dom Jorge de menezes q̄ ora uai p̄ Capitaõ de Sofala e mósambique obrigãdose ao entregar lá ao official p<sup>a</sup> isso deputado e enuiar seu conhecim<sup>to</sup> ã forma p<sup>a</sup> a Conta do f<sup>or</sup> desta cidade ou de official de Cuja Receita forẽ as ditas mezinha e Roupa notifiquo o assi.

Dom dr<sup>te</sup> de menezes et. mãdo a uos belChior Rõiz dãdrãde f<sup>or</sup> del Rei meu sôr nesta Cidade de goa q̄ pagueis ao alferes mor dõ Jorge de menezes q̄ ora uai p̄ Capitaõ das fortz<sup>as</sup> de Sofala e mosambique de q̄ he prouido p<sup>o</sup> dito sôr e lhe ora Cabe entrar hũ ano de seu ordenado adiantado q̄ cõ a dita Capitania a de uencer posto q̄ o não tenha uencido dando fianca ao uẽ ser auido Resp<sup>to</sup> a entrar nella despezo e indiuidado p̄ ter gastado muito

do seu no seruiço de sua mg<sup>e</sup> e p este cõ seu c<sup>to</sup> e a dita fiança e descõto de seu tit<sup>o</sup> q̄ o escriuão da matr<sup>a</sup> gerã farã mãdo aos Contadores q̄ uos leuẽ em Conta q̄ se niso mõtar cūprio assi etc.

Dom dr<sup>te</sup> de Menezes etc. ei p bẽ e me praz dar lhe l<sup>ca</sup> p<sup>a</sup> q̄ em quanto Rezidu na dita Capitania ê Cada hũ ano dela posa mãdar f<sup>zer</sup> as ilhas do comoro duzentos bares de gingiure de q<sup>tro</sup> q̄<sup>s</sup> o bar e emuialos a ormus pagãdo os dr<sup>tos</sup> q̄ delles deuer a sua mag<sup>e</sup> em suas alfandiguas Notifiquo o assi ao Capitão da dita fortz<sup>a</sup> etc.

Dom dr<sup>te</sup> de men<sup>es</sup> etc. ei p bẽ e me praz q̄ as pesas e mais cousas cõtendas no Rolastras q̄ lhe foraõ entregues p<sup>los</sup> testemẽtros de dom g<sup>lo</sup> de menezes seu irmaõ defũto se leuẽ em conta aos ditos testemẽtros p<sup>ia</sup> a ualiacaõ q̄ dellas he feita no invẽtro do dito defunto pagãdo elles a ualia das ditas cousas a dr<sup>o</sup> sem embargo do Regimẽto em Contr<sup>o</sup> obrigando se porẽ o dito dõ Jorge de menezes nã sendo cõtentes disso do dito seu irmaõ pagar todo o mais q̄ as ditas pesas e cousas ualerẽ a mor valia uisto o mais q̄ alega Notefico o assi etc.

Dom dr<sup>te</sup> de m<sup>es</sup> etc. ei p bem e me pras e p este mãdo a Rui lopes Salgado q̄ ora anda p Capitaõ mor da Costa do milinde q̄ a Conta do breu q̄ per Contrato se obrigado dar a fz<sup>a</sup> de sua mg<sup>o</sup> du e entregue à Cada hũ anno sesenta quõtiais ao feitor da dita fortz<sup>a</sup> de mõsambique p<sup>a</sup> o efeito asima deccarado de q̄ Cobrarã seus c<sup>tos</sup> em forma p<sup>los</sup> q̄es este meu aluara ou o treslado della autorizado se lhe leuara eu Conta na que a de dar p bẽ do dito Contrato q̄ tudo emuiará a este Corte cõ o mais breu q̄ lhe Restar a ouedor da fz<sup>a</sup> del Rei meu sõr p<sup>a</sup> se saber Como tẽ satisfeito per hua uia e outra cõ toda a Copia per enCheo cõforme ao dito Contrato, Notefico o assi et.

Dom dr<sup>te</sup> de m<sup>es</sup> et. faço saber aos q̄ este meu aluara uirẽ q̄ auẽdo eu Resp<sup>to</sup> ao muito q̄ importa ao seruiço del Rei meu sõr aver na Costa de milinde nauios q̄ a uigien e saibão nouas de gales de turcos p<sup>a</sup> me avizar delas e ao Capitaõ da fortz<sup>a</sup> de mosambique e mãdar prouer nisso Como parecer ei p bẽ e me pras dar l<sup>ca</sup> a Rui Lopes Salgado q̄ ora anda na dita Costa p

Capitaõ mor della prouido p sua mg<sup>e</sup> q̄ do dr<sup>o</sup> das pareas q̄ a de aRecader de braua e pomba e doutros portos e lugares da dita Jurisdisaõ p<sup>a</sup> a f<sup>za</sup> do dito sör arme hñ nauio q̄ ande na dita Costa à goarda e uigia della Como está em Costume e o q̄ nisso despéder Se lhe leuara à Conta na q̄ der das ditas pareas p este ou o treslado dele q̄ será Registrado no l<sup>o</sup> de sua Receita e a ordem q̄ per Regim<sup>to</sup> está da/o sobre as tais despesas o q̄ assi fareis e q<sup>to</sup> Residir na dita Capitania mor notefico o assi et.

Dom dr<sup>te</sup> de m<sup>es</sup> et. ei por bẽ e me pras sendo Cazo o q̄ déos não permita q̄ elle falesa a ida esta da lãa ou a uida q̄ nhñ prouedor dos defuntos nẽ outra nhña Just<sup>a</sup> algñã entẽda cõ sua f<sup>za</sup> mas antes deixẽ a p<sup>a</sup> ou p<sup>as</sup> q̄ elle deixar deCrarado em seu testamẽto pór todo em aRecadaçaõ e fz<sup>er</sup> o mais q̄ p ella ordenar de modo q̄ se entregue a seus erdr<sup>os</sup> sẽ embargo de q̄sqr Regim<sup>tos</sup> e prouizoẽs q̄ ayaõ en Contr<sup>o</sup> uisto como p<sup>ia</sup> ordẽ q̄ elle dito alferes mor deixar decrarado se pode por toda a sua fz<sup>a</sup> em boa aRecadaçaõ e cõ Mais presteza se entregá a seus erdr<sup>os</sup> notefiquo o assi ao prouedor et.

Dom dr<sup>te</sup> de menezes et. ei por bẽ e me pras dar lhe l<sup>ca</sup> p<sup>a</sup> q̄ em q<sup>to</sup> Rezidir Na dita Capitania posa mãdar todas as embarcaões q̄ quizer armadas a sua Custa ao cabo da boa esperãsa descobrir todos os portos e lugares daq̄las partes e fz<sup>er</sup> nellas p<sup>a</sup> si todos os Resgates q̄ quizer sẽ nhña pessoa de q̄lquer Calidade e Condisaõ q̄ sera lhe por a isso duuida nẽ Contradisaõ algñã uisto o proueito q̄ disse se pode seguir a fz<sup>a</sup> del Rei meu sör notefico o assi a todos os Capitãis mores mais Capitãis officiais e pessoas a q̄ pertẽcer et.

Dom dr<sup>te</sup> de m<sup>es</sup> et. ei p bẽ e me praz q̄ acontẽsendo tal q̄ elle dito dom Jorge de m<sup>es</sup> en q<sup>to</sup> seruir a dita Capitania faça as ditas desp<sup>as</sup> de seu d<sup>ro</sup> q̄ fará caregar en Reseita sobre ao feitor das ditas fortz<sup>as</sup> q̄ per enprestimo a fz<sup>a</sup> de sua mg<sup>e</sup> da qué Cobrerá C<sup>to</sup> em forma q̄ emuiara a esta Corte cõ o treslado deste meu aluara p<sup>a</sup> nella se pagar a seus procuradores o q̄ assi emprestar p<sup>a</sup> as ditas despezas da fz<sup>a</sup> do dito sör não auẽdo tal pagam<sup>to</sup> na dita feitoria de mosambique p falta de dr<sup>o</sup> q̄ tudo uirá m<sup>to</sup> bẽ decrarado de modo q̄ senão dupliquẽ os tais pagam<sup>tos</sup> Notefico o assi ao uedor da fz<sup>a</sup> etc.

Dom dr<sup>te</sup> de menezes etc. faço saber aos q̄ este meu alur<sup>a</sup> uirê q̄ auído eu Resp<sup>to</sup> ao ta<sup>to</sup> q̄ importa ao seruiço de deos e del Rei meu sôr não Irê nauios nhūs aos Rios do Cabo de boa esperãça assi p<sup>o</sup> prejuizo q̄ disse se segue a sua fz<sup>a</sup>, Como per quietação dos ditos lugares ei p̄ bẽ e me praz e per este mãdo e defendo em nome de sua mg<sup>e</sup> q̄ nhũ nauio de q̄lqr Calidade e Condisão q̄ seia uá daqui en diãte aos ditos Rios nẽ leuar a elles fz<sup>as</sup> alguãs sem minha especial l<sup>ca</sup> sõ pena do Cazo maior e q̄ encoreraõ os Capitais senhorios e mais p<sup>as</sup> q̄ nos tais nauios forẽ e en perdim<sup>to</sup> deles e das fz<sup>as</sup> q̄ neles se aCharẽ q̄ o Capitaõ da fortz<sup>a</sup> de Sofala e mosambique fará goardar m<sup>to</sup> intr<sup>m<sup>te</sup></sup> a dirreção e execusão a quẽ emcomẽdo mãde ter nisso m<sup>ta</sup> uigilẽcia pois sabe q<sup>to</sup> importa cūprir se Notefico o assi etc.

Dom dr<sup>te</sup> de m<sup>es</sup> et. faço saber aos q̄ este meu alur<sup>a</sup> uirê q̄ auẽdo eu Resp<sup>to</sup> aos m<sup>tos</sup> e continuos seruicos q̄ dõ Jorge de m<sup>es</sup> alferes mor dos Reinos de purtugal tẽ feitos a el Rei meu sôr e p̄ elle ser prouido da Capitania das fortz<sup>as</sup> de Sofala e mosambique q̄ ora uai seruir e entrar nella despezo e indiuidado p̄ no dito seruiço gastar m<sup>to</sup> parte de sua fz<sup>a</sup> ei p̄ bẽ e me praz sendo cazo q̄ no tempo q̄ elle Residir na dita Capitania nãõ aja em mosambique nhũ nauio de sua mg<sup>e</sup> p<sup>a</sup> poder Ir fz<sup>er</sup> os Resgates acustumados p̄ Conta da fz<sup>a</sup> do dito sôr ao Cabo das corentes q̄ elle dito dõ Jorge de m<sup>es</sup> o põsa mãdar fz<sup>er</sup> p<sup>a</sup> si em hũ nauio seu armado a sua Custa no dito lugar de manr<sup>a</sup> q̄ se ouuera de fz<sup>er</sup> per Conta da fz<sup>a</sup> del Rei meu sôr sẽ pesoa alguã lhe p̄ a isso duuida nẽ Contradisaõ uisto Como p̄ nãõ auer a tal nauio se deixou de cõseguir o tal Resgate p<sup>a</sup> o dito sôr e cumpra fazer se p<sup>o</sup> proueito q̄ disse Resulta a sua fz<sup>a</sup> notefico o assi et.

Dom dr<sup>te</sup> de m<sup>es</sup> etc. ei p̄ bẽ e me praz q̄ en q<sup>to</sup> elle seruira dita Capitania tenha p<sup>a</sup> o dito efeito sincoenta homẽs parẽtes e Criados seus aos quais serãõ pagos seus soldos e uẽsim<sup>tos</sup> aos coarteis do ano assi como forẽ uẽsendo Rezidindo cõ o dito alferes mor nas ditas fortz<sup>as</sup> e mãdo a Rui Vãz peixoto f<sup>or</sup> del Rei meu sôr q̄ ora he ou quẽ o dito Cargo seruir lhes faça o dito pagam<sup>to</sup> p<sup>ta</sup> dita manr<sup>a</sup> e o q̄ lhes assi pagar se lhe leuará em Conta per este ou o treslado della q̄ será Registado na dita feitoria com seus c<sup>tos</sup> e descõtos de seus tit<sup>os</sup> q̄ o escriuaõ da matr<sup>a</sup> geral fará posto

q̄ aja algũn Regim<sup>to</sup> en Contr<sup>o</sup> uisto outrossi da mesma man<sup>r</sup> tello p<sup>o</sup> bareto q̄ a dita Capitania seruiu notefico o assi etc.

Dom dr<sup>te</sup> de m<sup>es</sup> et. ei por bẽ e me praz q̄ en q<sup>to</sup> nella Rezidir possa prouer e proue ja todos os Cargos assi da Just<sup>a</sup> como da fz<sup>a</sup> q̄ nas ditas fortz<sup>as</sup> achar uagos e uagarẽ em seu tempo a pesoas q̄ seriaõ autas e suficientes p<sup>a</sup> isso q̄ os seruireã e aneraõ cõ ellas os ordenados q̄ per Regim<sup>to</sup> lhes estiuereã asentadas e todos os salarios prois e percalços a elles pertẽcentes e o juram<sup>to</sup> dos santos Euãgelhos q̄ o dito alferes mor ou ouuidor das ditas fortz<sup>as</sup> lhes dara p<sup>a</sup> q̄ sirua bẽ e uerdadr<sup>m<sup>te</sup></sup> goardando en tudo seruiço de deos e de sua mag<sup>c</sup> e as partes seu dr<sup>to</sup> de q̄ se fara asiento nas Costas das prouizoẽs q̄ lhes assi passar nas q̄es se tresladará este meu aluará p<sup>a</sup> se saber como per uertude dele proueo os tais Cargos notefico o assi etc.

Dom dr<sup>te</sup> de men<sup>es</sup> etc. faço saber aos q̄ este meu alur<sup>a</sup> uirẽ q̄ auẽdo eu Resp<sup>to</sup> a dom Jorge de men<sup>es</sup> alferes mor ser prouido p̄ el Rei meu sõr da Capitania das fortz<sup>as</sup> de Sofala e Mosambique en q̄ ora uai entrar p̄ lhe nella Caber entrar e leuar cõsiguo m<sup>tos</sup> Criados homẽs de sua obrigaçaõ p<sup>a</sup> Rezidirẽ en sua Comp<sup>a</sup> a q̄ nesesariam<sup>to</sup> a de prouer de mãtim<sup>tos</sup> ei per bẽ e me praz dar lhe l<sup>ca</sup> p<sup>a</sup> q̄ posa daqui leuar cõsiguo ou mãdar leuar p<sup>a</sup> mosambique huã fusta cõ os ditos mãtim<sup>tos</sup> p<sup>a</sup> prouimẽto da sua Caza e dos homẽs da sua obrigaçaõ e della emuiar outrossi ẽ cada hũ anno en q<sup>to</sup> seruir a dita Capitania a Costa da India ou a Chaul p<sup>a</sup> o efeito delle e leuar os tais mantimẽtos cõ tal deCraraçaõ q̄ na dita fusta não mãdara marfim nhũ per ser defezo e mãdãdo e indo a Chaul em pena disso uirá pagar os dr<sup>tos</sup> delle na alf<sup>a</sup> desta Cidade p̄ assi estar asentado per prouizaõ e se deu sentẽca cõtra dom fr<sup>co</sup> Mães q̄ a dita Capitania seruiu notefico o assi etc.

Dom dr<sup>te</sup> de m<sup>es</sup> etc. faço saber a uos dom Jorge de m<sup>es</sup> alferes mor dos Reinos de portugál q̄ ora ides p̄ Capitaõ das fortz<sup>as</sup> de Sofala e mosambique q̄ eu sou emformado auer nella m<sup>ta</sup> compra de fz<sup>as</sup> de sua mg<sup>e</sup> de muitos anos sẽ se poder desbaratar a q̄l alẽ de não prestar p<sup>a</sup> nada abate o preso as outras q̄ de quã uãõ per conta do dito sõr p<sup>a</sup> o Resgate e p̄ q̄ cūpre a seu seruiso desbaratarẽse p<sup>a</sup> na Causarẽ mais perda do q̄ tẽ Cauzada a fz<sup>a</sup> de sua mg<sup>e</sup> ei p̄ bẽ e me praz em seu nome q̄ tãto q̄

chegardes as ditas fortz<sup>as</sup> uegais cõ o feitor e officiais dellas as ditas fz<sup>as</sup> q̄ estiuerẽ nas suas feitorias per Conta do dito sõr e aChando q̄ nada proueitaõ p<sup>a</sup> nada e q̄ he mais seruiço del Rei meu sõr desbaratarẽ se as deis e faceis e dar ã pagam<sup>to</sup> de modo q̄ naõ estejaõ mais nas ditas feitorias p q<sup>to</sup> p<sup>a</sup> tudo uos dou comisaõ en nome de sua mag<sup>e</sup> p assi o auer p m<sup>to</sup> seu seruiço as quais fz<sup>as</sup> se leuará em Conta ao feitor ou official sobre quẽ estiuer em Receita per este ou o treslado delle q̄ sera Registrado nas ditas feitorias e o asêto q̄ sobre isso tomandes p uos e p<sup>ios</sup> ditos officiais asinado notefico o assi etc.

Dom dr<sup>te</sup> de m<sup>es</sup> etc. ei por bẽ e me praz q̄ en q<sup>to</sup> elle servir a dita Capitania ã cada hũ ano della possa mãdar pagar aos ditos seus parêtes e Criados mil pardaos de tãgas de seus soldos e proprios uẽcim<sup>tos</sup> q̄ ã seus tit<sup>os</sup> lhes forẽ deuídos e mãdo a Rui uaz peixoto f<sup>or</sup> del Rei meu sõr q̄ ora he nas ditas fortz<sup>as</sup> ou quẽ o dito Cargo servir lhes faça o dito pagam<sup>to</sup> p<sup>ia</sup> dita man<sup>a</sup> e o q̄ nisso despẽder se lhe leuara em Conta per este ou o treslado delle q̄ sera Registrado no l<sup>o</sup> da dita feitoria e p<sup>ios</sup> mãdados do dito alferes mor e c<sup>tos</sup> dos ditos seus parêtes e Criados e descõtos de seus tit<sup>os</sup> q̄ o escriuaõ da matr<sup>a</sup> geral fará posto q̄ aja algũm Regim<sup>to</sup> en Contr<sup>o</sup> uisto como ande Rezidir nas ditas fortz<sup>as</sup> e ser mais seruiço del rei meu sõr e bẽ de sua fz<sup>a</sup> pagar se lhes os ditos soldados p por esta uia ficar ella mais desalimada de diuidas notefico o assi.

Dom dr<sup>te</sup> de m<sup>es</sup> et. faço saber aos q̄ este meu alur<sup>a</sup> uirẽ q̄ auẽdo eu Resp<sup>to</sup> as muitas Necesidades q̄ este estado tẽ p falta das Redãs delles estarẽ de meno idas e postas em menos preso do em q̄ estauaõ nos tempos atras pasados e huñ dos Remedios e aljutorios p<sup>a</sup> suprir partes das ditas nesecidades ser o marfim q̄ per cõta da fz<sup>a</sup> del Rei meu sõr uẽ todos os anos no nauio do trato de mosambique a esta cidade do Resgate q̄ se fáz em enChambane cabo das corêtes e outros lugares Daquẽlas partes e Cumpre p<sup>a</sup> o dito efeito uir todo o dito marfim e p̄ q̄ pode aConteser p cauzo furtuito naõ chegar a Mosambique o dito nauio do trato por ora o trazer ei p bẽ e me praz q̄ aContecendo tal q̄ dom Jorge de m<sup>es</sup> alferes mor dos Reinos de portugal q̄ ora uai p Capitaõ das fortz<sup>as</sup> de Sofala e mosambique em q<sup>to</sup> nella Residir embarque e faça embarcar nas naos do Reino q̄ assi forẽ

ter todo o dito marfim q̄ na tr<sup>a</sup> ouer del Rei meu s<sup>õr</sup> e assi artelharia q̄ n<sup>ã</sup> seruir entregue aos Capitais mestres ou outros q̄lq̄r officiais do dito s<sup>õr</sup> de q̄ u<sup>ẽ</sup> cobrar<sup>ã</sup> c<sup>ios</sup> em forma p<sup>a</sup> a C<sup>õ</sup>ta do feitor de mosambique p<sup>a</sup> por eles ser<sup>ẽ</sup> desobrigados da obrigaç<sup>ã</sup> q̄ la der<sup>ẽ</sup> p<sup>õ</sup> ord<sup>ẽ</sup> do dito alferes mor a entreg<sup>ãr</sup> tudo nesta Cidade como dito he notifico o assi et.

Dom dr<sup>te</sup> de m<sup>es</sup> et. ei por b<sup>ẽ</sup> e me pr<sup>az</sup> sendo Cazo o q̄ deos n<sup>ã</sup> permita q̄ falesa est<sup>ã</sup>do seruido a dita Capitania posa deixar nomeado nella h<sup>ũ</sup> par<sup>ẽ</sup>te seu q̄ a sirua sendo de confian<sup>ça</sup> e auto p<sup>a</sup> isso como es fio do dito alferes m<sup>õr</sup> q̄ far<sup>ã</sup> por<sup>ẽ</sup> ue<sup>ẽ</sup> qu<sup>ã</sup>to importa ser assi p<sup>a</sup> boa goarda das ditas fortz<sup>as</sup> p<sup>õ</sup> ser<sup>ẽ</sup> os primsipais deste estado e m<sup>to</sup> Remotas das outras delle a q̄l pessoa q̄ assi nomear na dita Capitania p<sup>a</sup> dita Manr<sup>a</sup> a siruir<sup>ã</sup> en q<sup>to</sup> da india n<sup>ã</sup> f<sup>õr</sup> outr<sup>ẽ</sup> prouido della p<sup>õ</sup> sua mag<sup>e</sup> ou por m<sup>i</sup> e auer<sup>ã</sup> o ordenado e perCalcos q̄ lhe pert<sup>ẽ</sup>ser<sup>ẽ</sup> per Regim<sup>to</sup> e vzar<sup>ã</sup> de modo Jurisdiss<sup>ã</sup>o e alsada e das prouizo<sup>ẽ</sup>s q̄ o dito alferes m<sup>õr</sup> leuar do dito s<sup>õr</sup> e minhas, p<sup>a</sup> b<sup>ẽ</sup> da dita Capitania faz<sup>ẽ</sup> do pr<sup>o</sup> menag<sup>ẽ</sup> das ditas fortz<sup>as</sup> nas ma<sup>õ</sup>s do feitor e alCaide mor dellas ou do ouidor de mosambique q̄ Conforme o vzo e custume Dos Reinos de purtugal e Jur<sup>ã</sup>do outrossy na forma aCustumada p<sup>a</sup> en tudo proceder b<sup>ẽ</sup> goard<sup>ã</sup>do o seruiço de deos e del Rei meu s<sup>õr</sup> e as partes seu dr<sup>to</sup> de que hu<sup>ã</sup> C<sup>õ</sup>sa e outra se far<sup>ã</sup> asento nos liuros da dita feitoria e se pasará certida<sup>õ</sup> Nas costas deste Notefico o assi etc.

Dom dr<sup>te</sup> de m<sup>es</sup> etc. faço saber aos q̄ esta minha prouiza<sup>õ</sup> n<sup>ir</sup>ẽ q̄ au<sup>ẽ</sup>do eu Resp<sup>to</sup> ao alferes mor dom Jorge de m<sup>es</sup> q̄ ora uai entrar na fortz<sup>a</sup> de sofala e auer de descobrir a Ilha de S<sup>ã</sup>o L<sup>co</sup> p<sup>ia</sup> b<sup>ã</sup>da da fora e p<sup>ias</sup> mais partes p<sup>io</sup> dito descobrim<sup>to</sup> ser de m<sup>to</sup> seruiço de sua mg<sup>e</sup> p<sup>a</sup> q̄l lhe he nesscr<sup>o</sup> hu<sup>ã</sup> naao ou nauio do q̄l p<sup>õ</sup> ora lhe tenho f<sup>to</sup> merce p<sup>õ</sup> outra Minha prouiza<sup>õ</sup> o q̄l nauio se Chama a nosa s<sup>õ</sup>ra dajuda e ao prez<sup>ẽ</sup>te est<sup>ã</sup> na costa da Char<sup>ã</sup>mandel p<sup>a</sup> dahi fz<sup>er</sup> o dito desCobrim<sup>to</sup> p<sup>ios</sup> quais Resp<sup>tos</sup> e outros do seruiço do dito s<sup>õr</sup> m<sup>ã</sup>do a todos os Capitais das fortz<sup>as</sup> e uiag<sup>ẽ</sup>s e ouidores Juizes Just<sup>as</sup> officiais della e da fz<sup>a</sup> fidalgos pessoas poderosos e q̄esq̄r outras de q̄lq̄r Calidade q̄ sera deix<sup>ẽ</sup> o dito nauio ou nao q̄ f<sup>õr</sup> fz<sup>er</sup> tal descobrim<sup>to</sup> liure e desembargado p<sup>a</sup> poder fz<sup>er</sup> sua uiag<sup>ẽ</sup> posto q̄ nas suas Cupitanias e lugares de suas fortz<sup>as</sup> aonde f<sup>õr</sup> ter tenba<sup>õ</sup> Della nesecidade c<sup>õ</sup> pena q̄ n<sup>ã</sup>o

no Comprindo assi os auerei por pessoas q̄ perturbaõ e impedê o serviço de sua mag<sup>e</sup> e mãdarei p<sup>la</sup> Just<sup>a</sup> proceder cõtra eles alê de ficarê obrigados à pagar ao dito alferes mor todas as perdas e danos e intereses q̄ p̄ assi lhe impedirê na dita uiagê Receber cõprio assi etc.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

**RECORD OF THE ORDERS CARRIED WITH THEM BY  
THE CAPTAINS OF THE FORTRESSES OF MOZAM-  
BIQUE AND SOFALA.**

Dom Duarte de Menezes, &c. I think fit and am pleased to give license in the name of the said lord, that he may have power to give the command of the ship or caravel in which he shall go to Sofala to a person whom he may think proper and fitting for the office, which is to carry with it such salary as is allotted to it by order, with such entertainment, profits, and perquisites as belong to it by right, and the oath upon the Holy Gospels to be administered by the magistrate of the fortress of Mozambique, that he may proceed in all things with care for the service of His Majesty and those parts which are rightfully his, and a copy shall be made of the order given him by the said Chief Ensign until the arrival of my charter, that it may appear to have been done in virtue thereof. I notify it thus.

Dom Duarte de Menezes, &c. I think fit and am pleased that should it happen, the said Dom Jorge de Menezes may send the said ship or vessel thus taken with the goods therein contained to the fortress of Ormus, there to be sold according to an inventory which he shall order to be made by the officials appointed for the purpose, and the said division shall be made of the proceeds in such a manner that His Majesty shall have the share which falls to him by law, to be received by the factor of the said fortress of Mozambique and be accounted for in the statement which he gives of his said charge, and the captains and soldiers in the said prize to have what is due to them by order of the said Administration, seeing that it is more advantageous to take it to Ormus to be disposed of, on account of the extensive



trade carried on there, than to sell the property at Mozambique. I notify it thus.

Dom Duarte de Menezes, etc.—I command you Belchior Roiz d'Andrade, factor of my lord the king in this city of Goa, to pay to the fifty servants of Dom Jorge de Menezes, who is now going as captain of the fortresses of Sofala and Mozambique, to each one his quarter's pay and dues, to assist them in preparing to accompany the said captain, seeing that they are going to serve in the said fortresses, and such is the usual custom. To this end, with their receipts and satisfaction of their claims to be made out by the general notary, I command the accountants to set down the amount as disbursed by you. Let it be so done, &c.

Dom Duarte de Menezes, etc. I make known to you João Alvares Soares, comptroller of the revenue of my lord the king in these parts of India, that I have been informed that the hospital which the said lord has in Mozambique is in want of apothecary's stores, medicine, and some linen for the poor and sick, and as it befits the service of God and his Majesty that these things be provided, that they may not perish, I command you to give order that the said apothecary's stores, medicines, and some linen be sent for the said hospital and poor, and to cause the whole to be delivered to the person nominated by the Chief Ensign Dom Jorge de Menezes, who is now going as captain of Sofala and Mozambique, binding him to deliver it to the official appointed for the purpose, and to send his receipt for the account of the factor of this city or the official who shall forward the said medicine and linen. I notify it thus.

Dom Duarte de Menezes, &c. I command you Belchior Roiz d'Andrade, factor of my lord the king in this city of Goa, to pay to the Chief Ensign Dom Jorge de Menezes, who is now going as captain of the fortresses of Sofala and Mozambique, to which office he is appointed by the said lord, and upon which he is now entering, a year's salary in advance of the pay to be due to him for the said office, though he has not yet earned it, upon his bond to serve that time, seeing that he is entering his office poor and in debt, having spent much of his means in the service

of His Majesty, and for this purpose with his account and the said bond, and the satisfaction of his claim to be made out by the general notary, I command the accountants to set down the amount as disbursed by you. Let it be so done, &c.

Dom Duarte de Menezes, &c. I think fit and am pleased to give license that so long as he holds the said office of captain he may bring every year from the Comoro islands two hundred bars of ginger of four quintals to the bar, and send them to Ormus, having paid His Majesty's customs duties thereupon. It is thus notified to the captain of the said fortress, &c.

Dom Duarte de Menezes, etc. I think fit and am pleased that everything contained in the schedules which were delivered to him by the executors of Dom G<sup>lo</sup> de Menezes, his deceased brother, shall be set down as received from the said executors according to the estimate made of them in the inventory of the said deceased, they paying the lawful value of the said things, notwithstanding any order to the contrary, binding themselves in case the said Dom Jorge de Menezes should not be satisfied with this as regards his said brother, to pay whatever the said property be further worth at its highest value, on consideration of what is further urged. I notify it thus.

Dom Duarte de Menezes, etc. I think fit and am pleased hereby to command Rui Lopes Salgado, who is now going as chief captain to the coast of Melinde, that from the pitch which he has obliged himself by contract to supply for the king's service, he shall every year deliver sixty quintals to the factor of the said fortress of Mozambique for the end aforesaid, of whom he shall recover his receipts in due form, in virtue of this my charter or the authorised copy thereof, that it may be deducted from the amount to which he is obliged by the said contract, and be sent to this Court with the rest of the amount to the Comptroller of His Majesty's Exchequer, that it may appear that the amount has been discharged in full in one way or the other in conformity with the said contract. I notify it thus.

Dom Duarte de Menezes, &c. I make known to all to whom

this present shall come that seeing the importance to the service of my lord the king that there should be ships upon the coast of Melinde to guard it and procure news of the Turkish galleys, to advise me thereof and also the captain of the fortress of Mozambique, that the necessary orders may be given, I think fit and am pleased to give license to Rui Lopes Salgado who is now going to the said coast as chief captain, that from the tribute he is to receive from Brava, Pemba, and other ports and places within the said jurisdiction for the revenue of the said lord, he shall equip a ship to guard and watch the said coast as is usual, and whatever he shall expend thereupon shall be deducted from the sum he is to render for the said tribute, in virtue of this or the copy thereof, which is to be registered in his book of receipts, and the order given in the regulations concerning such expenditure. And this he shall do as long as he holds the said office of chief captain. I notify it thus.

Dom Duarte de Menezes, &c. I think fit and am pleased that in case (which God forbid) he should die (while going there, while there, or on his return) that no official for administering the property of deceased persons, or any magistrate whatever, shall interfere with his property, but rather shall allow the person or persons named in his will to distribute it and carry out all other directions therein contained, that it may be delivered to his heirs, notwithstanding any order or provision to the contrary, seeing that by the directions left by the said Chief Ensign a proper distribution may be made of his estate, and it may be delivered to his heirs without delay. It is thus notified to the magistrate, &c.

Dom Duarte de Menezes, etc. I think fit and am pleased to give license that as long as he shall hold the said office of chief captain he may send as many ships as he pleases, equipped at his own cost, to the Cape of Good Hope, to reconnoitre the ports and places, and carry on what trade he pleases in those parts, for his own profit, and no person of whatever quality or condition shall place any doubt or obstacle in the way of his so doing, seeing the benefit which may thence arise to the revenue of my lord the king. I notify it thus to all the chief captains and other chief officials and persons whom it may concern, &c.

Dom Duarte de Menezes, etc. I think fit and am pleased that in case the said Dom Jorge de Menezes, during the time he serves in the said office of captain, makes the said lawful expenditure, he shall take a receipt from the factor of the said fortresses as for a loan made to His Majesty's Exchequer, of which he shall recover a receipt in due form, which shall be sent to this Court with the copy of this my charter, that there may be paid here to his procurators whatever is thus lent for the said expenditure of the said lord, no payment to be made in the office of the factor of Mozambique, that everything may be clearly stated and the said payments not made twice. I notify it thus to the Comptroller of the Revenue, &c.

Dom Duarte de Menezes, etc. I make known to all to whom this my charter may come that seeing the importance to the service of God and the king my lord that no ships should go to the rivers of the Cape of Good Hope, both because of the prejudice which might thence arise to his revenues and for the peace and quietness of those places, I think fit and am pleased, and by this I command and forbid in the name of His Majesty, that any ship of any sort or condition whatever shall from henceforward resort to the said rivers, or carry any merchandise thither, without my special license, under pain of high treason to be incurred by the captains, owners, and other persons going in the said ships, and the forfeiture of the ships and the merchandise found therein. And the captain of the fortresses of Mozambique and Sofala shall cause the said directions to be put in execution and strictly observed, whom I recommend to order great vigilance to be shown herein, as the importance of their fulfilment is well known. I notify it thus, &c.

Dom Duarte de Menezes, &c. I make known to those to whom this my charter shall come that seeing the many and continual services which Dom Jorge de Menezes, Chief Ensign of the kingdom of Portugal, has rendered to my lord the king, by whom he is appointed captain of the fortresses of Sofala and Mozambique, upon which office he is now entering poor and in debt, having spent a great portion of his fortune in the said service, I think fit and am pleased that in case during his holding the said office there should be no ship belonging to His Majesty

at Mozambique with which to carry on the accustomed trade to Cape Correntes on behalf of the revenue of the said lord, that the said Dom Jorge de Menezes may carry on the trade with the said place for his own profit, in a ship of his own, equipped at his own expense, in the same manner as should be done on behalf of my lord the king, and no doubt or obstacle shall be placed in his way by any person whatever, seeing that for want of the said ship the said trade is not carried on for the said lord, as it is fitting should be done for the benefit which ensues to his revenue. I notify it thus.

Dom Duarte de Menezes, etc. I think fit and am pleased that as long as he shall serve in the said office of captain he shall have for that purpose fifty men, his relations and servants, who shall receive their pay and just emoluments every quarter in the year as they fall due, while they reside in the said fortresses with the said Chief Ensign, and I command Rui Vaz Peixoto, factor for my lord the king, or whoever is at present serving in that office, to make the said payments in the said manner, and whatever he shall thus pay shall be set down as disbursed by him in virtue of this, or the copy thereof, to be registered in the office of the said factor, with his accounts and their acknowledgments of the satisfaction of their claims made out by the general notary, in spite of any regulation which there may be to the contrary, which in virtue of this the other is to be held as void so long as he holds the said office of captain. I notify it thus, &c.

Dom Duarte de Menezes, &c. I hold it fit and am pleased that so long as he resides therein he may bestow, and can already bestow, all the posts both in the magistracy and administration of the revenue which he may find vacant, or which may become vacant, in the said fortresses during his term of office, upon such persons as are proper and capable of discharging such offices, which are to carry with them such salaries as are assigned to them by the regulations, and all the wages, profits, and perquisites thereto belonging, and the oath upon the Holy Gospels shall be administered to them by the said Chief Ensign, or the magistrate of the said fortresses, that they may serve well and truly, preserving in all things the service of God and His Majesty and the

parts which are lawfully his, of which a memorandum shall be endorsed upon the orders given to them, in which there shall be a copy of this my charter, that it may appear that the said appointments were made in virtue thereof. I notify it thus, &c.

Dom Duarte de Menezes, etc. I make known to those to whom this my charter shall come, that seeing that Dom Jorge de Menezes, Chief Ensign, is appointed by my lord the king captain of the fortresses of Sofala and Mozambique, on which office he is now entering, and upon which it is proper he should enter taking with him many servants and dependents to remain in his company, for whom he must necessarily furnish provisions, I think fit and am pleased to give license that he may take with him from this place, or order to be brought to Mozambique, a pinnace with provisions for the maintenance of his household and dependents, to be sent thus every year that he serves in the said office of captain to the coast of India or to Chaul, for the said purpose, the said provisions to be carried under a declaration that he will not send any ivory in the said pinnace, this being prohibited, and in going and returning to and from Chaul for this purpose it shall pay the customs duties in the custom house of this city, it being thus laid down by order, and sentence was pronounced against Dom Francisco Mazis, who served in the said office of captain. I notify it thus, &c.

Dom Duarte de Menezes, etc. I make known to you Dom Jorge de Menezes, Chief Ensign of the kingdom of Portugal, now going as captain of the fortresses of Sofala and Mozambique, that I am informed there has been a large quantity of merchandise belonging to His Majesty in that place for some years back, which cannot be disposed of, and besides being of no use it lowers the price of other merchandise for trade sent hence on behalf of the said lord, and because it befits his service that it should be cleared off, that it may cause no further loss than it has done already to His Majesty's revenue, I think fit and am pleased to order in his name that as soon as you arrive at the said fortresses you shall, with the factor and officials thereof, inspect the said merchandise which may be in their factories belonging to the said lord, and finding it of no use, and that it is more to the service of my lord the king to dispose thereof, you

shall do so, and make payment for it, that it may no longer remain in the said factories, to which end I commission you in the name of His Majesty, holding it to be greatly for his service, which merchandise shall be set down as delivered by the factor or official who has charge thereof, in virtue of this, or the copy thereof, which shall be registered in the said factories with the agreement made by you thereupon with the said officials as commanded. I notify it thus, &c.

Dom Duarte de Menezes, &c. I hold it fit and am pleased that so long as he shall fill the said office of captain he may each year command to be paid to his said relations and servants a thousand pardaos de tangas of their pay and proper dues to which they shall be entitled, and I command Rui Vaz Peixoto, present factor of my lord the king in the said fortresses, or whoever shall hold that office, to make the said payment in the said manner, and whatever they shall spend therein shall be set down as disbursed by them in virtue of this present, or the copy thereof, which shall be registered in the office of the said factor, with the commands of the said Chief Ensign, and the accounts of his said relations and servants, and their receipts to be made out by the general notary, notwithstanding any regulation to the contrary, seeing that they are to reside in the said fortresses, and it is more to the service of my lord the king and the advantage of his revenue to pay these soldiers for him than that he should by this means be burdened with debt. I notify it thus, &c.

Dom Duarte de Menezes, &c. I make known to all to whom this my present charter shall come, that seeing the many necessities of the State for want of the revenues which have decreased in value from what they were in times past, and that one of the aids and remedies of these necessities is the ivory which is sent every year for the increase of the revenue of my lord the king, in the trading vessel from Mozambique, being the proceeds of the trade carried on at Inhambane and Cape Correntes and other places in those parts, and that it is important for the said purpose that all the said ivory should be sent, and that it may happen by some unforeseen circumstance that the said trading vessel should not reach Mozambique to fetch it at present, I think fit and am pleased that in such a case Dom Jorge de Menezes, Chief Ensign

of the kingdom of Portugal, who now goes as captain of the fortresses of Sofala and Mozambique, as long as he resides there shall embark and cause to be embarked in the ships of this kingdom which go thither all the said ivory in the country belonging to my lord the king, as also all unserviceable artillery, delivering it to the captains, masters, or any other officers of the said lord, of whom he shall take a receipt in form on account of the factor of Mozambique, that he may thereby be discharged from his obligation, and that it may appear that he delivered it by order of the said Chief Ensign to be brought to this city as aforesaid. I notify it thus.

Dom Duarte de Menezes, &c. I think fit and am pleased that in case (which God forbid) he should die while he is serving in the said office of captain, he may appoint one of his relations to fill it, he being trustworthy and proper for the purpose, according to the belief of the said Chief Ensign, seeing how important it is for the safe keeping of the said fortresses, which are the principal ones in the kingdom and very remote from the rest, which said person so named for the office of captain in the manner aforesaid shall fill that office until another is appointed from India by His Majesty or by me, and shall have the salary and perquisites, and use the same jurisdiction and authority, observing such orders as the said Chief Ensign holds from the said lord and myself, for the good of the said office, doing homage for the said fortresses by the hands of the factor or chief magistrate thereof, or the magistrate of Mozambique, swearing in accordance with the established usage in the customary form to preserve in all things the service of God and my lord the king and the rights lawfully his, of which an entry shall be made in the books of the said factory and a certificate of the same endorsed thereon. I notify it thus, &c.

Dom Duarte de Menezes, &c. I make known to those to whom this my present order shall come that seeing that the Chief Ensign, Dom Jorge de Menezes, who is now proceeding to the fortress of Sofala, and is to explore the island of Madagascar upon its coasts and in other parts, the said exploration being greatly to the service of His Majesty, for which purpose a ship or vessel has now been granted to him by another of my orders,



which ship is called *Our Lady of Help* and is at present on the coast of Choromandel, from whence the said voyage of discovery is to be made, for which reasons and others concerning the service of the said lord I command all the captains of the fortresses, masters of ships, magistrates, judges, justices, officers of the revenue, noblemen, persons in power, and others of whatever condition, to suffer the said ship to make the said voyage freely and without hindrance, that it may accomplish the journey, although in their captaincies and the places of the fortresses where it may come they may then have need of it, under pain, in case of their noncompliance, of being held as persons disturbing and hindering His Majesty's service, against whom I shall command legal proceedings to be taken, besides being obliged to pay to the said Chief Ensign such prejudice, loss, and interest as he may suffer from their thus hindering his voyage. Let it be so done, &c.

---

E posto que na terceira instrução que Leuastes vos emcomendey particularmente a fortaleza de Mossambique em que hora esta Nuno velho Per<sup>a</sup> por capitaõ por ser de tanta importancia esta fortaleza como sabeis, e assim a esse Estado como ao remedio das Naos que deste Reino vão para essas partes me pareceo deuer volo tornar a emcommendar para que lhe deis toda a ordem e fauor possiuel para que se acaba; e dentro nella haja gazalhados para os soldados de sua obrigação para que desta man<sup>a</sup> possa ser guardada como conuem mandando a ella o *Navio do trato* de que saõ prouidas algumas pessoas, e como esta mandado pello Snõr Rey Dom Sebastiaõ meu subriho, que D<sup>o</sup> tem.

Sobre as minas daquellas partes me escreueo o VRey Dom Francisco, que não podem correr por comercio e que para se porem em effeito ha de ser por conquista com poder bastante como esta principiado, e que para se isto effetuar não hauia gente nem cabedal nesse Estado, e posto que na instrução quarta, que Leuastes Cap<sup>o</sup> iii vos tenho emcommendado vos informasseis particularmente destas minas, e se estaõ dispostas para conquista, ou comercio por ser Couza, que prometeo tanto de sy, e em que ha tantos annos, que se procede com esta esperança me pareceo

tornar vola a emcommendar posto que nas Naos deste anno espero, que me mandeis Largas informaçã dellas.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Although in the third instructions which you took with you I particularly recommended to you the fortress of Mozambique, of which Nuno Velho Pereira is the present captain, because of the great importance of that fortress, as you are aware, both to that State and for the benefit of the ships going from this kingdom to those parts, I think fit to recommend it to you again, that you may give him all necessary orders and assistance, that it may be completed and may contain quarters for its proper complement of soldiers, that it may be defended as it should be; and that you send there the trading vessel, in which several people are interested, as commanded by his Majesty my nephew Dom Sebastião, now with God.

The viceroy Dom Francisco wrote to me concerning the mines of those parts, that they could not be acquired by commerce, but rather by conquest, and this should be undertaken with sufficient forces; which work has been begun, but that to accomplish it there are neither men nor funds in that State; and although in the third chapter of the fourth instructions that you took with you I charged you to obtain particular information of these mines and to ascertain whether they are proper for conquest or commerce, as this is a matter offering great promise, and which, in this hope, has been dealt with for many years, I think fit to recommend it to you again, although I hope that you are sending me detailed information concerning it by the ships returning this year.

(Signed) THE KING.

Lisbon, February 1585.

---

E asim sou informado que no Rio de Cuama ficaraõ dous fortes ou fatorias do tempo em que Francisco Barreiro andou na conquista das minas de monomotapa nas quaes se prouẽ algumas pessoas e porque serã meu seruiço entender se o de

quem seruem estas fatorias, e se se deuem perpetuar ou não porque se não introdusa cousa, que depois se haja de deixar vos emcommendo, que vos informeis disto e me escreuais tudo particularmente com vosso parecer.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

To the Governor-General Manuel de Sousa Coutinho, from the King.

I am also informed that when Francisco Barreto attempted the conquest of the mines of Monomotapa there were two forts or factories on the river Cuama, in which there were some people, and as it would be for my service to know of what use these factories are and if they should be maintained or not, that nothing may be undertaken which must hereafter be abandoned, I charge you to inform yourself upon this point and to send me all particulars with your opinion thereupon.

28th January 1588.

---

E asim me dizeis que mandastes cumprir o que mandeis escrever acerca dos regimentos sobre o trato das fortalezas de Sofalla e Mossambique de que logo avizareis o Alferes mor, e que havia uisto alguns inconuenientes a que os officiaes daquellas partes não podiaõ dar sahida p̄ que o que se costumou ha quarenta annos agora com a mudança das cousas, e do tempo ficaua danoso não declarando em particular quacs sejaõ estes inconuenientes que significaes, e porque não conuem a meu seruico tratar se desta materia para somente della formarem occasiaõ os capitaens daquellas fortalezas para me alegarem que recebem perdas como ja o começa fazer o Alferes mor sem dar a execuçaõ o comprim<sup>to</sup> dos regimentos dellas vos emcommendo que os façaes guardar e comprir na melhor forma, e ordem que puder ser que não faltará remedio ao que he tanta rezaõ que o tenhia, e dos inconuenientes que nesta materia se vos offerecerem me avizareis para vos mandar sobre elles escrever o que mais houer p̄ meu seruico que se faça.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

To the Governor-General Manuel de Sousa Coutinho, from the King.

You tell me that you ordered my commands concerning the regulations of the trade of the fortresses of Sofala and Mozambique to be carried out, and had informed the Chief Ensign thereof, and that he found some difficulties in complying, for which the officials in those parts could not devise a remedy, because what was customary forty years ago with the changes of time and circumstances would now be prejudicial; but the difficulties in question are not explained in particular, and as it is not fitting for my service that this matter should serve only as a pretext for the captains of those forts to represent to me that they would suffer loss, as the Chief Ensign now does, without putting my orders into execution, I charge you to see them complied with in the best manner and form possible, and a remedy will not be wanting for anything which may reasonably require it, and you shall write and inform me what difficulties present themselves in the matter, that I may cause instructions to be sent to you as to what can be done most conducive to my service.

6th February 1589.

---

Estes Seis Cap<sup>as</sup> abaixo se haõ de perguntar mais alem dos vinte e tres asima apontadas aos Capitães de Çofala, e Mossambique.

Se trataraõ em mercadorias defezas pellos regimentos das feitorias de Sofala, e Mossambique, ou mandaraõ algũas de resgate a çofala e as minas do Seu destrito alem daquillo que expressamente podem fazer por bem dos ditos regimentos.

Se trataraõ em marfim, e o mandaraõ por Sua Conta a India contra forma do regimento.

Se proveraõ nos Navios que vaõ por Conta de minha faz<sup>da</sup> fazer resgate as minas criados Seus por Capitães delles, tirando os que o feitor manda, ou porque naõ ha fazenda minha para

resgate mandaõ a Sua Sendo lhe tudo defesso pello dito regimento. Se defenderaõ que ninguem fosse aos Rios do Cabo de boa Esperança para elles Somente la mandarem, e se tomaõ o marfim que dela a vem sem o deixarem entregar ao feitor conforme ao Regimento.

Se defendem aos officiaes da feitoria, e outras pessoas que por regimentos tem licença de mandar certas corjas de roupa no Navio do resgate que as não mandem para elles as mandarem.

Se impediraõ a navegação da Ilha de Saõ Lourenço ou do Cabo das Correntes, ou da Costa de Melinde, aos que com Seus Navios querem navegar, e pagar os quintos a m<sup>a</sup> fazenda para elles Somente hirem ou mandarem, ou obrigaõ as pessoas que vaõ em Seus Navios.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

*From the king to the viceroy.*

The six following questions are to be put to the captains of Sofala and Mozambique, besides the twenty-three stated above.

Whether they traded in merchandise prohibited by the regulations of the factories of Sofala and Mozambique, or sent any to be used in the trade of Sofala and the mines of their district, besides that which by the said regulations they are expressly allowed to send?

Whether they traded in ivory, or sent any on their own account to India, contrary to the terms of the regulations?

Whether they appointed their servants captains of the trading ships sent out with my goods, removing the captains sent by the factor; or whether they sent their own merchandise to be used in the trade, there being none belonging to me; all of which is forbidden by the said regulations?

Whether they forbade any merchandise to be sent to the rivers of the Cape of Good Hope that they alone might send theirs; and whether they took the ivory which comes from those parts, preventing it from being delivered to the factor according to the regulations?

Whether they forbade the officials of the factory, and other persons who by the regulations are licensed to send certain bales

(of twenty pieces) of cloth in the trading ship, to send them, that they themselves might send them?

Whether they obstructed navigation to the island of Madagascar, or Cape Correntes, or the coast of Melinde, by those who wished to take their ships there and pay the fifths to my treasury, that they alone might go or send there; or if they forced any person to take passage in their ships?

25th March 1589.

[The following document is copied from a paper in a manuscript volume—No. 28461—in the Library of the British Museum. It is undated, but is of this period, and finds a fitting place here.]

*Apontamentos pera V. Mag<sup>de</sup> Ver sobre as Cousas do Estado da India e Reyno de Manomatapa por frey AGUSTINHO DA ZEVEDO da ordem de Santo Agustinho.*

O Reyno de Manomotopa e Rios de Cuama podem importar a V Mag<sup>de</sup> muito naõ lhe frutando agora nada que posta q̄ pareçarem Cento e sincoenta mil Cruzados por tres annos a V Mag<sup>de</sup> que antes naõ Rendiam pellos quais Cento e sincoenta mil Cruzados os arrendou Dom Jorge de Meneses de Companhia Com seus Criados Com tudo a V Mag<sup>de</sup> lhe vem muy pouco interesse deste Contrato e perde muito em o aRendar por ser esta terra de muito mais Ouro que toda a da Mina Agrim, hemfe e Brum; as quaës todas eu vi arrendar V Mag<sup>de</sup> o que facil<sup>to</sup> se pode fabricar fica o interesse todo dos Rendeiros e se fazem muitos de seruizos de nosso senhor se arrisca a leuantarse a terra pella tirania dos Rendeiros e perder V Mag<sup>de</sup> tudo. Pera V Mag<sup>de</sup> ter proueito deste ouro e da Riquesa desta terra naõ tem que Conquistar nem ha mister gente armada somente dar V Mag<sup>de</sup> Licença que os Portugueses Leuem suas mercadorias pellos Rios, e que quando Vierem paguem em Moçambique os quintos do Ouro E do mais que trouxerem. E sendo este trato aberto sera tanto o ouro que ha de vir pellas mercadorias q̄ estes quintos importem muito mais do que Eu posso dizer, e que em hũa so monçaõ Renda mais a V Mag<sup>de</sup> do que lhe os Rendeiros daõ em tres annos por que hum pano que em Chaul Vale duas tangas Val em Sena hum mitigal, e muitas vezes dous e a este

respeito as mais Mercadorias que Vaõ da India e do Reyno E ainda que pareça q̄ Valem La assi estas Cousas agora porq̄ as naõ ha e hauendo trato Largo abaterãõ pella muita quantidade que dellas fra naõ ha assim porq̄ a terra he muy larga E os Negros andaõ nus por naõ acharem panos pera se vestir e todos buscaãõ ouro Com q̄ Comprar os panos E mais Mercadores, E quantas mais forem tanto mais ouro Vira E sera m<sup>to</sup> mais proueito de V Mag<sup>de</sup> ter estes quintos sem mais fabrica que mandalos arrecadar que naõ mandar fazer este trato por seus feitores nem Contratadores.

Pera este trato Correr E se arrecadar bem os quintos deste Ouro, E a demais fazenda que Vier pera V Mag<sup>de</sup> se deue ordenar Alfandega em Moçambique Com Liuro e cofre em q̄ se meta este ouro e officiaes fleis a que se entregue e o ffeitor a quem so entregar o deue trazer no mesmo Cofre a este Reyno e a elle Vir dar Conta Sem que o Viso Rey o gaste na India E por este modo em poucos annos Vera V Mag<sup>de</sup> quanto importa que a India o Reyno de Monomotapa pera q̄ pella Costa nem por outra parte se possa deuassar este trato: E denese evitar que naõ vaõ a elle Italianos, Venecianos, Judeus nem Mouros nem Moquques da India porque sempre os ardís destes e seus maõs exemplos foraõ danosos a India pera isto ser bem governado se deuia ordenar que ouuesse nesta terra Governador que fosse fiel Vasallo a V Mag<sup>de</sup> e hum Bispo em Moçambique que governe e faça seu officio Como deue o Governador prudente obrando que a gente da terra mais se moue por amor e brandura que com mostras de Dominio o Bispo Zeloso porque atentara a q̄ creça a Christandade e a ceíta de Mafamede naõ divulgue tanto por estas nouas terras q̄ este foi o mal de Fran<sup>co</sup> Barreto achar ya la Mouros que lhe Causaraõ a morte E agora que os Portugueses estaõ em paz e em posse destas terras, e trataõ Como Amigos Com os negros Hauendo quem proueia no espiritual acrescentara Deos nosso Senhor todo o temporal a V Mag<sup>de</sup>. Toda esta terra alem de ter muito ouro tem muitos Mantimentos, Arroz milho gergelim, Galinbas, Perdices, Veados, porcos, Boies, e outros muitos Animais, muitos Aruoredos de que se fazem Punganios, Luzios, Almadias. E se podem fazer Casas e o demais que necessario for hindo Bispo o qual he muy necessario La pode estar em Moçambique e Visitar todas estas terras e a Ilha de Quirimba tudo em tres meses e Com facilidade, e descargar os emcargos do Arcebispo de Goa ao qual naõ he possiuel Visitar estas terras, e os Clerigos que manda por Visita-

dores entraõ Pobres e tornaõ Ricos e carregados de emcargos deixando os Pecados em peor estado do q̄ estauaõ Nestas terras de Mozambique Cuama e Monomotapa ha muitos Mouros q̄ Vaõ Com muito Cuidado Comprando Moços Gentios e doutrinaudo os na maldita Seita de Mafamede por naõ auer Prelado. E os q̄ la vaõ Serem Mercenarios por onde Veja V Mag<sup>de</sup> o Risco a que se poem estas nouas terras, pois os ministros de Mafamede acodem com tanto Zelo, q̄ se agora se naõ prouer sera depois dificultoso Remedearse nestas terras de Manomotapa andei hum anno da qual Vim a India do Estado della naõ auiso porque V Mag<sup>de</sup> deue por muitos auisos o meu so he fazer Lembrança que V Mag<sup>de</sup> mande que nas Armadas vaõ Religiosos bastantes pera Confesar porque me achei em hũa Armada de que era Capitaõ Hieronimo de Sousa no Malauar naõ auia outro Confesor senaõ eu, e me foi necessario andar de noite de fusta em fusta a Confessar os feridos.

[*Translation of the foregoing.*]

*Information for Your Majesty touching certain matters in India and the kingdom of Monomotapa, by Friar AUGUSTINE DA ZEVEDO, of the Order of St. Augustine.*

The kingdom of Monomotapa and the rivers of Cuama might be of great advantage to your Majesty, and at present profit you nothing, being leased to Dom Jorge de Meneses and his servants for the space of three years at 150,000 cruzados, which they did not yield before. Your Majesty gets little profit by this contract, and loses much by leasing these lands, which are richer in gold than that of Mina, Agrim, Hemfe, and Brum, and might be easily made to profit your Majesty; but to leave all the interest to the lessees is a great disservice to our Lord, exposing the country to the risk of a rebellion on account of their tyranny, and your Majesty to losing it altogether.

For your Majesty to profit by this gold, neither conquest nor armed force would be necessary, but only that your Majesty should grant the Portuguese license to carry their merchandise to the rivers, paying the fifth of the gold or other things which they brought back with them, in Mozambique, and this commerce once set on foot, the quantity of gold exchanged for the mer-



chandise would be so great that the fifths would amount to more than I can say, and would yield your Majesty in six months (one monsoon) more than the lessees pay in three years; for a piece of cloth, which is worth two tangas in Chaul, is worth a mitical at Sena and sometimes two, and though it may seem that these things are worth so much, as well as the other merchandise from India and Portugal, because they are not to be had in those parts, and that a large trade being set on foot would soon bring down the price by increasing the supply, yet this is not so, because the territory is so large that the negroes go naked for want of cloths with which to cover themselves, and would all seek for gold to buy the cloths and other merchandise, and the greater the quantity of merchandise the larger the amount of gold. This tax of a fifth would be more profitable to your Majesty than to carry on the trade by means of your own agents and merchants, and would give no more trouble than to order it to be collected.

To set this commerce on foot, and to collect the fifths of the gold and other property for your Majesty, an officer of the customs should be appointed at Mozambique, to keep a book of accounts and a coffer in which to place the gold, in charge of trustworthy officials, and the agent to whom it is entrusted to bring the gold to this kingdom and give an account of it here, the viceroy having no power to dispose of it in India. In this manner, in a few years your Majesty would see the importance of the kingdom of Monomotapa to India, for this commerce cannot be interfered with from the coast nor from any other part. Italians, Venetians, Jews, Moors, or Moquoques, from India, should not be allowed to enter, for their cunning and bad example have always been harmful to India.

For the good government of this land a faithful subject of your Majesty should be chosen as governor, and a bishop appointed for Mozambique. The governor should exercise his power with prudence, influencing the people of the country rather by love and gentleness than by a show of authority. The bishop should be zealous in propagating Christianity and preventing the spread of the sect of Mohamed in these new lands. This was the ruin of Francisco Barreto, who was killed by the Moors whom he met with in those parts. Now that the Portuguese possess these lands in peace and deal with the negroes as

friends, let their spiritual advantage be provided for, and God our Lord will increase the temporal profit to your Majesty.

This land, besides gold, abounds with provisions, rice, millet, sesame, fowls, partridges, deer, pigs, oxen, and many other animals, also groves of trees, of which they make different sorts of craft, and which could be used to build houses and other necessary edifices should a bishop be sent, which is very necessary. He could reside at Mozambique, and visit all these lands and the island of Quirimba in three months, very easily; thus fulfilling the duty of the archbishop of Goa, for whom it is impossible to visit all these lands, and the clergy whom he sends as visitors are poor when they arrive, but return rich and overburdened with business, leaving the sins of the country in a worse state than before. In these lands of Mozambique, Cuama, and Monomotapa there are many Moors, who are careful to buy Pagan boys and instruct them in the cursed sect of Mohamed, because there is no bishop, and the clergy who go there are mercenary, so that your Majesty will perceive to what risk these new lands are exposed, for the ministers of Mohamed are very zealous, and if it is not remedied at once it will be most difficult to do so later. I travelled in these lands of Monomotapa for a year, whence I went to India, of the state of which I say nothing, your Majesty being well informed from many sources. I have only to remind your Majesty to command that there should be sufficient religious in the fleets to hear confessions, for in the fleet in which I was, commanded by Captain Hieronimo de Sousa, in Malabar, I was the only confessor and was obliged to go from ship to ship, in the night, to confess the wounded.

---

Ev El Rey Faço Saber a vos meu V. Rey e Governador das partes da India que vendo e considerando como nas fortalezas de Çofalla e Moçambique Sendo guardaraõ athe agora meus regimentos e que naõ Som<sup>o</sup> naõ tinha minha fazenda nesse Estado nenhum Rendimento dos Resgates daquellas fortalezas mas antes era necessaria que a custa della se pagassem as despezas que com ellas se fazem de que se naõ podem escuzar de culpa os officiaes da administraçaõ dos ditos resgates e querendo nisso prover, de maneira que minha fazenda, cujos

elles todos São tenha algum rendimento para Suprim<sup>o</sup> das obrigaçoens e despezas das mesmas fortalezas, e os Capitaes dellas fiquem com parte bastante para Seus proveitos, e os Recebaõ juntamente meus vassallos Hey por bem, e mando que da publicação desta minha provizaõ nessas partes em diante se abraõ logo os resgates de ouro da fortallesa de Çofalla, Rios, e portos donde athe que se resgatou, para que todas as pessoas de qualquer qualidade e condiçaõ que Sejaõ o possaõ hir resgatar, e prata se tambem a houver pagando de todo o ouro ou pratta que assim resgatarem o quinto a minha fazenda, e tambem me praz que os Capitaes daquellas fortalezas por mim providos dellas possaõ resgatar todo o marfim, ambar, breu, e Cairo daquellas partes livremente, Sem destas couzas pagarem a minha fazenda direito algum, e que nenhuma outra pessoa as possa resgatar Se não elles, e assim hey por bem fiz<sup>er</sup> lhes mais merce. que hajaõ a decima parte de todas os quintos do ouro, e prata que recobrar p<sup>a</sup> minha fazenda e porque para este modo de trato, e Comercio gerãl convem que haja alfandega na fortaleza de Moçambique a fareis logo assentar nella onde se pagaraõ de todas as fazendas que entrarem naquelle porto, e a elle vierem (que não forem deste Reino) a seis por cento de entrada como se pagaõ em todas as outras alfandegas desse Estado a minha fazenda que Sejaõ de Capitaõ e officiaes das ditas fortalezas ou de quaesquer outras pessoas as quaes entraraõ todas na dita Alfandega e Seraõ nella despachadas e Selladas e pagando os ditos direitos as poderaõ tirar, e achandose as taes mercadorias Sem Sello da dita Alfandega Seraõ perdidas as duas partes para minha fazenda, e a outra para quem o denunciar, e outroSy todo o ouro, e pratta ou qualquer outro metal que se Registrar, se tirara a dita alfandega e nella se pagaraõ os quintos de tudo e se Carregaraõ em recepta Sobre o feitor de Mossambique que juntamente Sera Juiz da dita Alfandega pello escrivaõ da dita feitoria que tambem servira de Escrivaõ della, e a dita recepta se fara em tit<sup>o</sup> apartado que se chamara dos quintos com declaraçaõ dos Nomes das pessoas que os pagaraõ, e com todas as mais necessarias para mais clareza deste negocio para o qual fareis fazer regimento que se Cumprira em quanto eu não mandar dar outro, e me enviareis nestas naos a copia delle em que se tresladara esta provizaõ de Verbo ad verbum, e todo o ouro e prata que ficar as partes depois de assy terem pagos os ditos

quintos se marcarão com armas Reaes desta Coroa nas pontas das Baras, e no meyo dellas, e achandosse algum Sem Ser marcado se perdera para m<sup>a</sup> fazenda as duas partes, e a outra para a pessoa que o denunciar, pello que vos mando que obraes logo os dittos resgates e asentar a dita alfandega na maneira Sobredita e Cumpraes e façaes inteiramente guardar esta provizaõ como se nella conthem, a qual se registara nos Livros da minha fazenda, e dos contos dessas partes, e se publicara nos lugares publicos de Goa, e se fixara nas portas da dita Cidade para a todos ser notorio, e valera como se fosse carta feita em meu nome por mim assignada, e passada pella chancellaria posto que por ella naõ passe Sem embargo da ordenaçãõ do Segundo Livro titulo 20 que o Contrario dispoem. Andre Pereira o fez em Lx<sup>a</sup> ao deradeiro dia de Março de 93. E eu o Secretario Diogo Velho o fiz escrever. E o que assim hey por bem por esta provizaõ que aos ditos Capitaens de Çofalla e Mossambique Seraõ quanto o couber por bem, naõ mandar o Contrario o Cardeal.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

I the king make known to you my viceroy and governor in Indian parts, that seeing and considering that in the fortresses of Sofala and Mozambique my orders have not been observed up to the present, and that my treasury in that State not only does not receive any profit from the trade of those fortresses, but also has been obliged to bear the expenses thereof, for which the officials for administering the said trade cannot be held free from blame; and wishing in this matter to provide in such manner that my treasury, to which all this trade belongs, shall receive some profit to meet the calls on it through the expenses of these same fortresses, that the captains of them shall receive a sufficient share of the profits, and that my subjects may also benefit from it, I think fit and command that the following order be published: that in those parts, for the future, and without delay, the gold trade of the fortress of Sofala, the rivers, and ports where this trade has been carried on shall be opened, that all persons of whatever position or condition may trade for gold and also for silver. The fifth part of all the gold and silver acquired in this trade is to be paid to my treasury; and further

I am pleased that the captains of the said fortresses, appointed by me, shall trade in all the ivory, ambergris, tar, and cocoa-nut fibre of those parts freely, paying on these articles no duty whatever to my treasury, and that no other person shall trade in these things but themselves, and also I am pleased to make them a further grant of the tenth part of all fifths on gold and silver paid to my treasury. And because for this kind of trade and general commerce it is advisable to have a custom house in the fortress of Mozambique, you shall forthwith establish one there where duty is to be paid on all the merchandise entering that port or sent there, when not sent from this kingdom, at the rate of six per cent entrance, as is paid in all the other custom houses of this State to my treasury, whether it belongs to the captain and officials of the said fortresses or to any other persons, all of which merchandise shall enter the custom house and shall be cleared and stamped, and the said duties being paid, it may be withdrawn. The said merchandise, if found without the stamp of the said custom house, shall be forfeited, two parts to my treasury and the remainder to the informer. Further of the gold and silver or any other metal obtained in the trade, brought to the custom house, the fifth of all shall be paid, and the receipt of it shall be entered in the books of the factor of Mozambique, who will also be judge of the custom house, and of the notary of the said factory, who will also fill the post of notary to the custom house; and the said receipt is to be placed in a separate record, which shall be called the record of the fifths, with a declaration of the names of the persons who have paid them, with all further particulars necessary to the understanding of this business; to which end you will command regulations to be drawn up, which shall be enforced until I command another order to be issued, and you shall send me with these ships a copy of the regulations which shall contain a copy of this order *de verbo ad verbum*. All the gold and silver which shall remain after payment of the said fifths shall be marked with the royal arms of this crown on the extremities of the bars and in the middle thereof, and any found without being so stamped shall be forfeited, two parts to my treasury and the rest to the informer. Therefore I command you to open without delay the said trade, and establish the said custom house in the aforesaid manner, and to execute and strictly enforce

this order as stated therein, which order shall be registered in the books of my treasury and of the accounts of those parts, and shall be published in the public places of Goa and affixed to the gates of the said city, that it may be known to all; and it shall be as binding as if it were a letter written in my name, by my order, and passed through the chancellor, although it has not passed the latter, notwithstanding the order of the second book, record 20, which orders to the contrary. Drawn up by André Pereira in Lisbon, the last day of March 1593. Written by me the secretary Diogo Velho. And I also think fit by this order that the said captains of Sofala and Mozambique shall receive what is their just share. The cardinal not to order to the contrary.

---

Vy o que fizestes na fortaleza de Mossambique quando chegastes a ella, e asim nas mais cousas daquella costa de que me dais conta que tudo me pareceo muito acertado e conforme a muita confiança que de vos tenho e no que toca ao forte, que Dom Jorge de Minez Alferes mor fez na ponta de Santo Antonio sendo capitão daquella fortaleza pellas rezoens, que em vossa carta apontaes, e informaçoens, que sobre isto mandeis tomar, hei p meu seruiço, e mais segurança da mesma fortaleza, que não haja o dito forte, e que o mandeis logo desfazer, e recolher os materiaes delle para que acontecendo hirem Nauios de inimigos aquella parte não intentem tornallo a fazer.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

To the Viceroy Dom Matthias de Albuquerque, from the King.

I am informed of your proceedings on arriving at the fortress of Mozambique and other matters concerning that coast, of which you have given me an account. It seems to me that everything has been done well, and in conformity with the great confidence I place in you. Concerning the fort which Dom Jorge de Menezes, Chief Ensign, built at Point Saint Antonio when he was commander of the said fortress, for the reasons set forth in your letter, and from the information you acquired in the matter, it would be for my service and the better security of the

said fortress that it should be demolished, and you should forthwith command it to be pulled down and the materials be collected, that should any enemy's ships come to that part they may not rebuild it.

18th February 1595.

---

Mathias de Albuquerque me escreueo que por cartas de Dom Pedro de Souza Capitaõ da Fortaleza de Çofalla e Mossambique subera como elle estaua no Rio de Cuama com perto de oitenta soldados dos que leuara consigo pera lançar p̄ força daquellas terras hũ negro que berturbaua o comercio dellas pello que vos emcomendo que quando passardes por aquella fortaleza de Moçambique saibais o estado em que esta esta guerra e dexeis nisto a ordem do que se deue fazer e não tomando vos Monsambique ordenareis nisto tanto que chegardes a India o que virdes que mais conuem.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

To the Viceroy Dom Francisco da Gama, Count of Vidigueira, Admiral of India, from the King.

Matthias de Albuquerque has written to me that he heard from Dom Pedro de Souza, captain of the fortress of Sofala and Mozambique, that he was on the river Cuama with nearly eighty soldiers of those he took with him to expel by force from that country a negro who was disturbing the commerce there. I therefore charge you that when you pass through Mozambique you enquire into the state of this war and leave orders as to what is to be done, and should you not touch at Mozambique you shall give such orders concerning it as you think fit on your arrival in India.

28th February 1595.

---

Ev El Rey Faço Saber a vos meu V. Rey e Governador das partes da India que ora Sois, e ao diante fordes que eu mandey passar huma minha provisãõ feita nesta cidade em o derradeiro

de Março de noventa e tres porque avia por bem per los respeitos e Causas nella declaradas que se abrissem logo os Resgates do ouro da fortaleza de Çofala e portos donde athe então se resgatava e fossem comun a todos, e porque Sou ora informado que esta ordem era em grande damno de m<sup>a</sup> fazenda, e perjuizo dos ditos Resgates e querendo nisso prover Como Convem a bem de tudo Hey por bem, e me praz que da publicaçãõ desta provizaõ nessas partes em diante se tornem logo a cerrar Com effeito, e Sem dillaçãõ alguma os ditos Resgates e corra o trato e Comercio delles na forma e modo em que dantes corria e se Contratem Com os Capitanes providos das fortalezas de Çõla e Moçambique pagando elles a Sua custa as ordinarias das ditas fortalezas, e dando mais a minha fazenda huma quantia certa de dr<sup>o</sup> que parecer justo e que se não vze mais da dita provizaõ e assim por revogada e de nenhum effeito Pello que vos mando que façaes logo cerrar os ditos resgates e que não Seiãõ mais comuns a todos e os Contrateis com os ditos Capitaens Como dito he e Cumpraes, e façaes inteiramente goardar esta provizaõ como se nella conthem a qual se Registara nos Livros de minha fazenda, e Contos dessas partes e se publicara nos lugares publicos de Goa, e se fisaraõ o Tresllado della nas portas da dita cidade para a todos Ser notorio e se tresladara nos Contratos que se fiserem com os ditos Capitaens e valera Como se fosse Carta feita em meu nome por mim assinada e passada pela chancelaria posto que por ella não passé Sem embargo da ordenaçãõ do 2<sup>o</sup> L<sup>o</sup> tt<sup>o</sup> xx que o Contrario dispoem. Manoel de Torres o fez em Lx<sup>a</sup> a 7 de Março de 595 o Secretario Diogo Velho o fiz escrever.

REY.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

I the king make known to you my present viceroy and governor in Indian parts, and to your successors, that I commanded an order to be passed which was drawn up in this city on the last day of March 1593, because I considered it advisable for the reasons and causes therein stated that the gold trade of the fortress of Sofala and ports where up to that time it had been carried on should be immediately opened and be common to all; and because I am at present informed that this order was greatly to the disadvantage of my treasury and to the



prejudice of the said trade, and wishing in this matter to take measures favourable to all, I approve and am pleased that the following order be published in those parts, that for the future this trade shall be effectually closed, without delay, that it shall be carried on in the same manner as formerly, and that contracts be made with the captains of the fortresses of Sofala and Mozambique; the ordinary expenses of the fortresses to be paid by them, and also a fixed sum of money to my treasury, which appears to be just. And that the said order shall be no longer in force, and thus being revoked it is to be held of no effect; therefore I command you immediately to close the said trade, and that it be no longer open to all, and that you make contracts with the said captains, and execute and strictly enforce this order and the matters stated therein; which shall be registered in the books of my treasury and of the accounts of those parts, and shall be published in the public places of Goa; and a copy of it shall be affixed to the gates of the said city, that it may be known to all; and it shall be written in the contracts made with the said captains, and shall be as binding as if it were a letter written in my name and by my order, and passed through the chancellor, although it has not passed through the latter, notwithstanding the order of the second book, record 20, provides the contrary. Drawn up by Manuel de Torres, in Lisbon, the 7th of March 1595. Written by the secretary Diogo Velho.

(Signed) THE KING.

Pellas vias do anno passado de 95 mandei p̄ prouizaõ minha que com ellas fois que se tornassem a serrar os resgates que tinha mandado largar nas minas de Cuama da Fortaleza de Çoffalla e que se contratassem com os capitaens prouidos por mim daquella fortaleza emcommendo vos que deis ordem para que se garde a dª ordem ou prouizaõ como se nella contem avizando me do que achardes que serã mais conueniente a meu seruiço e ao respeito que tenho de fazer merce aos ditos capitaens, e esta enformaçaõ podereis tomar quando passardes p̄ Mossambique de quem virdes q̄ com menos suspeita vola podera dar.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

To the Viceroy the Count of Vidigueira, from the King.

In the despatches of last year, 1595, I sent orders to stop the trade which had been permitted in the mines of Cuama of the fortress of Sofala, and that contracts should be made with the commanders appointed by me to that fortress. I charge you to give instructions that the said command be obeyed, according to the terms in which it is stated, and that you inform me of what you consider most conducive to my service and to my intention of showing favour to the said commanders. This information you may acquire when passing through Mozambique from those whose testimony is most trustworthy.

2nd January 1596.

---

E porque tambem me escreue, que de Dom Pedro de Souza Capitão de Sofalla e moçambique se queixaõ os moradores daquellas fortalezas e houue nellas mortes cauzadas por Dom Fr<sup>co</sup> seu filho que he cazo a que se deue dar castigo asy conuem vos emcomendo q̄ asim o façais e mandeis deuassar delle. E athe naõ ser sentenciado pay e filho lhe naõ dareis Licença para se virem para este Reino.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

To the Viceroy the Count of Vidigueira, from the King.

As you inform me that the inhabitants of the fortresses of Sofala and Mozambique complain of the captain of the said fortresses, Dom Pedro de Souza, and that several deaths have been caused by his son Dom Francisco, this being a case which must not go unpunished, I charge you to look into the matter and examine witnesses, and not to allow father or son to come to this kingdom until sentence has been passed upon them.

13th February 1597.

---

Que o contrato feito com Nuno de Cunha sobre as minas de Cofalla se deue emmendar por que pellas dilligencias que fez conta que minha fazenda esta enganada com duzentos e Sincoente mil pardaos afora os vinte e Sinco mil, que importa o trato de marfim que fica ao Capitaõ, e seus ordenados mormente, que da provizaõ por que se contratarão as minas se entendeo que naõ havia de hauer Alfandiga em Mossambique o que he contra rezaõ e justica, e forma da dita prouizaõ, e que deuo mandar que os quarenta mil pardaos que Nuno da Cunha dá pello contrato vaõ para este Estado por que se gastaõ em Mossambique em ordinarias que se podem pagar com des ou dose mil de emprego d'India.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

To the Viceroy the Count of Vidigueira, from the King.

The contract made with Nuno da Cunha with regard to the mines of Sofala must be revised, as from the enquiries that have been made it appears that my treasury is defrauded of two hundred and fifty thousand pardaos (£25,312 10s.), besides the twenty-five thousand (£2,531 5s.) arising from the ivory trade which belongs to the captain, and his salary, more especially as from the order by which the mines were leased by contract they understand that there is to be no custom house at Mozambique, which is contrary to reason and justice and to the form of the said order. And it must be commanded that the forty thousand pardaos (£4,050) which Nuno da Cunha pays for the contract be sent to this kingdom, as they are expended at Mozambique in allowances which can be paid with ten or twelve thousand charged upon India.

10th March 1598.

---

E por ser entendido que nos pagais os que de Mossambique vaõ aos resgates de Cuama e Cofalla se embarcaõ alguns mouros com intento de semean a sua ceita na caferria daquellas partes, vos emcommendo deis ordem como se atalhe este tamanho mal e de taõ prejuizo a conuersaõ de nossa Santa fée naquellas partes

e em caso que não haja outros marinheiros para servirem nos pangaios se lhe tomaraõ fianças a tornarem nelles.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

To the Viceroy the Count of Vidigueira, from the King.

As it is understood that we are to pay those who go from Mozambique to trade in Cuama and Sofala, should any Moors embark with the intention of spreading their sect in those parts of Kaffraria, I charge you to give such orders as will put a stop to an evil so prejudicial to the preservation of our holy faith there, and should there be no other sailors to serve in the vessels, the Moors shall give security that they will return in them.

8th December 1598.

---

Tambem me escreve, que tem ordenado, que nenhum Mouro desembarque nos pangayos, que vaõ de Monçabique para Cuama Sem deixar fiança bastante de voltar nelles, e quo de novo tornara advertir disto ao Capitaõ daquella Fortalesa mas que algũs Religiosos de entendim<sup>to</sup> que estiveraõ naquelles Rios defficultaõ isto m<sup>to</sup> pella necessidade que hã de marinheiros para a navegaçaõ daquelles pangayos e postoque o Conde se conforma Com a parecer destes Religiosos todavia me pareceo remetter isto a vos para que o confirmeis não vos parecendo, que ha nisto outros Inconvenientes maiores.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

He also writes to me that he has given orders that no Moor shall embark in the pangayos which ply between Mozambique and Cuama without leaving security that he will return in them, and that he will again inform the captain of that fortress of this order; but that some religious of good judgment who were at those rivers were greatly opposed to it, on account of the necessity of sailors for the navigation of the said pangayos; and although the count agrees with these religious, yet I think fit to

remit this to you, that you may confirm it if you do not think it will give rise to greater evils.

25th January 1601.

---

E assim me diz, que o Manamotapa senhor das minas do ouro, e prata dos Rios de Cuama he amigo dos Portuguezes e os Consente andar em Suas terras, e se entende, que se podera efectuar esta Conquista tratandose della Como poder necessario, e postoque nesse Estado ao presente deve haver muitas Couzas a que acudir todavia Me pareceo mandar vos me informeis se se podera entender nella, e que se va Continvando o Comercio, que se tem naquellas partes, e do procedimento dos Reis de Melinde, Pemba, e outros daquella Costa me auizareis, e trabalhareis pellos emcaminhar, e conservar na amisade desse Estado.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

He also tells me that Monomotapa, the lord of the gold and silver mines of the rivers of Cuama, is a friend of the Portuguese, and allows them to pass through his lands, and that it is understood that by dealing with him as with a necessary power, this conquest may be effected, and although in this State at present there are many other measures to be aided, yet I think fit to command you to advise me whether this can be carried out, and whether the commerce of those parts continues; and you shall further advise me of the proceedings of the kings of Melinde, Pemba, and others of that coast, and shall endeavour to preserve and increase their friendship for this State.

25th January 1601.

---

Tambem me diz que despachou Dom Alvaro da Branches para entrar na fortaleza de Momçabique por ter acabado Nuno da Cunha, e que lhe mandara notificar pello Secretario desse Estado que não fosse aos Rios de Cuama pello grande perjuizo que Seria de meu Serviço e muito Risco daquella fortaleza por a monção Com que se navega para aquelles rios ser a mesma em

que os Turquos podem vir a Momçabique e porque poderia tambem acontecer, que os olandezes, q̄ de alguns annos a esta parte vaõ a Sunda e a Costa da Jaoa e me dizem, que vaõ tambem a hum porto da Ilha de Santo Lourenço fazer aguada e tomar mantimentos Intentem de tomar aquella fortaleza de Momçabiq̄ vos encomendo defendais ao dito Dom Alvaro e aos Capitaens, que em vosso tempo servirem esta fortaleza naõ façãõ nenhuma auzencia della porque me avereis disso por muy desservido, e lhe estranhareis como a importancia deste Caso o pede.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

He also tells me that he has dispatched Dom Alvaro da Branches to the fortress of Mozambique, Nuno da Cunha having completed his term of office, and that he will give orders to the secretary of that State to notify to him that by reason of the great prejudice to my service and the risk to that fortress, he is not to go to the rivers of Cuama, because the monsoon in which the voyage to those rivers is made is the same in which the Turks may come to Mozambique, and because it may happen that the Dutch, who for some years past have gone to Sunda and to the coast of Java,—and I hear that they also go to a port of Madagascar to take in water and provisions—may attempt to take the fortress of Mozambique. I recommend you to forbid the said Dom Alvaro and the captains who hold this fortress during your term of office to absent themselves in any way from it, as you will inform me of it as being greatly to the prejudice of my service, and will reprove them as the importance of the case demands.

28th January 1601.

---

Tambem me he dito que no Reino de Manamotapa entrarem muitas gentes da Sertaõ que Chamauã Cabires, que Comem Carne humana, e que por este Rey ser fraco o tem muito amedrondado e esta aquelle Comercio muito ariscado a se perder encomendo vos muito encarecidamente q̄ trateis de o Conservar p<sup>o</sup> melhor modo q̄ puder Ser.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

I am also informed that a horde of people from the interior, called Cabires, who eat human flesh, is entering the kingdom of Monomotapa, and this king, being weak, is in great terror; and as the commerce there is in great danger of being destroyed, I recommend you most earnestly to take all possible measures conducive to its preservation.

31st January 1602.

---

V. Rey amigo Eu El Rey vos envio muito sandar, Lourenço de Berito Capitaõ de Çofala e Momçabique me escreveo que os Cabires gente de bellicoza estauaõ Senores das minas do chicoro, que Saõ as principaes do Reyno de Manamotapa, e fortes no lugar onde o dito Rey tinha Sua Corte, e que estava escandilizado dos Capitaens dos fortes de sena ate lhe naõ acudirem Com a gente a ellas para poder deitar fora estes Cahires, e postoque me escreve, que tem feito nesta materia tudo o que podia fazer em favor do Manamotapa e por ella Ser de tanta Concideraçã vos encomendo m<sup>to</sup> encarecidamente que tendo ella inda necessidade de ajuda desse Estado lhe procurcis Com a brevidade, que ouver lugar, e p̄que o dito Lourenço de Berito me representa que se deu muitas perdas pellas ditas Cauzas vos encomendo que vos informeis se tem Recebido as ditas perdas, que diz, e se acudio ao Remedio daquellas minas Como Convinha a meu Serviço e do que achardes me avizareis para eu mandar responder as Suas preteçoens Como ouver por meu Serviço.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Viceroy and friend, I the king greet you well. Lourenço de Brito, captain of Sofala and Mozambique, wrote to me that the Cabires, a warlike tribe, were in possession of the mines of Chicoro, the principal mines of the kingdom of Monomotapa, and of the forts of the town where the said king holds his court, and that he was surprised that the captains of the forts of Sena had

not gone to his assistance with men and all things necessary to drive out the said Cahires, and although he writes that he has done all in his power in favour of Monomotapa and because that country is of such importance, I most earnestly recommend you that if it is still in need of the assistance of this State, you render assistance with the necessary dispatch; and because the said Lourenço de Brito represents to me that for the said reasons he has suffered great losses, I recommend you to ascertain whether he has suffered the said losses, and whether he rendered such assistance to the said mines as was conducive to my service, and you will advise me of the result of your research, that I may give order that his claims be answered in such way as is advantageous to my service.

26th February 1602.

---

V. Rey amigo eu El Rey vos envio muito savdar. Tendo Respeito aos Serviços de Andre Furtado de Mendonça fidalgo de minha Casa e ao que particularmente fez na tomada da Fortaleza de Cunhale, Ey por bem de lhe fazer merce da Capitania da Fortaleza de Çofala ou de ormuz qual dellas escolher: por tempo de tres annos na vagante dos providos antes do primeiro de Janeiro deste anno prezente a qual merce lhe faço alem da Fortaleza da Malaca, e viagem da China com que esta despachado, emcomendo vos q̄ lhe declareis logo esta merce, que lhe faço, e alotando a lhe mandareis passar Certidaõ vossa, em que se tresladara este Capitolo, que mandara a este Reyno p<sup>a</sup> se lhe passar patente em forma de huma destas fortalezas que aleitar.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Viceroy and Friend. I the king send you many greetings. In respect of the services performed by André Furtado de Mendonça, nobleman of my household, and particularly that which he rendered in the taking of the fortress of Cunhale, I think fit to grant him the command of either the fortress of Sofala or of that of Ormuz, as he shall select, for the space of three years, when vacant after the expiration of the terms of



those appointed before the first of January of the present year; which grant I make to him over and above the fortress of Malaca and expedition to China on which he is sent. I recommend you to make known to him forthwith this grant which I make to him, and when he has made his selection, you will order a certificate in your name to be given him, in which this section shall be copied, and send it to this kingdom, that a patent may be remitted to him for one of the said fortresses, according to his choice.

20th March 1602.

---

Vizo Rey Amigo. Eu El Rey vos envio muito saudar. Aires de Saldanha me escreve em sua Carta de vinte e tres de Dezembro de seis centos e tres que tinha entrado a Servir a Fortaleza de Mossambique Sebastião Macedo o qual tinha ordenado tomasse Cem Soldados que fossem nas naos do Reino para a provimento da dita fortaleza alem dos ordinarios assim por eu lhe ter mandado como por elle entender serem necessarios para boa guarda della pella continuação da navegação do rebeldes naquellas partes e que as naos do Reino não tomaraõ aquelle Porto pello que detriminava dar lhe todos os que podesse na monção de Janeiro, e assim lhe dera ordem para Consertar as Cisternas da Fortaleza, e tinha avizo Seu que esta obra se hira fazendo e se acabaria naquelle anno, e pello muito que convem a meu Serviço estar aquella fortaleza em boa guarda e se ter entendido o muito que os Inimigos rebeldes dezojaõ Comete la Ordeno ao Capitaõ mor desta Armada que chegando aquelle porto e achando que aquella fortaleza tem necessidade de Gente deixe nella Cem Soldados dos que forem nesta Armada e ao Capitaõ da dita fortaleza encomendo acabe a obra das cestenias Se ja o não tiver feito, e que se agazalhe dentro nella Como he de Sua obrigação Sem se ir aos Rios de Cuama Como fizeraõ seus antecessores pello perigo em que ella fica, e por atalhar semelhantes desordens mandey passar a provizaõ que vos hira nas vias deste anno com as pennas que por ella vercis contra os capitaens que dezemparearem a dita fortaleza, e Contra os mais que occuparem em seus negocios e tratos os Soldados que Cada hum Saõ ordenados para Sua guarda ou tiverem menos dos que

são obrigados: encomendo vos muito que a façaes publicar, e se guarde inteiramente pello muito que assim Convem a meu Serviço, e Conservaçãõ desse estado.

E por ter entendido que Lourenço de Brito contra minha ordem, e prohibiçãõ, e depois de lhe estar intimada tornou aos Rios de Cuama, e que em hum delles se levantaraõ os negros contra elle e lhe mataraõ dez ou doze Portuguezes, e lhe tomaraõ parte de Sua fazenda, e mandado o socorrer Sebastiaõ de Macedo com hum Navio e Sincoenta homens se perdera o navio Com tormenta Sem delles escapar Couza alguma em que este Cazo se lhe tinha dado em Culpa em Sua residencia vos encomendo que façaes correr com o despacho da dita residencia, e depois de Julgada me enviareis como tenho ordenado, e todas as desta qualidade.

*[English translation of the foregoing.]*

Viceroy and friend. I the king greet you well. Aires de Saldanha writes to me in his letter of the 23rd of December 1603 that he has sent Sebastiaõ Macedo to command the fortress of Mozambique, to whom he has given orders to take one hundred soldiers out of the ships from the kingdom for the defence of the fortress, besides the ordinary garrison, both because I had so ordered him and because he gathered that they would be necessary for its safe defence on account of the continuation of the navigation of the rebels in those parts; and that the ships from the kingdom do not put into that port, but that he was resolved to send as many as possible there during the monsoon of January; and that he will direct the cisterns of the fortress to be repaired; and he sends me word that this work would be undertaken and finished in that year. And because the proper defence of this fortress is of great consequence to my service, and because I gather that the rebels greatly covet it, I give order to the commander-in-chief of this fleet that on arriving at the said port and finding that the said fortress is in need of men, he shall leave there one hundred of the soldiers who sail in the said fleet; and I recommend the captain of the said fortress to complete the repair of the cisterns, if this work is not already finished, and to remain within the fortress in accordance with his obligations, and not to proceed to the rivers of Cuama, as was done by

his predecessors, on account of the risk to it. I commanded an order to be passed, which will be sent to you in the course of this year, and which contains the penalties to be incurred by the captains who abandon the said fortress, and those who employ the soldiers, of whom each one is sent to defend it, in their own affairs and dealings, or who maintain less than the number they are under obligation to maintain. I earnestly recommend you to publish it, and strictly enforce it, by reason of its importance to my service and to the preservation of that State.

And understanding that Lourenço de Brito, against my order and prohibition, and after being advised thereof, returned to the rivers of Cuama, and that in one of them the negroes rose up against him, killed ten or twelve Portuguese, and took part of his property; and that Sebastian de Macedo, having commanded a ship with fifty men to go to his assistance, the ship was wrecked in a storm and all were lost, for which misfortune he is held responsible in his trial; I recommend you to send an account of this with the report of the trial, and when judgment is given, you shall send me an account of it, as of all other cases of the kind.

26th February 1605.

---

A mesma diminuição sou informado que hã na Christandade das Ilhas de Solor, e Timor, e nas partes de Mossambique, e Rios de Cuama que estam a Cargo dos Religiozos de Saõ Domingos por falta de Ministros de Zello, e por se ocuparem mais na temporalidades que nas materias de sua obrigação e para remediar estas faltas tenho mandado fazer Lembrança aos Prelados desta Religião que procure nesta Armada enviar a mayor Copia de Religiozos que puder Ser e que estes Sejaõ de Letras virtude e mais qualidades e partes que Convem para melhor Cumprirem Com sua obrigação e por ter entendido que para os Religiozos que se enviaraõ a essas partes para entenderem na promulgaçaõ do Evangelho Conversaõ da Gentilidade e se disporem a esta obra com mais Resoluçaõ e se apartarem do intento que muitos delles trazem no adquirir fazenda para virem com ella ajudar seus parentes, e para outras Couzas de menos Serviço de Deos seria tirar lhe a esperança de tornarem a este

Reino mandey o anno passado acressentar no regimento dos Capitaens das Naos da Carreira que não consintaõ embarcar nellas Religiozo algum sem lhe mostrar para isso licença do meu Vizo-Rey pello que vos encomendo, e mando que assim o Cumpraes e não Concedereis as ditas licenças a nenhum Religiozo se não constando vos que he enviado por seus superiores a negocio puramente do bem commum e não Com outros intentos particulares na forma que volo ordeney o anno passado.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

I am informed that there is the same decrease in Christianity in the islands of Solor and Timor and in those parts of Mozambique and the rivers of Cuama which are under the care of the Dominicans, for want of zealous ministers, and because they employ themselves more in temporal affairs than in matters pertaining to their calling; and as a remedy I have ordered a memorial to be drawn up, addressed to the superiors of this order, that they may send out in this fleet the greatest number possible of religious, and that these may be men of learning, virtue, and other necessary qualifications for the better accomplishing their duty; and because I understand that it would be better if the religious who are sent to those parts to be employed in the promulgation of the Gospel and conversion of the heathen were deprived of the hope of returning to this kingdom, that they may bring greater determination to this work, and be prevented from attempting, as many do, to acquire riches wherewith to return and assist their relatives, and for other purposes less important to the service of God, I gave order last year to add to the regulations for the captains of the trading ships to allow no religious to take passage in them without first showing a license from my viceroy, for which reason I recommend and command you to carry out this order, and not to grant the said license to any religious without first ascertaining that he is sent by his superiors on a mission purely for the general good, and not for other and private purposes; in the same manner as I gave order last year.

28th February 1605.

Tambem vy o que me escrevestes do Estado em que achastes a Fortaleza de Mossambique, e foy bem ordenado o que nella fizestes, e porque a muita importancia desta Fortaleza obriga a se tratar de Sua guarda, e defençaõ Com muito cuidado mormente neste tempo em que os rebeldes tem postos os olhos nella por estar em citio tam acomodado a navegaçaõ da India que se elles occupassem seria total impedimenta para a navegaçaõ de minhas Armadas para essas partes por ser ordinario hirem na demandar assim a hida como a vinda, e muitas vezes lhe ser necessario invernar nella demais de muita riqueza destas Provincias que com a dita fortaleza se Sustentaõ, e defendem, e pello regimento della lhe saõ ordenados Cem homens, cujo numero sera conveniente acrescetar hey por bem que se lhe acrescentem mais Sincoenta para que daquy em diante tenha cento e sincoenta homens a fora os moradores da terra, e vos encomendo ordeneis que assim se faça, e que para esta gente se tenha a fortaleza tambem provida de mantimentos que por falta delles lhe naõ falte nunca o dito numero de gente antes esteẽ tudo taõ avantejado que possaõ sustentar qualquer Cerco se offerecer, e que se ponhaõ nella quatro esperas de Alcance que possaõ deffender a entrada do porto, e varejar athé a fo— de Saõ Jorge e que se faça a fortaleza huma cava por derrador della de Altura de huma Lança e outra de largo para que se naõ possa subir com escadas, e que pella banda da terra, e toda em roda se cerque de pao a pique, e que o forte de Santo Antonio se reforme ao Sudueste, e ponha nelle artilheria que defenda a entrada do porto para aquella parte, e assistaõ nelle de Guarda os soldados que parecerem necessarios e porque no tempo antigo quando as necessidades eraõ menores costumou haver na dita Fortaleza huma Armada de algumas fustas para guarda da Costa, e isto se foi tirando, e hora he muito importante defender aos Rebeldes as Comodidades que podem ter nella de agoa lenha, e mantimentos ordenareis que para este effeito se torne a fazer a dita Armada com mais vantagem e pella importancia de que he esta materia hey por escuzado encomendar vola com mais palauras entendendo o zello, e diligencia com que acudeis a todas a de meu Serviço, e que com elle acudireis a conservaçaõ da fortaleza de Sofala a qual sendo lhe necessaria mayor fortificaçaõ da que hoje tem, ordenareis se lhe faça com muita brevidade me enviareis huma planta de toda a Ilha com as fortificaçoens que nella ha, e citios

Sircunstantes, e tive por muy acertado a devaça que me dizeis mandartes tirar do Capitaõ da dita fortaleza encomendo vos que se lhe acharaõ culpas o Castigueis que Sebastiaõ de Macedo Capitaõ da Fortaleza com Justiça deve pagar o dinheiro que tomou da minha fazenda para fazer a Galiota que dizeis mandou a Cuama com pretexto de ser em socorro de Lourenço de Brito mandando a por segurar suas roupas, e que por a carregar muito se foy ao fundo lho fareis pagar.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

I have also seen what you wrote to me concerning the state in which you found the fortress of Mozambique, and approve of the measures you took there. And because the great importance of this fortress calls for special care for its safety and defence, especially at this time when the rebels covet it on account of its being so conveniently situated for the Indian navigation that if they were to occupy it it would completely prevent the sailing of my fleets in those parts, as it is customary for the ships to put in there both on the outward and homeward passage, and very often they are compelled to winter there; besides which the said fortress protects and preserves the great riches of those provinces. As by its regulations its complement is put at one hundred men, it would be advisable to increase this number, that henceforward it may be one hundred and fifty men besides the inhabitants of the country. I recommend you to give orders that this be put into execution, and that the fortress be also supplied with provisions for these men, that the aforesaid number may not suffer want through this increase, but that rather all may so benefit by it that they may be able to resist a siege if occasion offers; and that four large cannon be sent there, whose fire may be able to defend the entrance to the port and clear the sea to the island of St. George, and that a trench be dug round the fortress, the depth and breadth to be the length of a lance, that an enemy may not be able to scale it, and that the land be completely surrounded by a palisade of sharp stakes, and that the fort of São Antonio be repaired on the south-western side and artillery be placed on it to defend the entrance of the port on that side, and that a sufficient number of soldiers be sent there for its defence. And because in former times, when the need for it was

less urgent, it was customary to station at the said fortress a fleet of several small vessels for the safeguarding of the coast, which have been gradually removed, and at present as it is most important to prevent the rebels from obtaining water, wood, and ordinary provisions there, for this purpose it will be advantageous that this fleet be formed again. By reason of the importance of this matter, I will refrain from recommending it to you further, knowing the zeal and diligence you have always shown in my service. You will employ the same zeal for the preservation of the fortress of Sofala, which if it requires to be better fortified than it at present is, you will give orders for this to be executed, and you will send me with all dispatch a plan of the island, its fortifications, and the surrounding places. I fully approve of the enquiry which you tell me you ordered to be made as regards the captain of the said fortress. I recommend you to punish him if you find him guilty in any way, and it is just that Sebastião de Macedo shall pay the money he took from my treasury to construct the galliot which you tell me he sent to Cuama, under pretext of assisting Lourenço de Brito, but really for the safeguard of his goods, and which being too heavily laden sank; you shall make him pay the cost of this.

18th January 1607.

---

Viso Rey, &c. \* \* \* \* \*

E que procureis tambem acodir a fortaleza de Sofalla (pois esta no Estado que me dizeis) assim no que houver mister para Seu reparo, Como em se lhe prover o necessario para Sua defençaõ.

E porque eu tenho entendido que as mais fortalezas desse Estado tem necessidade a se repararem mormente agora que os Rebeldes continuaõ tanto nessas partes vos encomendo e encarrego muito que vos informeis muy particularmente do Estado em que todas estaõ assim no tocante a fortificaçaõ Como aos prezidios, e lhes façaes acodir em tudo o que for necessario.

E para se tomar rezidencia a Sebastião de Macedo enviareis a Mossambique hum Dezembargador da intereza e Confiança que levará particularm<sup>te</sup> a cargo saber, e averigoar se teve elle

culpa no mau provimento daquella fortaleza, e nas prezas que ali fizeraõ os Rebeldes. Escrita em Madrid a vinte e sete de Janeiro de 1607.

REY.

HENRIQUE DE SOUZA.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Viceroy, &c. \* \* \* \* \*

And that you also take measures for assisting the fortress of Sofala (since its condition is such as you describe) both as regards the necessary repairs to it, and providing it with the means of defence.

And, because I am informed that the remaining fortresses of that State are all in need of repair, especially at present while the rebels remain in those parts, I earnestly recommend and charge you to obtain detailed information of the state in which all are, both as regards their fortification and their garrisons, and that you render them in all things the assistance they require.

And as to drawing up a report on the conduct of Sebastião de Macedo during his term of office, you shall send to Mozambique a judge, upright and reliable, who will make it his special care to ascertain whether he was to blame as regards the destitution of that fortress and the prizes which the rebels made there.

Written in Madrid, 27th of January 1607.

THE KING.

HENRIQUE DE SOUZA.

---

V. Rei amigo eu El Rei vos envio muito saudar. A necessidade em q̃ estaõ algumas Fortalezas desse Estado de se fortificarem, e dano, que lhe pode resultar em se lhe naõ acodir, e a outras Couzas de igual importancia, me move a vos advertir do que Sobre ellas por minhas Cartas de 18 e 27 de Janeiro de 607 mandei escrever ao V. Rei Dom Martim de Castro encomendando lhe que tivesse muita vizilancia, e Cuidado na guarda das Fortalezas desse Estado, e em Seu reparo, e provi-



mento tratando esta materia Com muita applicaçõ mandando tomar mui particulares informaçoens do Estado, em que todas estaõ, ordenado, que estejaõ providas de todo o necessario, e que aos Capitaens de Cada hũa dellas fizesse todas as lembranças necessarias para estarem tam a ponto, e vigilantes Como se Cada hora esperassem Ser Cometidos dos Inimigos tendo o numero dos homens a ellas ordenados, fazendo guardar as provizoens, que Sobre isso mandei passar. E que a importancia da Fortaleza de Monçabique obrigaua a se tratar de sua guarda, e defençaõ Com muito Cuidado, e porque pello regim<sup>to</sup> della lhes eraõ ordenados cem homẽs Somente mandei que se lhe acrecentasso mais Cincoenta para que tenha Cento e Sincoenta a fora os mor<sup>es</sup> da terra, e que para esta gente se tenha a Fortaleza tambem prouida de mantimentos que por falta delles lhe naõ falte nunca o ditto numero, antes estiuessse tudo tam avengejado, que possaõ Sustentar qualquer Cerco se se offerecer, pondose nella quatro esperas de alcance Com que possaõ deffender a entrada do ditto Porto, e uarejar ate a Ilha de Saõ Jorge fazendo se tambem no redor da Fortaleza huma Caua de altura de huma lança e outra de largo e se cerque a Ilha de pao a Pique obrigando aos moradores ao fazerem Cõ seus escravos, Com os quaes (auendo esta Cerca em Cuzo que os Inimigos dezembarkvem) se podera defender a entrada, e que o Forte de Santo Antonio se reforme, e ponha nelle gente, e artellaria que baste a defender a entrada do porto por aquella parte e q̃ se torne a fazer a armada de fustas, que antigamente se Custumava para defender aos Rebeldes as Commodidades, que podem ter de agoa, mantimentos, e lenha inuiando-se a prouimento necessario de Polvora e moniçoens para sua defençaõ, e no Regimento do Capitaõ mor e Capitaens das Naos, que o anno passado foraõ para essas partes, lhes mandei, que passando pella ditta Fortaleza, e entendendo do Capitaõ, que lhe era necessaria gente, lhe deixassem, a que parecesse, que se tinaria das Naos Conforme a que Cada huma levasse. E porque Convem (alem do que minhas Cartas referem) que a Ilha de Saõ Jorge se fortifique na entrada da barra com artellaria, e se faça na Fortaleza de Monçabique hum baluarte rasteiro, que pesque o Rio por quanto os da Fortaleza estaõ muito altos, e aja dos moradores da terra Comp<sup>a</sup> formada Com Cap<sup>m</sup>, e officiaes obrigados Com juramento ao Capitaõ da Fortaleza, e se acabe a cisterno que ten<sup>to</sup> mandado se faça nella,

e se fortifique tambem Soffala com os mais fortes que hã p aquellas paragens, com que a costa fique bem segvra de qualquer accidente que se offerecer vos encomendo, e mando, que Com toda applicaçãõ, que se deve a materias tam importantes, vos disponhais de maneira, que com muita pontualidade as faças executar, e effectuar Sem auer Couza, que vos devirta ao Contrario obrigando ao Cap<sup>m</sup> a rezidir pessoalm<sup>te</sup> na ditta Fortaleza Com toda a gente, que lhe he ordenado sem poder por nenhum Cazo auzentar-se della de dia, nem de noite.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Viceroy, friend. I the king greet you well. As various fortresses of this State need strengthening, the evil which may arise from their being neglected and other reasons of equal importance have moved me to inform you of what in my letters of the 18th and 27th of January 1607 I caused to be written on the matter to the viceroy Dom Martim de Castro, recommending him to give special care and vigilance to the protection of the fortresses of this State, and to their repairing and provisioning, showing great zeal in this matter, and causing detailed reports to be made of the state in which all were, that they might be provided with all necessary supplies, and that the captains of each one of them should receive sufficient warning that they might be as ready and vigilant as if they hourly expected to be attacked by the enemy, that each fortress should have its full complement of men, enforcing the orders which I had caused to be passed in this matter. And that the importance of the fortress of Mozambique demanded that its safety and defence should be considered with special care, and as by its regulations its complement was to be only one hundred men, I ordered that fifty were to be added to the number, that it might contain one hundred and fifty men beside the residents of the place, and that the fortress was to be supplied with provisions for these men, that they might not fail and the said men be in want, but that everything might be so favourable that the fortress would be able to resist any siege if occasion offered, and that four cannon were to be placed on it to defend the entrance to the said port and to cleanse the sea to the

island of St. George, a trench to be also dug round the fortress, the depth and breadth to be the length of a lance, and the island to be encircled with sharp stakes, obliging the residents to employ their slaves in making them, so that with this enclosure entrance could be prevented if the enemy should disembark; and that the fort of Santo Antonio should be repaired and supplied with a garrison and artillery sufficient to defend the entrance to the port on that side, and that the fleet of small vessels which was kept there formerly should be provided again, to prevent the rebels from obtaining water, provisions, and wood which might be found there, and a sufficient supply of powder and ammunition be sent for its defence. In the regulations for the commander-in-chief and the captains of the ships who went to those parts last year I commanded them that on their passing by that fortress and understanding from the captain that he was in want of men, they should leave there a fitting number out of the ships, according to the number that each one carried. And because besides what is contained in my letters it is advisable to fortify with artillery the island of St. George at the entrance of the harbour, and to construct a low bastion to the fortress of Mozambique to command the river, as the ramparts of the fortress are very high, and that a company be formed of the residents of the place with a captain and officers who shall take an oath of obedience to the captain of the fortress, and that the cistern which I have ordered to be made there be finished, and that Sofala and the other fortresses in those parts be also fortified, with which the country will be safe in event of an attack, I recommend and command you that with the zeal which matters of such importance demand you act in such manner that these orders be effected and executed with great dispatch, and that nothing shall prevent you from acting thus; and that you oblige the captains to remain in person in the said fortress, with the full number of men it is ordered to contain, and that they have no authority under any pretext to absent themselves from it day or night.

12th February 1608.

---

Tenho mandado por Provizão do derradeiro de Março de 93 que se abrissem os Registos das minas de Çofalla mandei por

outra de sete de Março de 95, que se tornassem a Cerrar, e Corresse o trato delles na forma, que dantes, e se Contratassem Com os Capitaens de Monçabique pagando a Sua Custa as ordinarias, e dando a minha Fazenda o que fosse justo, e hora sou informado, que por vertude da ditto Prouizaõ e Com parecer dos officiaes da Fazenda se assentou que dessem os dittos Capitaens quarenta mil pardaos Cada anno e por se auer que as dittas minas estariaõ estragadas pella Liberdade passada se mandou, que Nuno da Cunha, com quem se contratou pagasse no primeiro anno vinte mil pardaos Somente a respeito de estarem as dittas minas menos Cabadas, e aos Capitaens, que depois Succederaõ se Concedeo o mesmo Sem nunca aver o ditto Respeito antes as minas Cada vez daõ mais de Si arrendandose nos outros tempos, em que auia menos Conhecimento dellas por Sincoenta mil Cruzados, e porque naõ ha razaõ para os Capitaens, a que se Contratarãõ pagarem menos dos dittos quarenta mil x<sup>a</sup> por os V. Reis naõ poderem dar nem quittaa o que menos deixaraõ de pagar Sem meu Concontentamento. Vos encomendo que ordeneis Como se areçade dos Capitaens, que ate agora foraõ os vinte mil x<sup>a</sup>, que faltaõ para Comprimento dos quarenta mil, que eraõ obrigados pagar Cada anno Conforme os assento, que se tomou Sobre isso em tempo do V. Rei Mathias de Albuquerque, os quaes lhe pediraõ juridicamente Sendo para isso Citados, e demandados pello meu Procurador da Fazenda para o que lhe mandarei passar Prouizaõ.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

By an order of the last day of March 1593 I commanded the trade of the mines of Sofala to be opened, and by another of the 7th of March 1595 I gave order that this trade should be closed again and carried on as it had been formerly, and that contracts should be made with the captains of Mozambique that the latter should pay the ordinary expenses and also pay to my treasury what is just; and at present I am informed that by virtue of the said order, and according to the opinion of the officials of the treasury, it was agreed that the said captains should pay forty thousand pardaos per annum, and that as the said mines would be impoverished by the past license order was given that Nuno da Cunha, with whom a contract was signed, should pay twenty

thousand pardaos only for the first year, because the said mines were considered to be of less value, and the same concession was made to the captains who succeeded him, although the cause for which it was granted never existed, but the mines constantly yielded more, and in past years when they were less known they were leased at fifty thousand cruzados; and as there is no reason why the captains who hold contracts should pay less than the said forty thousand cruzados, as the viceroys cannot without my consent either give or take from them what they have paid less, I instruct you to give order that the twenty thousand cruzados which are wanting to make up the forty thousand that, according to the contracts made in the time of the viceroy Matthias de Albuquerque they were to pay every year, be recovered from the said captains, which sum shall be legally demanded of them, they being summoned for the purpose and sued by my treasurer, for which you will give order accordingly.

23rd February 1608.

---

Eu El Rey faço saber a vos Dom Joaõ Froyas Pereira Conde da Feira meu V. Rey da India, que sendo eu informado da grandeza, e Requeiza das minas do ouro e prata dos Reynos de Manomathapa de que se teve noticia desdo principio do descubrimto da India, e de quam dezeiada, e procurada foi dos Senhores Reis deste Reyno meus predecessores a Conquista, e descobrimto dellas, o que em Seu tempo se não pode alcançar por as muitas difficuldades, que entaõ se offereceraõ nẽ se ter bastante noticia da terra e estar ella muy occupada de mouros que faziaõ grande impedimento ao Comercio dos Portuguezes, as quaes hoie Ce não por Serem os Mouros todos acabados naquellas partes, e os Portuguezes terem entiado muito pella terra dentro, e Serem nella bem recibidos dos naturaes, e terem Com elles Continvos Comercios, e o Rey de Manamotapa estar hoje muito enfraquecido, e Com outros Reis Seus vezinhos, e vassalos alevantados, e dezejar muito a Communicaçã e favor dos Portuguezes, e pedillo por seus embaxadores offerecendo por isso as minas da prata, que estaõ em suas terras, Pello que fica este descobrimto, e Conquista hoje muito facelitada e os meus V. Reis da India de annos a esta parte me fazerem muitas e

Continvas Lembranças sobre esta empreza, e vltimamente os Capitaens de Monçabique Sebastião de Macedo, e Dom Estevaõ de Attaide me mandarem particulares Rellaçoens da facilidade Com que se poderia chegar as dittas minas enuiando me juntamente mostras de pedras, que nellas se Cortaraõ de tanta riqueza, q̄ fazendo se neste Reyno ensayo, se achou Render as duas partes de pratta, por todas as quaes Razoens e Sobre todas pella muita occasiaõ, que por esta via se abrira a Converçaõ daquella gentildade, que se mostra bem inclinada as Couzas de nossa Sancta fée e a aceita com boa vontade, me pareceo devia mandar tratar desta empreza, e pola em execuçaõ Sem mais dillaçaõ.

Ey por bem de vola Cometer p<sup>a</sup> que ordeneis Como se faça o mais de pressa, q̄ poder ser, e escolhereis para general de la dos dittos Sebastião de Macedo, e Dom Estevaõ de Attaide, qual vos parecer, e havendo elles faltado deitareis maõ de outra pessoa que tiverdes por mais a propozito p<sup>a</sup> este Cargo.

Para prevenir as Couzas necessarias para a ditto empreza Levareis os trinta mil Cruzados, que tenho ordenado, e alem disso provereis tudo, o que mais Cumprir, e vos mando, que quando ora passardes procureis de tomar o Porto de Monçabique. Com tanto, que naõ arisqueis por isso fazer vossa viagem para a India onde he o principal intento, e no tempo, que estiverdes naquella Fortaleza de Monçabique (que naõ Sera mais que o necessario para naõ perderdes a viagem). Vereis o Estado da Fortaleza, e fortificaçaõ della, e de toda a Ilha: porque tenho entendido, que tem necessidade de algũa reformaçaõ, por ficar a entrada da barra muito perto da Rocha, em que esta Fortaleza esta fundada, e ficar a Artelharia m<sup>o</sup> a caualr<sup>o</sup> naõ pode ser de effeito com se vio na occasiaõ passada em que os olandezes ahy foraõ e para remediar isto se aponta que sera necessario fazer dous balvartes rasteiros por baxo dos, que Já entaõ feitos, pondo-se em cada hum quatro peças de artelharia: Pello que vos encomendo vejais isto como engenheiro, que levais, e achando q̄ o Citio do Lugar asé fazerem, e saõ taõ necessario como me escrevem, os mandeis logo fazer na forma, que puderem ser de mais effeito para defender a enciada da barra, e paraia da Ilha, e o desembarcar do ouro nella e porque Ja Sobre esta materia tenho escripto ao V. Rey Dom Martim Affonço de Castro espero acheis nisso algũa prevençaõ Com que brevemente se possa por em

execuçãõ: e para o que se não puder effectuar no tempo, que ahy estiverdes deixareis ordem para que se faça.

E assim Ey por bem e Vos mando, que deixeis esta Fortaleza provida de gente e fiquem nella ao menos Cento e Sincoenta soldados a fora os mor<sup>es</sup> da terra Como tenho ordenado por minhas Cartas nas Vias do anno passado, e assim mais seis bombard<sup>es</sup> Com hum Condestabre e o almozê della provido de mosquetes, Lanças, polvora, e mais moniçoens necessarias a Sua defençãõ em abastança por ter informaçaõ, que de tudo esta muito falta.

E porque tambem tenho entendido que os Inimigos podem surgir junto a Ilha de S. Jorge, e dahy mandar Lanchas, e outros Navios pequenos entrar na barra pella banda do Sueste, e por minhas Cartas, que foraõ nas Vias do anno passado tenho ordenado, que na Fortaleza se ponhaõ quatro esperas de alcance que possaõ defender a entrada do Porto, e variar athe a ditta Ilha, e que a Forte de Santo Antonio se reforme ao Sudueste e ponha nelle artelheria, que defenda a ensiada do porto por aquella parte e asistaõ nelle de guarda os Soldados, que parecerem necessarios para se impedir ao inimigo surgir na ditta Ilha, e que a Fortaleza se faça huma Caua derredor de huma Lança de alto, e outra de Largo, e que se cerque de pao a pique não estando feitas as dittas Couzas ordenareis que se façãõ.

E assim tenho entendido por Cartas do V. Rey Dom Martim Affonço de Castro, e dos Capitaens de Monçabique, que a Fortaleza de Çofala esta mui desprovida, e sem prezidio, nem moniçoens e exposta a poder ser occupada dos Inimigos, que Já ali foraõ, e frequentar muito toda aquella Costa, o que he de tam grande periuizo Como podeis entender vos encomendo, que antes de passardes avante de Monçabique a mandeis prover assim da gente de prezidio Como de moniçoens, e tendo necessidade de algum reparo na fabrica, e fortificaçaõ o mandareis tambem fazer a Custa de hum por Cento, ou da pençaõ dos Capitaens de Monçabique. E o mesmo se fara nos Fortes de Sena e Tete para Continuaçaõ do Comercio, e resgates e per serem necessarios para a Conquista, e beneficio das minas da prata deixando ordem para se fazer nos dittos Fortes as Couzas, que se não poderem fazer no tempo, que ahy vos detiverdes.

A continuaçaõ dos Rebeldes por toda esta Costa de Monçabique e Çofala obriga a se por nella mais guarda do que ate gora

ouve, e tendo se me proposto, que para isso seria necessario ordenarem se quatro, ou seis fustas como Ia ouve em Moçambique para que correndo a Costa ao Longo da terra lhe não deixarem chegar suas Lanchas a fazer agoada nem a tomar os provimentos necessarios, e porque me parece bem fazer se assim dareis nisto a ordem, que vos parecer mais Conviniente tomando o parecer do Capitaõ da Fortaleza, e dos mais, que vos parecer, que Convem e que em Moçambique aja hũ pangaio desembarcado, e armado a Custa do Capitaõ Como me dizem Custumaua aver para ir reconhecer as Naos, que apparecerẽ e se fizerem as prevençoens necessarias.

E tomareis informaçoens dos moradores da terra, e assim dos mouros, que Custumãõ dar provimentos, e ter Comercio Cõ os Rebeldes para se Castigarem, e se atalhar fazerẽ no daquy por diante.

Nas informaçoens que este anno tive do Capitam de Moçambique Dom Estevaõ de Attaide sobre o modo, em que se ha de fazer a ditta Conquista das minas da prata se aponta ser necessario fazerem se quatro Fortes por Cima dos que iã tenho de Sena, e Tete ao Longo do Rio 1º o primº Junto ao penedo, que impede a navegaçaõ do Rio, que sera distante de pouoçaõ de Tete trinta legoas, que saõ navegaveis em almadias, ou fustas Lizeiras, que nelle se ponhaõ de prezidio sincoenta soldados com que ficara senhoriando todo o Contorno das minas da prata.

O Segundo Forte no lugar, e feira de Mesapa onde rezide o Capitaõ das portas, e em que Já ha Igreja, que por estar perto da terra de feira Concorre a ella muita Cantidade de ouro, e se lhe pora outro prezidio de soldados Com que ficara bem defensavel podendo facilmente ser socorrido da nossa povoaçãõ de Tete, e dos mais fortes.

E o terceiro Forte se ha de fazer em outro Lugar e feira chamada Bocuto ao longo do Rio manzouo, e da outra parte delle entre outro, que se chama Inhadire e dista corenta legoas de Tete, e dez legoas a trauez de Massapa.

O quarto Forte apontaõ dever se fazer em outro lugar e feira chamado luanze entre o Rio Inhadire, e outro braço por nome Aruenha, que distaõ de Tete trinta e Sinco Legoas, e treze da feira de Bocuto.

Sobre a fabrica dos quaes Fortes tomareis as mais informaçoens, que vos parecerẽ necessarias para Com ellas se dar principio



a esta empreza, e porque podendo se fazer pacificamente e por Concontentim<sup>to</sup> do Rei sera melhor para se escuzarem os gastos e danos, que a guerra tras Consigo, e o ditto Rei por seus embaxadores offereceo Já estas minas dando se lhe ajuda Contra Seus inimigos Levantados, e por estar ao presente mui fraco de forças e desobedecido se entende, que vira facilmente nisto deveis de o tentar pelos meus que vos parecerem mais Convenientes, e dando se lhe a entender que se não pretende tomar lhe a terra nem o Senhorio della nem encontrar lhe seus pastos e Lauroras, que he o de que viuem, e estimaõ sobre tudo, mas somente os metais, de que não fazem Conta nem Consistem nelle suas riquezas e mandando lhe alguns presentes de ropas e outras Couzas, que estimaõ, se procurara persuadilos a deixar Cauzar e beneficiar as dittas minas.

Ey por bem, e mando, que tanto que a ditto Conquista se Começar não aia em Moçabique mais Capitaõ, que o general da Conquista, e que o Capitaõ, que nesse tempo estiver seruido seja logo tirado em qualquer Estado, que nella estiver. E quando o ditto general for pella terra dentro deixara na ditto Fortaleza pessoa que a defenda ficando lhe Subordinada, o qual Sera das partes e calidades, que Convem.

OutroSi ey por bem, que os Rendimentos da ditto Fortaleza e resgates Corraõ por Conta de minha Fazenda pellos ministros, que para isso ordenareis, a que dareis Regimento, e ordem da forma em que haõ de proceder e a administração della ficara ao ditto General para as despezas e gastos da ditto Conquista.

E porque Sendo os Capitaens da Fortaleza de Moçabique providos da ditto Capitania em Satisfação de Seruiços não he justo deixem de haver dos proveytos della me enviareis nas primeiras naos vossa informação de Como tem que Conformar se poderaõ Satisfazer os dittos Capitaens, tendo Consideração assim ao tempo da intrancia de Cada hum Como ao que tiver Servido, o que se tirar ao tempo, que se Começar a ditto Conquista, o qual se não deixara de fazer por esse Respeito tirando ao ditto Capitaõ que estiver servindo em qualquer Estado que estiver tanto que a Conquista se Começar e tendo o ditto Capitaõ a esse tempo algumas Roupas, e mercadorias se lhe poderaõ tomar por preços acomodados para beneficio da Conquista, e o ditto Capitaõ não ficar perdendo das dittas roupas, e mercadorias.

Este Regimento pela maneira atras declarada Cumprireis e fareis inteiramente Comprir, e guardar Como se nelle Conthem, e valera Como Carta, e não passara pella Chr<sup>a</sup> Sem embargo das ordenaçoes do 2<sup>o</sup> Livro tt<sup>os</sup> 39 e 40 em Contrario. Antonio Correa a fez em Lisboa a vinte e hum de Março de mil seis Centos, e oito e eu o Secretario Antonio viles de limas a fiz escrever.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

I the king make known to you Dom João Froyas Pereira, Count of Feira, my viceroy of India, that being aware of the importance and riches of the gold and silver mines of the kingdom of Monomotapa, of which we have had information since the first discoveries in India, and how greatly their conquest and exploration was desired and sought by their Majesties my predecessors in this kingdom, which in their time could not be undertaken on account of the great difficulties to be then encountered, as the land was not sufficiently known and was largely populated by Moors who greatly impeded the Portuguese commerce, which difficulties are not felt at the present, as the Moors have all disappeared in those parts, and the Portuguese have penetrated far into the interior, where they are well received by the natives and carry on with them a constant trade, and the king of Monomotapa is at present very weak, at war with other neighbouring kings and rebel vassals, and greatly desires the intercourse and favour of the Portuguese, for which he has petitioned by his ambassadors, offering in return the silver mines of his territory; for which reasons, at the present day this discovery and conquest is greatly facilitated, and my viceroys of India for many years past have sent me many and continuous memorials concerning this enterprise, and recently the captains of Mozambique, Sebastião de Macedo and Dom Estevão de Ataide, have sent me private accounts of the facility with which these mines can be secured, forwarding to me at the same time specimens of stones taken from them of such rich quality that, on an assay being made in this kingdom, they were found to yield two parts of silver, for all of which reasons, and above all because by this means a way will be opened for the conversion of those heathen, who show themselves well disposed to our holy faith and accept it with good will, I think

fit to order that this enterprise be taken in hand and put into execution without further delay.

I think fit to entrust this to you, that you may make such arrangements that it be put into execution with the greatest possible dispatch, and you shall select as commander of the enterprise the said Sebastião de Macedo or Dom Estevão de Ataide as you think fit, and in default of these any other person whom you shall consider most competent for this office.

To provide the necessary supplies for the said enterprise, you shall raise the thirty thousand cruzados for which I have already given orders, besides which you shall provide all that is further needed. I command you that when proceeding to India you shall endeavour to put into the port of Mozambique, provided that by so doing you do not risk being unable to complete the passage to India, which is your principal destination. While you are in the fortress of Mozambique, which shall be only such time as shall not prevent you from continuing the journey, you shall inspect the condition of the fortress and its fortifications, and of all the island, as I gather that certain alterations are needed, as the entrance to the harbour is very near the rock on which this fortress is built, and the artillery being raised too high, its fire has no effect, as was seen on the last occasion when the Dutch went to that place. To remedy this it has been pointed out that it will be necessary to construct two low bastions beneath those already made, and to place four pieces of artillery on each. For which reason I command you to inspect this with an engineer whom you shall take with you, and on finding that the site is suitable and that they are as necessary as I am told, you shall give orders forthwith to construct them in the manner best calculated to be of use in defending the entrance to the harbour, the shore of the island, and the landing of the gold there, as I have already written to the viceroy Dom Martim Affonso de Castro on this matter. I trust that you will discover some plan which may be briefly carried out, and as to that which cannot be accomplished while you are there you shall leave orders for its execution.

I also think fit and command that you leave this fortress garrisoned with at least one hundred and fifty soldiers besides the inhabitants of the place, as I have ordered in my letters sent during the course of last year, and also six bombardiers and an

officer in command; and its arsenal is to be supplied with a sufficient quantity of muskets, lances, powder, and other necessary ammunition, as I am informed that it is in great need of all these things.

And because I am further informed that the enemy may anchor close to the island of St. George, and thence send boats and other small craft into the harbour on the south-eastern side, as I have ordered in my letters sent during the course of last year, four large cannon are to be placed on the fortress, whose fire may command the entrance to the port and cleanse the sea to the said island, and the fort of Santo Antonio is to be repaired on the south-eastern side and artillery placed on it, to protect the port on that side; and a sufficient garrison is to be sent there to prevent the enemy from anchoring near the said island. A trench is to be dug round the fortress, the depth and breadth to be the length of a lance, and the fortress is to be surrounded by a palisade of sharp stakes. If these works have not already been completed you will give orders for them to be carried out.

I also learn from the letters of the viceroy Dom Martim Affonso de Castro and from the captains of Mozambique that the fortress of Sofala is in great destitution, without garrison or ammunition, and exposed to the danger of being occupied by the enemy, who have already been there and much frequent all that coast, which is of great prejudice, as you may well see. I recommend to you that before you proceed farther than Mozambique you give orders for it to be furnished with soldiers to form a garrison, and with ammunition, and if it is in need of any repairs in the building and fortifications, you shall give orders also for these to be carried out, levying one per cent for the purpose, or at the cost of the captains of Mozambique.

The same shall be done as regards the forts of Sena and Tete, for the continuation of the commerce and trading and because they are necessary for the conquest and working of the silver mines; and you shall leave orders for the carrying out of those works which cannot be accomplished during the time you are there.

The continual presence of the rebels all along the coast of Mozambique and Sofala demands that it be better defended than hitherto. This being so, suggestion was made to me that to this

end it would be necessary to give orders for four or six small vessels to be stationed at Mozambique, as they were formerly, that by cruising along the coast they may prevent the enemies' boats from coming there to water and obtain the necessary provisions; and as I think fit that this should be done, you shall give the orders which appear to you most proper, consulting with the captain of the fortress and others as you think fit; and that a pangayo be stationed at Mozambique, equipped and armed at the cost of the captain, which I am told was customary, to reconnoitre ships which are sighted, that the necessary precautions may be taken.

You shall obtain information from the inhabitants of the country and also from the Moors as to the persons who usually supply provisions and hold commerce with the rebels, in order to inflict punishment upon them, and to put a stop to this for the future.

In the reports which I have this year received from Dom Estevão de Ataide, captain of Mozambique, concerning the manner in which the conquest of the silver mines should be carried out, it is stated that it will be necessary to build four forts besides those of Sena and Tete on the banks of the river, which I possess already: The first to be built close to the rock which impedes the navigation of the river at a distance of thirty leagues from the town of Tete, to which distance the river is navigable in canoes or light pinnaces; and a garrison of fifty soldiers be provided for it, by which means it will subject all the country around the silver mines.

The second fort to be built at the place where the fair of Masapa is held, where the captain of the ports resides, and where there is already a church, to which place a great quantity of gold is sent, as it is close to the territory that maintains the fair. This fort to be provided with another garrison of soldiers, by which means it will be well protected, assistance being easily sent to it from our town of Tete and the other forts.

The third fort to be built in another place where a fair is held, called Bocuto, on the banks of the river Manzovo, where this river is joined by a stream called Inhadire, forty leagues distant from Tete, and ten leagues across from Masapa.

The fourth fort, it is stated, should be built at another place of a fair, called Luanze, between the river Inhadire and a tributary

of it called Aruenha, thirty-five leagues distant from Tete, and thirteen from Bocuto.

As regards the construction of which forts you shall obtain all the further information that you think fit, that by means of it this enterprise may be commenced, and as it can be peaceably carried out with the concurrence of the king, it will be best to do so, that the expense and evils of war may be avoided. The said king has already offered these mines by his ambassadors, in return for assistance against his rebellious enemies, and as his forces are much enfeebled and his orders disobeyed, it is understood that he will readily agree to this. You must therefore use the means you think most fitting for this purpose, and explain to him that we do not propose to take his country, or the government of it, or to oppose him in the possession of his pastures and cultivated lands, which are his means of subsistence and which he values above all things, but that we only desire the metals which he holds of no account, and which do not constitute his riches, and by sending him various presents of cloth and other goods which he values, he will be persuaded to allow the mines to be worked.

I think fit and order that while this conquest is being carried out there shall be no other commander in Mozambique than the general of the conquest, and that the captain who is in command at the present time be forthwith withdrawn, no matter what position he holds there. And that when the said general goes into the interior, he shall leave in the said fortress some person to defend it, who shall be subordinate to him, and shall possess proper qualifications and ability.

I am further pleased that the profits of the said fortress and of the trade shall be paid to my treasury by the officials whom you shall appoint, to whom you will give regulations and orders as to how they are to act, and the administration of it is to be committed to the said general to defray the expenses and costs of the said conquest.

As the successors to the captaincy of the fortress of Mozambique are appointed to this office as a reward for their services, it is not just that they should be deprived of the profits of it. You shall therefore send me with the first ships your report of what you consider should be done to satisfy the claims of the said captains, having regard both to the time of each one's entry

upon office and to the services he has rendered, which report shall be drawn up at the time when the said conquest is commenced and shall not be neglected on this account; but the captain who is then in office is to be withdrawn, whatever position he holds, as soon as the conquest is begun. If the said captain is at that time in possession of any cloth or merchandise, the same may be bought from him at a moderate rate for the benefit of the conquest, that the said captain may not lose the said cloth and merchandise.

This order you shall carry out, and strictly enforce in the manner aforesaid, according to the instructions given therein, and it shall be as binding as a letter, and shall not pass through the chancellor, notwithstanding the decrees to the contrary in book 2nd, chapters 39 & 40.

Drawn up by Antonio Correa, in Lisbon, the 21st of March 1608. The Secretary Antonio Viles de Limas caused it to be written.

---

Tenho informaçã, que nos Rios de Cuama, e fortes delles se Cometem alguãs desordens nas fazendas dos defunctos, q̄ morrem naquellas partes por os Capitaẽs naõ proverem os Cargos de juizes dos orfaõs, e provedores dos defuntos em pessoas de qualidades, q̄ Convem, e Com as Seguranças necessarias para boa guarda dellas na forma dos Regimentos. Pello q̄ vos encomendo, e mando encarregueis ao provedor mor dos defuntos, que tome disto informaçã, e achando, que ha alguns abuzos ordeneis, que se remedem, e me enviareis informaçã, do que nisto achardes Com vosso parecer.

*[English translation of the foregoing.]*

I am informed that in the rivers of Cuama and the forts there, there are abuses as regards the property of deceased persons who die in those parts, because the captains do not take care that the posts of guardians of orphans and executors of the property of deceased people are filled by persons possessing the necessary qualifications and offering sufficient security for their trust, according to the regulations. For which reason I recommend and command you to charge the chief administrator of the

property of the dead to draw up a report on the matter, and if you find there are abuses you shall give order to provide a remedy; and you shall send me an account of your enquiry, with your opinion on the matter.

24th March 1608.

---

Tive informação do bom procedimento que frey Antonio de Sig<sup>ra</sup> Vigario geral da ordem de Saõ Domingos tem nas materias de sua obrigação, pelo que lhe mando agradecer por minha carta, encommendando lhe se entretenha mais algum tempo a essas partes, e para que com mais vontade o faça vos encomendo o favoreçais, e as christandades que estão a conta de sua relligiaõ, e procurais com o Arcebispo Primas satisfazello como que tenho mand<sup>o</sup> ordenar sobre se não tirarem as Igrejas a huns Relligiozos para se darem a outros por se queixar que se lhe tem tomado algumas Igrejas, e dado hum religiozo de Santo Agostinho naõ se tendo bulido com os da companhia.

Com estas vias vos mando enviar tres cartas patentes de Irmandade por vias para o Emperador Manomotapa, e porque naõ houve Lugar para hirẽ selladas com seo Sello ordenareis que naõ se lhe haver de enviar se ponha la hum de prata pendente com minhas Armas com que se lhe enviara, e com huma bandeira, e presente com a carta que lhe escrevo.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

I am informed of the good conduct which Friar Antonio de Siqueira, vicar general of the Dominicans, has shown in the matters under his care, for which by my letter I order thanks to be given to him, recommending him to remain some further time in those parts; and that he may more willingly do so I charge you to show favour to him and to the Christian settlements under the care of his order, and in concurrence with the archbishop primate to endeavour to satisfy him (for which I have already given order) as regards taking churches from one order to give them to others, as he complains that various churches have been taken from him and given to a religious of St. Augustine, there being no quarrel with the Company of Jesus.



By this opportunity I have given order for three letters patent of brotherhood to be sent to you for the emperor of Monomotapa, and as there was no place to seal them with his seal, you will give order for a dependent seal of silver with my arms to be affixed to the one which is to be sent to him, upon which it can be remitted to him, with a banner, a present, and also the letter which I write to him.

29th March 1609.

---

E porque os ditos relligiozos da ordem de Saõ Domingos ha muitos annos que continuão nas Christandades dos rios de Cuama com tantas enfermidades e trabalhos procedendo sempre com muita satisfaçãõ sem serem ajudados, nem haver outros que quizesse passar a ellas, e fazendo o ora como me avizais e o dito Frey Antonio de Segueira lembrou de mais de se dar com isso cauza de justa queixa aos ditos relligiozos o receberem nisso agrauo sem constar dezmeritos ou faltas que tivesem seria ocaziaõ de inconvenientes e discençoens que rezultariaõ sem prejuizo da Christandade e para que ella va por diante, e elles se animem mais a trabalharem em seu acresentamento. Hey por bem, e mando que ás ditas Christandades se naõ enviem outros relligiozos, e que outros quaisquer que a ellas hajaõ hido de qualquer ordem se tornem para suas relligioens, e vos encomendo que assim o façais executar, e que o Proviñcial da ordem de Saõ Domingos envie aquellas partes todos os que de presente forem nescsarios e que vos e o Arcebispo Primas lhe ordenardes e quando aquella conquista se dilate tanto que os ditos relligiozos naõ possaõ acudir a tudo entãõ se poderaõ enviar outros.

*[English translation of the foregoing.]*

And because the said religious of the order of St. Dominic have been engaged for many years in the Christian missions of the rivers of Cuama, enduring much sickness and trouble, and always giving satisfaction, without receiving any assistance, and without any others being found willing to go there, and are doing so still, as I am informed by you, and the said Friar Antonio de Segueira has represented [that the intrusion of other

orders] would give the said religious just cause of complaint and they would be injured thereby, and that further, notwithstanding such faults or demerits as they may have had, it would occasion inconvenience & dissension in the missions; therefore to avoid prejudice to Christianity, that it may make progress, and they may be encouraged to labour in spreading it, I think fit and command that no other religious be sent to the said missions, and that any others who have gone there from any other order shall return to their convents. I charge you to cause these instructions to be executed, and that the provincial of the order of St. Dominic send to those parts all those who are necessary for the present, and that you and the archbishop primate make the necessary regulations, and when the conquest is so extended that the said religious cannot suffice others may be sent.

23rd January 1610.

---

As trintas pipas de uinho que por outra minha Carta que uai nestas uias uos diguo que mando enuiar para beneficio da Conquista das minas de manamotapa vaõ quinze dellas na Capitania e outras quinze na nao Santa Elena entregues aos mestres dellas com ordem as entreguem monçambique para o dito effeito e a mesma ordem para entregar bejos do uinho e azeite por ser mais o que se embarqua por Conta de minha fazenda do que necessario para a gente que uai e que naõ tomando aquelle porto se entregue ao uedor da fazenda de guoa de que se faraõ asentos nos Liuros dos despenceiras conforme a isto ordenareis se Saiba como se faz esta entrega e que se passem della conhecimentos em forma e me auizeis disto e o mesmo mando escreuer ao Capitaõ de Monçambique e general da dita Conquista e que nos auizem do que se lhe entregar, Entreguandose estas couzas ao veedor da fazenda de guoa Como ordeno naõ tomando as naos Monçambique ordeneis se enuiem com toda a breuidade ao dito general para o effeito para que lhas mando a elle nesta Comformidade.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

In another letter sent by this opportunity I inform you that I have ordered thirty pipes of wine to be sent for the benefit of the expedition for the conquest of the mines of Monomotapa;

fifteen pipes are sent in the flagship and the other fifteen in the ship *Santa Elena*, entrusted to the masters with an order to deliver them at Mozambique for this purpose, and a similar order to deliver bejos of wine and oil, as the quantity embarked at the expense of my treasury is more than is requisite for the men who are going. If the ships do not put into that port, they are to deliver them to the overseer of my treasury at Goa, which delivery shall be entered in the books of the dispensers, and in accordance with this you shall give order to notify if this delivery is effected, and that a formal acknowledgment of it be made, and you will advise me thereof. I have given order to write to the captain of Mozambique and the general of the said conquest that they shall inform you of what is delivered to them. If these goods are delivered to the overseer of my treasury at Goa, for which I have given instructions, if the ships do not put into Mozambique, you shall order them to be sent to the said general for the purpose for which they are forwarded to him, in accordance with the present order.

10th March 1610.

---

Tambem se me representou que não podendo as naos por alguma occasião tomar o porto de Monçambique hindo este Reino ou vindo para elle o poderiaõ tomar na Ilha de Bazaruto que esta junto a Sofala oito leguoas pouco mais ou menos para a banda de sul o qual he muito capaz de se ajuntarem alli as naos e facerem agnoada e refresco por ser terra passifica e sogeita a fortaleza de Sofala e posto que tenho informaçãõ que na parte onde se diz estar a dita Ilha Cortem digo Correm as agoas muito e alem do procel de Sofala que he muito perigozo ha outros em que se corre o mesmo perigo para hauer inteira noticia disto mando escrever ao Capitaõ de monçambique mandar panguaio tomar informaçãõ daquella ilha e porto e saber as comodidades que nella ha e uos a tomarias tambem de Alguãs pessoas praticas daquellas partes e me auizareis do que achardes.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

I have also been informed that the ships in coming to and going from this kingdom cannot always put into the port of Mozam-

bique, and that they might anchor at the island of Bazaruto, which is close to Sofala, about eight leagues more or less to the south, which port is very convenient for collecting the ships together and procuring water and refreshments, as the land is peaceable and subject to the fortress of Sofala; and as I am informed that in the place where the aforesaid island is said to be situated the currents are very strong, and that besides the shoal of Sofala, which is very dangerous, there are others equally so, that I may have full particulars of this I have given orders for the captain of Mozambique to be instructed to send a pangayo to make a report upon the island and port and of the articles to be found there, and you shall obtain similar information from various persons having experience of those parts, and shall advise me of the result of your enquiry.

19th March 1610.

---

Eu El Rey Faço saber aos que este Aluara virem que Sou informado que os Capitaes das fortalezas, e Ministros de minha fazenda e da Justica das partes da India cometem por meyo de Banianes de que servem algumas desordens contra sua obrigaçõ meu Serviço faz<sup>a</sup> e vaçallos, e querendo atalhar a isso como he justo, Hey por bem e mando que do dia da prohibiçã deste nas partes da India em diante os ditos Capitaens, e menistros de minha fazenda, e da justica se naõ Sirvaõ de Banianes nem os consintaõ entrar lhe em suas cazas nem tratem com elles por sy, ou terceiras pessoas sob penna de suspençã de seus cargos athe minha merce e de hauerem as mais pennas de que ouver por bem e que da mesma maneira os Banianes os naõ Servaõ nem lhes entrem em caza, nem tratem com elles por sy ou terceiras pessoas sob penna de serem degradedos para sempre para as gales no qual degado os hey por condenados sem remisaõ assim e da maneira que tenho prohibido aos Dezembargadores e letrados que nas ditas partes me servem servirem se de Banianes e outros gentios, e conforme a mesma provizaõ passada em doze de Dezembro de mil e quinhentos nouenta e hum e com esta declaraçã se cumprira tambem a que mandey passar em 26 de Janeiro de mil quinhentos noventa e oito porque defendo aos Capitaens das fortalezas da India terem feitores da naçã dos Christaons novos, nem gentios e este se publicara em todas as

fortalezas cidades e lugares das ditas partes da India tanto que a ellas chegar e se registara nos livros da Camara e feitorias de que se passaraõ certidoens que me enviaaraõ e mando ao meu visorrey que hora he e ao diante for, ou ao Governador das ditas partes, e a todas minhas justiças officiais e pessoas a que pertencer o cumprimento e guardem e façaõ em todo cumprir e guardar como nelle se conthem sem duvida nem embargo algum, o qual valera como carta, e não passará Chanceleria sem embargo das ordenaçoes de 2º 1º tº 39 e 40 que dispoem o contrario, se registara tambem nos livros da Rellaçaõ de Goa, e da Secretaria, e huma das tres vias por que foy passado se pora na torre de tombo em boa guarda de que assim mesmo se enviara certidaõ por vias Joaõ Tauares o fez em Lxª a 21 de Fevereiro de mil seis centos e onze. Diz o emendado este. Eu o Secretario Antonio viles Deismas o fiz escrever. Rey. Conde Almirante.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

I the king make known to all to whom this order shall come, that I am informed that the captains of the fortresses and ministers of my revenue and of justice in Indian parts commit certain offences contrary to their obligation, and injurious to my service, revenue, and vassals, by means of Banians whom they employ; and wishing to put an end to this, as is just, I think fit and command that from the day of the publication of this order in India the said captains, ministers of my revenue and of justice cease to employ Banians, or to allow them to enter their houses, or have dealings with them personally or through third persons, under penalty of suspension from their offices during my pleasure, and to suffer such further penalties as may be thought proper. And in the same way the Banians shall not serve them, or enter their houses, or deal with them personally, or through third persons, under penalty of being condemned to the galleys for ever, to which punishment they shall be condemned without remission. In the same manner as I have forbidden the judges and magistrates who serve me in the said parts to employ Banians or other heathens, and in conformity with the said order of the 12th of December 1591 and with this declaration, they shall also observe that issued on the 26th of January 1598, by which I forbid the captains of the fortresses of India to employ factors of the nation

of the new Christians, or heathens. This shall be published in all the fortresses, cities, and towns of the said parts of India, as soon as it reaches them, and shall be registered in the books of the council and factories, of which certificates shall be made and sent to me, and I command my present viceroy, and him who may hold that office in future, or the governor of the said parts, and all my magistrates, officers, and persons to whom the carrying out of this order pertains, to observe and cause it to be observed, according to what is contained therein, without any doubt or hindrance whatever, and it shall have the authority of a letter, and shall not pass through the chancellor, notwithstanding the regulations of Book 2, chapters 39 and 40, which command the contrary. It shall also be registered in the books of the supreme court of Goa, and the office of the secretary of state, and one of the triplicates in which it is sent shall be placed among the records in safe keeping, of which a certificate shall be sent. João Tavares drew this up in Lisbon on the 21st of February 1611. This decreed and ordered. I the secretary, Antonio Villes Deismas caused it to be written.

THE KING.

COUNT ADMIRAL.

---

V Rey da India amigo Eu El Rey vos envio muito Saudar fuy informado que nos Estados de olanda e gelanda se aprestavaõ para partir para essas partes da India no mez de Fевейr<sup>o</sup> do anno que vem nove naos por conta de mercadores para tornarem com carga e alem dellas quatro grandes e poderozas com dous mil homens e muitas armas moniçoens e apercebimentos da guerra e com deSenho de andarem as presas em todos os mares dessa oriente ate se satisfazerem de Certas perdas que dizem se lhe haverem dado despois de assentadas as tregoaas que com elles estaõ feitas Pello que e porque podera ser que de mais deste intento tenhaõ outros e tive avizo como na fortaleza de Mossãbique Sendo taõ importante e Requestada delles e tendo eu mandado que haja nella trezentos homens de Presidio havia somente vinte sinco e se pode reçar que com o mesmo ou mayor descuido esteja cada huma das outras expostas a qualquer que pretenderem intentar tanto contra o que convem a meu Serviço e obriga das p<sup>as</sup> que as

tem a Cargo me pareceo enviar este avizo duplicado por Caravellas em que mando se enviem as Couzas que poder ser e Se vos deraõ por outra para a dita fortaleza de Mossãbique onde ordeno em de e as entregue e ao Capitaõ della escreveo o mesmo avizo e o cuidado que deue ter em seu Repairo provimento e guarda e em se continuar nas obras que tenho mandado fazer não estando acabadas como divera e que no mesmo instante que aly chegar qualquer das Caravellas despachem hum ou dous Pangayos com as Cartas que tambẽ Levaõ para o capitaõ da fortaleza de Mombaça e General da Comquista de Manãtapa a que escreveo o mesmo avizo e ao dito general mando estranhar o descuido e dezemparo com que esta a dita fortaleza de Mossãbique contra o que elle he obrigado pello contrato que com elle fizestes e lhe ordeno que entendendo que se não ariscara o que tiver conseguido e feito em beneficio das minas apartando se dellas acuda em p<sup>a</sup> a fortaleza de mossãbique com a gente e o mais de que tiver necessidade e achando que sera danoso a dita conquista Sua auzencia lhe faça acodir com toda a brevidade e proveraõ da gente que lhe he ordenada e cousas de que tiver necessidade para poder reciste a qualquer força dos inimigos porque não o fazendo se lhe fara carga de todo o dano que por falta succeder.

*[English translation of the foregoing.]*

Viceroy of India, friend, I the king send you many greetings. I am informed that in the States of Holland and Zeeland nine ships are preparing to leave for those parts of India in the month of February of the coming year, on behalf of certain merchants, to return with cargoes, and besides these, four large and powerful ships with two thousand men and a great quantity of arms, ammunition, and military stores, with the design of scouring those eastern seas in quest of prizes until they are satisfied for certain losses which they say we have inflicted upon them after the signing of the truce with them. For which reason, and because they may possibly have other designs, and because I have had notice that in the fortress of Mozambique, which is so important and so coveted by them, and where I have commanded that there should be a garrison of three hundred men, there are only twenty-five, and it may be feared that with the same or worse negligence each of the others is exposed to whatever attempt they

may intend to make, so contrary to the good of my service and the obligations of those who have charge of them, it has seemed fit to me to send this notice and duplicates thereof by caravels, in which I order that whatever aid is possible be sent to the fortress of Mozambique, though intended for another, where I order it to be delivered to the captain of the said fortress, to whom I send the same notice, and inform him what care he should take in its repair, provisioning, guarding, and continuing the works I have ordered to be constructed, if they are not finished as they ought to be; and that immediately any of the said caravels arrive, he shall send one or two pangayos with the letters they carry for the captain of the fortress of Mombasa and the general of the conquest of Monomotapa, to whom I have written the same notice, and to the said general have expressed my surprise at the neglected and unprotected state of the said fortress of Mozambique, so contrary to his obligation by the contract made with him, and ordering him, that if he is convinced what he has accomplished in the conquest of the mines will not be exposed to risk by his repairing to the fortress of Mozambique, he shall do so in person with the forces and other things required, and if he is assured that his absence would be prejudicial to the conquest, he shall send thither with all speed such men as I have ordered and such things as are necessary for resisting any attempts of the enemy; and failing therein he will be held responsible for all the harm which may ensue.

10th October 1611.

---

Dom Jeronimo de Azavedo V Rey da India amigo. Eu El Rey vos envio muito Saudar Havendo visto o contrato que o V Rey Ruy Lourenço de Tavora fez com Dom Estevão Ataide da conquista das minas de Manamotapa e as informaçoes que Sobre esta materia mandey tomar e conciderando que demais de hauer sido em grande e notorio prejuizo de minha fazenda naõ teve o dito V Rey poder para fazer o dito contrato e prometer a Dom Estevão as honras e mezes que se prometerão a Dom Francisco de Souza quando foy ao descobrimento das Minas do Brazil porque sendo taõ grandes e de tanta qualidade Se requeria para isso especial comiçaõ e ordem minha a qual por nenhum modo Se pode comprehender nos poderes dos V Reys desse



Estado que em materias de graça tem a limitação que Se Sabe. Pello que ha cauzas e razoens bastantes em justiça para Se dar por nullo o dito contrato como de seu principio o foy e hey por bem de annullar todo o que assim se contratou com o dito Dom Estevaõ e me não hey por bem Servido do que nisto Se fez e vos mando que tanto que receberdes esta sem nenhuma dillação envieis Logo ordem precisa ao dito Dom Estevaõ Ataide para se recolher a India e Largar a Conquista no Estado e termos em que o achar a vosso recado entregando a Diogo Simoens Madr<sup>a</sup> a gente moniçoens e resgate que tiuer de minha fazenda ao qual ordeneis que recolha tudo e entretenha a Conquista das minas no Estado em que se lhe entregar conservando os fortes e a posse que dellas me esta dada pello Manamotapa athe eu mandar outra couza e chegado o dito Dom Estevaõ a goa farey tirar informaçã certa por pessoa de muita confiança de tudo o que fez na descurso da conquista do Estado em que a deixou o se cumprio o que com elle se contratou ou se faltou o exedeo e do que achardes me enviareis pellas Naos que hora vaõ podendo Ser huma particular rellação com vosso parecer para eu mandar ver tudo e se entender contra quem se haõ de hauer os intereses e damnos que minha fazenda houver padecido neste negocio e o que em tudo o tocanta a elle se deve ordenar.

E tendo eu respeito aos Serviços que o dito Diogo Simoens Madr<sup>a</sup> tem feito na dita conquista hey por bem de lhe fazer merce do Habito de Christo com quarenta mil reis de tença pagou nesse Estado o qual lhe fareis Lançar tendo elle as qualidades que se requerem na forma dos estatutos e diffiniçoens da ordem e ordenareis se lhe diga que conforme a seu procedimento e a informaçã que eu delle tiuer lhe mandarey difirir a presentaçã que tem de o tomar por fidalgo.

E Porque o dito Diogo Simoens Madr<sup>a</sup> me enviou pedir lhe fizesse merce de humas terras chamadas de Imhambaso de que diz lhe fez doação o Manamotapa hey por bem dellas confirmar reservando para mim as minas de ouro ou de prata ou de que quaesquer outros metaes que nas ditas terras houver ou ao diante se descobrirem e com declaraçã que fizera para sempre nellas sogeito as ordens e mandados dos generaes da conquista e quando os não houver ao Capitaõ de Monçabique e que em quanto a conquista não estiver acabada vzara da Jurisdição na forma que

lhe deo o Manamotapa e como Se houver acabado se tomara informaçã do general e do V Rey que entã for desse Estado e com isto lhe mandarey Saber a merce que houver Lugar tendo respeito do que houver merecido na conquista e vos encomendo que constando vos da dita doaçaõ e hauer lha feita a Manamotapa das ditas terras e enviando vola apresentar lhe mandareis dellas passar carta de confirmaçã em meu nome com as declaraçoens e condiçoens referidas na qual se fara expreça mençaõ de como o fizestes por vertude desta primeira a todo tempo constar de como assim o hey por bem Escrita em Lx<sup>a</sup> aos vinte quatro de Março de mil seis centos e douze oBpõ do p<sup>o</sup> o Conde Almirante.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Dom Jeronimo de Azevedo, viceroy of India, friend, I the king send you many greetings. Having seen the contract which the viceroy Ruy Lourenço de Tavora made with Dom Estevão de Ataide for the conquest of the mines of Monomotapa, and the information which I commanded to be furnished concerning this occurrence, and considering that besides being to the great and notable prejudice of my revenue, the viceroy had no power to make the said contract and to promise Dom Estevão the honours and favours which were promised to Dom Francisco de Souza when he went to discover the mines of Brazil, for these being so great and of such importance, they required my special commission and order, which can in no way be comprised in the powers of the viceroys of this kingdom, who in matters of granting favours have a well known limit. Which reasons and causes are sufficient in justice to render the said contract null and void, as it was from the beginning, and I think fit to annul everything so contracted with the said Dom Estevão, and I do not consider that I have been well served by what has been done in this matter. Further I charge you, as soon as you shall receive this, without any delay whatever to send strict orders to the said Dom Estevão de Ataide to proceed to India and leave the conquest in the same state as it shall be when he receives your message, delivering to Diogo Simoens Madeira the men, ammunition, and goods which he has had at the charge of my revenue, and the latter shall collect all, and preserve the conquest of the mines in the same state as it is entrusted to him, keeping the forts and

the possession of them given me by the monomotapa until I shall order otherwise. And when the said Dom Estevão shall arrive at Goa you shall order an investigation to be made by a person of confidence, of all that was done while he was engaged in the said conquest, the state in which he left it, and how he fulfilled the terms of his contract, or whether he failed in or exceeded them, and of whatever you shall find therein you shall give me notice by the ships now leaving, which may be in the form of a private report, with your opinion thereon, that I may command the matter to be investigated, and it may appear who is to be held responsible for the loss or prejudice which my revenues may have suffered in this matter, and what is proper to be done in everything concerning it. And in consideration of the services the said Diogo Simoens Madeira has rendered in the said conquest, I think fit to grant him the habit of the order of Christ, with a pension of forty thousand reis, to be paid in this kingdom, with which you shall invest him, he having the necessary qualifications laid down in the statutes and rules of the order, and you shall direct him to be informed that according to his behaviour and the reports I hear of him I will command the letters patent which I have ready to be sent to him, raising him to the rank of a noble.

And the said Diogo Simoens Madeira having petitioned me for the grant of some lands called the lands of Inhambaso given to him by the monomotapa, I am pleased to confirm them to him, reserving to myself the mines of gold, silver, or other metals which there may be in the said lands, or which may be discovered in the future, upon his declaration that he will always hold them subject to the orders and commands of the generals of the conquest, or in default thereof, of the captain of Mozambique, and so long as the conquest is not completed he shall have such jurisdiction as is granted him by the monomotapa, and when it is concluded he shall seek information from the general and the viceroy of this kingdom then in office, and thereupon I will command due favour to be shown him according as he has deserved in the said conquest; and I charge you that on its appearing to you that the said lands have indeed been given to him by the monomotapa, you send him a grant in my name, confirming them to him with the above declaration and conditions, in which express mention shall be made that it was first done in

virtue of this, that it may ever appear that such was my pleasure.  
Given in Lisbon, the 24th of March 1612.

THE BISHOP OF PORTO.

THE COUNT ADMIRAL.

---

Dom Ieronimo de Azauedo V Rey da India amigo Eu El Rey vos envio muito Saudar. Por outra minha carta vereis o que ordeno sobre a conquista das Minas de Manamotapa. E quanto a fortaleza de Monçambique e Sofala houue por bem que Ruy de Mello que della foy tirado Estando Servindo por razaõ do contrato que o V Rey Ruy Lourenço de Tavora fez com Dom Estevão dattaide Sobre a conquista das dittas minas Seja Logo restetuido a dita fortaleza para a Seruir por tempo de tres annos sem Se lhe descontar o que tenha servido antes de o tirar em della fazendo primeiro dezistencia em forma bastante de todos os damnos perdas e interreses e quaesquer outras açoens que tiuer ou pretender contra minha fazenda por razaõ das perdas e damnos que dizia hauer recebido pella dita cauza para nũca mais as poder alegar e com declaraçaõ que elle ha de pagar por inteiro o que estiver devendo a Donna Brites de Castro molher que foy de Dom costantino de Mello de que cõprou a dita fortaleza e se ha de obrigar a isso Sendo necessario para que tambem cesse a açãõ do que ella pretendia hauer de minha fazenda por se lhe dillatar o pagamento desta divida por Respeito do dito Ruy de Mello ser tirado Sem cõprir seu tempo de que me pareceo mandar vos avizar para assim o terdes intendido e o fazerdes tomar por assento e Lembrança e porque eu mandey declarar o que fica referido ao dito Ruy de Mello e que se embarcasse nas Naos que hora vaõ para essas partes porque naõ o fazendo e naõ indo Logo entrar na dita fortaleza eu mandava noteficar aos prouidos della que aquy se achasse que querendo hir entrar a seruilha o podesse fazer e se declarou esta resolaçaõ á Dom Pedro Manoel e Joaõ gomes da Silua vos encomendo que naõ indo nenhum nomeis a pessoa que vos parecer mais a proposito para seruir no Inteirem que aquella fortaleza naõ tiuer proprietario e vos hey por muy encarregado que seja da qualidade e serviços que costumaõ ser os que della se proue e de tais partes que a

tenhaõ a toda boa guarda e segurança e trate mais do que convier a meu serviço que de proueitos e mercancia e do que nisto fizer de me avizareis particularmente. Escrita em Lisboa aos vinte seis de Março de mil seis centos e douze o Bispo do pº Conde Almirante.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Dom Jeronimo de Azevedo, viceroy of India, friend, I the king send you many greetings. By another of my letters you will see what I order concerning the mines of Monomotapa. And as regards the fortress of Mozambique and Sofala, I have thought fit that Ruy de Mello, who was withdrawn therefrom on account of the contract made by the viceroy Lourenço de Tavora with Dom Estevão de Ataide concerning the conquest of the said mines, be immediately restored to the said fortress, to serve there for the space of three years not including the time he served before he was withdrawn, he first formally desisting from all claims for damage, loss, and prejudice, or any other action which he has or may purpose against my revenues for his alleged losses in the said matter,—as I have much greater cause to complain of losses,—and with a declaration that he will fully satisfy what he owes to Dona Beatrice de Castro, widow of Dom Constantino de Mello, of whom he bought the said fortress, and he is to bind himself thereto, that her claim against my revenue may cease for the delayed payment of this debt, on account of the said Ruy de Mello being withdrawn from the said fortress before the expiration of his time. Of which I have thought fit to inform you, that you may be aware of it, and cause an agreement and memorandum to be made thereof. And I have caused the said Ruy de Mello to be informed thereof, that he may forthwith embark in the vessels going to those parts, and if he does not do so and at once take possession of the said fortress, I have notified to the successors thereof, who are here, that should they wish to enter it and serve there, they may do so; and this resolution has been made known to Dom Pedro Manuel and João Gomes da Silva. And I charge you, in default of any of these, to nominate such person as you may think fit to serve that fortress in the interim while it has no proprietor, and you are earnestly charged that the person so appointed be of the rank and services which

are usual in those holding this post, and of such character that he will consider its safe keeping and security and the good of my service before his own profit and trading. And you shall inform me in full of what you do herein.

Given in Lisbon, the 26th of March 1612.

THE BISHOP OF PORTO.

THE COUNT ADMIRAL.

---

V Rey da India Amigo. Eu El Rey vos envio muito saudar. O Provincial de São Domingos me enviou representar o trabalho e fruto com que seus religiosos de mais de trinta annos a esta parte continuão na Christandade de Cuama com perda de muitos delles e que por ser os gentios muito pobres e metidos pello certão padesse muitas neccidades e não tem possibillidade para poderem entrar pella terra dentro fazer novas Igrejas as quaes poderiaõ Levantar e fazer infinitos christaõs sendo ordinaria de muito pedindo me lhe mandasse dar na feitoria de Mossãbique ou de Çena siesenta mil reis cada Anno a cada hum dos que andaõ na dita Christandade e farinha para as missas e porque por as cousas daquellas partes irem emcrecimento sera necessario haver mais religiosos vos encomendo tomar informaçã da quantidade delles que mais seraõ necessarios la alem dos que Jaa se tem ordenado que aya e os que achardes que Saõ necessarios façais com o Provincial da dita ordem de Saõ Domingos vos envie e para elles lhes deis a porçãõ ordinaria conforme ao que se da a cada hum dos outros por tempo de dous annos com declaração que a confirmaraõ por dentro delles e me avizareis do que nisto fizerdes.

Tambem me enviou dizer o dito Provincial de Saõ Domingos que elle a Christandade do Manamotapa á Fr. Joaõ dos santos seu Religioso de muita satisfaçã com a qual procedeo naquellas partes em onze annos que nellas esteve na conservaçã dos gentios e servico de Deos e meu que he o principal intento que o moveo a tornar a ellas e a informaçã que teve de o manamotapa estar muy abalado a se fazer christaõ e ter ja para isso entregue aos mesmos Religiozos dous filhos Seus e muitos moços fidalgos de seu Reyno que tem bautizado pello que espera entrando na

Corte deste Rey fazer nella com o favor de Deos muita christandade e para melhor se conseguir me pedio mandasse ordenar como o dito relligiozo fosse a ella com titullo de mestre aos do dito Rey ou com o presente que he custume dar se lhe cada tres annos ou embaixada que se lhe hovuer de mandar, de modo que com algum titullo possa facil entrada e fallar lhe mais particularmente ã receo dos grandes de sua que assim podera fazer Igrejas e Christandade e que lhe mandasse dar na feitoria de Monçabique ou de Çena duzentos cruzados para seus gastos e sustentaçã alquer de farinha seis Almudes de vinho e seis canadas de azeite deste Reino cada anno em quanto andar naquella Christandade ou nas mais que se offerecerem desta Ethiopia sobre que me pareceo dizer vos encomendar como faço ordeneis ao General da Conquista que com alguma das occazioens que se apontaõ envie dos ditos Relligiozos de Saõ Domingos hum ou dous ao Manamotapa e que hum dos que forem seja o dito Fr. Joaõ dos Santos e se lhes de e sua ordinaria e o mais necessario para esta missã e que vos informe com seu parecer de que effeito sera sua ida e do que mais pede com a qual informaçã me enviareis tambem a vossa pr<sup>te</sup> com isso lhe mandar diffirir como for meu serviço. Escrita em Lisboa ao primeiro de Julho de mil seis centos e doze.

REY.

CONDE ALMIRANTE.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Viceroy of India, friend, I, the king, send you many greetings. The provincial of the Dominicans has represented to me with what labour and fruit his religious have occupied for more than thirty years the missions of Cuama, at the cost of the lives of many of them; and that the heathen being so poor and so far in the interior, they suffer many privations, and are unable to penetrate the depths of the country and to establish new churches, which he might build and convert many to Christianity, if some allowance were made him. He asks me to command sixty thousand reis per annum to be paid at the factory of Mozambique or Sena to each of those employed in the said missions, with flour for the masses. And because the work in

those parts is increasing and it is necessary to have more religious, I charge you to make inquiries as to what further number are needed there, besides the number already appointed for the purpose, and those who may be found necessary you shall ask the provincial of the said order of St. Dominic to supply, giving them the usual allowance granted to the others, to each of them for the space of two years, upon their making a declaration that they will abide by this arrangement themselves. And you shall advise me of your proceedings herein.

The said provincial of St. Dominic has also informed me that he [is sending] as a missionary to Monomotapa Friar João dos Santos, one of his religious, in whom he has great confidence, which he justified during the eleven years he was there for the salvation of the heathen and the service of God and mine, which is the principal motive that moves him to return thither, and the information he received that the monomotapa is very eager to become a Christian, and to this end has already entrusted to the care of the said religious two of his sons and many young nobles of his kingdom, whom they have baptized, and therefore he hopes by going to the court of this king, with the favour of God, to make many Christians; and the better to achieve this purpose he begs me to command that the said religious should go thither with the title of Master, to those of the said king, or with the present it is usual to give him every three years, or upon some embassy to the king, that with some such title he may gain easy access to him and speak to him more specially, for fear of his nobles, and thus he could establish churches and missions. He begs that there may be granted from the factory of Mozambique or Sena two hundred cruzados for his maintenance and expenses, an alquier of flour, six almudes of wine, and six canadas of oil from this kingdom every year, as long as he is occupied in the said mission, or in such others as may offer in that part of Ethiopia. Upon which I think fit to charge you, as I now do, to order the general of the conquest to send by some of the opportunities which may present themselves one or two of the said religious of St. Dominic to the monomotapa, and that one of the said religious be the said Friar João dos Santos, and to pay them their allowance and whatever else is necessary for this mission, and that he inform you of his opinion as to what will be the effect of their going, and concerning the other things asked



for; with which information you will also send me your own opinion that I may order herein as befits my service.

Given in Lisbon, the 1st of July 1612.

THE KING.

COUNT ADMIRAL.

V Rey da India amigo, Eo El Rey vos envio muito saudar. Eu tenho ordenado que Belicor Roris que vai por capitaõ da carauella que envio com avizo da Armada imiga torne na mesma carauella para este Reino e de caminho faça o descobrimento que tenho mandado fazer da terra da Cafraria entre os Cabos negro e de boa esperanza pello que vos encomendo que tanto que ella embora chegar ordeneis que Logo se concerte a carauella do que tiuer necessidade e se lho dee todo o prouimento necessario assim para sua viagem como para o dito descobrimento na forma que lhe ordeno por seu regimento que vos mostrara e que entenderdes ser necessario para melhor se conseguir e que se parta a tempo conuiniente para isso.

E porque o dito descobrimento e de muita importancia para muitos effeitos de meu seruiço e assim convem que se faça com todas as prevençoens necessarias para melhor se conseguir ordeno por minha carta ao Capitaõ da fortaleza de Mosambique que por Conta de minha fazenda faça comprar ali dous negros Cafres expertos que possam saber a Lingoa daquellas partes e os entregue ao dito Belchor Roriz para os levar consigo ao dito descobrimento e sendo caso que pella brevidade com que lhe mando que se parta da dita fortaleza ou por qualquer outro respeito se lhe naõ entreguem nella os ditos negros lhos fareis comprar e entregar pella dita maneira porque alem disso ordeneis se embarque com elle huma pessoa que tambem possa saber a Lingoa das partes que vai descobrir e fareis tambem entregar ao dito Belchor Roris a quantidade de que vos parecer de ouro, Prata Sobre, Ambar Pao preto e Marfim para levar para a mostrar e assim poder melhor saber dos naturaes se ha nas ditas partes estas couzas.

Sendo cazo o que Deos naõ permitta que faleça Luis Teixeira que vai com o dito Belchior para graduar arrumar Sondar e fazer as medidas debuxos e mais couzas que pello dito regimento

ordeno prouereis outra pessoa bem entendida nesta arte que o faça como convem e falecendo tambem o dito Belchior Roris antes de ter feito o dito descobrimento elegereis outra pessoa que o ua fazer na forma e pella maneira declarada no dito regimento, e com a deligencia feita venha de caminho a este Reino e do que em tudo isto se fizer me avizareis. Escrita em Lr<sup>a</sup> a 4 de Janeiro de 1613.

REY.

CONDE ALMIRANTE.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Viceroy of India, friend, I the king send you many greetings. I have given order that Belchior Roris, who goes as captain of the caravel dispatched with information of the enemy's fleet, shall return in the same caravel to this kingdom, and on the way shall explore the land of Kaffraria, as I have ordered, between the capes Negro and Good Hope. Therefore I charge you to give orders as soon as he arrives for the necessary repairs to be made to the caravel and for it to be supplied with all the provisions required for its passage and for the said exploration, according to the directions which I have given in his instructions, that will be shown to you, and as you think necessary for the better accomplishment of the end in view; and that it set sail at a favourable time for this purpose.

And because the said exploration is of great importance to my service in many ways, and it is proper that it should be attempted with all necessary precautions, that it may be the more successful, I give order by my letter to the captain of the fortress of Mozambique to buy in that place, at the expense of my treasury, two experienced Kaffir negroes who understand the language of those parts, and deliver them to the said Belchior Roris to take with him on the said expedition, and if by reason of my orders to him to set sail with all dispatch from the said fortress, or for any other cause, the said negroes are not delivered to him in that place, you shall cause them to be bought in the same way and delivered to him. You shall also give directions for another person to embark with him who understands the language of the parts he is going to explore; and you shall further cause the

said Belchior Roris to be supplied with a quantity which you think sufficient of gold, silver, copper, ambergris, ebony, and ivory, to take with him to show the natives, and in this way he will be better able to ascertain from them if these things are to be found in those parts.

If Luis Teixeira, who accompanies the said Belchior to note the latitudes and soundings, make measurements and sketches, and perform other duties according to the instructions I have given, should die, which God forbid, you shall provide another person to fill his place, experienced in this art; and if the said Belchior Roris should also die before making the said exploration, you shall appoint another person, who shall carry it out according to the directions; which having done he shall set sail for this kingdom.

You shall advise me of what is done in this matter.

Written in Lisbon, this 4th of January 1613.

THE KING.

THE COUNT ADMIRAL.

O Anno de 610 por carta de Março do mesmo anno mandei avizar a V Rei desse Estado da informaçã que me enviastes do que naõ podindo as Naos por alguma ocaziã tomar o porto de Mosambiã indo deste Reino ou vindo para elle o poderiã tomar na Ilha de Bazaruto que esta junto a Sofalla oito Legoaõ pouco mais ou menos para a banda do sul por ser muito capaz para se ajuntar ali e fazerem agoaõ e refresco por ser terra passifica e sogeita ao forte de Sofala e que posto que eu tinha informaçã que na parte onde se diz estar a dita Ilha correm as agoas muito e alem do parcel de Sofalla que he muito perigozo hauer outros em que se corre o mesmo perigo tomasse informaçã da dita Ilha e porto comodidades que ha nella e me avizasse do que achasse e ao Capitaõ de Mosambique digo mandei tambem enviar a mesma Rellaçã e que com hum Pangaio mandasse a dita Ilha e porto tomar a mesma informaçã ao que o V Rey Rui Lourenço de Tauara me respondeo o que vereis por sua carta de 29 de Dezembro de 610 de que com esta Se vos enviara a copia do capitulo que disso trata Esteuaõ Teixr<sup>a</sup> de Macedo Capitaõ de

Mozambique me escreueo que não mandara embarcaçãõ a Ilha por não ter para isso poder e lho defender conquistador sem lhe deſſir ao que sobre este particular lhe avizou mas que escrevendo o ao Capitãõ de Sofalla e a hum Luis Pr<sup>a</sup> que tambem o foy lhe mandaraõ as rellaçoens de que outrosi com esta se vos envia a copia e vos encomendo vejaes tudo e tomeis sobre isso as informaçoens necessarias e me envieis a que achardes com as vossas e vosso parecer para o mandar ver e ordenar o que houuer por meu Seruiço.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

By a letter written in March 1610 I communicated to the viceroy of that State the information which you had given me that ships in coming to and going from this kingdom, being occasionally unable to put into the port of Mozambique, might anchor at the island of Bazaruto, which is close to Sofala, being about eight leagues to the southward, as the port is very well adapted for them to assemble in and obtain water and refreshments, the land being peaceable and subject to the fort of Sofala, and because I was informed that where this island is said to be situated the currents are very strong, and that besides the shoal of Sofala, which is very dangerous, there are others equally so, I desired information to be obtained concerning the said island and port and the commodities to be found there, and advice to be given me thereof, and I had ordered the captain of Mozambique to send me an account of the same kind and to dispatch a pangayo to the said island and port to obtain information; to which the viceroy Ruy Lourenço de Tavora sent me the reply which you will see in his letter of the 29th of December 1610, from which the section relating to this matter will be copied and forwarded to you with this. Estevão Teixeira de Macedo, captain of Mozambique, wrote to me that he had not sent a ship to the island, as he had no power to do so, and the general of the conquest would not give him leave; to which I answered him that if he wrote to the captain of Sofala and to Luis Pereira who had held that office, they would furnish reports, of which letter a copy will also be sent with this; and I charge you to investigate this matter, and obtain the information required, and you shall

send me an account of your enquiry with your own information and opinion, that I may order it to be examined and give instructions conducive to my service.

27th February 1613.

---

Eu El Rey como Governador e perpetuo administrador que sou da ordem e Cavalaria do mostrado de nosso Sñor Jesus Christo, Faço saber aos que este meu Alvara Virem que o Santo Padre Paulo Papa quinto hora Presidente na Igreja de Deos por seu breve passado a minha instancia em vinte hum de Janeiro de mil seis Centos e douze e por justos respeitos que a isso o moverão houve por bem de dismembrar do Arcebispado de Goa no Estado da India a Ilha de Mossambique com todo o que se contem desdo Cabo de Guardafui atee o de boa esperanza a Mombaça Zanzibar Ampaza cabaceira sofala Çena Tette e Bios de Cuama, e os mais daquellas partes que era da jurisdicção do Vigario que os Arcebispos ali punhaõ e instituir, e Crear na dita Ilha, e dstricto hum administrador ecclesiastico na forma e pella maneira declarada no dito breve conforme ao qual por Confiar da virtude, Letras, e prudencia de Dom Fr. Domingos terrado Bispo de Sale que Governara a dita administraçõ como cumpre ao Serviço de Deos, e meu, e bem das almas dos Subditos della hey por bem, e me praz de o deputar prouer e encarregar de dito cargo de Administrador ecclesiastico da dita Ilha de Mosambique e dstricto para que o Sirva e administre com todos os poderes, graças e privilegios e facultades que por o dito breve lhe saõ Concedidas, e como nelle se contem, com o qual cargo o dito Dom Frei Domingos terrado haverá de ordenado em cada hum anno que o servir duzentos mil Reis alem dos outros duzentos que tem de seu dote os quaes começara a vencer do dia que se embarcar da cidade de goa para a dita Ilha de Mosambique o que justificara pellos officiaes pessoas do Navio em que for embarcado e mando aos capitaes das fortalezas da dita Ilha de Mosambique Sofala e Mombaça e aos officiaes das camaras justiças e mais pessoas da dita jurisdicção que hajaõ ao dito Dom Frei Domingos Torrado por administrador e Prelado della e como tal lhe obedeçaõ em todo o que saõ obrigados e lha deixem

servir e hauer o dito ordenado e os proes percalços que lhe pertecerem sem isso lhe porem duvida nem embargo algum e o horem e lhe façã todo a bom tratamento que se lhe deve e ao meu V Rey ou governador que hora he e ao diante for do dito Estado da India e a todos outros meus ministros justiças officiaes e pessoas delle a que pertencer mando outrosi que em todo cumprã e façã cumprir este como nelle se contem o qual valera como carta começada o meu nome postoque o efeito delle haja de durar mais de hum anno sem embargo da ordenaçã do Liuro Segundo o titulo quarenta que dispoem o contrario e se passou por quatro vias hum so hauera efeito Joaõ Tavares a fez em Lx<sup>a</sup> a primeiro de Março de O 613 Rei o Conde Almirante.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

I the king as governor and perpetual administrator of the Order of the Knights of Jesus Christ, make known to those who see this my letter patent that the holy father Pope Paul V, the present head of God's church, in his letter written on the 21st of January 1612, at my instance, and for just reasons which moved him to do so was pleased to separate from the archbishopric of Goa, in the state of India, the island of Mozambique with all the land lying between Cape Guardafui and the Cape of Good Hope, Mombasa, Zanzibar, Ampaza, Cabaceira, Sofala, Sena, Tete, the rivers of Cuama, and the remainder of those parts which were under the jurisdiction of the vicar appointed by the archbishops, and to institute and create in that island and district the post of ecclesiastical administrator, in the form and manner declared in the said letter, in conformity with which, confiding in the virtue, learning, and prudence of Dom Friar Domingos Terrado, bishop of Sale, and that he will govern the said administration in a manner befitting God's service and mine and the spiritual welfare of its subjects, I am pleased and think fit to appoint, entrust, and bestow upon him this office of ecclesiastical administrator of the said island of Mozambique and district, that he may administer and serve in it with all the powers, favours, privileges, and faculties which are granted by the said letter, as contained therein, in which office he will receive as salary for each year that he holds it two hundred thousand reis, besides

the other two hundred which he receives from his endowment, which will be reckoned from the day that he embarks at the city of Goa for the island of Mozambique, which will be attested by the officers and persons of the ship in which he takes passage; and I give order to the captains of the fortresses of the said island of Mozambique, Sofala, and Mombasa, to the officers of the courts of justice, and to all other persons of the said jurisdiction, to recognize the said Dom Friar Domingos Terrado as administrator and prelate of that place, and obey him as such, according to their obligation, and allow him to receive the said salary and the profits and grants which are his due, without offering opposition or hindrance, showing him proper respect and consideration; and to my present viceroy or governor and his successors in the said state of India, and to all my other ministers, magistrates, officials, and persons of that state, I further give order to carry out and enforce this letter, according to its contents, and it shall be binding as a letter written in my name, although its provisions are to hold good for more than a year, notwithstanding the order of the second book, chapter 40, which provides to the contrary; and as it is to be sent by four routes, one copy only is to hold good.

Drawn up by João Tavares in Lisbon, the 1st of March 1613.

THE KING.

THE COUNT ADMIRAL.

Dom Jeronimo de Azavedo V Rey da India amigo. Eu El Rey vos envio muito Saudar. Por minhas cartas de 24 e 26 de Março de 1612 que se vos enviaraõ pellas Naos que o mesmo anno foraõ tereis visto o que vos escrevi sobre a conquista de Manamotapa, e capitania da fortaleza de Moçambique e porque me foy feito Lembrança que devia mandar prouer sobre os quatro fortes que fez Dom Esteuaõ de Ataide hum em Maçapa outro em Luantim e os dous ã quilimane e Luabo, vos mando que trateis em conselho quaes dos ditos fortes se devem conseruar e executeis o que se assentar, e que para o prosequimento da conquista das Minas tomeis todas as informaçoens que puderdes alcançar da sustancia e verdade dellas e m as envieis com vosso parecer, e acerca da forma e que se deue continuar a dita con-

quista sem inouar nada athe ter reposta minha e vos hey por muy encarregado que os Relligiozos que andaõ naquellas partes occupados na pregação do avangelho façaes acodir com pontualidade com suas ordinarias na forma que se lhe davaõ.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Dom Jeronimo de Azevedo, viceroy of India, friend, I the king send you many greetings. By my letters of the 24th and 26th of March 1612, which were sent to you by the ships that went that year, you will have seen what I wrote you concerning the conquest of Monomotapa and the captaincy of the fortress of Mozambique, and it being represented to me that I should make some order concerning the four forts constructed by Dom Estevão de Ataide, one in Masapa, another in Luantim, and the two forts at Quilimane and Luabo, I command you to consider in council which of the said forts should be preserved, and to carry out what is agreed upon; and for the furthering of the conquest of the mines you shall procure such information as you can, and acquaint me of the truth and substance thereof, together with your opinion. And with respect to the manner in which the said conquest is to be continued, nothing new is to be attempted before receiving my answer. And you are strictly charged to see that the religious preaching the gospel in those parts be punctually paid their allowances, in the manner in which they were granted to them.

4th of March 1613.

---

Dom Jeronimo de Azauedo V Rey da India amigo. Eu El Rey vos envio muito saudar Mandei ver com muita consideraçãõ, o contrato que o V Rey Rui Lourenço de Tauara fez com Dom Esteuaõ da Taide sobre a conquista das minas de Manamotapa e Rios de Cuama e os pareceres que os conselheiros do estado e de minha fazenda nessas partes deraõ sobre a materia, e as mais informaçoes que della ha, e Rellaçaõ que o dito Dom esteuaõ me enviou do que diz hauer feito na dita conquista e me constou por tudo que ella naõ cumprio com as condiçoens de seu contrato havendosse da parte de minha fazenda dado Int<sup>ro</sup> comprimento



as que estaua obrigada, e por esse respeito ter recebido grande perda a cuja satisfação o dito Dom Esteuaõ esta obrigado para que com effeite se arrecade delle tudo o que deue vos mando ordeneis a hum Ministro Confidente que na monçaõ de Setembro assista na barra dessa cidade de Goa e que tanto que chegar o Galeaõ do trato faça inventario de todos os bens e fazenda nelle se acharem do dito Dom Esteuaõ de Ataide e que a mesma dilligencia se faça nas naos que forem deste Reino tendo tomado o porto de Masambique e assim nas mais embarçaõens que delle e daquella costa forem.

E Que a mesma dilligencia se faça com as pessoas que nessa cidade de Goa e outras partes desse Estado tiuerem alguma razenda sua e assim todas as mais que forem necessarias para se poderem descobrir e juntamente com o dito inventario se faça de todo o que se achar sequestro e deposito no mostr<sup>o</sup> de Saõ Francisco dessa mesma cidade tendo aduertencia que naõ mandeis carregar em receita ao meu thesoureiro nem despender ate se dar final determinaçaõ na causa.

E mandeis estimar por pessoas peritas e que bem o entendaõ o que podia valer o Estanque dos Rios de arrendamento e meada hum anno no tempo que se contrataraõ ao dito Dom Esteuaõ e assim a fortaleza de Monsambique com suas annexas que tambem se lhe concedeo no dito contrato vendosse para esse effeito o arrendamento que Nuno da cunha sendo capitaõ da mesma fortaleza fez a Manoel Roiz Carraõ ao qual segundo tenho por informaçaõ arendose o Estanque dos Rios por preço de oitenta mil  $x^o$  em cada hum anno que he o preço em que se devem estimar ou porventura e mais e na dita Estimaçaõ se naõ tera respeito aos quarenta mil pardaos de pençaõ que tenho ordenado me pague em cada hum anno os providos daquella capitania pello estanque dos mesmos Rios porque como se lhe da tambem em parte de satisfaçaõ por o mais annexo a ella ser de taõ pouca consideraçaõ que naõ he equivalente a satisfaçaõ dos serviços das pessoas a que della faço merce se lhe impoem aquella pequena pençaõ valendo o estanque delles muito mais arindamento como se deixa ver.

E todo o que se estimar valerem os Rios e fortaleza com suas aunexas fareis arrecadar via executiua na forma dos regimentos de minha fazenda desse estado pellos bens do dito Dom Esteuaõ de Ataide.

E na forma se haueraõ os onze mil pardaos que se diz custuraõ

As duas viagens de Goa para Mosambiç que se lhe compraraõ e os dous navios de alto bordo e quatro galeses que se lhe concederaõ e os dereitos de trezentos Bares de roupa e sem de marfim de que hauia de gosar os primeiros dous annos de seu contrato com o mais que por bem delle ouve fasendose Liquidação do que não Estiuer Liquido na forma ordinaria e se lhe fara tambem abatimento de tudo o que pagou a gente de presidio que esteue em seu tempo na dita fortaleza de Mosambique que constara pellos cadernos do feitor verificandosse primeiro na forma do regimento e assim se lhe faça abatimento do que despondeo como Hospital de Mosambique e nos dous fortes que se desfazer nas Barras de quilimane e Luabo por esta despeza ser tambem vtil e necessario pã Segurança dos Rios e tendo feito alguma que em o conselho de miuha fazenda dessas partes se haja por tal se lhe Leuar tambem en conta, e ordenareis no procurador de minha fazenda que demande ao dito Dom Estevaõ de Ataide ordinariamente por todos os damnos e perdas que minha fazenda recebeo em não dar comprimento ao dito contrato.

E Porque o dito Dom Estevaõ faz<sup>do</sup> eu delle confiança para empresa de tanta importancia cometeo nella excessos dignos de grande castigo como foi Leuar para os Rios o presidio que estaua na fortaleza de Monsambique de Soldados exercitados deixando nella quarenta e Sincoenta bisonhos e mal armados e tendo por obrigação ter e pagar dozentos arriscando a a poder ser occupada pellos inimigos para cujo remedio Sendo eu disso informado a mandei socorrer com carauellas e Galeoens e tendo obrigação passar aos Rios com quizesentos homens e tratar Logo de descobrir as minas da prata e avisar do que achasse o não fes, e Levando athe cento e sincoenta se occupou em seus proueitos particulares não passando de thete nem tratando da conquista Pello que vos mando o façaes Logo prender em hum dos passos dessa Ilha de Goa, e tirar delle devassa dos Sobreditos e mais excessos que cometeo por hum Ministro de muita confiança e inteireza que para isso nomeareis e verificandose por ella as Culpas referidas se lhe estreitarem a prizaõ metendo na Cadea e se procedera contra elle breue e Sumariañ; e preparados os autos sem se dar nelles Sñia se me enviaraõ com o dito Estevaõ nas mesmas Naos para eu ordenar o que houver p̃ meu serviço.

E porque pella provizaõ que com esta se vos enviara ordeno que o Inquizidor mais antigo da Inquizaõ dessa cidade e em

Sua falta o segundo tire devassa se os ministros que assistirão ao dito contrato receberão do dito Dom Estevão peitao e o mais que por ella vereis vos encomendo que tanto que a houeredes receberdes e façaes Logo entregar ao dito Inquisidor encarregando lhe o de minha partes necessarias para effectivamente se cumprir e as copias da dita devassa que vos entregar como lhe mando pella dita provisão me enviareis com todo os mais autos e papeis que se fizerem sobre arrecadação do que o dito Dom Estevão de Ataide e não se lhe achando a elle bens e fazenda por onde a minha possa hauer o que se lhe deve hauera por quem dr<sup>o</sup> fez.

E ei por bem que o dr<sup>o</sup> que se alcançar contra o dito Dom Estevão de Ataide que se entende sera muita cantia se despenda todo o que for necessario na fortificação da fortaleza de Mosambique acabandosse não o estando ja as obras que tenho mandado se fação nella na forma do regimento e intrução que Lenou Antonio Pinto da Tonuqua que foi por provedor, e vizitador geral das fortalezas e que se não possa o dito dr<sup>o</sup> despende em outra alguma cousa por pereisa qũ Seja, e que o que sobejar de lhe se gaste na fortificação de Malaca, e vos mando ordeneis que assim se cumpra execute dando para isso todas as ordens necessarias e avizando me muito particularmente de tudo o que se achar e fizer. Escrita em Lx<sup>a</sup> a 8 de Março de 1613.

REY.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Dom Jeronimo de Azevedo, viceroy of India, friend, I the king send you many greetings. I ordered the contract to be well considered which the viceroy Lourenço de Tavora made with Dom Estevão de Ataide concerning the conquest of the mines of Monomotapa and the rivers of Cuama, and from the opinions of the council of state and of the ministers of my revenues in those parts, given upon the subject, other information thereupon, and the report which the said Dom Estevão sent me of his proceedings in the said conquest, it appears to me that he did not comply with the conditions of his contract, every obligation having been fulfilled on the part of my revenue, from which it has received great loss. For this the said Dom Estevão is obliged to make satisfaction; and that what he owes may be effectually recovered, I command you to order a trustworthy

official to be present in the harbour of Goa, and on the arrival of the trading galleon in the September monsoon to make an inventory of all the goods and merchandise therein belonging to the said Dom Estevão de Ataide, and that the same measures be taken with regard to the ships which shall go from this kingdom and put into port at Mozambique, and to the other vessels going from that island and coast.

And that the same measures be taken with regard to all persons in the city of Goa and other parts of that State who hold any of his property, and whatever else is necessary to discover it, and according to the said inventory everything so found is to be sequestered and deposited in the monastery of St. Francis in that city, taking notice that it is not to be entered as received by my treasurer, or spent until the cause is finally determined.

And command an estimate to be given by skilful persons who well understand what might be the value of the monopoly of the lease of the rivers for half a year at the time of the contract made with the said Dom Estevão, and also of the fortress of Mozambique with its dependencies, which was also conceded to him in the said contract, consulting to this end the lease which Nuno da Cunha when he was captain of the said fortress made to Manuel Rois Carrão, to whom, as I am informed, he leased the monopoly of the rivers for the sum of eighty thousand cruzados per annum, which is the price at which it ought to be estimated, or perhaps at more, and in this estimate is not taken into consideration the forty thousand pardaos which I have ordered to be paid to me every year by the successors to the said post of captain for the monopoly of the said rivers, because as it is given partly in satisfaction for the other places dependent thereupon it is little worth considering, and hardly suffices to pay for the services of the persons to whom it is granted, the lease of the monopoly thereof being worth much more, as is apparent.

The sum at which the value of the rivers and fortress with their dependencies is estimated you shall cause to be levied by execution, according to the rules of my treasury in that State, upon the goods of the said Dom Estevão de Ataide.

He shall be allowed the eleven thousand pardaos which he says was the cost of the two voyages from Goa to Mozambique and the two large ships and four galleasses promised to him, the duties upon three hundred bars of cloth and a hundred of ivory

which he was to enjoy in the first two years of his contract, and whatever else was due to him in virtue thereof, liquidation being made of everything not already settled in the ordinary form. He shall be allowed what he paid the garrison of the fortress of Mozambique while he held the same, which will appear from the factor's book, to be first verified by the regulations; and he shall also be allowed what he spent for the hospital of Mozambique and for the two forts which he says he built at the harbours of Quilimane and Luabo, this expense being useful and necessary for the security of the rivers, and if he has incurred any other expense also so considered by the council of my treasury in those parts it shall likewise be allowed him. And you shall command the overseer of my revenue to claim from the said Dom Estevão de Ataide in the ordinary form all the damage and loss sustained by my treasury from the non-fulfilment of the said contract.

And because the said Dom Estevão, when I had entrusted him with an enterprise of such importance, was guilty of abuses deserving severe punishment, such as having taken with him to the rivers the garrison of well disciplined soldiers of the fortress of Mozambique and leaving in it forty or fifty new recruits badly armed, he being under obligation to maintain and pay two hundred, thus exposing the place to the risk of being occupied by the enemy, to rectify which when I was informed thereof I ordered caravels and galleons to be sent to its assistance; and being under obligation to proceed to the rivers with five hundred men to endeavour to discover the silver mines and give information of what he found there, he did not do so, but taking with him one hundred and fifty men he employed himself in furthering his own affairs, proceeding no farther than Tete, and not attempting the conquest. Therefore I command you to arrest him immediately in one of the passes of the island of Goa, and cause him to be examined as to the above and further abuses of which he was guilty by an official of great confidence and integrity nominated by you for this purpose, and if the said abuses are verified by this means, you will imprison him in chains, and proceed against him briefly and summarily; and the documents being prepared, without pronouncing any sentence, you shall send them to me with the said Estevão in the same ships, that I may order what is most advantageous for my service.

And because by the instructions which will be sent with this I give order that the senior inquisitor of the inquisition of that city, and in his default the next in seniority, shall make an enquiry as to whether the officials who assisted in the drawing up of the said contract were bribed by the said Dom Estevão, I command you to deliver an account of all that is discovered by the said enquiry, and of all that you shall receive and do, to the said inquisitor, entrusting him in my name with the necessary orders that it may be effectually accomplished, and the copies of the said enquiry which shall be delivered to you as I have ordered in the said instructions you shall send me, with all the documents and papers concerning the execution on the goods and property of the said Dom Estevão de Ataide, and not finding him possessed of any goods or property whereby my treasury may receive what is owing to it, he shall be proceeded against as the law directs.

I am pleased that out of the money recovered from the said Dom Estevão de Ataide, which is understood will be a very large sum, what is necessary shall be expended on completing the fortifications of the fortress of Mozambique, and if the works which I have ordered are not already finished they shall be carried out according to the instructions and directions given to Antonio Pinto da Tonuqua, who was sent as superintendent and general inspector of the fortresses, and the said sum shall not be expended in any other manner whatever, but the surplus shall be used for the fortifications of Malaca.

I command you to direct the same to be accomplished and executed, giving all necessary orders, and sending me detailed information of all that is done.

Written in Lisbon, the 8th of March 1613.

THE KING.

---

Ev El Rei Faço a vos Inquizidor mais antigo da Inquição de Goa em vossa ausencia ao segundo Inquizidor della que a meu Serviço cumpre saber se os ministros que assistirão ao Contrato que se fez da conquista das minas de Manamotapa e Rios de cuama com Dom Estevaõ de Ataide receberão delle por si ou interpostas algumas dadas ou postas ou se lhe prometeo e deu

Bares de Liberdades para os Rios, ou lhe deo a capitania de algum Pangayo, ou outro algum officio na dita conquista, ou fora della para algum seu criado, ou parente ou se lhe Leuou alguma outra via Sobornadas pello dito Dom Estevaõ para conseguir a conquista, e se lhe fazer o contrato taõ favoravel como se lhe fez e por confiar de vos que se enviareis nisto com a inteira que convem vos encomendo que tanto que receberdes esta provizaõ tireis devassa deste particular na forma referida perguntando por testemunhas as pessoas que tiverem mais razaõ de saber das ditas Couzas inquirindo as procurando com toda a diligencia por se saber a verdade e da dita devassa fareis tirar as copias necessarias para se enviarem por vias serradas entreganda as para isso ao VRei assinadas por vos e ficando vos o original em vosso poder em segredo e a todo bom recado e sendo necessario para effeito da dita devassa compeller as testemunhas a hirem testemunhar per ante vos e fazer as mais diligencias que cumprirem mando a meu V. Rei vos passe as provizoens necessarias e este se cumpriera postoque naõ seja passado pella chr<sup>a</sup> sem embargo da ordenaçãõ do 2º Lº ttº 39 en contrario e passou por quatro vias hũ so haverã feito. Joaõ Tavares a fez em Lx<sup>a</sup> a 8 de março de 1613.

REY.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

I the king make known to you the senior inquisitor of the inquisition of Goa, and in your absence to the second in seniority, that it is to my service to know whether the officials who assisted in drawing up the contract signed with Dom Estevão de Ataíde for the conquest of the mines of Monomotapa and the rivers of Cuama received from him, themselves or through third persons, any gifts or posts, or if he promised or gave them any trading privileges for the rivers, or gave them the command of a pangayo, or any other appointment within or without the said conquest, for any of their servants or relations, or if he bribed them in any other way to obtain the conquest and to make the contract as favourable to him as it was; and confiding in you to obtain the information required, I charge you as soon as you receive this order to investigate this matter in the manner referred to, calling for witnesses those persons who are most likely to have know-

ledge of it, examining them, and using every means to discover the truth; and you will cause the necessary copies to be made of the said examination, and send them sealed, for this purpose entrusting them to the viceroy, with your signature, the original document to remain in your possession with all secrecy and prudence; and if it is necessary for the said enquiry to compel the witnesses to appear before you to give evidence, and to take other fitting measures, I give order to my viceroy to furnish you with the powers required for this purpose. This shall be carried into effect, although it has not passed through the chancellor notwithstanding the order of the 2nd book, chapter 39, which provides to the contrary. This being sent by four routes, only one copy is to hold good.

Drawn up by João Tavares in Lisbon, the 8th of March 1613.

THE KING.

---

Dom Nuno Alvarez Pereira fidalgo de minha casa me pedio lhe fizesse merçe pellos serviços que fes na conquista das minas de Manamotapa, e porque me pareceo que não convinha a meu Serviço mandar lhe difirir sem p' constar de seu procedimento naquella conquista, vos encomendo muito e mando que com toda a brevidade me informareis de como nella procedeo e que fez nisso do Estado em que o deixou com todas as mais particularidades que vos parecer que convem para eu ser enteirado e se for tirada alguã devassa ou residencia ma enviareis juntañ para com isso lhe poder mandar deferir a sua pretençaõ, e isto em caso que esta dilligencia não seja feita e vindu para este Reino e a alguns fidalgos cavaleiros e soldados mando dar cartas minhas para os puderdes nessas partes de Cargos e Capitánias em Satisfaçaõ de seus Serviços e falta que tiueraõ em seus desp<sup>os</sup> nas quaes se não declara o tempo por que ao servir os taes cargos, e capitánias pello que mandareis tomar em Lembrança pello Secretario de estado para que apresentandose vos alguma ou pello tempo em diante aos mais visoreis e Governadores desse Estado se declaravaõ do tempo por que haõ de servir os não prouereis nem os vReys que vos Sucederem mais que por tres annos somente.



[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Dom Nuno Alvares Pereira, a nobleman of my household, has petitioned me for some reward for his services in the conquest of the mines of Monomotapa, and because it did not seem fitting to my service to command his petition to be granted without first inquiring into his behaviour in the said conquest, I recommend and command that with all possible promptitude you inform me how he proceeded therein, and of the state in which he left the said conquest, with all further particulars of which it may seem proper to you that I should be informed; and if any examination or trial was made you shall send an account of it to me also, that I may command his request to be granted, in case such measures were not taken on his coming to this kingdom. And I have ordered letters to be given to several noblemen, gentlemen, and soldiers, that you may provide them with offices and posts of captain in those parts, in satisfaction for their services and some deficiency in their payment, in which letters no time is stated for which they are to fill the said posts and captaincies, therefore you shall command a memorandum to be made by the secretary of state that if any should present themselves to you or in the future to any of the viceroys or governors of that State, it may appear for what term they are to serve, for you and the viceroys who succeed you are to provide them with these posts for not longer than three years.

28th of March 1613.

---

E assim pediraõ me lhe conformasse as terras que Dom Nuno Alũ Pereira general que foi de conquista de Manamotapa lhe concedeo para sua Sustentação que dizem Ser a terra do Maparo com todos incumbes e termos antigos e modernos de sua jurisdicaõ e Limites e assim as terras inhameai e de quinta e Benguere e quitudu com todos seus incumbes termos e jurisdicoens modernos, e antigos por terem Servido naquella Conquista e Christandade, ha mais de trinta annos e estarem muito pobres, e atee o presente lhe naõ Ser feito merce alguma e possuirem algumas das ditas terras por merce que lhe fez Dom Pedro de

Castro e para lhe poder diffirir a estes particulares vos encomendo me envieis de tudo vossa informação, e parecer, Escrita em Lx<sup>a</sup> a 28 de Março de 613.

O BISPO DO P<sup>o</sup>.

O CONDE ALMIRANTE.

*[English translation of the foregoing.]*

They [the Dominicans] further petitioned me to confirm the grant of the lands which Dom Nuno Alvares Pereira, formerly general of the conquest of Monomotapa, made to them for their sustenance, which they say were the territory of Maparo with all its appurtenances and the boundaries past and present of its jurisdiction, and also the territories of Inhameai, Quinta, Benguere, and Quitudu with all their appurtenances, boundaries, and jurisdictions past and present, as they have served in that conquest in the propagation of Christianity more than thirty years, are very poor, and up to the present no grant has ever been made to them, and because they are in possession of some of these lands, which were bestowed on them by Dom Pedro de Castro. That an answer on this matter may be given to them I charge you to send me your report and opinion on it.

Written in Lisbon, the 28th of March 1613.

THE BISHOP OF PORTO.

THE COUNT ADMIRAL.

---

Dom Jeronimo de Azauedo V. Rey da India amigo. Eu El Rey vos envio muito Saudar: Jeronimo de Brito Pedroso Vedor da fazenda dos contos dessas partes com carta Sua de 23 de Dezembro de 610 me enviou certos papeis e consulta da meza da fazenda dos ditos contos Sobre as duvidas que nelles se mouerao na conta de Jorge da Costa de Misquita Feitor que foi da Conquista de Manamotapa acerca das despezas que mandou fazer Dom Nuno Alvares Pereira que o Arcebispo Dom Fre Aleixo de Meneses sendo Governador enviou por capitaõ geral da dita conquista a qual consulta e papeis mandei ver: e quanto a primeira Seista duvidas sobre os quarteis e mantimentos que se pagaraõ demais dos que os officiais tinhaõ:

e Sobre os hum conto oito centos trinta e sinco mil e noue centos reis que se diz o General receber demais de seus ordenados na valia das roupas e preço em que as recebeo por outra minha carta vos mandareis avizar da resolução que houver por bem de tomar a resolução seguinte.

A segunda sobre os dous mil dozentos noventa e sete x<sup>a</sup> huma tanga, e vinte e quatro reis que se Liquidou valerem as couzas que diz se entregaraõ por mando do dito General a Francisco Gomes Coelho que fez feitor para hir em companhia do capitaõ Diogo Simoens Madeira ajudar ao Manamotapa e em descobrimento das Minas Hei por bem que esta despeza se Leue em conta Justificandose porem Liquidamente.

A terceira sobre os mil trezentos e seis x<sup>a</sup> e duas tangas que se Liquidou valerem as praças que diz se pagaraõ demais das cento que o General Leuaua por regimento do Governador Hei por bem que se Leuem em conta Constando que os soldados foraõ effectiuos e Seruiraõ verdadeiramente e da ontra materia se haja a contia do que se montou nas ditas praças pella fazenda do General.

A quarta sobre os dous mil quatro centos oitenta e dous x<sup>a</sup> huma tanga e douze reis que se Liquidou valer a despeza que se fez com sinco Alferezes de companhias hum mirinho com quatro homens hum ouvidor com dous homens para o acompanharem e oito piaes Fizico e Sururgaõ mor e Prouedor da conquista que o dito general fez e creou vistas as deligencias que o Feitor fez e esta despeza naõ serdes regimento nem o general a poder fazer em vertude da prouizaõ do Governador e as prohibiçoens feitas sobre se naõ criarem novos officios e ordenados: Hei por bem que ta dita cantia se haia pellas pessoas que a receberaõ e naõ tendo por onde a pagar se haia pello dito General com declaração que antes de o obrigarem seia ouvido por que seria possiuel descarregar bastantemente e que ao Feitor se leue em conta esta despeza carregandose por Lembrança ao Recebedor geral para se cobrar de que eu mandar.

A quinta duvida sobre os mil sesenta e noue cruzados que o general emprestou para despesas de Sua passagem para Cuama e de que diz se entregarem quatro centos cruzados a Luis Baisõ para com elles comprar panos de Pau e para os presentes de Manamotapa e sem cruzados a Antonio Ferreira para ajuda da

compra de hum batel para se enviar de Monsambique avizo ao Governador da Armada olandesa pellas cauzas e razoens referidas na mesma consulta e outras que se me representaraõ Hey por bem o dito emprestimo e que justificandose entregar o dito Feitor em vertude do m<sup>do</sup> do General a dito Luis Baiaõ os quatro centos cruzados para comprar as ditas roupas e elle perderse e justificandose da mesma maneira entregar os cem cruzados para effeito da compra do dito barco e avizo se lhe Leue em conta todos os quizentos cruzados sem embargo de não ter delles conhecimento em forma e das prohibçoens em Contrario.

A setima duvida sobre os dozentos secenta e oito x<sup>a</sup> e quatro tamgas que se Liquidou valerem as vinte e quatro corjas de roupa que o general mandou entregar a hum Gaspar Pereira que enviou por embaixador ao Rei Quiteue para gastos cauallos e despeza do dito embaixador Hey por bem que justificandose esta despeza se Leue em conta ao Feitor e Dom Nuno Alueres Pereira seia desobrigado della.

A oitaua duvida sobre as mil quizentos sincoenta e tres x<sup>a</sup> huma tanga e quarenta reis que se Liquidou valerem as noventa e Sinco corjas de Bertangis que se diz o Feitor Jorge da Costa pagar por mandado do dito General a Diogo Simoens Madeira que foi por Capitaõ mor da gente e guerra em favor do Manamotapa e descobrir as minas da Prata as quaes o dito Diogo Simoens por sua certidaõ diz despender em presentes que fez ao Manamotapa e a regulo das minas da prata e com os quarteis que pagou aos Soldos. Hey por bem que se leue em conta esta despeza posto que não fosse feito pello Feitor e Escriuaõ justificandosse porem primeiro ser feita na forma que o dito Diogo Simoens relata em Sua Certidaõ e que não se justificando se haia pello mesmo Diogo Simoens relata em sua certidaõ digo ensinuido pello general e que o feitor seia desobrigado della vista a dilligencia que fez.

A nona duvida sobre os quatro centos x<sup>a</sup> que se Liquidou valerem vinte e Sinco corjas de roupa que o feitor Jorge da Costa de Misquita pagou por mandado do General a Diogo Simoens Madeira de quarteis e mantimentos de dez Soldados que deixara em companhia do Manamotapa para Sua Guarda e acompanhamento quando o General o mandara por Capitaõ e descobrir a conquista com todos seus poderes os quais se não

descontaraõ na Matricula por se não acharem os taes Soldados assentados nella vistas as dilligencias que o Feitor fez Hei por bem que se Leue em conta esta despeza e que o dito Diogo Simoens Madeira ou o Capitaõ Gêral justifiquem como verdadeiramente os ditos dez homens assistiraõ no Seruiço que Se aponta que não e justificando Se arrecade a dita contia do dito Diogo Simoens Madr<sup>a</sup> e insucedio pello dito capitaõ Gêral.

A decima duvida Sobre os quarenta e oito x<sup>a</sup> pella valia de tres corjas de roupa que o Contador declarou despende o Feitor por mandado do General com a paga de Seis homens da terra alem dos da cantia do regimento no quartel de Junho do anno 609 a razaõ de meia corja a cada hum: Hey por bem que esta despeza se leue em conta justificandose e constando que foraõ effectiuos e atualmente Seruiraõ homens e que não justificando se haia pello General.

A vndecima duvida em que por certidaõ do contador que toma em conta Conita que no caderno das folhas que se tiraraõ das pagas que o Feitor Jorge da Costa fez aos Soldados da conquista ficarem por descontratar da valia da roupa que elles receberaõ de quarteis conforme ao regimento que o Feitor Leou do governador hum conto dozentos sincoenta e sinco mil oito centos setenta reis de douzentas e trinta e sete Matricolas dos ditos soldados a Saber cento sesenta e Sete a que se não acharaõ titolos e trinta e Sete que o General mandou pagar demais dos do numero do regimento e sesenta e quatro a que se não descontou o que mais receberaõ pella valia da roupa do que lhe foi descontado por não terem vencimento e os mais pela razaõ que declara a dita certidaõ.

E assim mais sobre os dozentos nouenta e seis x<sup>a</sup> que se liquidou valer o pagamento dos homens a que na Matricula senaõ achou titolo dos quatro que foraõ concedidos ao dito Feitor para com elle Seruirem.

E sobre estas despesas Hey por bem que justificandose e constando qui foraõ effectuos e actualm<sup>te</sup> Seruiraõ os Soldados de que se trata se leue em conta e não se justificando se haia o que se montou nas ditas despezas dos Soldados pello General em que ao feitor se leue em conta o que despendeo com os quatro homes que lhe foraõ concedidos justificandose em forma bastante e de outra maneira não.

Pello que vos encomendo ordeneis que na conformidade do

que fica dito se proceda fazendo para isso entregar a copia desta ao dito veedor da fazenda dos contos e officais a que pertencer.

Escrita em Lx<sup>a</sup> a 1 de Nouembre de 1613.

REY.

O CONDE ALMIRANTE.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Dom Jeronimo de Azevedo, viceroy of India, friend, I the king send you many greetings. Jeronimo de Brito Pedroso, controller of the treasury of those parts, in his letter of the 23rd of December 1610 sends me certain papers and advice of the council of the treasury concerning the questions brought forward in it as regards the accounts of Jorge da Costa de Mesquita, formerly factor of the conquest of Monomotapa, for sums expended by order of Dom Nuno Alvares Pereira, whom the archbishop Dom Alexius de Meneses, when governor, sent as commander in chief of the said conquest, which advice and papers I have ordered to be examined. As to the first six questions concerning the quarters and provisions that were paid for, exclusive of those charges for officers, and concerning the 1,835,900 reis in addition to his salary that the general is said to have acquired from the sale of cloth, and the price at which he received it, in another letter I shall advise you of the resolution it was thought proper to take.

The second concerning the 2,297 cruzados 1 tanga and 24 reis, which was estimated to be the cost of the goods delivered by order of the said general to Francisco Gomes Coelho, whom he made factor to accompany Captain Diogo Simoens Madeira to assist the Monomotapa and to explore the mines, I am pleased that this outlay be credited to him, if it is proved that he was justified in making it.

The third relating to the 1,806 cruzados and 2 tangas, estimated to be the cost of soldiers who are said to have been paid, besides the hundred that accompanied the general by order of the governor, I am pleased that this be credited to him, if it is proved that the soldiers were effective and really served, otherwise the cost of the said soldiers is to be charged to the general.

The fourth relating to the 2,482 cruzados 1 tanga and 12 reis, estimated to be the cost of five ensigns of companies, one mirinho and four men, one judge and two men who accompanied him, eight common labourers, a physician and surgeon, and the commissary for provisioning the forces of the conquest, whom the said general appointed, in view of the measures taken by the factor, that this outlay was not authorised by the regulations, and that the general had not received power from the governor to act thus, and in view also of the prohibitions issued against creating new officials and salaries, I am pleased that the said sum be charged to the persons who received it, and if they are unable to pay it, let it be charged to the said general, with a statement that before obliging him to refund it he may defend himself, as it is possible he may clear himself sufficiently, in which case the factor shall enter a memorandum of this sum in the books of the receiver general, to be recovered as I shall give order.

The fifth question relating to the 1,069 cruzados which the general advanced for the expense of his passage to Cuama, of which sum he says 400 cruzados were entrusted to Luis Baião to purchase cloth and presents for the monomotapa, and 100 cruzados to Antonio Fereira towards the cost of a vessel to send information of the Dutch fleet to the governor from Mozambique, in view of the reasons and motives referred to in the aforesaid council, and others which have been represented to me, I approve of the said charge, and if it is shown that the said factor, in virtue of the general's order, delivered the four hundred cruzados to Luis Baião to buy the said cloth, and that he was lost, and it being proved in the same way that the hundred cruzados were paid for the vessel in which to send the information, all the five hundred cruzados shall be credited to him, notwithstanding no formal acknowledgment has been made of them, and notwithstanding the prohibitions to the contrary.

The seventh question relating to the 268 cruzados and 4 tangas, estimated to be the value of twenty-four bales of cloth containing twenty pieces each, which were delivered by order of the general to Gaspar Pereira, who was sent as ambassador to the king Quiteve, for expenses of the said ambassador, I am pleased that this outlay, if proved to be correct, be allowed to

the factor, and that Dom Nuno Alvares Pereira be not held responsible for it.

The eighth question relating to the 1,553 cruzados 3 tangas and 40 reis, estimated to be the value of the ninety-five bales of coarse cotton cloth that the factor Jorge da Costa is said to have paid, by the general's order, to Diogo Simoens Madeira, who went as commander in chief of the men and expedition in favour of the monomotapa and to explore the silver mines, which sum the said Diogo Simoens declares in his statement was spent in presents for the monomotapa and the petty ruler of the silver mines, and in the pay of the soldiers, I am pleased that this sum be credited to him, although it was not expended by the factor and notary, if it is first proved that it was laid out in the manner stated by the said Diogo Simoens, in his declaration, and if it is not so proved, to be charged to the aforesaid Diogo Simoens, who declares in his statement that he was sent by the general, and that the factor be not held responsible for it, in view of the measures he has taken.

The ninth question relating to the 400 cruzados, estimated to be the value of twenty-five bales of cloth that the factor Jorge da Costa de Mesquita paid, by order of the general, to Diogo Simoens Madeira for the maintenance of ten soldiers whom he left with the monomotapa as his guard when the general sent him to do his utmost as captain and explorer, which soldiers were not allowed for in the register, as they were not entered in the list, In view of the measures taken by the factor, I am pleased that this outlay be credited to him, if the said Diogo Simoens Madeira or the commander-in-chief prove that the aforesaid ten men really rendered the service stated, and if not so proved, the aforesaid sum is to be recovered from the said Diogo Simoens Madeira, and in his default from the said commander in chief.

The tenth question relates to 48 cruzados, the value of three bales of cloth which the accountant declares were expended by the factor, by the general's order, as payment of six residents of the country besides those contained in the regulations of the June quarter of 1609, at the rate of half a bale for each. I am pleased that this outlay be credited to him, if it is proved that these men were effective and actually served, and not being so proved, the amount is to be charged to the general.



The eleventh question, in which the accountant's statement takes into consideration that from pages of the memorandum book of payments made by the factor Jorge da Costa to the soldiers of the conquest from the value of the cloth it is seen that according to the orders which the factor received from the governor there were 1,255,870 reis for 237 tickets for daily pay of the said soldiers, namely 167 soldiers who were not registered and 37 who by the general's order were paid besides those named in the regulations, and there were 64 whose pay was not deducted from the value of the cloth, because it was not due.

And it further relates to 296 cruzados, estimated to be the value of the pay of men not entered in the register, and of four men allowed to the said factor to serve under him.

As regards these sums, I am pleased that upon its being proved that the soldiers referred to were effective and actually served, they be credited to him, and if not so proved, the amount of the cost of the soldiers is to be charged to the general; and as to paying to the factor the expenses of the four men allowed him, if it is formally proved that he spent this sum it is to be credited to him, otherwise not.

Therefore I recommend you to give orders for proceedings to be taken in accordance with the above, to this end delivering a copy of this order to the said controller of the treasury and the officials to whom it applies.

Written in Lisbon, the 1st of November 1613.

THE KING.

THE COUNT ADMIRAL.

Dom Jeronimo de Azeuedo Vizo Rey da India Amigo Eu El Rey vos invio m<sup>to</sup> Saudar, Sobre as Contas das minas de manomotapa e contrato que dellas se fez com D. Esteuaõ de Ataide ordeney o que tendes entendidos por minha Carta de 24 de Março de 1612, e uereis por outras de quatro de Março de 1613, e mandando hora uer o que me Escreuestes acerca desta materia pellas naos que o anno passado uiraõ dessas partes hey por bem de vos remeter como faço o que toca Diogo Simoens madeira assister com gente naquella Conquista para que entendendo que he assim necessario o façais continvar dando o que Cumprir para

pagar os Soldados, e podendose elles escuzar os mandeis hir para India, e o dito Diogo Simoens fique naquella partes beneficiando sua fazenda se o quizer fazer e assim hey por bem que sobre a extinção ou conservação dos fortes se cumpra o que vltimamente ordeney Como vereis por minhas Cartas e que hauendosse elles de conseruar paguem os Capitaês de Monçambique e asim os que de presente Saõ Como vos que pello tempo em diante forem prouidos della, os Soldados e ordinarias dos ditos fortes que saõ feitos e se fizerem em vtilidade daquelle commercio e defençaõ dos Rios asim e da maneira que se pagaõ os de Thete e Sena sem por isso se lhe deminuir nada da penção das quarenta mil cruzados que pagaõ porque do estanque dos Rios se lhe não faz merces por Seus Seruiços e quanto ao prouimento que fizestes da dita capitania de Monçambique em vosso Irmaõ Dom Joaõ de Azeuedo tenho por Certo que tereis nisso todas as deuidas consideraçõens Como me dizeis porem no que toca a penção não ouue por bem de aprovar o asento que se tomou para que passasse Somente Vinte e Sinco mil pardaos, mas hey por meu Seruiço q̄ elle pague por inteiro os 40 V pardaos por anno que tenho ordenado que paguem os Capitaês da fortaleza Com vltimam<sup>te</sup> resoluey e uereis por minha Carta de 23 de Janeiro de 1610 e que a respeito dos ditos 40 V pardaos por anno pague por rata o tempo que estiuer nella e vos mando q̄ nesta Confirmitade façaes executar tudo o que fica dito dando para isso todas as ordens necessarias auizando me do que se fizer. Escrita em Lisboa a 14 de Feuereiro de 1614.

REY.

O CONDE ALMIRANTE.

*[English translation of the foregoing.]*

Dom Jeronimo de Azevedo, viceroy of India, friend, I the king send you many greetings. As regards the reports of the mines of Monomotapa and the contracts made concerning them with Dom Estevão de Ataide, I gave the orders which you have seen in my letters of the 24th of March 1612 and the 4th of March 1613, and having now commanded the report on the matter which you sent me by the ships that came from those parts last year to be examined, I think fit to remit to you, as I now do, the orders which relate to Diogo Simoens Madeira's

remaining in that conquest with his men. Should you believe that it is necessary for him to do so, you shall command him to remain there, supplying what is necessary for the payment of the soldiers; and if they can be dispensed with, you shall give order for them to proceed to India, and the said Diogo Simoens to remain in those parts, if he wishes to, to increase his property. And as regards the destruction or preservation of the forts, I also think fit that what I have recently ordered in my letters shall be carried out, and that if they are to be preserved the present captains of Mozambique, and also those who shall be appointed to this office in the future, shall pay the soldiers and ordinary expenses of the said forts, which have been built for the benefit of that commerce and the defence of the rivers, in the same way as those of Tete and Sena are paid, nor shall they for this reason decrease the sum of forty thousand cruzados which they pay, because the monopoly of the rivers was not granted to them in reward of their services. And as to your having bestowed the command of Mozambique on your brother Dom João de Azevedo, I am confident that, as you say, you will act in the matter with all the prudence required; but as to the price, I do not think fit to approve of the agreement made that he should pay only twenty-five thousand pardaos, but I consider it conducive to my service that he should pay in full the forty thousand pardaos per annum which I have ordered the captains of the fortress to pay, as I have recently resolved, and as you will see by my letter of the 23rd of January 1610. And in respect of the said forty thousand pardaos per annum he shall pay in proportion to the time he remains there. I command you that in accordance with this you give instructions for the above to be executed, issuing all the orders required in the matter, and informing me of all that is done.

Written in Lisbon, the 14th of February 1614.

THE KING.

THE COUNT ADMIRAL.

---

Eu mandey neste Reyno tirar devassa do Estado em que estauã a fortaleza de Monçambique ao tempo que daly partio a nao Santa Menna Sendo Capitaõ Dom Esteuaõ de Ataide e assim do

procedimento que tiue Antonio Pinto da foncesqua que emviej por vizitador geral e prouedor das fortalezas e porque da dita denassa Resultaõ culpas contra o dito Dom esteuaõ de Ataide, e por outra minha Carta de oito de Março de 613 pellas Couzas nella declaradas tenho mando que Se tire delle deuassa e Seia prezo e enviado a este Reyno hey por bem e mando que pellas Culpas desta Segunda devassa Sera o dito Dom Esteuaõ de Ataide tambem enviado prezo ao este Reino como tenho mandado quer na primeira devassa que ha mandey tirar Conste de Culpa que não Por dista Segunda Constarem muy bastante em que alem disso se lhe escreua e Soquestre toda sua fazenda, e vos mando que asim o façaes cumprir e deis para todos os ordens necessarias E que tendosse tirada a dita Primeira devassa Se me envie pellas naos que hora embora vaõ e não Sendo tirada, se tire e façãõ as mais dilligencias conforme a dita Carta e Se me enuie pella mesma maneira.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

I gave order in this kingdom for an enquiry to be made into the state of the fortress of Mozambique at the time when the ship *Santa Menna* left that island, her captain being Dom Estevão de Ataide, and also of the proceedings of Antonio Pinto da Fonseca, whom I sent as general inspector and judge of the fortresses. And because in the said examination charges were brought against the said Dom Estevão de Ataide, and by another of my letters, dated 8th March 1613, for the reasons stated therein I gave order that an examination should be made of the matter and that he should be arrested and sent to this kingdom, I think fit and command that the said Dom Estevão de Ataide be arrested and sent to this kingdom on account of the charges brought against him in this second trial, as I have ordered, whether the first examination which I commanded to be made gave proof of his guilt or not, as this second trial gives full proof of it; besides which all his property shall be seized and an inventory made of it. And I command you to cause this order to be put into execution, and to issue all the necessary instructions, and if a report of the said first examination has been drawn up you shall send it to me by the ships which are presently to

sail, and if it has not been drawn up it shall be done forthwith, and the other measures be taken in accordance with the said letter, and the papers be sent to me in the same way.

17th February 1614.

---

Dom Jeronimo de Azeuedo Vizo Rey da India Amigo Eu El Rey vos invio muito saudar. O Procurador Geral dos Religiozos da Companhia de Jesvs da Prouincia dessas partes me offereceo a Copia de huma prouizaõ passada pella Vizo Rey Ruy Lourenço de Tauora em onze de Janeiro do anno de 1610 por que lhe Concedio por esmola em meu nomen a Caza e Sitio da fortaleza velha de Monçambique asim Como estava cõ seu pateo almazem Cisterna e quintal como tiueraõ os feitores que nella uiueraõ pedindo me lha confirmasse o por se ter entendido que Convem arrazasse para mais Seguiridade da fortaleza nova, e em nenhum tempo se poderem aprouejar dellas, os Inimigos que aly forem naõ ouue por bem de lhe Conceder a dita fortificaçaõ e vos encomendo ordeneis que a dita fortaleza velha se arraze de todo Como tambem a ordeno a Ruy de Mello de Sampayo que Como vos escreveu em outra vay Com socorro aquella fortaleza de Monçambiq̃ e seruir a Capitania della.

O Prouincial da ordem de Saõ Domingos me enviou representar o muito tempo ha que seus Religiozos residem em Monçambique e nos Rios de Cuama, e o muito seruiço que nisso fazem a Deos e a mim e que os da Companhia se Intremeteraõ a hir a ella sem minha ordẽ e outra o que os Reis deste Reyno tinhaõ dado repartindo as Christandades pedindo me mandasse que se saisssem dos ditos Rios e terras de Monçambique por que sua estada nellas seruiria mais de Confuzaõ que de Vtillidade para a Conversaõ sobre que se me representaraõ algumas Rezoens asim por parte dos ditos Relligiozos da Companhia deuerem continvar naquella minçaõ e muita vtillidade de que saõ como pella se deuerem sahir a continvar só os de Saõ Domingos como ordeneis por minha Carta de 23 de Janeiro de 1611 e mandando ver tudo me pareceo deueros encomendar Como faço que hauendo muito que fazer na Conuerçaõ daquella districto de Monssabique e podendo hauer commoda diuisaõ entre os ditos

Religiosos os de Saõ Domingos e da Companhia ordeneis que elle se faça para que sem differenças nem inconvenientes possaõ os todos empregarse na converçaõ dos Infieis Aduertindo que eu tenho entendido que este diuicaõ se pode fazer Comodamente dando a huno de Monssambique atee o Cabo das Correntes por Costa e terra firme e da mesma a outra de Monssambique ate o Cabo de Guardafu com as Ilhas adiacentes, a huma e outra parte com o que ficaraõ de maneira diuididos que naõ haia entre elles encontros porem em cazo que se naõ possa isto encaminhar nem por isso sayãõ os da Companhia de Monçambique antes continvem naquella fortaleza e destrecto atee hauer outra ordem minha, e me auizeis com vosso parecer da forma em que pude-raõ continuar huno, e outros entre tanto possaõ ter os da Companhia hum Recolhimento em alguma Caza particular sem forma de Collegio nem do Convento mas comodidade do oratorio e clausura e se lhe continvem com as ordinarias que lhe estaõ concedidas. Escrita em Lisboa a 6 de Março de 1614.

O BPO DO P<sup>o</sup>.

O CONDE ALMIRANTE.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Dom Jeronimo de Azevedo, viceroy of India, friend. I the king send you many greetings. The proctor general of the Society of Jesus of the province of those parts has presented to me a copy of an order issued by the viceroy Ruy Lourenço de Tavora on the 11th of January 1610, by which he granted him as an alms in my name the house and site of the old fortress of Mozambique as it stood, with its courtyard, store-house, cistern and garden, as it was when in possession of the factors who lived there, begging me to confirm it. As it has been agreed that it shall be demolished for the greater security of the new fort and that enemies who go there may at no time avail themselves of it, I do not think fit to grant them the said fortress, and charge you to give order that the said old fortress be totally demolished; for which I have also given instructions to Ruy de Mello de Sampayo, who, as I inform you in another letter, is going with reinforcements to the afore-said fortress of Mozambique, to take command of it.

The provincial of the order of St. Dominic has sent me a

representation as to the long time his religious have resided at Mozambique and the rivers of Cuama, and the great services they have rendered there to God and to me, and that the religious of the Society of Jesus have intruded there, without my orders, and in opposition to those formerly given by the sovereigns of this kingdom for the division of the Christian settlements, begging me to command them to leave the said rivers and lands of Mozambique, because their residence there tends more to confusion than to increase the number of conversions. Upon which matter reasons were represented to me both as to why the said Jesuits should continue in that mission and the great service they render there, and as to why they should leave it and the Dominicans remain there alone, as I have given order by my letter of the 23rd of January 1611. And having commanded the matter to be investigated, I have thought fit to charge you, as I now do, that as there is much work to be done in the conversion of the district of Mozambique, if there are means of making a suitable division between the said Dominicans and Jesuits, to give order that this be done accordingly, that without discord or inconvenience they may all be employed in the conversion of the infidels. I advise you that I hear it is possible for such a division to be conveniently made, giving to one order Mozambique to the Cape das Correntes, along the coast and the mainland, and to the other from Mozambique to Cape Guardafui, and dividing the adjacent islands between the two orders, by which means they will be separated and will not interfere one with the other; but in case this cannot be accomplished, the Jesuits shall not leave Mozambique, but rather continue in that fortress and district until I issue further orders, and you shall send me your opinion how it can be so arranged that both orders may remain there. Meanwhile the Jesuits may have a private house as a residence, not in the form of a college or monastery, but providing the convenience of an oratory and cloister, and the allowance granted to them shall be continued.

Written in Lisbon, the 6th of March 1614.

THE BISHOP OF PORTO,  
THE COUNT ADMIRAL.

Tenho entendido que o forte de Sofalla não So esta muy danificado mas tem soldados nem a guarda que Conyem a facilmente podera Ser occupado de quaesquer Imigos que o intentar em Pello que vos encomendo que Sê nenhuma dilaçaõ o mandeis proner de Soldados e hum Bombardeiro tendo Artelharia e não a tendo lhe mandeis a necessaria de maneira que Se prepare e ponha guarda na forma que vos parecer e a ordeno a Rui de Mello em Seu Regimentos que dos Soldados dos Rios faça assistir no dito forte quinze athe vinte e vos auize da necessidade que tiuer para mandar desprover.

Por outras minhas Cartas, e prouizoens que se vos enviaõ nestas vias vereis o que ordeno acerca das Renunciaçoens das fortalezas desse Estado vos quaes encomendo que façaes cumprir pontual e inteiramente, e no que toca as Renunciaçoens das fortalezas de ormuz Malaua Dio e Sofala que estaõ feitas em fauor de Diogo de Souza de Menezes Joaõ Cayado de Gamboa, Ruy de Mello de Sampayo e Dom Pedro de Almeida, hey põ bem que Se cumprãõ as ditas Renunciaçoens e passem adiante sem mais outra approvaçaõ os tenho approvados pella mesma ordem das ditas prouizoens, e a Diogo de Souza se lhe passou disso provizaõ para requerer.

Escrita em Lisboa a 10, de Março de 1614. o B-po do pº o Conde Almirante.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

I understand that the fortress of Sofala is not only greatly dilapidated, but has neither the necessary soldiers nor guard, and could easily fall into the hands of any enemy who attacked it; for which reason I charge you to give order without delay for it to be provided with soldiers and a bombardier, and if it has no artillery you shall send a sufficient supply there, so that it may be in readiness to be defended as you think fitting; and I have given order to Ruy de Mello, in his instructions, to send fifteen to twenty soldiers from the rivers to serve in the said fort; and to advise you of the reasons which obliged me to give order for that place to be deprived of them.

By others of my letters and orders which are sent to you by these ships you will see what I have ordered as regards the retirements from the fortresses of that State, which I charge you



to strictly and scrupulously enforce; and as regards the retirements from the fortresses of Ormuz, Malacca, Diu, and Sofala, which are made in favour of Diogo de Sousa de Menezes, João Cayado de Gamboa, Ruy de Mello de Sampayo, and Dom Pedro de Almeida, I think fit that the said retirements be carried out forthwith, and that the posts pass without further approbation to those to whom I have confirmed them by the same order; and that in accordance with this instructions be sent to Diogo de Sousa that he may lay claim to the office.

Written in Lisbon, the 10th of March 1614.

THE BISHOP OF PORTO.

THE COUNT ADMIRAL.

Dom Jeronimo de Azevedo vizo Rey da India Amigo Eu El Rey vos invio muito Saudar, em outra carta digo que passey a Ruy de Mello de Sampayo Capitaõ de Monssambique com quem se contratarã, os Resgates e comercio dos Rios de Cuama as prouizoens que vos parecer E por que depois de lhe passou a de que com esta Se vos inviara a copia asinada pello Secretario Antonio veles de Cimas, lhe naõ passareis outras e deixarse vos das que Se contem na dita prouizaõ. Escrita em Lisboa a 12 de Março de 1614 a qual mandarey registrar nas partes costumadas: o B-po do pº o Conde Almirante.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Dom Jeronimo de Azevedo, viceroy of India, friend, I the king send you many greetings. I state in another letter that I have given the orders that you thought fitting to Ruy de Mello de Sampayo, captain of Mozambique, with whom contracts have been made for the trade and commerce of the rivers of Cuama, and after the order, of which a copy signed by the secretary Antonio Veles de Cimas will be sent to you with this, is remitted to him, you shall not give him other orders, and shall abide by those stated in the said order.

Written in Lisbon, the 12th of March 1614.

You shall give order for this to be entered in the customary registers.

THE BISHOP OF PORTO.

THE COUNT ADMIRAL.

Dom Jeronimo de Azeuedo vizo Rey da India Amigo Eu El Rey vos invio muito Saudar. por outra minha Carta que vaõ com esta, vos digo como ouve por meu Seruiço enviar a Fortaleza de Monssambique e Ruy de Mello de Sampayo com Socorro, e para entrar Logo nella e a Sirvir como tenho rezuluto, e com ordem de Successaõ Serrada porque declaro quem lhe ha de Suceder em cazo que faleça com o qual Ruy de Mello se fez neste Reino contratos pellos resgates dos Rios de Cuama na forma do que Se vos inviara com esta paque o façaes entregaar aos ministros a que toca para tirem cuidado de o fazer cumprir na formidade delle dardes para isso todas as ordens necessarias e Limitar os prazos e forma em que o dito Ruy de Mello ha de fazer a entrega do que he obrigado pagar de Se ha de Leuar a goa e entregar ao Thezereiro de Minha fazenda, como he custume.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Dom Jeronimo de Azevedo, viceroy of India, friend, I the king send you many greetings. By another of my letters that goes with this I inform you that I have thought it proper for my service to send Ruy de Mello de Sampayo with a reinforcement to the fortress of Mozambique, forthwith to enter into command and serve there according to my regulations, with sealed orders of succession, appointing his successor in event of his death, and that with the said Ruy de Mello contracts have been made in this kingdom for the trade of the rivers of Cuama in the manner which will be communicated to you by this vessel, which you shall remit to the officials whose duty it is to be careful that this is carried out accordingly. You shall give all the orders required in this matter, and shall dictate the time and manner in which the said Ruy de Mello shall deliver what he is obliged to pay, which shall be sent to Goa and delivered to my treasurer, as is customary.

18th March 1614.

---

Eu El Rey Faço Saber aos que este meu Alvara virem que eu vy o contrato atras escrito feito com Ruy de Mello de Sampayo do meu Concelho que vay entrar a Servir a Capitania de Monsabique e soffalla pello Comercio e resgates dos Rios de

Cuama hey por bem e mando que se cumpra como nelle se contem e que o dito Ruy de Mello do dia que tomar posse da dita Capitania em diante corra com o dito comercio e Resgates aSim e da maneira que lhe pertence e o deue fazer por vertude do dito contrato posto que não Seia por muito presentada ao VizoRey da India nem tenha seu cumprasse sem embargo de quaesquer Regimentos e prouizoens en contrario este valera como Carta Sem embargo da ordenações do 2º Lº tittº 39 e 40 que contrario dispoem do dito contrato e este fez por sete vias huma para o dito Ruy de Mello outra para ficar no concelho da India e os mais para se enviarem a India hum so hauera effeito. Joaõ Tauares o fez em Lisboa a vinte de Março de mil seis centos e quatorze. o secretario Antonio Viles depimar o fez escrever.

O BISPO DO Pº,  
O CONDE ALMIRANTE.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

I the king make known to those to whom this my charter shall come that I have seen the written contract for the commerce and barter of the rivers of Cuama entered into with Ruy de Mello de Sampaio, of my council, who is about to enter into the captaincy of Mozambique and Sofala, and I think fit to command that it be carried out according to the contents thereof, and that the said Ruy de Mello, from the day that he takes possession of the said captaincy, shall carry on the said commerce and barter according to his right to it, and as he may do by virtue of the said contract, although a long time may elapse before it is presented to the viceroy of India and has his approval, notwithstanding the regulations and orders to the contrary; and this shall be as binding as a letter, notwithstanding the provisions of book second, records 39 and 40, which give orders contrary to the said contract. Seven copies are issued, one for the said Ruy de Mello, one to be kept in the Indian council, and the others to be sent to India. One only shall be binding.

Drawn up by Joaõ Tavares in Lisbon, on the 20th of March 1614.

The secretary Antonio Viles Depimar caused it to be written.

THE BISHOP OF PORTO,  
THE COUNT ADMIRAL.

Eu El Rey Faço saber aos que este meu Alvara uirem que este ouue por bem de contrar com Ruy de Mello de Sampayo que vay entrar a seruir a Capitania de monssabique, e soffalla os Resgates e commercio dos Rios de Cuama na forma que lhe custame, e para effeito do cumprimento delle hey por bem e me prax que o dito Ruy de Mello possa vzar e se lhe cumpraõ as prouizoens seguintes que o Arcebispo Dom Frey Aleixo de Menezes lhe passou em 17 de Janrº de 1609 quando por outra vez se contratou com elle o mesmo quemercio e Resgates huma por lhe concedio lhe falecendo na Jornada ou estando sem vindo e tornando para a India entenda Com sua fazenda mais que fazer inventario della outra porque defende que nenhuma pessoa Leua fazenda aos Rios, e partes que prejudique a Seu contrato outra por que lhe concedeo poder tomar por perdidas todas as roupas e fazendas que Sem Sua Lincença se Leuare aos Rios e Lugares do Seu contrato outra para Capitaes dos fortes e Lugares de Sena e lhe tem Seruir juntamente de Juiz dos horfaõs, e Prouedor dos defuntos outra para o dito Ruy de Mello prouer o Cargo do Escriuaõ da Sena outra para poder mandar fazer o Patto a Roupa que lhe for necessaria e Se custama fazer aly para as curuas e presentes que mandaõ aos Rios vizinhos outra por que lhe concedeo poder mandar ao Cabo de boa esperanza de se abrir os portos e Lugares daquellas partes e fazer nella Resgates outra sobre o modo de proceder nas despezas das naos que aly aribarem, outra por que defendeo que na fortaleza de Moçambique e mais Lugares daquellas partes não corra nenhum ouro se não o que entrega antigamente corria não Sendo de Botanga de cento e vinte pardaos hum marco outra para poder mandar vender ormuz das peças que se tomarem o que lhe parecer que la tera maior valia outra para poder mandar aos moradores de Moçambique a costa de melinde e mais partes acustumada buscar mantimentos e fazendas que não forem defezas outra para as partes que leuarem fazendas a Ilha de Angoxa darem fiança a não as pararem aos Rios as quaes prouizoens mando se lhe cumpraõ em todo com as declaraçoens, e pella maneira que nellas Se contem e aSim este posto que não tenha o cumprasse do vizo Rey sem embargo de qualquer Regimento em contrario e valera como Carta como cada em meu nomen e não passara pella chanceleria Sem embargos das ordenaçoens do 2º 1º 39 e 40 que dispoem o Contrario. Joã Tanares a fez em Lisboa a 20 de Março de 1614.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

I the king make known to those to whom this my charter shall come, that I have been pleased to enter into a contract for the trade and barter of the rivers of Cuama with Ruy de Mello de Sampaio, according to the usual custom, and that it may be carried out I think fit and am pleased that the said Ruy de Mello may make use of the following orders, and that they shall be observed towards him, which orders were given to him by the archbishop Dom Frey Aleixo de Menezes on the 17th of January 1609, when a contract for the said commerce and barter was previously made with him :

One order, by which was granted to him, in the event of his death during the expedition or if he should be without means of returning to India, that his property should not be touched, except to make an inventory thereof.

Another, prohibiting any person from taking merchandise to the rivers and places which would be prejudicial to his contract.

Another, granting him license to seize and forfeit all the cloth and merchandise taken without his license to the rivers and places of his contract.

Another, for the captains of the forts and places of Sena to allow him to act as curator of the property of orphans and deceased persons.

Another, for the said Ruy de Mello to appoint the secretary of Sena.

Another, granting him power to command the quantity of cloth to be collected which he requires, and which it is usual to collect there, for the presents which are made to the neighbouring rulers.

Another, granting him power to send to the Cape of Good Hope to open the ports and places of those parts, and to carry on trade there.

Another, relating to the mode of proceeding with regard to the expenses of the ships which put in there.

Another, prohibiting any gold to be circulated in the fortress of Mozambique and other places there save Botonga of one hundred and twenty pardaos to the mark.

Another, granting him power to send to Ormuz to be sold there whatever he thinks will have most value of forfeited goods.

Another, giving him power to command the residents of

Mozambique, the coast of Melinde, and other customary places to collect provisions and goods which are not prohibited.

Another, to the effect that persons taking merchandise to the isle of Angoxa shall give security that they will not leave this merchandise at the rivers.

Which orders I command shall be observed towards him in every way, with the statements and in the manner therein set down, although they have not the sanction of the viceroy, notwithstanding any regulation to the contrary; and this shall be as binding as any letter in my name, and shall not pass through chancery, notwithstanding the decrees of book 2nd, records 39 & 40, which order to the contrary.

Drawn up by João Tavares in Lisbon, the 20th of March 1614.

---

Dom Jeronimo de Azaueido, Visso Rey amigo Eu El Rey vos enuio muito Saudar pellas vossas Cartas que receby o anno passado entendy como ainda naõ tinheis avizo de ter chegado em Monsabique Rey de Mello que daquy mandey em direitura Com dous Nauios a entrar naquella fortaleza por respeito dos avizos que se tiueraõ de que de nouo tratauaõ os Rebeldes de a emprender e postoque Com uosso se naõ hauer Lenado aquelle socorro a saluamento aquella Praça como espero hé de Crer que ja tereis Sabido de Rey de Mello, estado em que chegou e se achaõ as couzas della e que Conforme a isso estou Certo que hauereis acodido o que Cumprisse a sua segurança e Conseruação como de vos Confio e comendou mandey escreuer pellas Naos passadas, todavia naõ quiz deixar de vos Segnificar por esta como o faço, respeitado a grande importancia de Monssabique, e o muito que nella tratem o olho Como Sabeis os inimigos que de maneira tenhaiz cuidado daquella fortaleza que vos Seja Sempre prezente o que lhe tocar para que por falta de Se lhe acodir se naõ veja em algum aperto; quer que a experiencia tem mostrado que o prouimento de arroz que ally enviastes hé de grande effeito para todas as occasioens vos agradeço muito o que athe agora nisto ordenastes e vos encarrego que a continueiz de modo que todos os annos Se lhe enuie este Socorro Compridamente.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Dom Jeronimo de Azavedo, viceroy, friend, I the king send you many greetings. From your letters which I received last year I understand that you had not yet had notice of the arrival at Mozambique of Ruy de Mello, whom I sent from this kingdom with two ships directly to that fortress, on account of information received that the rebels were again planning to attack it; and although from your letter I see that he had not arrived with the reinforcements to strengthen the said fort, I trust we may believe that by this time you have received an account of his arrival and of the state in which he found things there; and that according to the said account, I am convinced you will have sent the support required for its safety and preservation, as I have entrusted and charged you to do. Although I gave order for you to be written to by the ships of last year, yet I cannot neglect representing to you in this letter, as I now do, that by reason of the great importance of Mozambique and of how greatly it is coveted by the enemies, as you know, your care of it should be such that your obligations towards it should be always present to you, that it may never be endangered through want of assistance. Experience has shown that the supply of rice which you sent there is of great advantage in all emergencies. I thank you much for the orders you have given in the matter up to the present, and charge you to continue in such a manner that this supply be sent there in full every year.

6th February 1616.

---

Conde v Rey amigo. Eu El Rey vos envio muito Saudar Como aquelle q̄ amo. No Capitulo 40 da Instrução, que vos mandey dar quando partistes destes Reynos, se fez relação das Consideraçoes, que entãõ me moverãõ a resolver, que as Fortalezas de Moçabique, Sofala, e Mombaça, Com os Rios de Cuama, e Serras da Chicova donde estaõ as minas de prata de q̄ o Monomotapa me fez dovação, se dividissê desse Estado da India, pondo lhe governador separado, e independente do Visso Rey, que partiria de Lisboa em direytura a Monçabique na

monção de Setembro passado; E se vos ordenou, o que haveis de fazer sobre o provimento da Conquista que tenho por Certo haveis Cumprido inteiramente. Depois de vossa partida mandey tratar de nouo a mesma materia, e tendo respeito, que ate se assentarem as Couzas da Conquista das minas, se introduzir o lavor, e rendimento dellas e se poudar, e Cultivar a terra sera mais Conviniente que a Separação não haja effeito, e a pessoa que se enviar aquella empreza, fique subordinada ao V. Rey desse Estado, e dependente delle, para ter os provimentos, e Soccoros mais Certos, e promptos, e Com mais brevid<sup>e</sup> se Conseguir, o que se pretende, sem despertar aos Inimigos, e lhes dar ocazião para, que Se anticipem parecendo me, que tudo se emcaminhara melhor no tempo, que o governo desse Estado esta a vossa Conta pelo particular Zelo de meu Serviço Cuidado, e pontualidade Com que espero, que o executareis: houve por bem de resolver, que a separação, que tinha assentado se fizesse, se Suspenda passando adiante tudo o mais necessaryo para averiguação da Certeza, e beneficio das minas, e enviando aos Rios de Cuama hum governador, e Conquistador subordinado a vos, e aos V. Reys desse Estado, que em pessoa passe a ellas e vã rezidir no lugar da Serra da Chicoua donde se acharão as mostras, que Diogo Simoens Madeira enuiou por Fré Francisco do Avelar Religiozo da ordem de S. Domingos; E por que em Dom Nuno Aluz Pereyra do meu Concelho, q̄ hora esta servindo de Capitaõ Geral da Conquista de Ceilaõ Concorrem as bcas partes, que se requerem para negocio de tanta importancia, e particular noticia das Couzas de Monçabique, e dos Rios houve por bem do nomear por governador, e Conquistador das minas na forma referida de que se lhe aviza pela minha Carta, que vay Com esta encomendo vos m<sup>to</sup>, que logo Como a receberdes lhe envieis a Ceilaõ, e encarregando aquella Conquista a pessoa de Conciencia, autoridade, e valor Conhecido das que de presente me estão servindo nesse Estado, e que em tempo, que as Couzas estão tam alteradas, possa Cumprir bem Cõ as obrigaçoens do governo, e da guerra ate hir Capitaõ Geral nomeado por my; ordeneis a Dom Nuno Alz, que se venha a essa Cidade de Goa para se apprestar, e passar a Monçabique no mesmo tempo, em que Ruy de Mello de São Payo acabar de Servir aquella Capitania, e o beneficio della houver de Começar a Correr por Conta de minha Fazenda, Como o tenho rezulto: e por que m<sup>to</sup>, q̄ Dom Nuno Aluz entre



na Conquista Com quantidade de gente de guerra pratica, e provada nos ares de Monomotapa para que Com ella, hã que se poder tirar da Fortaleza de Monçabique, troquando a Com, a que de Lisboa se enviara vã a Serra da Chicoua assentar o favor das minas: vos hey por muy encarregado, que dezde logo comeceis a prevenir trantando juntamente de alguns Capitaens, e Soldados de Confiança p<sup>a</sup> Servirem nos Cargos de guerra, e Capitania dos Fortes: e tanto que Dom Nuno Alv for Chegado de Ceilaõ, a essa Cidade me avereis por terra em toda a diligencia de quando partira, e chegara a Monçabique; para eu o ter entendido e dar ver, o que de Lisboa se lhe podera enviar para ajuda da empreza, e provimento della, e lhe hirem miniyros, e fundidores de que se fica tratando; porem vos ordenareis, que os que houver nessas partes venhaõ em Sua Companhia para que naõ Succeda achar se sem elles; e porque poderia acontecer ser falecido Dom Nuno Alv, e Convem muito a meu Serviço, effectuarse a Jornada das minas sem perder tempo; hey por bem, q̄ sendo assim escolhereis para o governo de Monomotapa outra pessoa de experiencia boas partes, e qualidades, que negocio tam grave requiere, e a envieis a Monçabique na mesma forma, em q̄ ha de hir Dom Nuno Alv avizando me tambem por terra de quando partira Como fica appointado.

Tudo o necessaryo para aquella empreza assim de navios, armas e monçoens Como dos Soldados e gente de guerra, e mar, e mantimentos ate chegarem a Monçabique haveis de fazer prover por Conta de minha Fazenda desse Estado do dinheiro mais prompto que houver de maneira que tudo se faça Cumpridamente, e para ajudar o provimento da Conquista, e naõ haver nelle falta prevenindo Com tempo ropas, que se tragaõ aos Rios em Companhia do Governador mando emviar nestas Naos 22 V H<sup>dos</sup> em Reaes entregves a Antonio de Mariz lobo Contador da Cidade de Ceita que nomey por Vedor da Fazenda de Monomotapa, e vay nellas; para os empregar em ropas, e nas outras Couzas que servem no resgatte dos Rios, sem que por nenhum Cazo, ou por necessid<sup>e</sup> por mais perciza que seja, se possa bollir neste dinheyro nem tomallo por emprestimo, ou q<sup>al</sup>quer outra via para differente effeyto, que o provimento da Conquista despois della estar Começada, e Com declaraçãõ q̄ nem vos nem outro ministro meu algum o podera fazer, e que procedendo em Contrario de mais de Rependar estranhar Com demostraçãõ se cobrara pella Fazenda

de qvem, quebrar esta ordem, Com todas as perdas, e danos, que a minha houver recebido pello mesmo respeyto, entrando nesta prohibiçaõ, que se não gastara Couza Alguma dos dittos 22 V H<sup>dos</sup> no appresto, e Jornada do Governador, dessa Cidade ate Monçabique e de mais do emprego delles vos hey por muy encarregado, que façais Comprer tambem em ropas para a Conquista, e resgates dos Rios tudo, o que do rendimento desse Estado se puder ajuntar, e que tambem se proujeja a Curua ordinaria, que so ha de mandar ao Monomotapa quando Dom Nuno Alv entrar nos Rios, e assim os presentes, que se Custumaõ dar aos Regulos vezinhos, Como se declara no Regimento de Dom Nuno Alv: o que tudo se entregara a Antonio de Mariz lobo, e vos tereis cuidado de lhe assistir, e o ajudar de maneyra, que possa inteiramente Cumprir Com as Couzas, que leva a Cargo, e Com Comunicaçaõ do Concelho, que vos assiste, lhe fareis o regimento de que ha de vzar assim na administraçaõ da Fazenda de Monçabique, e resgates dos Rios q̄ haõ de Correr por Conta de minha Fazenda, Conforme ao que tenho assentado, Como nas despezas da Conquista, e beneficio das minas: ordenando, que se fação livros distinctos de receita, e despeza de todo o Cabedal que se meter na Conquista, e do que as minas forem rendendo, so da despeza, q̄ fizer Com os Soldados, officiaes, e pessoas, que nella andarẽ, Carregando-se toda a prata, q̄ se tirar ensayada, e marcada para que se Saiba Com a Calareza necessarya quanta he, de que minas sahio, e a Como respondeo haja inteira Conta, e razãõ de tudo e em Cazo, que Antonio de Mariz lobo faleça na viagem, provereis de cargo de vedor da Fazenda a pessoa, q̄ vos parecer Conveniente procurando que seja de tal satisfaçaõ, que possa bem acudir as obrigaçoens delle.

Para officio do Thezureyro, e para o de escrivaõ da Fazenda, e do Cargo do mesmo Thezureyro que ambos se haõ de Servir por huma so pessoa nomeareis duas de Confiança, e q̄ hajaõ servido outros officios da Fazenda e dado boa Conta, para o que tomareis informaçãõ do Concelho da Fazenda; e assim ao Escrivaõ, Como ao Thezureiro passareis Cartas em meu nome para Servirẽ por tres annos, e lhes dareis regimentos, e tratareis, que o Escrivaõ da Fazenda seja tal pessoa que falecendo o Vedor della, fique em Sua lugar, para o que dareis a ordem necessarya.

O Regimento de que ha de vzar Dom Nuno Alv Pereira, e a patente, que lhe mandey dar vaõ Com esta Carta para se

lhe entregarem em chegando de Ceilaõ, e o regimento Comunicareis em Concelho, e ouvindo a Dom Nuno Alv sobre elle lhe acrescentareis por outro aparte assignado por vos as advertencias que parecerem Convinientes a meu Serviço, Como se naõ encontrarem Com o mesmo regimento, dando lhe em particular ordem de Como ha de fortificar as bocas dos Rios assim em Luabo como em Quilimane, ou fazendo Fortes em ambas ou cegando huã, e fortificando a outra; e fareis prover o necessaryo para a execuçaõ enviando em Sua Companhia pessoa pratica de fortificaçoens, que Saiba bem eleger os Sítios, e ordenar os Fortes a reparar, e melhorar de Lugares, os que estaõ dentro dos Rios se for necessaryo. E porque ate gora naõ tenho inteyra relaçaõ do Estado, em que se acha a fortificaçao de Monçabique, e he taõ importante Como se deyxá Conciderar, que se acabe logo, e fique segura, e defençavel de tal modo, q̃ naõ possa receber dano de quaesquer inimigos, que a demandem, ordenareis, que em Companhia de Dom Nuno Alv se envie outra para se fazer assim, encarregando lhe a elle muy apertadamente de mais do que se lhe adverte no Cappº do Seu regimento, que trata desta materya Com presupesto de que assim o Cap<sup>m</sup> de Monçabique Como da Fortaleza de Sofala haõ de estar subordinados a elle sendo providos p̃ my.

Tratareis Com o Concelho, q̃ vos assiste da Jurdiçao, que se deve dar a Dom Nuno Alv, tendo respeito a qualidade do Cargo, que leua, e importancia da empreza: E conforme ao que se assentar lhe sinalareis assim para os Cargos ordinarios, Civeis, e Crimes, Como para os de guerra, E nomeareis hum ouvidor, que vã em Sua Companhia, letrado e que haja servido em outros officios Com bem procedimento procurando, q̃ seja a Satisfaçaõ de Dom Nuno Alv.

De tudo, o que se fizer, me hireis sempre avizando por mar, e terra, Com muita Calareza, e destinaçaõ, e por Certo tenho, que Conforme a grande importancia de que este negocio he, procedereis na execuçaõ do que acerca delle ordeno Com tal zello, e applicaçã, e brevidade, que fique eu muy bem servido de vos, e folgve de volo mandar aggradecer, e fazer por esso respeyto particular merce, e favor: E quanto ao ordenado, que ha de Dom Nuno Alvarez Pereyra hey por bem, q̃ seja o mesmo, Com que o Arcebispo Dom Fre Aleixo de Minezes, que Deos perdoe governando esse Estado o enviou as minas, e pago na mesma

forma, e que o Comece a vencer no tempo em que lhe Cessar o de Capitam Geral de Ceilaõ Com declaraçaõ, que me pedira delle Confirmaçaõ, dentro de dous annos : E que o Vedor da Fazenda tenha mil Cruzados de ordenado, e mil de merce ordinarya ; para q̄ passareis a ambos as Provizoeens necessarias. Escripta em M<sup>d</sup> a 10 de Março de 1618. Rey. Duque de Villahermosa Conde de Ficalho.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, viceroy, and friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. The 40th chapter of the instructions which were given to you by my command when you left this kingdom contains an account of the motives which then moved me to resolve that the fortresses of Mozambique, Sofala, and Mombasa, as also those of the rivers of Cuama and mountains of Chicova, where the silver mines ceded to me by the monomotapa are situated, should be separated from the State of India, a governor independent of the viceroy being appointed, who should leave Lisbon during the mousoon of last September, and proceed direct to Mozambique; and orders were given you to collect provisions for the conquest, which I am confident you have accomplished in full. After your departure I gave order for the same matter to be reconsidered, and because, until the affairs of the conquest of the mines are settled, their working commenced, and they begin to yield, and until it is possible to cultivate the land, it will be more convenient for the separation not to take place, and that the person sent on this expedition be subordinate to the viceroy of that State and dependent on him, so that assistance and provisions may be more prompt and certain, and the end in view be more speedily attained without rousing enemies and giving them an opportunity to anticipate us. I am of opinion that all ends will be better furthered if the government of that State is under your charge, because of the great zeal in my service, care, and exactitude which I trust you will show in the matter. I have thought fit to resolve that the separation settled upon should be suspended, and all further measures taken which are required for assuring the safety and benefit of the mines, sending to the rivers of Cuama a governor and conqueror subordinate to you and to the viceroys of that State, who shall go there personally and reside at the mountain

of Chicova, where the specimens were found which Diogo Simoens Madeira sent to me by Friar Francisco do Avelar, of the order of St. Dominic. And as Dom Nuno Alvares Pereira, of my council, who is at present commander in chief of the conquest of Ceylon, possesses the qualifications required for such an important undertaking, and has special experience of the affairs of Mozambique and of the rivers, I have thought fit to appoint him governor and conqueror of the mines, in the manner aforesaid, of which he is informed by my letter sent with this. I earnestly charge you, on receipt of it, immediately to forward it to Ceylon, and entrusting that place to the care of a person whose integrity, authority, and valour are known, from among those who are at present serving me in that State, and who will be able to cope with the responsibilities of government and of war during the present disturbances, until the arrival of a commander-in-chief appointed by me, you will instruct Dom Nuno Alvares to proceed to the city of Goa, to get ready to leave for Mozambique when Ruy de Mello de Sampayo terminates his command there; and the affairs of that place are to be carried on by my treasury, as I have resolved. As soon as Dom Nuno Alvares enters upon the conquest with a number of disciplined soldiers accustomed to the climate of Monomotapa, for this purpose exchanging the soldiers sent from Lisbon for those stationed in the fortress of Mozambique, and goes to the mountain of Chicova to settle matters for the benefit of the mines, I earnestly charge you immediately to arrange for the appointment of trustworthy captains and soldiers to serve in the forts and different military posts. As soon as Dom Nuno Alvares arrives at that city from Ceylon, you shall advise me by land with all dispatch of the time he will leave, and when he will arrive at Mozambique, that I may be informed thereof, and that the assistance to be sent him from Lisbon for this enterprise and for provisioning the expedition may be considered, and that miners and smelters may be sent to join him, which matter is being debated; nevertheless I command you that any who are in those parts are to accompany him, that he may not find himself in want of them. In the event of the death of Dom Nuno Alvares, as it is most conducive to my service that this expedition to the mines should be carried out without loss of time, I think fit, if this should happen, that you select as governor of Monomotapa

another experienced person with the talents and qualifications necessary for such an important enterprise, and shall send him to Mozambique in the same way that Dom Nuno Alvares is to go, advising me also by land of the time he will leave, as stated above.

Everything that is necessary for this enterprise, such as ships, arms, ammunition, and also soldiers and sailors, and provisions until the expedition reaches Mozambique, you are to provide at the cost of my revenue in that State as speedily as possible, that all may be fully carried out. To assist in providing materials for the conquest, and to obtain cloth that it may not be in want thereof, which is to be sent to the rivers at the same time as the governor, I give order for twenty-two thousand cruzados in reals of eight to be sent out in these ships, which sum is entrusted to Antonio de Maris Lobo, treasurer of the city of Ceita, whom I have appointed overseer of the revenue of Monomotapa, and who sails in the fleet, to be laid out in cloth and other merchandise used in the trade of the rivers; and in no case, however pressing, is this money to be touched or borrowed, or in any other way applied to other purposes than providing for the conquest after it is begun, with a declaration that neither you nor any other of my ministers may do so, and if anyone acts to the contrary, besides ordering him to be censured on proof of it, the money will be recovered from the property of him who disobeys this order, with all the losses and damages which my treasury may have suffered through this cause; a clause being entered in this prohibition to the effect that no part of the said twenty-two thousand cruzados is to be spent in the equipment of the expedition or the journey of the governor from that city to Mozambique. Besides this sum I earnestly charge you to employ in buying cloth for the conquest and trade of the rivers all that can be collected from the revenue of that State, and let also the ordinary payment, which is to be sent to the monomotapa when Dom Nuno Alvares enters the rivers, be provided, as also the presents which are usually made to the neighbouring petty rulers, as stated in Dom Nuno Alvares' instructions, all which shall be delivered to Antonio de Maris Lobo; and you shall take care to assist and favour him in such a manner that he may be able to accomplish in full all the matters that are entrusted to him. With the concurrence of the council which assists you, you will draw up the regulations which are to guide him in the

administration of the treasury of Mozambique, and in the trade of the rivers which is carried on by my treasury, in accordance with what I have decided, as also in the expenses of the conquest and in the working of the mines; giving order that there shall be separate books of receipt and expenditure of all the sums employed in the conquest, and of what the mines yield, and of the expenses of the soldiers, officers, and persons employed, and entering all the silver that is extracted and stamped, that the amount yielded by the mines may be shown with the necessary clearness, and that there be a clear statement and account of what it all amounts to. And in the event of the death of Antonio de Maris Lobo on the passage you will appoint whom you think fit as overseer of the revenue, taking care that he be a person capable of carrying out the duties of this office.

To the office of treasurer and that of secretary of the revenue and secretary of the treasury, both of which are held by the same individual, you shall appoint two trustworthy persons who have held other posts in the treasury or who have performed good service, for which purpose you shall consult with the council of the treasury; and both to the secretary and to the treasurer you will send letters in my name, for them to serve three years; and you shall draw up regulations for them, and shall take care that the secretary of the treasury be a person capable of taking the place of the overseer in the event of the latter's death; for which you will give the necessary orders. The regulations to be observed by Dom Nuno Alvares Pereira, and the patent which I command to be given to him, are sent with this letter, to be delivered to him on his arrival from Ceylon; and you shall communicate the regulations in the council, and having heard what Dom Nuno Alvares has to say, you will add a separate paper, signed by you, containing the observations which appear conducive to my service, and which are not contained in those regulations, giving him, in particular, orders as to how he is to fortify the mouths of the rivers, both Luabo and Quilimane, constructing forts in both places, or closing one and fortifying the other, supplying him with what is necessary to accomplish this, and sending with him a person experienced in fortifications, who is well able to select sites, give instructions as to which forts need repairs, and to remove to better positions, if necessary, those built at the rivers. And as to the present time I have not received a detailed account of the condition of the fortress of

Mozambique, and as it is most important, as is evident, that it should be immediately finished and its safety ensured in such manner that it may receive no harm from whatever enemy may attack it, you shall give order for an engineer to be sent in the company of Dom Nuno Alvares, that this may be carried out, entrusting this matter to him most earnestly, besides what is said to him in the chapter of his instructions which deals with this matter, seeing that both the captains of Mozambique and of the fortress of Sofala appointed by me are to be subordinate to him.

You shall consider, with the concurrence of the council which assists you, the jurisdiction to be given to Dom Nuno Alvares, having regard to the character of the office which he holds and to the importance of the enterprise; and in conformity with what is agreed upon you shall assign to him the authority he is to have in ordinary cases, civil and criminal, and in military matters. And you shall appoint a judge to accompany him, learned in law matters, and who has acquitted himself well in other posts, seeing that the person appointed is to the satisfaction of Dom Nuno Alvares.

You will continually inform me very clearly and distinctly by land and sea, of all that is accomplished, and I am confident that in accordance with the importance of this matter you will show in executing the orders I have given therein such zeal, diligence, and dispatch as will be of great service to me, and I shall be pleased to confer upon you on this account special favours and honour. As to the salary which Dom Nuno Alvares Pereira is to receive, I think fit that it be the same as that which he received when he was sent to the mines by the archbishop Dom Friar Aleixo de Meneses (whom may God pardon) when he governed that state; and that it be paid in the same manner, and it shall commence from the time he ceases to be captain-general of Ceylon; with a declaration that he is to request me to confirm it within two years' time. The overseer of the revenue is to receive a salary of one thousand cruzados and the usual grant of another thousand. For this you will send the necessary orders to both.

Written in Madrid, the 10th of March 1618.

THE KING.

DUKE OF VILLA HERMOSA.

COUNT OF FICALHO.



Conde vRey amigo Eu El Rey Vos envio muito Sandar Como aquelle, que amo. o Visso Rey Dom Hieronimo de Azauedo vosso antecessor a Cidade de Goa, e Ruy de Mello de S. Palho Capitam da fortaleza de Monçabique me derão Conta nas Vias do anno passado, do modo em que o Dezembarcador Francisco da Fonceica Pinto, que o ditto Dom Hieronimo tinha enviado a aquella Praça a prover nas queixas os moradores della lhe fizerão do procidim<sup>to</sup> do ditto Ruy de Mello, tivera em o dezapossar, e Como se julgara na Relação dessa Cidade, que o ditto Dezembarcador excedera a Sua Comissaõ, por razaõ do que tornara a Ser restituído a ditto Capitania; e juntamente fuy auizado, que Francisco da Fon<sup>ca</sup> leuara quantidade de roupas para Com ellas fazer seu negocio em Monçabique quando para la partira, e q̄ havia quem affirmava, que por Seus provetos, e respeytos, particulares; dessapossara ao ditto Ruy de Mello, dando occasiaõ a que os Soldados se amotinassẽ, e descompuzessem com elle, Com o fizeraõ, Couza de que pudera proceder arriscarse a Fortaleza, sé naquella occasiaõ assertaraõ a intentarla os inimigos, Como tudo mais particularmente entendereis, do que o ditto VRey me escreveo, e do que a ditto Cidade e Dom Diogo Coutinho sobre a materija tambem me representaraõ e porque ella por Sua qualidade he digna de toda a demonstraçaõ e Convem, que Como Castigo, que no Cazo se fizer, se de exemplo para ao diante, para se proceder a elle Com toda a Justificaçaõ, e intereza, Vos encomendo e encarrego m<sup>to</sup> que tanto, que esta Receberdes, Chameis o Inquizidor mais antigo desta Cidade, e lhe ordeneis e passando lhe para isso em meu nome, o despacho necessario, que Com particular Cuidado, e especulaçaõ tire de uassa da procidimento, que o dito Fr<sup>co</sup> da Fonceyca teve em Monçabique, assy em toda a Comissaõ de que viou a primeyra Vez quando foy de uassar de Dom Esteuaõ de Atahide, Como da de que se trata em que dezapossou a Ruy de Mello, e auegigue se Leou a aquella Praça a quantidade de Roupas, que se die para tratar nos Rios, e se pagou dellas direytos, e os dezemça minhou e se deu occasiaõ para que Se amotinasssem os Soldados Contra o dito Ruy de Mello, e que da mesma maneyra apurees excessos, que se tem entendido que Cometeo em Seu Cargo o dito Ruy de Mello e rezultando desta devanssa Contra o ditto Francisco da Fonceyca Culpas, hey por bem que logo o façais prender por ellas, ordenando, que sua Fazenda seja embargada, onde quer que

se entender que elle a tem, e que Com ella e a ditta deuanssa Seja embarcada para Este Reyno para Ca se detirminar no seu Cazo, o que for Justica, e isto se executara de mais, do que p̄ outra Carta ordeno que se faça Com Francisco da Fonceyca por respeyto das Culpas, que se lhe acharaõ na deuanssa, que o Arc<sup>o</sup> dessa Cidade tirou dos Dezembargadores, e as Culpas, que tocarẽ a Ruy de Mello me enuiares tambem separadamente, porem deixareis, que accabe o tempo por que he provido da ditta Capitanya Sem por Cauza dellas bolirdes Com elle, porque assy o hey por meu Serviço, e de tudo, o que fizerdes em Execuçaõ do que por esta vos mando, me dareis Conta, na volta destas Naos para o ter entendido. Escripta em M<sup>d</sup> a 20 de Março 618 Rey Duque de Villa hermoza Conde de Ficalho.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, viceroy, and friend, I the king greet you well as one whom I love. The viceroy Dom Hieronimo de Azavedo, your predecessor in the city of Goa, and Ruy de Mello de Sampayo, captain of the fortress of Mozambique, sent me a report by the vessels of last year of the manner in which the judge Francisco da Fonseca Pinto deposed the latter from his office, when he was sent by the said Dom Hieronimo to that fortress to give judgment upon the complaints made to him by the residents there of the conduct of the said Ruy de Mello, and if, by the report from the said city it is decided that the said judge exceeded his authority, let the command be restored to him. At the same time I was informed that Francisco da Fonseca took with him a quantity of cloth to trade with in Mozambique for his own benefit, when he left for that place, and that there were some who affirmed that he deposed the said Ruy de Mello for his own profit and purposes, thus being the cause of the rebellion among the soldiers and of their rising against him as they did, which might have been the means of endangering the fortress if the enemy had attempted to take it at that time. Of all which you will have more detailed information in the report sent to me by the viceroy, and in the account of the matter presented to me by the said city and by Dom Diogo Coutinho. And as from its importance it is worthy of every consideration, and as the punishment inflicted should be an example for the future, I earnestly recommend and charge

you, in order that the matter may be clearly and fully investigated, as soon as you receive this to send for the senior inquisitor of the city, and giving him the necessary documents in my name, you command him to enquire with special care and attention into the conduct of the said Francisco da Fonseca in Mozambique, both when he went there the first time for the trial of Dom Estevão de Ataide and of the time dealt of when he deposed Ruy de Mello; and discover whether he took with him to that fort the quantity of cloth he is said to have done, to trade with it in the rivers, and whether he paid the duties and tithes due to me for it; and if he was the cause of the soldiers rising against the said Ruy de Mello; and let him also enquire in the same way into the excesses which Ruy de Mello is said to have committed in the discharge of his office. And if by this trial the said Francisco da Fonseca is found guilty, I think fit that he be forthwith arrested, and that order be given for his goods to be seized in whatever place they may be, and that they be sent with him and with a report of the said trial to this kingdom, that a just sentence may be passed here. This shall be executed, besides the other orders which I have given in another letter as regards Francisco da Fonseca concerning the charges brought against him in the trial of the judges by the archbishop of that city; and you shall send me a separate report upon the excesses committed by Ruy de Mello, but nevertheless you shall allow him to conclude the term for which I have appointed him to the said command, without disputing with him on this account, because I consider this to be fitting for my service; and you shall send me a report of what you have done in accomplishment of the orders I give you in this, by return of these ships, that I may be informed thereof.

Written in Madrid, the 20th of March 1618.

THE KING.

THE DUKE OF VILLA HERMOSA.

THE COUNT OF FICALHO.

Conde Visso Rey da India amigo. Eu El Rey vos enuio muito Saudar Como aquelle, que amo. Por quanto Antonio de Mares lobo, que nomeey para o Cargo de vedor da Fazenda de Mono-

motapa Como p̄ outras Cartas, que vão nestas Vias aSerca destas materias o entendereis se não pode embarcar nestas Naos, ordeney, que em Seu lugar fosse fazer este officio Paulo de Cerra de Morais, que tinha nomeado para o de vedor da fazenda de Ceillaõ pela Confiança, que faço de Sua pessoa, e ter por Certo delle, que me Seruira neste negocio, a toda minha satisfação, pelo que vos encomendo muito, que deixando estar em Ceillaõ a pessoa a Cujo Cargo estiver o de vedor da fazenda daquella Ilha athe Eu prouer nelle o que for seruido executeis Com Paulo de Cerra tudo, o que estaua rezuluto, que fizesseis Com Antonio de Maris, e em Cazo, que o ditto Paulo de Serra por algum respeito se não embarque este anno, assim como ouvereis de fazer falecendo Antonio de Maris na Viagem, nomeareis p<sup>a</sup> vedor da Fazenda de Menomotapa, a pessoa que vos parecer a prepozito Com Comonicação do Concelho, que vos assiste procurando escolhela das boas partes, Confiança e inteligencia das materias da Fazenda, que se requerem para que sirva athe eu prouer em outra forma dando se lhe as proprias ordens, que se ouveraõ de dar a Antonio de Maris, ou Paulo de Serra Com ordenado que ha de haver qualquer delles que for, e neste Cazo fareis, que os vinte e dous mil Cruzados, que de ca se emuiaõ, e vão repartidos pelas Naos desta Armada a Cargo dos Capitains e Mestres dellas Com ordem para nessa Cidade de Goa os entregarem ao Vedor da Fazenda, que ouverdes nomeado em falta dos sobre ditos emtrem logo em poder do ditto Vedor da Fazenda para se empregarem na forma, e pelo modo que em outra se vos tem auizado.

Escrita em Lisboa a 24 de Março de 1618.

DUQUE DE ALINQ<sup>ER</sup>.

DUQUE DE FRANCA VILLA.

[English translation of the foregoing.]

Count, viceroy of India, friend. I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. If Antonio de Maris Lobo, whom, as you will see by the letters on these matters sent in these ships, I appointed to the office of overseer of the revenue of Monomotapa, cannot sail in these ships, you will give order that Paulo de Serra de Maris, whom I have appointed overseer of the revenue of Ceylon, replace him in that office, because of the confidence I place in him, and because I am convinced that he will execute this office

to my full satisfaction; for which reason I earnestly charge you to allow the person who has the superintendence of the revenue of Ceylon to remain in that island until it please me to give further orders in the matter, and to observe towards Paulo de Serra all the instructions you were given as regards Antonio de Maris, and in the event of the said Paulo de Serra being for any reason prevented from sailing this year, you shall appoint as overseer of the revenue of Monomotapa the person whom you think fit, with the concurrence of the council that assists you, as you were to do in the event of the death of Antonio de Maris during the voyage; taking care to select a person possessing the necessary good qualities, confidence, and intelligence in matters concerning the revenue, that he may hold this office until I order otherwise; giving him the same orders which would have been given to Antonio de Maris or Paulo de Serra, with the salary which they were to have had. In this case the twenty-two thousand cruzados sent from this place, and which are divided among the ships of this fleet, entrusted to the care of the captains and masters of them, with orders to deliver this money in the said city of Goa to the overseer of the revenue whom you shall have appointed in place of the above named, you will cause to be delivered to the said overseer of the revenue, to be employed for the same purpose and in the same manner as I have informed you in another letter.

Written in Lisbon, the 24th of March 1618.

DUKE OF ALENQUER.

DUKE OF FRANCAVILLA.

Eu El Rey faço saber a vos meu Visso Rey ou G<sup>or</sup> das partes da India que nas Naos, que no Com o favor de D<sup>a</sup> mandey para essas partes, envio vinte e dous mil Cruzados em Reales de oito, e quatro entregves aos Mestres dellas, tanto em huma, Como em outra Como Cabedal da Pimenta, para se empregarem Com o mais, que puderdes ajuntar do Rendimento desse Estado em ropas, e outras Couzas, para provimento e resgatte da Conquista das Minas de Monamotapa, e porque Convem muito a meu Seruico, que este emprego se faça, e envie aquella Conquista Com a pessoa, que por ordem minha nomeardes para Vedor da Fazenda

della, e por Sua ordem vos mando, que o ditto dinheyro, e o mais que do rendim<sup>to</sup> desse Estado puderdes ajuntar, Como se reffere se despenda no ditto emprego, e se passe a ditta Conquista, em Companhia do ditto vedor da Fazenda, e por nenhum Cazo, e necessidade preciza, e mais forçoza que Seja tomeis o ditto dinheyro nem o mandeis tomar, para se despender em outro nenhum effeito mais que no referido e do Contraryo, que não espero, volo mandarey estranhar, e se avera por vossa Fazenda todas as perdas, e danos, que a minha por esse respeito receber, e por tudo, o que se arredar dos dittos vinte e dous mil Cruzados aveis de ser logo executado em vossa Fazenda, Juros, tenças, e ordenados sem se vos dar recurço algum, ate Com effeyto a minha ser satisfeita de tudo, assim do principal, e Interesses, Como das mais perdas, que Receber, por não passar o ditto emprego a ditta Conquista o que Cumprireis sem duvida alguma, e este não passara pella Chanceleria o qual se registara nos Livros da Secretr<sup>a</sup> daquelle Estado, e vay por tres vias Manoel Antunez a fez em Lisboa a xxb de Março de Seis centos e dezoito, e a ordem q̄ assim se faz menção se vos envia pella Secretaria de Estado. Diogo Soares a fez escrever.

Duque de Alinquer Duque de Franca villa.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

I the king make known to you my viceroy or governor of India, that in the ships which by God's grace I commanded to go to those parts I have sent twenty-two thousand cruzados in reals of eight and four, entrusted to the masters and equally divided among them, which is the amount realised from the pepper, and is to be employed, as also all that you can add to it from the revenue of that state, in buying cloth and other goods for the provisioning and trade of the conquest of the mines of Monomotapa; and it is most conducive to my service that this outlay be made, and the merchandise sent to the said conquest in charge of the person whom by my order you shall appoint as overseer of the revenue of that place; and in the orders given to him I command you to employ the said money, and all that you can add to it from that State's revenues, in the said outlay as aforesaid, to be sent to the conquest in charge of the overseer of the revenue, and in no case, however urgent and pressing the

necessity may be, shall you take the said money, or cause it to be taken, to be employed in other purposes than the aforesaid; and if you act to the contrary, which I trust will not be, I shall give order for you to be reprimanded, and all the losses and damages suffered by my treasury on this account shall be charged to you, and any money taken from the said twenty-two thousand cruzados shall be recovered from your property, rights, possessions, and salary, leaving you no redress until my treasury is fully repaid, both principal and interest, and all other damages which it may receive from the said supply not having been sent to the said conquest; and this you will accomplish without any question whatever; and this shall not pass through the chancellor, but shall be registered in the books of the office of the secretary of that State; and it is sent by three routes.

Drawn up by Manuel Antunes in Lisbon, the 25th of March 1618.

The order of which mention is made above is sent to you through the office of the secretary of state. Diogo Soares caused it to be written.

DUKE OF ALENQUER.

DUKE OF FRANCAVILLA.

Conde Visso Rey da Indya amigo Eu El Rey vos envio muito Savdar Como aquelle, que amo: por quanto Como Ruy de Mello de Sampayo acaba o tempo, que tem por Correr da Capitania de Monçabique, de que he provido, e os resgates Comesarem a Correr por Conta de minha Fazenda ha de aver naquella Fortaleza Cap<sup>m</sup> do prezidio, hey por bem de nomeiar para a Capitanija da ditta Fortaleza Dom Luis de Minezes, e para o dezo-falta Dom Aluro da Costa Com declaraçaõ, que Serviraõ por tres annos, e o mais tempo, que eu ouver por bem, e naõ mandar o Contrario, e que se naõ haõ de Intrometer por via alguma nas Materias da Fazenda Servindo Somente nas da guerra subordinados ambos ao governador de Monomotapa de que me pareceo avizar Vos para que o tendais entendijdo, e por esta Vos dou Comissaõ para que Com Comonicassaõ do Concelho, que vos assiste lhes façais signafar o ordenado Competera advertindo, que em quanto Dom Luis de Minezes o Vencer ha de sesar o emtretenimento de que a

goa lhe fiz merce. Escripta em Lisboa a 28 de Março de 1618.  
Duque de Alinquer Duque de Francavilla.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well as one whom I love. From the time when Ruy de Mello de Sampayo completes his term of command at Mozambique as I have appointed, and the trade begins to be carried on for my treasury, a captain of the garrison is to be appointed in that fortress. I think fit to nominate to the command of the said fortress Dom Luis de Menezes, and in his default Dom Alvaro da Costa, with the condition that they are to serve for three years or longer as I think fit to command, unless I order otherwise. They are not to interfere in any way in affairs of the revenue, but only in matters of war; both are to be subordinate to the governor of Monomotapa. I think fit to inform you of this, that you may be advised thereof, and by these presents I commission you, in concurrence with the council that assists you, to fix an appropriate salary, advising you that if Dom Luis de Menezes is appointed, the grant bestowed on him for carrying on commerce with Goa is to cease.

Written in Lisbon, the 23th of March 1618.

DUKE OF ALENQUER.

DUKE OF FRANCAVILLA.

---

INFORMAÇÃO QUE FEZ O GOVERNADOR GERAL DIOGO DA  
CUNHA DE CASTELBRANCO POR MANDADO DO CONDE  
VISORREY PERA SUA MAG<sup>DE</sup> SER INFORMADO DO ESTADO DA  
CONQUISTA DAS MINAS DE PRATA DO ESTADO DE CUAMA.\*

Sendo Diogo Simões Madeira mercador nos Rios de Cuama teue entrada nas terras do Manomotapa em guerras com outros pretençores do Reyno que o tinhaõ tiranizado do assento R<sup>l</sup> chamando Zimbauhe, e pretendo preualecer contra seus pretensores Com fauor dos Portugueses teue o dito Diogo Simões intelligencias de estarem as minas de prata nas cerras da chicoua,

\* Copied from a manuscript in the Library of the British Museum,—Ad. MS. 28461, Folio 44.



com o q̄ procurou doação delles pera V. Mag<sup>de</sup> obrigandose ao meter de posse do dito Zimbaue.

Desta doação foi V. Mag<sup>de</sup> informado e com a fama das minas o Arcebispo Dom frey Aleixo de Meneses sendo Governador deste estado mandou passar aos Rios Dom Nuno Aluerez Pereyra o qual entrando nelles com gente de guerra, ocupando o dito Diogo Simões deu ajuda ao dito Manomotapa pera cobrar o assento Real com o que teue effeito o comprimento das condições da doação que o dito Diogo Simões delle ouue pera V. Mag<sup>de</sup> e querendo Dom Nun aluerez passar as minas foi mandado vir pera a India, e depois delle Vindo o Visso Rey Dom Ruy Lourenço de Taura fez Contrato Com Dom Esteuaõ de Taide, e o mandou proseguir a conquista como fez ate ser mandado vir por orden de V. Mag<sup>de</sup>.

Sendo vindo dos Rios de Cuama Dom Esteuaõ de Taide o anno de 612 ficou nelle por Capitaõ mor da Conquista das minas da prata Diogo Simões Madeira o qual chegando ao lugar da chicoua distante da foz do Rio 180 leguas formou nas terras do Manomotapa hum forte de madeira, chamado na lingoa dos Cafres Chuambo, a que pos por nome de Saõ Miguel, por achar que deste sitio se tirauaõ alguãs pedras de prata e fortificandose nelle com presidio de soldados Veio a descobrir algũas q̄ se acauaua neste limite, com que se rompeo fama de estarem minas descubertas e V. Mag<sup>de</sup> foi auisado pello dito Diogo Simões do estado em q̄ estava o descobrimento della com as mostras da q̄ se achaba.

Foi neste tempo eleito por Visorrey deste estado Dom Hieronimo de Azeuedo e Diogo Simões continuando o descobrimento, sustento o forte e pedio prouimentos de roupa assi pera o presidio Como pera dar aos Cafres, e sendo desamparado de todo o socorro deceo abaixo a Tete as feitorias do Capitaõ q̄ entaõ era Dom Joaõ de Azeuedo, e lhe tomou as q̄ nellas tinha com fundamento deo Visorrey seu Irmãõ o naõ prouer e V. Mag<sup>de</sup> o mandar Continuar a conquista ate que chegou desse Reyno o anno de 614 Ruy de Mello de Sampayo em cuyo tempo succederaõ naufragio nas naos do trato com que Diogo Simões teue mayores faltas sem com tudo desamparar o forte esperando socorro da India, e chegaraõ os Soldados conforme a se manter de tamarinho tendo assalto dos Cafres de que se defenderaõ por muitas vezes.

No anno de 615 ordenou o Viso Rey Dom Hieronimo de

Azevedo mandar o Licenciado francisco da Fonseca Pinto a fortaleza de Moçambique e que pasasse aos Rios e chegando a Chicoua verificasse a certeza das minas averiguandose se daquelle sitio sahia a prata de que o dito Diogo Simoës imuiava as mostras, ou vsuaa dalgũ emgano pera assi se euitarem as grandes despesas que se fazião e poder V. Mag<sup>do</sup> ser informado com todo o fundamento necessario a negocio taõ importante.

Chegando o L<sup>do</sup> Fran<sup>co</sup> da fonseca a fortaleza tirou della insidiosamente a Ruy de Mello de Sampayo pretendendo que quebrando lhe o contrato entraria nos Rios nomeando todos os Cabedaës por conta da Real fazenda de que era Vedor E porque lhe pareceo impedimento para seu intento ficar com obrigaçaõ de prouer Diogo Simoës tratou de o intimidar pera se naõ fiar delle e com a gente que leuaua pera lhe entregar deu em hũa emtemba sua, que he aldeia de seus escrauos e lhe matou alguns e prendeo hum seu sobrinho que lhe tinha mandado p<sup>a</sup> o guiar e acompanha pello Caminho como que Dioguo Simoës o avisou q̃ se naõ auia de fiar delle que podia ir q̃ no forte ficauaõ soldados que mostrariaõ os lugares de que a prata sahia e como o dito fran<sup>co</sup> da fonseca tinha o intento no rescate do ouro se tornou de Caminho e fazendo procesos contra Diogo Simoës, o julgou por aleuantado, com o q̃ o fez desamparar o forte, que foi queimado pellos Cafres e o lugar delle circunuezinhos ocupados por mandado do Monomotapa pera ficar mais dificultoso ganhalo outra vez e fez o dito L<sup>do</sup> instrumen<sup>to</sup> de testemunhas falsas, averiguãdo que naõ auia prata, E que Diogo Simoës tinha mal informado a V. Mag<sup>do</sup>.

Chegando o Conde a esta Cidade, se enfermou do estado das minas E da sem Justiza que se Vsara Com Diogo Simoës q̃ com medo de o matarem por ordem de fran<sup>co</sup> da Fonseca se acolheo pera o Rey de Tambara na Botonga, e entendendo o Conde que Conuinha ao seruico de V. Mag<sup>do</sup> restituillo a seu officio de Capitaõ mor das minas. E que proseguisse a conquista dellas, mandou na moncaõ de Janeiro do anno passado de 618 Roupa pera leuar gente derigindo as a mim em falta do Governador que desse Reyno se esperaua, E eu proui na forma em que me foi mandado, com q̃ ficou restituído ao tempo em que me parti, e elle com os soldados que ajuntou o fazia pera a chicoua a ganhar o lugar do forte auisando ao Conde dos Prouimentos que eraõ necessarios pera proseguimento da empresa pera onde de

presente parte Dom Nun aluerez Pereyra que V. Mag<sup>de</sup> manda por Governador E conquistador das minas sendo vindo da Ilha de Ceilaõ de quem se pode esperar que de fim a empreza de tantos annos proseguida com o zello com q̄ costuma empregarse no seruiço de V. Mg<sup>de</sup>.

Pello que tenho alcansado com a experiencia daquellas partes entendo a variedade das informações que V. Mg<sup>de</sup> tem destas minas de prata, porq̄ as pessoas q̄ nellas falaõ as daõ conforme ao intento de seu parecer e pretençoẽs e sendo grande o perjuizo q̄ se segue a Real fazenda de V. Mag<sup>de</sup> direi acerca dellas o que na Realidade passa com a Verdade que deuo de vassallo e ministro do officio em que a V. Mag<sup>de</sup> siruo.

De muitos annos a esta parte se tem noticia de hauer nos Rios de Cuama minas de prata, e com a fama dellas foi eleito Governador de sua Conquista fran<sup>co</sup> Barreto que partio do Reyno o anno de 69 com muitas preuencoẽs de guerra e soldados. E falecendo nos Rios despois de ter alguĩs emcontros com os Cafres, lhe socedeo Vasco fernandez Homem, e despois Dom Fernando de Monrroy e por se gastar a gente com o trabalho da guerra e clima da terra e estar ainda emcuberto o sitio donde se tiraraõ alguĩs Pedras de prata que neste tempo se resgatauaõ se pos por alguĩs annos em esquecimento o tratarse do descobrim<sup>to</sup> dellas preualezendo com tudo a fama de as auer tornou o Arcebispo Dom frey Aleixo de Meneses como fica proposto, a mandar Dom Nun Aluerez Pereyra e o Visorrey Ruy Lourenço de Tauora Dom Esteuaõ de Taide que sendo mandado Vir ficou por Capitaõ mor o dito Diogo Simoẽs e como era pessoa intelligente nas terras do Monomotapa Veio averiguar que a prata de q̄ hauia as mostras, que tinhaõ sahido a luz em todo o tempo atraz se tiraua do lugar da Chicoua aonde fez o forte o Chuambo de faço mencaõ no principio desta Relaçãõ e hauendo nelle o presidio que fica dito o pode sustentar por espaço de dous annos Contradizendolho o Monomotapa por Guerra, de que foi emcarregado seu filho mayor por nome Sachicoua Con fundamento segundo ha noticia, de lhe fazerem crer os seus feiticeiros de que Vsa muito que o fim do seu Imperio estaua no descubrimento desta prata, mas cauando no discurso deste tempo nos lugares em que podiaõ tirauaõ Varias pedras de prata finissima e em tanta quantidade que fez com ella muitos meses paga aos soldados faltandolhe os prouim<sup>tos</sup>

de roupas ate que com aida do Liz<sup>do</sup> fran<sup>co</sup> da fonceca foi o forte desamparado dos soldados e ocupado dos Cafres.

No discurso dos dous annos em q̄ sustentou o forte se foi trazendo a prata que se tiraua pera as pouoações deste He Sena, e Moçambique, E os moradores foraõ fazendo della varios vasos e peças que todas Conforme as informaçõs que tomei importaraõ ao menos dous mil marcos. Naõ dando lugar os Cafres com a Guerra que faziaõ aos Soldados do presidio se alargarem muito do forte, E assi Com m<sup>ta</sup> pressa Vigia e arcabuzes no rostro cauauaõ pouco a terra achando ordinariam<sup>te</sup> em o liuel a pouca altura as Pedras que traziaõ as quaes fundidas Lançaraõ da prim<sup>ra</sup> fundiçaõ mais fina prata que a de Reales Respondendo hũa Com duas partes do pezo E outras Com a metade Eu vi vna pequena q̄ pezando dezoito onças ficou em dezaseis sem quebrarem mais q̄ duas mas ate o presente naõ ouue Mineiros q̄ entendissem se a terra Junto destas pedras era de fundiçaõ nem ha certeza de ser sitio onde se achaõ minas, Correntes pera o que he precissamente necessario, Virem officiaes peritos de experiencia das do Peru que conheçaõ estas porq̄ em quanto naõ Vierem senaõ averiguara a Zerteça que he nezzessaria em materia de tanta importancia E pera que saõ necessarias grandes despezas. He certo que acauandosse se acha terra meia Coalhada que mostra jrse Conuertendose em prata, mas fazendose com ella no fogo experiencia per Ouriuez que la foraõ ficaua em escoria Samente.

As pedras que se tem achado eraõ de diferente Grandeza porque alguãs ouue de hum arratel, ate hũa arroba e Eu trouxe hũa que Diogo Simoẽs tinha de duas arrobas menos quatro arrataẽs de que o Conde deue dar rezaõ a V. Mag<sup>do</sup> a qual se entende tem de prata mais de 70 marcos todas estas se achaõ apartadas hũa das outras, e se as mostras dellas daõ certeza de auer minas grosas nos Lugares donde saem podem se ter por certas porq̄ naõ ha duuida em se auerem tirado daquelle sitio da Chicoua.

He tambem Cousa Certa afirmarem alguns Cafres hauer em distancia de meia Jornada de Caminho do forte de Saõ Miguel Serras de Viua prata Sogeitos os Lugares dellas a tres fumos Como chamaõ os Cafres a seus Governadores hum delles por nome Cheremachaga que quer dizer na Lingoa dos Cafres Snõr da prata porq̄ aquelle seu sitio he de prata e outro Ottauo. E outro

façeira todos tres em destritos contiguos e Juridições apartadas mas Como Diogo Simoës não teue poder de gente E Cabedal de roupa pera chegar a elles não ha mais Certeza q̄ a fama dellas, e ter Diogo Simoës preso o filho de Charemachaga que afirma ser verdade que no destrito de seu pay estaõ as Serras referidas e que he contente que o Matem se assi o não acharem Leuando o a elle meio dia somente de caminho mas nesta materia não ha mais ate o presente q̄ o dito destes Cafres em q̄ poder auer falta não habendo nenhũa de se ter achado toda a mais no Sitio de chicoua.

Ha Varias pretenções nos moradores de Moçambique e Pouoções dos Rios pera huñs emcubrirem a Prata q̄ se tem achado E outros abonarem as minas Conforme a amizade E odio que tem Com Diogo Simoës e outros o fazem escandalizados de lhes ter tomado a faz<sup>da</sup> mas como na prata q̄ se tem achado ha evidencia e o que he visto por muitos não pode emcubrirem não ha quem dubide hauella mas dizem saõ pedras soltas as q̄ se tiraõ e que podendo ser não auer minas de muita importancia se arriscaõ grandes despezas podendose so tratar do ouro que he muito.

Em todas as terras Nauegando pello Rio assima da Banda do Sul, chamadas Botonga, e Mocranga da entrada do foz ate a chicoua que saõ 180 Leguoas senhoreadas por diferentes Reys de que os mais reconhecem o Monomotapa se achaõ Varios metaes alem do ouro que he o mais ordinario em todas porq̄ ha muito ferro cobre muy fino Asso e chumbo, e principalmente nas serras de Lupata Sogeitas ao Rey Nongaz com os antepassados do qual teue Guerras o Governador Fran<sup>co</sup> Barreto sem em nenhũa della se achar Prata algũa senaõ no districto da Chicoua e nas circumVecinhas E não so da banda do Monomotapa mas da outra do Rio pera o Norte chamada Bororo nos Limites do Rey Sapaõ na altura da dita Chicoua posto que aqui em pouca Cantedade, mas vi pederneira desta paragem, E dentro dellas Veias de prata Viua E como estas estaõ tanto ao Sertão e o Rio deixa de ser naueguel do forte de Saõ esteuaõ per asima quatro Jornadas por auer grandes rochedos foi causa porq̄ nos tempos atraz faltou a noticia da prata hauendo a de todos ou outros metaes e naceraõ por essa rezaõ a dificuldade de a poder Cauar o que não fora se seo Rio nauegara nesta Paragem mas posto que tudo isto denote probabilidade das minas requere a importancia dos excessiuos gastos q̄ saõ neccessarios pera a Conquista que

officiaes muy experimentados segurem a certeza dellas Porque sem esta experiencia precisamente necessaria ha Real fazenda pellas rezoês seguintes padecer muito detrimento.

A fortaleza de Moçambique Cuya guarda e segurança, he tão importante não tem mais rendimento pera as ordinarias E sustentação do Presidio que os 300000<sup>Reaes</sup> que os Capitaes pagão de penção quando os ha prouido Com o contrato dos Rios e se estam sem contrato os Ministros da Fazenda os abrem a quintos e ordinariamente se haõ na arrecadação dos Reaes direitos com pouca fidelidade do que se segue q̄ se não tirara do rresgate mayor rendimento do que importa a penção e hauendo de hauer na fortaleza os trezentos Soldados do Regimento que V. Mag<sup>de</sup> manda saõ todos necessarios pera elles pagandose as mais ordinarias de Capitaõ ministros Religiosos, e clerigos. e ficasse hauendo mister de fora toda a despeza da Conquista em q̄ se fez a paga dos soldados em Roupas que he ordinario dinheiro que naquellas partes corre pera compra de todo o prouimento e hauendo somente na Conquista 500 soldados saõ necessarias 250 bares de roupa forros de todos os Custos por vencer cada soldado em hum anno meio bar e estes 250 bares Valem postos nos Rios 400000<sup>Reaes</sup> não se contando os ordenados do Governador Capitaõ E outros Ministros que haõ de importar mais de dez e como esta despeza he grossa Com que o estado não pode por hauer grandes quebras nas alfandegas e direitos Reaes se segue q̄ a Conquista ha de dar muito Cuydado ao Viso Rey ficando a sua Conta os Prouimentos por onde me parece q̄ com muita breuidade deuem vir desse Reyno officiaes das Minas para q̄ Verificado q̄ as ha do proueito q̄ as informações daõ a entender se tire dellas Cabedal Com que se sustente a Conquista.

As terras dos Rios de Cuama saõ fertilissimas E muy largas, e producem muy grande copia de arroz e outros mantim<sup>tos</sup> e Legumes nos Lugares em q̄ os Sameaõ mas por falta de gente casi todas ficaõ por cultiuar por cuyo respeito quando nelles entra mayor numero que de ordinario socedem grandes faltas e Vem a morrer de fome os soldados porq̄ todos os Mantimentos q̄ se leuaõ de fora se vendem por excessiuos preços e os mais delles acabaõ miseravelm<sup>te</sup> Sendo muita Causa a destemperança do clima de aquellas partes.

Por estas Rezoês as Pessoas de experiencia parece q̄ a conquista se deve fazer Com pouca gente e muita Roupa, e he parecer este

tambem de Diogo Simoës porque com ella se faz mais Guerra aos Cafres q̄ com armas sendo todos muy leuados do interesse e basta darem-se presentes aos Regullos para desistirem das Armas e os fazer andar entre si Com ellas sendo de muita Vtilidade gastarse nestes presentes a despeza q̄ se ha de fazer com a gente necessaria escusando Com elles os rriscos dos soldados se não ha difficuldade que se não Vença dandose aos Cafres Panos de q̄ são Com todo extremo muito Codiciosos.

A mais gente q̄ as Pessoas experimentadas entendem ser necessaria são duzentos homens effectiuos e sendo todos bem Armados de arcabuzes são bastantes pera todo o poder do Monomotapa a experiencia mostrou bem no tempo que Diogo Simoës sustentou o Chuambo Com quarenta soldados por espaço de dous annos Estando sempre de Guerra porq̄ sendo o Chuambo de madeira preualeceo Contra o filho de Monomotapa E o fizera muito mais tempo se fora Socorrido e o não obrigaraõ ao desamparar faltandolhe Com o socorro E com ducentos Portuguezes emtendem todos que se podem seguramente Correr todas as terras do dito Monomotapa e reconheça todas as terras de Chicoua, Principalm<sup>te</sup> peitando os fumos e senhores dos districtos circum Vezinhos tendo em fronteira da outra banda do Rio o Rey Sapo poderoso inimigo nosso.

Do Relatado nesta informação que faço a V. Mag<sup>de</sup> Com as particularidades nella referidas resultaõ por remate as esperanças q̄ se deuem ter de hauer minas muy grosas de prata e sendo Com o fauor diuino descubertas se seguira a restauraçã deste estado Cuyas forsas estaõ muy diminuidas Por falta de Dinheiro e escreuem nelle obrigações Com que não pode e q̄ ate o presente não ouue mais certeza, que se acharã sem hauer mineiros que o entendaõ que tenho por principal fundamento de toda a preparaçaõ da Conquista que V. Mag<sup>de</sup> foi seruido de mandar ordenar.

Goa 7 de Feuereiro 1619.

DIOGO DA CUNHA DE CASTELBRANCO.

*[Translation of the foregoing.]*

REPORT MADE BY THE GOVERNOR-GENERAL DIOGO DA CUNHA DE CASTELBRANCO, BY COMMAND OF THE COUNT VICEROY, THAT HIS MAJESTY MAY BE INFORMED OF THE PROGRESS OF THE CONQUEST OF THE SILVER MINES IN THE STATE OF CUAMA.

Diogo Simões Madeira, a merchant in the rivers of Cuama, had entry to the lands of Monomotapa in wars with other claimants to that kingdom who had deprived him of the royal residence called Zimbauhe. The former hoped to prevail over his enemies by the help of the Portuguese, and Diogo Simões, having intelligence that the silver mines were in the mountains of Chicova, obtained a grant of them for your Majesty, on condition that he would put him in possession of the said Zimbauhe.

Your Majesty was informed of this grant, and the archbishop Dom Frey Aleixo de Meneses, being governor of this state, moved by the fame of these mines, sent Dom Nuno Alvares Pereira to those rivers with military forces, and employing the said Diogo Simões, assisted the said Monomotapa in recovering his royal residence, thus fulfilling the conditions of the grant which the said Diogo Simões had obtained for your Majesty. Dom Nuno Alvares then wished to proceed to the mines, but was commanded to go to India. After this, on the arrival of the viceroy Dom Ruy Lourenço de Tavora, he made a contract with Dom Estevão de Ataide, and commanded him to carry on the enterprise, which he did until your Majesty commanded his presence.

Dom Estevão de Ataide having gone from the rivers of Cuama in the year 1612, left Diogo Simões Madeira commander of the conquest of the silver mines. On reaching Chicova, which is 180 leagues from the mouth of the river, he built a wooden fort in the territory of Monomotapa, called Chuambo in the language of the Kaffirs, to which he gave the name of St. Michael; as some silver was found there, he fortified himself in that place with a garrison of soldiers. Some silver was dug up there, and this gave rise to the rumour that mines had been discovered, and the said Diogo Simões informed your Majesty of the state of the discovery, sending specimens of the metal found.



At this time, Dom Hieronimo de Azevedo was appointed viceroy of this State, and Diogo Simões continued the discovery, maintaining the fort. He asked to be provided with clothing both for the garrison and to give to the Kaffirs, and being destitute of everything, he came to Tete and to the store-houses of the captain, who was then Dom João de Azevedo, and took what was contained in them, alleging that he should have been supplied by his brother the viceroy, and your Majesty commanded him to continue the enterprise until the year 1614, when Ruy de Mello de Sampaio came from that kingdom, at which time the trading ships were wrecked, and Diogo Simões was in greater destitution than before; but he still maintained the fort in hope of assistance, subsisting on tamarinds, and defending themselves from the Kaffirs by whom they were attacked many times.

In the year 1615 the viceroy Dom Hieronimo de Azevedo commanded the licentiate Francisco da Fonseca Pinto to go to the fortress of Mozambique and to visit the rivers, and on his arrival at Chicova to verify the existence of the said mines and make sure that the silver of which Diogo Simões sent samples had been found in that place, or if he had been guilty of any deceit in the matter, that thus great expenses might be spared, and that his Majesty might have reliable information in a business of such importance.

On his arrival at the fortress (of Mozambique) the licentiate Francisco da Fonseca cunningly removed Ruy de Mello de Sampaio from it, hoping to usurp his contract and enter the territory of the rivers, claiming all the profits for the royal exchequer of which he was controller, and finding that Diogo Simões was likely to prove an obstacle to his design, he endeavoured to intimidate him, as he did not trust him, and with the forces with which he should have assisted him he fell upon a village of his slaves and killed some, taking his nephew prisoner, who had accompanied him to point out the way, so that Diogo Simões was afraid to trust him, though there were soldiers in the fort who could point out the place where the silver was found. The object of the said Francisco da Fonseca being the gold trade, he returned and proceeded against Diogo Simões, and condemned him as a rebel, obliging him to abandon the fort, which was burned by the Kaffirs, and the surrounding parts were occupied by order of Monomotapa. But it will be more difficult

to gain it a second time, and the said licentiate bore false witness in saying that no silver had been discovered, and that Diogo Simões had given his Majesty false information.

When the count arrived in this city he informed himself of the state of the mines and of the injustice with which Diogo Simões had been treated, who, for fear of being put to death by order of Francisco da Fonseca, took refuge with the king of Tambara in Botonga. And the count understanding that it would be to his Majesty's service to restore him to his office of commander of the enterprise in the mines, that the same might be carried on, sent in January of the past year 1618 a provision of cloth for that purpose, directing it to me in default of the governor who was expected from Portugal, and I acting according to my instructions, he was reinstated, and when I left he set out for Chicova with the soldiers assembled for that purpose, to regain the fort, informing the count of what it was necessary to provide for the prosecution of the enterprise. Dom Nuno Alvares Pereira, whom your Majesty has appointed to command the conquest of the mines, being now come from the island of Ceylon, it is to be hoped that he will bring this enterprise of so many years to a successful issue, with his customary zeal in your Majesty's service.

My experience in these parts has shown me what varying information your Majesty has received concerning these silver mines, for those who have reported on the subject have done so according to their own opinions and pretensions, and the prejudice which may ensue to the royal exchequer being very great, I have reported concerning them with the truth befitting the office in which I serve your Majesty, as your subject.

For many years there has been information in these parts that there were silver mines in the rivers of Cuama, and their fame was such that Francisco Barreto was appointed commander of their conquest, and set out from the kingdom in the year 1569 with many soldiers and necessaries of war. He died in the rivers, after several encounters with the Kaffirs, and was succeeded by Vasco Fernandes Homem, and afterwards by Dom Fernando de Mouray, and the war and climate of that country causing great losses among our people, and the site in which some silver had been found being still undiscovered, the enterprise was abandoned for some years. But the rumours of their existence

still prevailing, the archbishop Dom Frey Aleixo de Meneses, as has been stated, sent Dom Nuno Alvares Pereira; and the viceroy Ruy Lourenço de Tavora sent Dom Estevão de Ataíde, who, being recalled, appointed the said Diogo Simões commander of the enterprise, as being a person well acquainted with the territory of Monomotapa. He ascertained that the samples of silver which had been found in times past were taken from that part of Chicova where he built the fort, or chuambo, as is stated at the beginning of this report; and with the garrison aforesaid he was able to maintain it for the space of two years, Monomotapa opposing his design, making war upon him by his eldest son called Sachicova, his motive being, it is said, that his magicians in whom he had great faith induced him to believe that the discovery of the silver would be the end of his empire. But during the aforesaid space of time, in those parts to which they had access, silver of the finest quality was found in such quantities that it was used for many months to pay the soldiers, provision of cloth being wanting, until through the coming of the licentiate Francisco da Fonseca the fort was abandoned by the soldiers and occupied by the Kaffirs.

During the two years in which the fort was maintained, the silver which was extracted was brought to the settlements of Sena and Mozambique, and the inhabitants fashioned it into vases and other articles, to the amount, according to the information I acquired, of twelve thousand marks at least. The war waged against them by the Kaffirs did not allow them to leave the vicinity of the fort, and such silver as they found was taken quickly almost from the surface of the earth, with a guard of arquebusiers. This silver ore in the first melting yielded finer metal than that of reals, some producing two parts of their weight in silver, and some a half. I saw a small lump of ore weighing eighteen ounces, which yielded sixteen ounces of silver, only losing two ounces in the melting.

Until the present time there have been no miners who could say if the earth in which this ore was found would yield silver, nor is there any certainty that mines would be found. It is very necessary that officials experienced in the mines of Peru should inspect these, for until this is done, the certainty so necessary in a matter of such importance and demanding such great expenditure cannot be acquired. It is certain that in digging earth

has been found showing signs of being transmuted into silver, but on being tested by the silversmiths it yielded only dross.

The lumps of silver ore already discovered were of different sizes, some weighing from a pound to thirty-two. I brought one with me from Diogo Simões, which weighed sixty pounds, of which the count must give your Majesty an account, and which is said to contain more than seventy marks of silver. All these were found apart from each other, and if these samples are a certain sign of the existence of large mines in the place whence they are taken, it is beyond a doubt that they were extracted from the said spot in Chicova.

It is also certain that some of the Kaffirs affirm that there are mountains of silver at a distance of half a day's journey from the fort of St. Michael, the country in which they are situated being subject to three fumos, as the Kaffirs call their governors. One of these is called Cheremachaga, which means in the language of the Kaffirs "Lord of the Silver," because his territory is of silver, the second is called Ottavo, and the third Faseira, all three in adjoining districts and separate jurisdictions. But as Diogo Simões had neither forces nor the necessary provisions of cloths, &c., to undertake this journey, there is no certainty beyond the rumour and the fact that Diogo Simões captured the son of Cheremachaga, who declared it to be true that the said mountains were to be found in his father's territory, and that he was content to be put to death if his statement proved false and he did not conduct them thither in half a day's journey. But up to the present time there is only the word of the said Kaffirs in proof of this, which may prove false, and all the silver has hitherto been found in the said place in Chicova.

The testimony of the inhabitants and population of Mozambique is at variance, some denying that silver has been found, and some affirming the existence of the mines, according to their good or ill will towards Diogo Simões, others are angered against him for depriving them of their property. But the silver already found is clear evidence, and what has been witnessed by many cannot be concealed, so that it is beyond a doubt; yet some affirm that these are single lumps of ore, and it may be that there are no mines of much importance, and great expense would be incurred, which might be devoted to the extraction of gold, which is very abundant.

From the mouth of the river to Chicova, the territories on the southern side are Botonga and Mokaranga, the distance being 180 leagues, under the dominion of different kings, most of whom acknowledge Monomotapa. Various metals are found in these parts; besides gold, which is the most common, there is much iron, very fine copper, and lead, principally in the mountains of Lupata, the territory of King Mongaz, with whose predecessors the governor Francisco Barreto was at war. There is no silver in these parts, except in the district of Chicova and the neighbourhood, not only in the territory of Monomotapa but also on the other side of the river to the north, in the district called Bororo, the territory of King Sapan, on the heights of Chicova, but only in small quantities. I have seen samples of stone from these parts containing veins of silver. These parts being so far inland, and the river not being navigable at four days' journey from the fort of St. Stephen, on account of the large rocks, was the reason that there was no knowledge of the existence of this silver in times past, though the other metals were known of; this is also the cause of the difficulty in extracting it, which would not exist if the river were navigable. Though all this denotes the probable existence of mines, the great expenditure which would be required to work them makes it necessary that experienced officials should first certify their existence, for without this necessary certainty the royal exchequer is liable to great loss, as will appear from the following reasons.

The fortress of Mozambique, the safety and security of which is of such importance, has no other grant for the pay and maintenance of the garrison than the £3375 which the captains pay for the grant of the commerce of the rivers, or when this is not done the ministers of the finances allow it from the taxes on it, and as little fidelity is generally shown in collecting the royal dues, the profit of the commerce does not amount to more than the sum usually paid for the grant of it. Your Majesty commands that the fortress should contain three hundred soldiers, that number being necessary, besides which there is the pay of the captain, ministers of religion, and ecclesiastics. All the expense for the conquest of the mines must come from without, the soldiers being paid in cloth, which is used as money in those parts, and is taken in payment for all necessaries, so that should the expedition consist of 500 soldiers only, 250 bars are required, free of cost,

each soldier costing half a bar per annum. These 250 bars with transport to the rivers cost £4500, without counting the pay of the governor, captain, and other officers, which amounts to more than £1125. This expense is very great, and cannot be borne by this State, there being a great diminution in the customs and royal dues, so that the conquest of the mines would be a heavy burden on the viceroy if he is called upon to provide for it, and I am therefore of opinion that mining experts should be sent out without delay, to verify the information concerning the mines, that sufficient capital may be drawn from them to make the expedition self-supporting.

The lands among the rivers of Cuama are most fertile and extensive, yielding large crops of rice and other provisions, and vegetables in the places where these are sown; but for want of population they are mostly uncultivated, so that when a larger number than usual enter them, there is great scarcity, and the soldiers die of hunger, the provisions imported being sold at an exorbitant price, so that most of them perish miserably, which is in great measure caused by the intemperate climate of those parts.

Experienced persons are therefore of opinion that the conquest should be carried on with a small force and a large quantity of cloth, which is also the opinion of Diogo Simões, for this is more effectual against the Kaffirs than arms, as they are easily moved by interest, it being sufficient to give presents to the petty kings to gain free access among them. It would be of great advantage to devote the funds which are to provide forces to buying presents, thus avoiding the risking our soldiers, for there is no opposition which cannot be overcome by making presents of cloths to the Kaffirs, of which they are very covetous.

Experienced persons are of opinion that a force of two hundred able soldiers, well armed with arquebuses, would be sufficient to oppose the whole force of Monomotapa, as is proved by the fact that Diogo Simões maintained the chuambo with forty soldiers for the space of two years, and though the fort was of wood and he was continually at war, he held his own against the son of Monomotapa, and would have done so much longer, if he had been succoured and not forced to abandon the fort. All agree that two hundred Portuguese would be sufficient to go over all the territory of Monomotapa, and survey the territory of Chicova, especially by bribing the fumos and rulers of the surrounding

districts, the dominions of King Sapo, our powerful enemy, being on the opposite bank of the river.

The end of the report I have made to your Majesty and of the information therein contained is to prove what hopes may be entertained of the existence of large mines, which being discovered, by divine favour will bring about the restoration of this State, whose strength is so diminished for want of funds and the burden of obligations with which it cannot cope, and to show that to the present time there is no certainty of their existence, for want of the opinion of mining experts, which in my opinion is the chief step in the preparations of conquest which your Majesty has been pleased to order.

Goa, 7th February 1619.

(Signed) **DIOGO DA CUNHA DE CASTELBRANCO.**

Conde Vizo Rey Amigo Eu El Rey vos envio m<sup>to</sup> Saudar Como aquelle que amo. Domingos Cardazo de Mello que na rellação desse Estado seruia de Procurador da Coroa me deo conta nas vias do anno passado Como tinha havido Sentença Contra Ieronimo de Macedo Sobre os embargos Com que vinha a não pagar vinte mil pardaos que devia a minha fazenda do reste da pèzaõ do tempo que seu Irmão Sebastião de Macedo teve o Contrato dos Rios de Cuama, e por quanto minha fazenda estava ja entregue deste dinheiro procurava o dito Ieronimo de Macedo tornalo a haver por modo extraordinario, o qual por tirar huns Conhecimentos de despeza que diz tinha feita Com os portos dos Rios de Cuama de 101,900 pardaos os quaes haviaõ Sido passados por hum Feitor do dito Sebastião de Macedo, e que alcançara despacho por onde lhe houveraõ por recebidos os ditos conhecimentos na Conta do Feitor Pedro Migueis a qual despeza se lhe não podia levar em conta, por ter o dito Sebastião de Macedo obrigação de Sustentar os ditos fortes, e os ditos Conhecimentos não Serem pastados por official algum meu que houvesse de dar Conta, e que Como o dito Ieronimo de Macedo tinha em se feitos os ditos papeis requera na meza dos contos alegando Como se fo não podia cobrar delle aquelle dinheiro por quanto minha fazenda lhe era devedora em outra tanta quantia, e mais do que montavaõ os ditos vinte mil pardaos, e que conforme o direito se

lhe não podia negar compensação do liquido a liquido, e que apresentando papeis correntes se lhe passassem outros para cobrar os ditos vinte mil pardaos de minha fazenda, e que se lhe dera despacho que apresentando papeis liquidos, e Correntes se lhe fizesse a dita Compençassão ao qual despacho ha outro que tinha alcançado para se lhe a Ceitarem os ditos Conhecim<sup>tos</sup> na Conta do dito Pedro Migueis viera com embargos o dito meu Procurador com que esperava mostrar este engano mas que como fora mandado ao Norte Com alçada não podia dar me conta da Rezoluçãõ como tambem não podia avizar me do que se havia tomado na Cauza de Tristaõ de Abreu que fora Th<sup>ro</sup> de Goa, que corria por embargos nem da auçãõ que puzera aos herdeiros de Goida que fora contratador da pimenta a quem minha fazenda estava obrigada em quantia de mais de Cem mil pardaos por quanto conforme ao foral ley dos vzos, e Costumes ficara Sucedendo nos bens do dito Gentio minha fazenda por morrer sem herdeiros ascendentes nem descendentes, e porque eu quero ser informado com toda a particularidade do que passa nos particulares de que o dito Domingos Cardozo trata que nesta se refere pela muita importancia de que Saõ tive por Conveniente advertir vos delles por esta Como o faço, para que logo que a receberdes façaes todas as diligencias que o o porem para vos inteirardes de todos e me deis Conta do que achardes e se offerecer aCerca de Cada hum enviando me os treslados das Sentenças que se hoverem dado, e dos papeis que acerca destas materias, e haver, e fundamentos das Cauzas para mandar ver tudo, e proceder nellas Como mais convier a meu serviço, e em quanto eu me não rezolver nestes negocios se não fara pagamento algum que o que a qualquer delles a nenhuma pessoa.

Escrita em Lixboa a Sete de Março de 1619.

REY.

DUQUE DE VILLA HERMOZA.

CONDE DE FICALHO.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, viceroy, friend, I the king send you many greetings as one whom I love. Domingos Cardoso de Mello, who in connection with that State held the office of attorney-general, reported to me by the ships of last year that sentence had been passed



against Jeronimo de Macedo for not having paid twenty thousand pardaos due to my treasury, being the balance of the sum due for the time his brother Sebastião de Macedo held the contract of the rivers of Cuama, and although this money had been paid to my treasury, yet the said Jeronimo de Macedo managed to recover it in an unusual manner; and he has drawn up various statements of sums which he says were expended on the ports of the rivers of Cuama, amounting to one hundred thousand nine hundred pardaos, which passed through the hands of one of the said Sebastião de Macedo's factors, and he says that he will procure a receipt showing that the said statements were entered in the account of the factor Pedro Migueis, which sums cannot be credited to him, as the said Sebastião de Macedo was under obligation to maintain the said forts, and the said statements were not approved by any of my officials who should account for them, and that as the said Jeronimo de Macedo has the said papers in his possession, he declares in the council of the treasury that the said money cannot be recovered from him, alleging that my treasury was in his debt to twice the amount of the said twenty thousand pardaos and more, and that in justice full compensation cannot be refused him, and that on presenting written documents other orders should be given to him by which to recover the said twenty thousand pardaos from my treasury, and that an order should be given to him to the effect that on presenting written documents, the said compensation will be made to him, besides which he has another document according to which the statements entered in the account of the said Pedro Migueis should be accepted. My attorney was to have brought forward charges by which he hoped to throw light upon this fraud, but being sent as chief judge to the north, he was unable to send me an account of the decision come to, neither could he inform me of the resolution taken in the case concerning the charges brought against Tristão de Abreu, who was treasurer of Goa, nor of the action which he brought against the heirs of Goinda, who was the contractor for the pepper, to whom my treasury was in debt for more than one hundred thousand pardaos, because dying without leaving heirs either in the ascending or descending line, according to the registered laws of usages and customs my treasury succeeded to the goods of the said heirs; and as I wish to have full and detailed information of the cases of which the said

Domingos Cardoso treats, and which are referred to in this, because of the great importance of them, I thought fit to advise you of them by this, as I now do, that immediately on receipt of this letter you may take all possible means to obtain full information concerning all of them; and you shall send me an account of the result of your research, and the particulars relating to each one, sending me copies of the sentences passed, and of the papers relating to these matters, and of the grounds upon which the proceedings were taken, that I may give order for the whole matter to be examined, and act herein as is fitting to my service; and until I have passed a resolution in these matters no payment of any kind shall be made to any person concerned in them.

Written in Lisbon, the 7th of March 1619.

THE KING.

DUKE OF VILLAHERMOSA.

COUNT OF FICALHO.

---

Conde vizo Rey Amigo. Eu El Rey vos envio muito Saudar Como aquelle que amo. Tive por acerca do officio que fizestes Com os Prellados da Companhia de Saõ Domingos em razaõ do que eu vos havia escrito nas vias do anno de seis centos dezasete acerca da confirmidade que enviem que tenhaes os Religiozos das suas ordens nos Rios de Cuama e em Mossambique pella informaçã que se me deo de andarem divizos e assim me pareceo conveniente o intento com que me avizaes que ficaveis de dar copia da minha Carta em que vos trataes deste particular a primeira que fosse aquella Conquista para a exutar particularmente no ponto de terem os ditos Religiozos naquellas partes as suas Igrejas em Lugares instintos para mais facilmente se consinguir entre elles por este modo a paz e quietaçã que tanto importa que tenhaõ a vista dos Gentios de Cuja conversã vaõ tratar pelo que vos encomendo muito que assim o executeis, e de como houverdes feito; e do que resultar me deis conta para o ter entendido.

Escrita em Lixboa a Sete de Março de 1619.

REY.

DUQUE DE VILLAHERMOZA.

CONDE DE FICALHO.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, viceroy, and friend, I the king send you many greetings as one whom I love. I approve of your action with the superiors of the Company of Jesus and of the Dominicans, in virtue of what I wrote to you in the letters of the year 1617, concerning the arrangement between the religious of their orders in the rivers of Cuama and Mozambique, on account of the information given to me of their being at variance; and therefore I think your intention right, of which you informed me, of giving a copy of my letter to you which deals with this matter to the first person who goes to that conquest, that they may carry it out, particularly as regards the division of the churches and places held by the said religious in those parts, that by this means peace and tranquillity between them may be attained, which it is so important there should be in sight of the heathen for whose conversion they are labouring; and therefore I earnestly charge you to act in accordance with this; and you shall send me a report of what you have done and the results of it, that I may be informed thereof.

Written in Lisbon, the 7th of March 1619.

THE KING.

DUKE OF VILLAHERMOSA.

COUNT OF FICALHO.

---

Conde vizo Rey Amigo. Eu El Rey vos envio muito Saudar como aquelle que amo. Vendo o que me escrevestes nas vias do anno passado em resposta da ordem que daquy levastes acerca dos provimentos que vos Comety que mandasseis a Mossambique para a sustentação da gente que eu tinha assentado de enviar daquy aquella praça para se emprender a ella a Conquista das Minas dando me Conta do estado em que as Couzas daquellas partes se achavaõ com a alteraçã que nellas havia Cauzado Francisco da Fonceca Pinto, e do successo da perda do Forte de Chicova me pareceo dizer vos que me houve por bem servido do Cuidado com que me dizeis que ficaveis de por em effeito assim o que toca ao dito provimento como em particular o remedio que Convem dar se promptamente as desordens, e perda

que se tem padecido na dita conquista com ocazião da entrada do dito Francisco da Fonceca nos rios de que tive particular sentimento por o muito que se houverão atrazado com isso as Couzas, e trabalho que mais ha de custar tornalas a seu Lugar, e passar adiante nellas athe se porem no fim que se pretende, e porque nas Naos da Armada que levou a seu Cargo o anno passado Dom Christovão de Noronha vos avizey de que de novo tinha rezoluto nesta materia nomeando para a dita Conquista a Dom Nuno Alvares Pereira e enviando daquy quantidade de dinheiro para aJuda do apresto desta jornada, e as mais ordens que tereis visto e em conformidade dellas tenho por Certo que Dom Nuno Alvares se houvera disposto a me servir nella, e que vos havereis feito do modo que em Cazo que não haja partido quando recerberdes esta se não dilate mais a sua partida em Consideraçã do muito que Convem aCudir se a dita conquista para que de todo não se acabe de perder o que se tinha ganhado como aconteceu ao forte de Chicova vos encomendo e encarrego muito que vos Seja presente este negocio Como hum dos de mais importancia que Convem por vossa Conta para o que a este respeito ponhaes nelle tão particular Cuidado que rezulte de vossa boa diligencia não tão Somente o melhoramento da dita Conquista mas ainda o effeito della, e para que Dom Nuno Alvares se disponha com toda a facilidade e se haja por mais penhorado ao fazer assim com respeito da muita necessidade que ha delle em Mossambique lhe mando escrever a Carta que recibereis Com esta a qual lhe fareis dar achandosse ainda ahy para Com isso, e Com os mais officios que com elle fizerdes havendo o aprestado de tudo o que ha de levar o obrigardes a que não se dilate mais, e porque tambem tenho entendido que Diogo Simoens Madeira se achava prezo ahy por razaõ das differenças que teve Com Francisco da Fonceca, e por outras Cauzas que elle deo para proceder Contra elle e este home se tem por muy importãte nesta Iornada tambem la e mando escrever favorecendo o e encarregando lhe que achando se nella em Companhia de Dom Nuno Alvares acabe de me fazer nesta materia o Serviço que me tem offerecido e esta Carta lhe dareis em Cazo que não tenhaes Culpas delles que obriguem em contrario procedimento, e no mesmo Cazo havendo incõveniente nisso hey por bem que ordeneis que tenhaõ effeito as merces que fez ao dito Diogo Simoens de que Francisco da Fonceca o

Suspendeo pellas diferenças que teve com elle e de tudo o que fizerdes, e proverdes nesta materia, e do Estado em que ella se achar me dareis Conta com toda a particularidade por todas as vias.

Escrita em Lixboa a dezaeito de Março de 1619.

DUQUE DE ALENQUER.

DUQ DE FRANCA VILLAS.

*[English translation of the foregoing.]*

Count, viceroy, and friend, I the king send you many greetings as one whom I love. Seeing what you have written to me last year in connection with the orders you took with you from this place concerning the supplies I commissioned you to send to Mozambique for the maintenance of the men whom I had resolved to send from this kingdom to that fortress, to undertake the conquest of the mines, giving me an account of the state of affairs in those parts, by reason of the disturbances caused by Francisco da Fonseca Pinto, and informing me of the loss of the fort of Chicova; I think fit to inform you that I consider you have rendered me good service by the care which, as you tell me, you have shown, both as regards furnishing the said supplies, and especially in the measures which it was advisable to take without delay to remedy the disorders and the loss suffered by the said conquest in consequence of Francisco da Fonseca's entrance into the rivers, which I especially regret because of the delay it has caused and the difficulty it will occasion before matters are replaced on their former footing and can be pushed forward until the end in view is attained. And because by the ships of the fleet which sailed last year under command of Dom Christovão de Noronha I sent you information of the new resolutions passed in the matter, appointing Dom Nuno Alvares Pereira to the said conquest, and sending a sum of money to assist in the equipment of this expedition, and also the other orders which you will have seen, in accordance with which I am confident that Dom Nuno Alvares will have been ready to serve me in that place, and that you will have acted according to them, so that, if he has not already started when you receive this, let him not delay his departure longer, in consideration of the great importance of forwarding the said

conquest, that it may not lose all it has gained, as has happened with regard to the fort of Chicova, I recommend and earnestly charge you to bear this matter in mind, as one of the most important of your duties, and as such to give it your special attention, that by your diligence not only the conquest may be advanced, but the fruits of it secured, and that Dom Nuno Alvares may be disposed with all readiness and be more anxious to accomplish this, because of the great need of his presence in Mozambique, I commanded the letter to be written to him that you will receive with this, which you will give him if he is still there, that by this means, and the other measures you may observe towards him, having supplied all that he is to take with him, you will oblige him not to delay longer. And as I also gather that Diogo Simoens Madeira is a prisoner there, on account of the differences between him and Francisco da Fonseca and other matters brought forward by the latter for his proceedings against him, and as this man is considered to be of great importance to the expedition, I commanded also a letter to be written to him favouring him and charging him if he accompanies Dom Nuno Alvares to perform the services which he offered to render me in the matter, and this letter you will deliver to him in the event of your not finding him guilty of excesses which oblige you to act in a contrary manner; and if there are doubts in this case I think fit that you shall give order for the favours which I bestowed on the said Diogo Simoens, which were suspended by Francisco da Fonseca on account of the difficulties between them, to be restored to him; and by all the modes of conveyance you shall send me a detailed account of all that you perform and order in this matter, and of the state in which it is.

Written in Lisbon, the 18th of March 1619.

DUKE OF ALENQUER.

DUKE OF FRANCA VILLAS.

---

Logo como o faço e os duplicados delles irão dous navios que a por estes haõ de partir em directura á Monçabique com alguns provimentos a nelles se inviaõ a Dom Nunes Alveres P<sup>ra</sup> para o beneficio das minas de manamotapa de que o tenho encarregado e porque como tendes entendido . . .

Por Sima de nesta oCaziaõ Seccorer daquy monçabique e Dom Nunes Alveres Peireira com o que pode Ser naõ haveis de fazer razaõ disso para deixardes delle acodir Sempre com tudo o que poderdes pois como vereis dos avizos referidos e de exemplos passados a cubiça das minas de manomotapa incimente aos rebeldes e desiarem e pretenderem senhorearsse dellas e daquella força e assim Convem que se fortifique as bocas dos Rios de Cuama de modo que fique a Segurado de todo a entrada das ditas minas como ordeneno a Dom Nunes Alvores Peireira que o faço envitamente ao Capitaõ de Monçabique deixando tambem a vossa conta e cuidado e procudes Se assim Se execute pontualmente Sem se perder tempo e que do mesmo modo se fortifique a fortaleza.

*[English translation of the foregoing.]*

\* \* \* \* immediately as I now do, and the duplicates of them will be sent by two ships which are to sail presently direct to Mozambique with some supplies for Dom Nuno Alvares Pereira, for the benefit of the mines of Monomotapa, which I have entrusted to him, and because as you have understood \* \* \* \*

On account of all possible assistance being sent from Portugal on this occasion to Mozambique and Dom Nuno Alvares Pereira, you shall not make this an excuse for not giving him always all the assistance in your power, because as you will see by the information referred to, and by past examples, the rebels covet the mines of Monomotapa, and will desire and attempt to take possession of them, and to conquer that force, therefore it is advisable to fortify the mouths of the rivers of Cuama so that the entrance to the mines may be entirely protected, for which I have given order to Dom Nuno Alvares Pereira, and to the captain of Mozambique, leaving this matter also under your charge and care; and you shall see that this is accomplished accordingly, punctually and without loss of time, and that the fortress be fortified in the same way.

Lisbon, 28th January 1620.

---

Conde V.Rey amigo Ev El Rey vos envio muito Savdar como aquelle que amo. Diogo Simoës Madeira me Escreueo nas

vias do anno passado dando me Conta do animo com que ficava para me Servir na conquista das minas de manomotapa, e eu lhe mando responder animando o cumprir o que offerece e porque para tudo Sera bom emuiarte lhe a merce que hum lhe tinha feito, me pareceo se ne ficar vos por esta Como o faço que não se lhe tendo emviado lha mandeis na primeira monção para que Com isso passe adiante nos bom propozito que diz que tem e na assistencia que para bem da dita Conquista convem que faça a dom nuno Aluares pella esta mesma Confirmitade lhe escrevereis uos tambem.

Escrita em Lisboa a 2 de Março de 1620.

REY.

DUQUE DE VILLAHERMOZA.

CONDE FICALHO.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, viceroy, friend, I the king greet you well as one whom I love. Diogo Simoens Madeira wrote to me by the ships of last year, informing me of his desire to serve me in the conquest of the mines of Monomotapa, and I have commanded a reply to be sent to him, encouraging him to accomplish what he offered to do; and because it would be advantageous in this matter to send him the grant which I bestowed on him, I think fit, as I now inform you, that you should not keep the said grant, but, if it is not already sent to him, should send it to him in the first monsoon, that by this means he may accomplish the good intentions of which he informs me, and render the assistance to Dom Nuno Alvares which for the advancement of the said conquest it is convenient he should render. You shall also write to him to this effect.

Written in Lisbon, the 2nd of March 1620.

THE KING.

DUKE OF VILLAHERMOZA.

COUNT OF FICALHO.

---

Conde VRey Amigo Eu El Rey vos envio muito Saudar Como aquelle que amo. Hauendo visto o que me Escreuestes pellas naos do anno passado hey o que nesta materia o que preuestes nas



Capitanias de Mossambique, e Sofalla me pareceo dizer uos que aprouey o que nessa materia fizestes en execuçaõ do que aCerca della eu os hauia ordenado e que outras Cartas que hauereis recebido nos nauios que daquy foraõ em dereitura a Mossambique de que nestas Vias vay a duplicado hauereis entendido o mais que ouue por bem de resolver neste negocio.

Escrita em Lisboa a 5 de Março de 1620.

REY.

DUQUE DE VILLAHERMOZA.

CONDE DE FICALHO.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, viceroy, and friend, I the king greet you well as one whom I love. Having seen what you wrote to me by the ships of last year, I approve of the measures which you have taken as regards the captaincies of Mozambique and Sofala, and I think fit to inform you that I approve of what you accomplished in the matter in execution of the orders which I gave you; and by other letters which you will have received by the ships which sailed direct from this place to Mozambique, and of which duplicates are sent by these ships, you will have seen the resolutions which I thought fit further to take in this business.

Written in Lisbon, the 5th of March 1620.

THE KING.

DUKE OF VILLAHERMOZA.

COUNT OF FICALHO.

---

Conde VRey Amigo Eu El Rey vos invio muito Saudar Como aquelle que amo. Receby a vossa Carta, e os papeis que Com ella me emviastes pellas naos do anno passado Sobre o apresto, e partida Dom Nuno Alvres Pereira Governador de minas de menomotapa para mossambique, e porque do tudo o que nesta materia me dizeis que fizestes tiue muita Satisfaçaõ e me ouue por bem Seruido, de vos me pareceo Significar volo por esta Como, o faço para que tenhais entendido a com que fiquo deste vosso procedimento e aduertireis que os bares de roupa empedem

Nuno Alvres Pereira ha de se pago do Seus ordenados despois de entirar nos Rios ande Ser do Liberdade e que Conforme esta declaraçaõ Se ha de proceder neste ponto, e para que hey da Consideraçãõ importancia que Sabeis que Se naõ perca tempo no beneficio dos resgatos dos Rios de Cuama que daquy emdiant e amde de correr por Conta de minha Fazenda ordenareis que as ordens e despachos que para isso Se fizeraõ, e Se vos tem enviado Se executem com toda a pontualidade devida e para que aSim Se faça *vay* nestas vias hum Duplicado delles que ellas Recebereis o qual se Cumprira inteiramente, e do tudo que em rassaõ disso fizerdes me dareis Conta com toda a clareza para vos Saber.

Escrita em Lisboa a 28 de Março de 1620.

REY.

DUQUE DE VILLAHERMOZA.

CONDE DE FICALHO.

*[English translation of the foregoing.]*

Count, viceroy, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. By the ships of last year I received your letter and the papers which you sent to me with it, relating to the fitting out and departure for Mozambique of Dom Nuno Alvares Pereira, governor of the mines of Monomotapa, and because all that you have done in this matter, of which you inform me, has given me great satisfaction, and I consider you have rendered me good service, I think fit to inform you of my satisfaction by this, as I now do, that you may be aware of my approval of your proceedings; and you shall give instructions that the bars of cloth for which Nuno Alvares Pereira asks are to be paid for out of his salary, and after entering the rivers they are to be paid for out of the trading privileges, and that proceedings are to be taken on this point in accordance with this declaration; and because I think it is of importance and weight, as you are aware, that no time should be lost in advancing the trade of the rivers of Cuama that henceforward is to be carried on by my treasury, you shall command that the orders and dispatches drawn up on the subject and sent to you shall be put into execution with all necessary exactitude, and that this may be done accordingly a duplicate of them is sent by these ships, which you will receive, and this shall be fully carried out; and you shall send me a clear account of

all that you do in virtue of this order, that I may be informed thereof.

Written in Lisbon, the 28th of March 1620.

THE KING.

DUKE OF VILLAHERMOSA.

COUNT OF FICALHO.

Conde VRey amigo Ev El Rey vos envio muito Saudar como aquelle que amo. Mandeí ver os auttos da Rezidencia que se tirou a Ruy de Mello de Sam Payo que foi Capitaõ da fortaleza de Mossambique, e Sofalla e a sentença que nelles Se deu de que se me fiz relação e hey por bem e mando que Ruy de Mello torne aos herdeiros dos defuntos e auzentes o dinheiro que lhes levou, e que para isso se reponha nos Cofres, e depositarios donde o tomou vista a ordem que Sobre isso esta dada por provizaõ feita em 12 de Iulho do anno de 602 que esta registada nos Liuros da mesa da Conciencia, e que os Iuizes que deraõ a dita Sñça a obrigue a que com effeito faça entrega deste dinheiro e que no mais Se Cumpra como esta dada, Encomendo vos que assim o façaes executar.

Escrita em Lisboa a 18 de Feureiro de 1622.

REY.

DUQUE DE VILLA HERMOZA.

CONDE DE FICALHO.

*[English translation of the foregoing.]*

Count, viceroy, and friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. I commanded the documents to be examined relating to the trial of Ruy de Mello de Sampayo, who was captain of the fortress of Mozambique and Sofala, and the sentence passed in the case, of which an account was given to me; and I think fit and command that Ruy de Mello shall restore to the heirs of the persons dead and absent the money which he took from them, and that for this purpose the money be replaced in the coffers and places of deposit from which he withdrew it, in view of the order given in the matter by the decree issued on the 12th of July of the year 1602, which is registered in the books of the council of conscience; and that the judges

who passed the said sentence shall effectually compel him to deliver up this money, and to comply with the other orders which have been given. I charge you to carry out this accordingly.

Written in Lisbon, the 18th of February 1622.

THE KING.

DUKE OF VILLAHERMOSA.

COUNT OF FICALHO.

---

Conde VRey amigo. Ev El Rey vos envio muito Saudar como aquelle que amo. quero saber se se cobrarão os quinze mil x<sup>o</sup> que Dom Ioaõ de Azevedo devia a minha fazenda da Conta que deo da pensão dos Rios de Cuama do tempo que foi Cap<sup>m</sup> de Mossambique e o que poderaõ importar os direitos que Dom Ieronimo de Azevedo areçadou em quanto seruiu de general da Conquista de Ceilaõ que lhe naõ pertenciaõ. Pelo que vos encomendo ordeneis que se faça sobre isso diligencia e me envieis de tudo relaçaõ certa nas primr<sup>m</sup> vias. Escrita em Lisboa a xxi de Feureiro de 1622. Rey. Duque de villahermoza.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, viceroy, and friend. I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. I desire to know whether the fifteen thousand cruzados were recovered which Dom João de Azevedo owed to my treasury on the account which he presented for the lease of the rivers of Cuama during the time he was captain of Mozambique, and what the duties would amount to which Dom Jeronimo de Azevedo obtained when he was commander-in-chief of the conquest of Ceylon, and to which he had no right. Therefore I charge you to give order for this matter to be looked to, and to send me an exact account of all by the first opportunity.

Written in Lisbon, the 21st of February 1622.

THE KING.

DUKE OF VILLAHERMOSA.

---

Conde VRey amigo Ev El Rey vos envio muito Saudar como aquelle que amo os Religiozos da Companhia que rezidem em Mossambique e nos Rios de Cuama e conquista de Monomotapa

me fizeram petição Sobre lhes mandar prorogar a ordinaria que tem para sua sustentação e tendo eu respeito ao que me representarão Hey p<sup>r</sup> bem Perentoriamente se dem aos ditos Religiozos a dita ordinaria por tempo de dous annos mais com declaração que dentro nelles apresentarão no Conselho da fazenda deste Reino a provizaõ originaria por onde vencem esta ordinaria encomendo vos que na forma sobre dita lhe façaes passar o despacho necessario e informar-vos-eis com toda a certeza que Religiozos da Comp<sup>a</sup> hã em Mossambique e em queda huã das Rezidencias de todo aquelle distrito e em que se occupaõ e avizar-me-eis do q̃ achardes com o que se vos offerecer escrita em Lisboa a 25 de Feureiro de 1622. Rey Duque de Villa Hermoza. Conde de Ficalho.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, viceroy, and friend. I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. The religious of the Society of Jesus, residing in Mozambique, the rivers of Cuama, and the conquest of Monomotapa have petitioned me to give order for the allowance made to them for their maintenance to be prolonged, and I think fit, in view of what they have represented to me, peremptorily to command that the said allowance be paid to the said religious for two years longer, a declaration to be made that within the two years they shall present to the council of the treasury of this kingdom the original decree which is the authority for this allowance being paid to them. I charge you to cause the necessary orders to be transmitted to them in the manner above stated, and to ascertain how many religious of the Society of Jesus there are in Mozambique, and in each of the mission houses of all that district, and how they are employed, and inform me of the results of your research and of what you think fitting.

Written in Lisbon, the 25th of February 1622.

THE KING.  
DUKE OF VILLAHERMOSA.  
COUNT OF FICALHO.

---

Conde VRey amigo. Ev El Rey vos envio m<sup>to</sup> Sandar como aquelle que Amo. Vendo o que me escreveo Iacome de Moraes

Sarmento Capitaõ da Fortaleza de Mossambique na via do anno passõ aCerca do Estado em que achou aquella praça e do que tinha feito nas obras da fortificaçaõ della e das novas que avia da jornada de Dom Nuno Alvares Pereira a Sera da Chicova a buscar as minas da prata me Pareceo enCarregar vos que assim passando por Mossambique como depois de chegardes a Goa provejais todo o que comprir para que a fortificaçaõ daquella praça e a sisterna nova se acabem perfeiçaõ e se proveja de artilharia e tenha residentes e effeitos os trezentos soldados do Prezidio que lhe esta aSignados dando ordẽ para que nos domingos e dias de guarda tenhaõ Mesa dentro da fortaleza de maneira que a ouçaõ e não deixem guarda e que esteja tudo o mais tam a ponto como se requiere em praça taõ importante e taõ desejada dos inimigos e quando Iacome de Moraes Sarm<sup>to</sup> sahir de Mossambique pela intrancia do Cap<sup>m</sup> que entrar em Sofala conforme a a nova ordem que mandey dar oCupareis nas occazioens e Lugares de meu serviço que se offerecerem tendo particular conta com sua pessoa escrita em Lx<sup>a</sup> a 4 de Março de 1622. Dom Diogo de Castro. Bispo. Conde Presidente.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, viceroy, and friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. Seeing what Jacome de Moraes Sarmento, captain of the fortress of Mozambique, wrote to me by last year's ships concerning the state in which he found that fortress, and of the works he had carried out for its fortification and of the reports he had received of Dom Nuno Alvares Pereira's expedition to the mountain of Chicova in search of the silver mines, I have thought fit to charge you both when passing Mozambique and after arriving at Goa to provide all that is necessary for completing the fortifications of that place and the new cistern, and that it may be provided with artillery, and may contain the three hundred effective soldiers which is the garrison assigned to it; giving order that on Sundays and on days when they keep watch mass shall be said within the fortress, so that they may hear it and not leave off their guard, and that all else may be in readiness, as is fitting in a fortress of such importance and so much coveted by the enemy; and when Jacome de Moraes Sarmento leaves Mozambique on account of the arrival of the captain who

is to take office at Sofala in accordance with the new order which I have commanded to be issued, you shall employ him in my service in different opportunities and places as occasion offers, showing special esteem for his person.

Written in Lisbon, the 4th of March 1622.

DOM DIOGO DE CASTRO.  
THE BISHOP.  
THE COUNT PRESIDENT.

Carta patente por q̄ sua Mg<sup>o</sup> ha por bem q̄ aos prouidos em vrmos se lhes verifique as suas merces em Sufala Monss<sup>o</sup>, e que se lhes de o contrato do resgate dos Rios feichados pagando a Fazenda 40 O X<sup>a</sup> cada anno com derrogação do Alvara q̄ mandaua correr este Resgate p̄ admenistração da Fazenda, f. 108.

Dom Phelipe por graça de Deos Rey de Portugal e dos Algarues daquem da Lem mar em Africa Sñor de guinem e da conquista navegação comercio de Thiopia, Arabia, Percia, e da India &c. Faço saber aos que esta minha carta patente virem que el Rey meu S<sup>r</sup> Pay que em S<sup>ta</sup> gloria haja ordenou nos annos passados q̄ a instancia das pessoas desp<sup>a</sup> com a Fortalleza de Moss<sup>o</sup> e sufalla se suspendesse, e dando delles outra satisfação se admenistrassem p̄ conta de sua Real Fazenda a dita Fortalleza, e os Resgates dos Rios de chuama como athe agora se fez e porq̄ eu de presente p̄ justas concideraçoes do meu seruiço tenho Rezoluto de por na Fazenda de vrmus p̄ algum tempo cap<sup>m</sup> de guerra e Convem aComodar p̄ outro modo as pessoas desp<sup>a</sup> cõ a dita Fortalleza de vrmus entendendo que de se admenistrar p̄ conta de minha fazenda a Fortalleza de Monss<sup>o</sup> e Sufalla naõ Rezoluta vtilidade em que sera mais em beneficio seu tomar a Currer como antes da ordem Referida q̄ sua Mg<sup>o</sup> q̄ Deos tem foy seru<sup>o</sup> de dar vrmus tendo a tudo concideração hey p̄ meu seruiço e mando q̄ sece logo a administraçãõ da dita Fortalleza e os Resgate dos Rios q̄ p̄ conta de m<sup>a</sup> fazenda, se facõ e as pessoas prouidas da Fortalleza de vrmos se passem a de Sufala e entrem nella como lhe suber p̄ suas antiguidades athe eu mandar outra couza, assim e da maneira q̄ houeraõ de fazer na Fortalleza de Vrmus sem satisfação della com declaraçãõ q̄ me naõ poderaõ pedir outra alguma p̄ Razaõ dos desp<sup>a</sup> q̄ tinha p<sup>a</sup> vrmus, e que se lhe dee O contrato do Resgate dos Reys feichados, assim como a

tiuerão os capitaens da dita Fortalleza de Monss<sup>o</sup> e Sofalla pedidos pagando elles a minha Fazenda de penção Cada anno os quorenta mil r<sup>l</sup> costumados e dando ao Menomotapa os presentes da Curua e boca q̄ lhes costumaõ mandar tudo na forma q̄ se faria antes da administração Referida, q̄ agora mando q̄ sece, notifico assim ao meu VRey ou governador do Estado da India e ouvidor geral da Fazenda delle e aos mais officiaes da justiça e da minha Fazenda capitaens de guerra, e quaesquer outras pessoas a que esta minha Carta for mostrada, e o conhecimento della, pertencer, e lhes e mando que o cumprão e guardem e fação inteiram<sup>o</sup> cumprir e guardar, sem duu<sup>a</sup> emb<sup>o</sup> interpretação ou contradicção alguma, e q̄ em vert<sup>o</sup> della entre logo na dita Fortalleza de Moss<sup>o</sup> e Sofalla a pessoa a que tocar e se lhe deé a posse della e a sirua por tempo de tres annos fazendose executiuam<sup>to</sup> o mesmo com os mais a q̄ pertencer athe eu ordenar outra couza, e p̄ firmeza de tudo mandey passar esta Carta p̄ mim assignada e sellado com o sello gr<sup>o</sup> de m<sup>a</sup> armas a qual se publicara na chanceleria, e se Registara na secretaria nos Livros da minha Fazenda do Reyno, e da India, nos da Rellação de Goa e nos da Alfandega de Vrmuz, e Monss<sup>o</sup> p̄ que venha a noticia de todas, e melhor se execute, e cumpra. Dada em Madrid aos noue dias do mez de Feuereiro. Marcos Roiz Sinozo a fez o anno do nascim<sup>to</sup> de N. Sñor JEsus Christo de mil seis centos vinte e dous annos. eu Fran<sup>co</sup> de Liu<sup>ra</sup> a fez escrever. Rey o Duque de villa hermosa conde de Ficalho, Carta patente por q̄ v. Mag<sup>o</sup> ha por bem de passar a Fortalleza de Monss<sup>o</sup> e Sofalla as pessoas prouidas de ormus na man<sup>a</sup> assim declarada p<sup>a</sup> v. Mag<sup>o</sup> ver toda fica Registada esta carta no Liuro dos Regim<sup>tos</sup> da Fazd<sup>a</sup> de El Rey N. sñor as folhas duzentas sessenta e quatro em Lx<sup>a</sup> ao primeiro de Março de mil seis centos vinte dous. Diogo Soares. fica Registada esta Carta na Secretaria dos desp<sup>o</sup> e do Estado da India em Lx<sup>a</sup> a treze de Março de mil seis centos vinte dous Rui Dias de M<sup>o</sup> Fran<sup>co</sup> vaas Pinto foy publicada na chanceleria mor a Carta de El Rey N. Sñor atras escripta por my Migel Maldonado Escriuaõ da dita chanceleria per ante os officiaes della e de outra m<sup>ta</sup> gente q̄ vinha requerer seo Desp<sup>o</sup> em Lx<sup>a</sup> a vinte seis de Feuereiro de seis centos vinte dous annos Miguel Maldonado Registado na chanceleria nos Liuros das Leys as f. 119 Miguel Maldonado fica Registada na chanceleria do Estado as folhas vinte quatro Lisboa a sete de Março de mil seis centos vinte dous christouaõ Soares Registado



no L<sup>o</sup> 4<sup>o</sup> dos Alvaras que serue nesta secretr<sup>a</sup> as folhas sete Affonço Roiz de Guevara Registada na Caza de India no L<sup>o</sup> vinte-oito dos Reg<sup>os</sup> as f. 375 em vinte seis de Feuereiro de mil seis centos vinte e dous. Francisco cordovel de Souza.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Letter patent by which his Majesty is pleased to command that the grants made to those appointed to Ormuz shall be carried into effect at Sofala and Mozambique, and that the contract for the commerce of the rivers, which is closed, shall be made over to them upon their paying forty thousand cruzados per annum to the treasury, for the alteration of the charter which commanded this trade to be undertaken by the treasury.

Dom Philippe, by the grace of God king of Portugal and of the Algarves, of the seas on both coasts of Africa, lord of Guinea and of the conquests, navigation, and commerce of Ethiopia, Arabia, Persia, and India, etc., make known to those to whom this my letter patent shall come that the king my father, may glory be his portion, commanded in past years that the suit of the persons deprived of the fortress of Sofala and Mozambique should be suspended, making them some other compensation, that the said fortress should be administered, and the commerce of the rivers of Cuama undertaken by the royal treasury, which up to the present has been done; and because I have resolved at present, for just considerations of my service, that a military captain should be appointed for a certain time to Ormuz, and it being fitting to satisfy by other means the persons deprived of the said fortress of Ormuz, understanding that no benefit has resulted from the fortress of Mozambique and Sofala being administered by my treasury, and that it would be more to its advantage to be placed on the same footing as previous to the aforesaid order which his Majesty, whom may God have in his keeping, was pleased to issue; bearing all this in mind, I consider that it is conducive to my service, and command, that my treasury shall immediately cease from administering the said fortress and from carrying on the commerce of the rivers, and that the persons appointed to the fortress of Ormuz shall pass to that of Sofala, and enter the latter according to their seniority, until I issue other commands, in the same manner as they would have

entered the fortress of Ormuz, in compensation thereof, with a statement that they may not petition me to grant them any other compensation on the ground of the expense they have been put to for Ormuz, and that the contract for the trade of the rivers, which is closed, shall be made over to them in the same way as it was given to the captains of the said fortress of Mozambique and Sofala, and they shall pay to my treasury the usual sum of forty thousand cruzados, giving the presents of the curua and the mouth to the monomotapa, which it was usual to give him, conforming in every way to the customs in existence before the administration referred to, which I at present command shall cease.

I therefore notify my viceroy or governor of the state of India, and the chief official of the treasury of that place, and also the other officers of justice, and of my treasury, military captains, and all other persons to whom this my letter shall be shown, and those whom it is right should have cognizance of it, that I command that they shall execute and observe it, and shall cause it to be executed and observed, without any question, obstacle, misinterpretation, or opposition whatever, and that in virtue thereof the person to whose turn it falls shall immediately enter the said fortress of Mozambique and Sofala, and shall be given possession thereof, and shall hold it for the term of three years, and the same shall be carried into execution with regard to the others who have been appointed to it, until I issue other instructions.

And in order that all may be settled, I command this letter to be dispatched, signed by me, and sealed with the great seal of my arms, which letter shall be published in chancery, and shall be registered in the office of the secretary in the books of my treasury of this kingdom and of India, in those of the court of Goa, and in those of the custom houses of Ormuz and Mozambique, that it may come to the notice of all, and may be better executed and accomplished.

Given in Madrid on the 9th day of the month of February.

Drawn up by Marcos Roiz Sinozo, in the year of our Lord Jesus Christ 1622.

I Francisco de Oliveira caused it to be written.

THE KING.

THE DUKE OF VILLAHERMOSA.

THE COUNT OF FICALHO.

Letter patent by which your Majesty thinks fit to command that the persons appointed to the fortress of Ormuz shall pass to Mozambique and Sofala in the manner above stated, that your Majesty may examine all.

This letter was entered in the book of the regulations of the treasury of the king our lord, page 264, in Lisbon, on the 1st of March 1622.

DIOGO SOARES.

This letter was registered in the office of the secretary of the appointments and of the state of India, at Lisbon, on the 13th of March 1622.

RUI DIAS DE MENEZES.  
FRANCISCO VAS PINTO.

I, Miguel Maldonado, published the above letter of the king our lord in the chief court of chancery, being notary of the said court, in presence of the officials thereof, and of many other persons who came to claim their appointments.

In Lisbon, on the 26th of February 1622.

MIGUEL MALDONADO.

Entered in chancery in the law books, p. 119.

MIGUEL MALDONADO.

Entered in the books of the chancellor of state, page 24, Lisbon, on the 7th of March 1622.

CHRISTOVÃO SOARES.

Entered in book 4th of the charters in existence in the office of the secretary of state, page 7.

AFFONÇO ROIZ DE GUEVARA.

Entered at the India Office, book 28th of the Registers, p. 375, on the 26th of February 1622.

FRANCISCO CORDOVAL DE SOUSA.

---

Conde VRey amigo Ev El Rey vos envio muito Saudar como aquella que amo. Tendo Consideraçã ao pouco fruto que se tem tirado das diligencias que te gora se fizeraõ por se achar o lugar

certo das minas da prata da Manomotapa e em respeito disso a conquista dellas na forma em que te gora corre o ser compativel com a nova ordem que tenho dado sobre a fortaleza de Mossambique, e Sofala Hey por meu Serviço e mando que a conquista sesse e que Dom Nuno Alvares Pereira se recolha a India sobre que lhe mando escrever a Carta que sera Com esta que ordenareis se lhe envie.

E vos encomendo que encarregueis a Nuno da Cunha que ora vay entrar em çofala que em cazo que estejam abertas as ditas minas entenda no beneficio dellas e se a India se não tiverem achado procure por todos os meynos posives descobrilas, e fasselas correntes para o que se ajudara da noticia e industria de Diogo Simoens Madeira ao qual se offerecera de minha parte que se as descobrir e das correntes lhe farey merce de foro de fidalgo de minha Caza e de huma Comenda que renda dous mil R<sup>o</sup> e assy emcarregareis a Nuno da Cunha que trate de abrir e fundar o Labor das minas de Cobre que se tem por certas naquellas partes que seram de m<sup>ta</sup> importancia pela falta que delle haõ.

E porque o Manamotapa me escreveo pelas vias do anno passado aSerca de Seos particulares vos encomendo ordeneis que se lhe de a Satisfação que houver Lugar em Suas pretenções procurando telo contente pagando lhe com pontualidade os presentes de Curva e boca que Correm por Conta do Capitão de Çofala, e lhe enviareis de Ormuz ou de Goa dous Cavalos ajaizados que Dom Nuno Alvares avizou que elle dezia se lhe prometerão Cos dous Libres e tres ou quatro pessoas de brocados da China que pede para com isso o dispor a que de sua parte ajude e facilite o descobrimento das minas e ordenareis que sejaõ obrigados asse Sairem dos Rios e de Mossambique Diogo Carvalho e Diogo Peixeira de quem elle se queixa e na Confirmitade desta Carta vos encomendo e emcarrego muito mandeis dar as ordens necessarias para se por em effeito o que por ella ordeno escrita em Lx<sup>a</sup> a 10 de Março de 1622. Dom Diogo de Castro o Bispo Conde Presidente.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, viceroy, and friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. Having regard to the little success derived from

the measures taken up to the present for discovering the exact site of the silver mines of Monomotapa, and in consideration that the conquest of them has, up to the present, proceeded on a footing inconsistent with the new order which I have issued concerning the fortress of Mozambique and Sofala, I think it proper for my service and command that the conquest be desisted from, and that Dom Nuno Alvares Pereira withdraw to India, for which reason, I have commanded the letter, which will be sent with this, to be written to him, which you shall order to be forwarded to him.

And I recommend you to charge Nuno da Cunha, who is at present proceeding to Sofala, that in the event of the said mines being opened he is to employ himself in their advancement, and if they are not yet discovered he is to endeavour by all possible means to discover them and to get them into working order, to which end he will avail himself of the knowledge and diligence of Diogo Simoens Madeira, to whom an offer will be made, in my name, that if he discovers the mines and establishes the working of them, I will bestow upon him the privilege of a nobleman of my household and a commandery bringing in two thousand cruzados; and you shall also charge Nuno da Cunha to busy himself in the opening and establishing the working of the copper mines, which it is considered are undoubtedly to be found in those parts, which will be of great importance on account of the want of this metal.

And because the monomotapa wrote to me by the ships of last year concerning matters relating to him, I charge you to give order that his claims be satisfied as far as possible, and that the yearly present and that called the mouth, which are under the charge of the captain of Sofala, be punctually paid, and you shall send him from Ormuz or Goa two horses with complete harness, which, according to information sent by Dom Nuno Alvares, he says were promised to him, and also two liveries and three or four pieces of Chinese brocade for which he asks; by which means he may be disposed on his part to assist in and facilitate the discovery of the mines; and you shall command that Diogo Carvalho and Diogo Peixeira, of whom he complains, be compelled to leave the rivers and Mozambique; and I earnestly recommend and charge you to issue the necessary orders in

accordance with this letter, that the instructions I give therein may be put into execution.

Written in Lisbon, the 10th of March 1622.

DOM DIOGO DE CASTRO.

THE BISHOP.

THE COUNT PRESIDENT.

---

Conde VRey amigo. Ev El Rey vos envio muito Saudar como aquelle que amo. Presente vos deve ter a importancia de que he a fortaleza de Mossambique e quanto convem estar provida das Cousas de que tiver necessidade que vos hey por muy emCarregada e que se proceda no servir se aquella Capitania conforme a ordem que mandei dar o anno passado sobre isso e sobre o beneficio das minas de Monomotapa e que façais que as pess<sup>as</sup> que servirem de Capitaes daquella fortaleza assy por m<sup>o</sup> que della tinhaõ como os q̄ entrarem na dita Capitania em Lugar dade et mus paguem cada anno pontualmente a minha fazl<sup>a</sup> a pençaõ dos quorenta mil x<sup>o</sup> Custumados e ao Monomotapa os presentes que se lhe daõ sem nisso haver dilaçaõ para que a naõ haja nos provimentos e pagamentos da gente de guerra della.

Escrita em Lisboa o primeiro de Fevereiro de 1623.

REY.

DUQUE DE VILLA ERMOZA.

CONDE DE FICALHO.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, viceroy, and friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. You must bear in mind the importance of the fortress of Mozambique, and how necessary it is that it should be provided with all it requires, which matter I earnestly entrust to you; and that the post of captain of that place should be held in accordance with the order I caused to be issued last year, relating to this matter, and to the mines of Monomotapa; and that you compel those persons now serving as captains of that fortress, and those replacing them in the said captaincy, to pay punctually every year to my treasury the sum of forty thousand

cruzados as customary, and to send the presents to the monomotapa which are usual, without any delay, so that there may be nothing wanting in providing for and paying the soldiers of that place.

Written in Lisbon, the 1st of February 1623.

THE KING.

DUKE OF VILLAHERMOSA.

COUNT OF FICALHO.

Conde VRey amigo. Ev El Rey vos envio m<sup>o</sup> Saudar como aquelle que amo. Per Cartas vossas de 12 e 15 de Março do anno passado de 1623 me destes Conta do que ordenastes a Nuno da Cunha hindo por Capitaõ de Sofalla, sobre se fazer delligencia para se saber se pella Alagoa que esta nas terras de Manamotapa diante do forte de Saõ Miguel se pode passar ao Preste; e porque convem fazer se toda a delligencia, porque se abra este Caminho p<sup>a</sup> a d<sup>ta</sup> Alagoa, ou pello Rio Brava por onde se dizia o havia, vos encomendo Continueis com o que nisso convier fazer-se, e Lembreis a Nuno da Cunha que por sua via faça toda delligencia necessaria, e me avezeis do que della resultar.

Escrita em Lx<sup>a</sup> a 9 de Fevr<sup>o</sup> de 1624.

REY.

DUQUE DE VILLA HERMOZA.

CONDE DE FICALHO.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, viceroy, and friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. In your letters of the 12th and 15th of March of last year, 1623, you informed me of the orders that you gave to Nuno da Cunha, when he was going to Sofala as captain, concerning taking measures for ascertaining whether it is possible to proceed to Abyssinia from the lake which is situated in the monomotapa's country, beyond the fort of São Miguel; and because it is fitting that every effort should be made to open this road to the aforesaid lake, or to the river Brava, where it was reported there was such a stream, I charge you to continue acting in this matter as it is proper you should do, and to remind

Nuno da Cunha on his part to take all the necessary measures ; and you shall advise me of the result of this.

Written in Lisbon, the 9th of February 1624.

THE KING.

DUKE OF VILLAHERMOZA.

COUNT OF FICALHO.

---

Conde VRey amigo. Ev El Rey vos envio m<sup>o</sup> Saudar como aquelle que amo. Vy o me escrevestes em reposta do que vos ordeney por carta minha de 20 de Março do anno de 1622 sobre cesar a Conquista das Minas de Manamotapa e se encarregar a Nuno da Cunha, que for entrar em sofalla a averiguação dellas, e aprouo o que nisso me dizeis tendes feito excepto no particular de naõ declarardes a Diogo Simoës Madeira a Merce, que lhe mandey offerecer se descobrisse, e desse correntes as Minas por naõ poder haver nisso perigo, sendo a merce condicional de descobrir as minas antes de importancia, se elle por esta rezaõ as desse Correntes e se quando esta Carta vos chegar naõ tiverdes de todo perdido esperanças das Minas declarareis o despacho ao dito Diogo Simoens madeira para se animar com elle, e se acabar de entender de huã vez a importancia de que podem ser. E ao Manamotapa enviareis o prez<sup>o</sup> que elle desejava, e pedia de dous Cavalos ajaezados, e dous livres, e tres, ou quatro peças de brocados da China.

Escrita em Lx<sup>a</sup> a 17 de Fev<sup>o</sup> de 1624.

REY.

DUQUE DE VILLA HERMOZA.

CONDE DE FICALHO.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, viceroy, and friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. I have seen what you wrote to me in reply to the orders which I gave you in my letter of the 20th of March of the year 1622, concerning desisting from the conquest of the mines of Monomotapa, and entrusting the discovery of them to Nuno da Cunha, who was entering Sofala ; and I approve of all that you tell me you have done, except the fact of your not having informed Diogo Simoens Madeira of the grant which I com-



manded should be offered to him for discovering and opening the working of the mines, as in offering this there can be no risk, since the grant is to be bestowed on condition of his discovering the mines; rather it would be of great importance if through this means he was to establish the working of them; and if when this letter reaches you, you have not lost all hope of these mines, you shall communicate the despatch to the said Diogo Simoens Madeira, that he may be encouraged by it, and that it may be ascertained once for all how important they may prove. And you shall send to the monomotapa the present which he desires, and for which he asks, being two horses with complete harness, two liveries, and three or four pieces of Chinese brocade.

Written in Lisbon, the 17th of February 1624.

THE KING.

DUKE OF VILLAHERMOSA.

COUNT OF FICALHO.

Conde VRey amigo. Eu El Rey vos envio muito Saudar como aquelle que amo. Por Carta minha de 9 de presente vos tenho encarregado se faça delligencia por se abrir Caminho pella Alagoa, que esta nas terras de Manamotapa, ou pelo Rio Brava para se passar ao preste, E porque os Relligiozos da Comp<sup>a</sup>, que assistem em Mossambique, e tem residencias naquellas partes poderaõ ajudar na delligencia destes descobrim<sup>tos</sup>, vos encomendo, que de mais do que me dizeis encarregastes a Nuno da Cunha hindo por Cap<sup>m</sup> de Mossambique, encomendeis de minha parte aos ditos Relligiozos, que pella sua ajudem nisso até se saber a Certeza do que deste Caminho se pode esperar.

Escrita em Lx<sup>a</sup> a 17 de Fevr<sup>o</sup> de 1624.

REY.

DUQUE DE VILLA HERMOZA.

CONDE DE FICALHO.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, viceroy, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. In my letter of the 9th instant I have charged you to take measures for opening a road to the lake which is

situated in the territories of the monomotapa, or to the river Brava, by which the king of Abyssinia may be reached, and as the religious of the Society of Jesus who reside in Mozambique, and have mission stations in those parts, could assist in the forwarding of these discoveries, I charge you, besides what you tell me you have entrusted to Nuno da Cunha, when he was going as captain of Mozambique, to recommend the said religious, in my name, to assist in this undertaking, until it is known for a certainty what results can be expected from this road.

Written in Lisbon, the 17th of February 1624.

THE KING.

DUKE OF VILLAHERMOSA.

COUNT OF FICALHO.

---

Conde VRey amigo. Eu El Rey vos envio muito Saudar como aquelle q̄ amo vendo o que me escrevestes na via do anno passado sobre se naõ fazer cazo dos offercimentos de Diogo Simoens Madeira nas Couzas de Minas de Manamutapa nem se tratar mais delle e que encarregastes ao Cappitaõ que hia para Mossambique procurasse avello as maos e inviallo ahy prezo para o Embarcardes para o Reino como vos ordeney por Carta minha de dezanove de Março de mil Seiscentos, e vinte e tres me pareceo tornar volo a encomendar para que se faça nisso o que tenho mandado pela dita Carta.

Escrita em Lisboa a vinte e hum de Março de 1625.

DOM DIOGO DA SILVA.

DIOGO DE COSTA.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, viceroy, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. Seeing what you wrote to me by the ships of last year concerning the rejection of Diogo Simoens Madeira's proposals regarding the matter of the mines of Monomotapa and not holding further intercourse with him, and that you charged the captain who was going to Mozambique to endeavour to lay hands on him and send him prisoner to that place, that you might forward him to the kingdom, as I commanded you by my letter of the 19th of March 1623, I think fit to recommend the

matter to you again, that the orders which I have given concerning it in the said letter may be carried out.

Written in Lisbon, the 21st of March 1625.

DOM DIOGO DA SILVA.

DIOGO DA COSTA.

Conde VRey amigo. Eu El Rey vos inuió muito Saudar, como aquelle, que amo. Na caza de moeda desta Cid<sup>e</sup> de Lisboa se fez ensayo de huã pedra que se diz inuiou a este Reino os annos passados Manoel de Moraes Supico, que foy feitor de Mossambique, derigida a Vicente Machado de Brito tirando se de seis onças da dita pedra duas onças de prata fina, e p̄ que Conuem fazer se dilligencia com o dito Manoel de Moraes, e averiguar se de que parte he a dita pedra, vos em-Comendo a façais com ella e me deis Conta do que nisso achardes.

Escrita em Lisboa a 25 de Feuereiro de 1626.

REY.

DUQUE DE VILLA HERMOZA.

CONDE DE FICALHO.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, viceroy, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. An assay was made in the mint of this city of Lisbon with a stone which Manuel de Moraes Supico, factor of Mozambique, is said to have sent in former years to this kingdom to Vicente Machado de Brito; and from six ounces of the said stone two ounces of fine silver were extracted. And as it is advisable for negotiations to be entered into with the said Manuel de Moraes to ascertain from what place the said stone was taken, I charge you to do this, and to inform me of the results of your enquiries.

Written in Lisbon, the 25th of February 1626.

THE KING.

DUKE OF VILLAHERMOSA.

COUNT OF FICALHO.

Conde VRey amigo. Eu El Rey vos enuio muito Saudar, Como aquelle, que amo. Diogo Dias Barracho Cauelheiro fidalgo de minha Caza estante nessas partes, me inuiou representar, que da Nao Sam Ioaõ, que encalhou no Cabo de boa Esperança, falta muita gente, que deue estar por aquellas Costas, e por não ter embarcações não poderá chegar ao Rio, que chamaõ de Lourenço Marquez, nem a Sofalla nem a Mossambique ao que hum deuia mandar aCudir Com hua embarcaçã a Correr toda aquella Costa de Mossambique athe onde a Nao encalhou para recolher, e Saluar a gente, que para ly deuia estar, ao qual Seruico elle se offerece para o fazer em hum nauio Seu, mandando lhe dar nessas partes vinte homes portuguezes marinheiros para Governar o Nauio e o regimento, que nisso deue de seguir ou uindo para este Reino com o dito Nauio, e gente, ou tornando Com elle a India Como mais conveniente parecer, esperando que por este Seruiço, e outros que tem feito lhe faça merce honrallo Com o habito da ordem de Christo, e hauendo visto a proposta referida, me pareceo remeter vola para que vendo a com os Conselheiros, que vos assistem, e tomadas as informaçoens necessarias, e Constando, que na Costa da Cafraria ha ainda gente do Naufragio, que nella fez a nao Sam Ioaõ, pedraria, e outras fazendas, e que se poderaõ resgatar, e que o dito Diogo Dias Barracho, he pessoa que podera fazer esta viagem lhe deis licença p<sup>a</sup> a fazer, leuando a gente e fazendas a Goa, e dando lhe o regimento, e mais ordens, que parecerem necessarias para conseguir a viagem dizendo se lhe que procedendo nella bem lho hauereis em Seruiço para lhe fazer a merce que houer lugar.

Escrita em Lisboa a 28 de Março de 1626.

DIOGO DE COSTA.

DOM DIOGO DA SILVA.

[English translation of the foregoing.]

Count, viceroy, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. Diogo Dias Barracho, a nobleman of my household, being in those parts, has represented to me that many people were missing from the ship *São João* which was stranded at the Cape of Good Hope, which people must be on those shores, and having no boats they cannot reach the river called Lourenço Marques, Sofala, or Mozambique, and that a vessel should be sent

to their assistance, to sail along the coast from Mozambique to the place where the ship ran ashore, to rescue and save the people who must be there. He offers to perform this service, employing a ship belonging to himself for the purpose, if he is commanded to be provided with twenty Portuguese sailors from those parts to navigate the ship, and with the instructions he is to follow, whether to come to this kingdom with the said ship and people, or to return with it to India, whichever is considered most fitting; hoping for this service and for others which he has rendered to be rewarded with the habit of the order of Christ. And having seen the said proposal, I have thought fit to lay it before you, that considering it with the councillors who assist you, and all the necessary information being obtained, and bearing in mind that on the shores of Kaffraria there are still some people from the ship *São João* which was wrecked there, besides precious stones and other merchandise which could be used in trade, and that the said Diogo Dias Barracho is a proper person for undertaking this voyage, you shall give him license to do so, taking the people and merchandise to Goa, and give him the instructions and other orders which appear necessary for accomplishing this. You shall inform him that if he is successful therein you will regard it as a service to be fittingly rewarded.

Written in Lisbon, the 28th of March 1626.

DIOGO DA COSTA.

DOM DIOGO DA SILVA.

---

Conde VRey Amigo. Eu El Rey vos inuio m<sup>to</sup> Saudar como aquelle, que amo. Por carta minha de 24 de Feuereiro de mil Seis centos vinte e quatro mandey que Nuno de Cunha se houesse p̄ inteiro a penção de quarenta mil x<sup>a</sup> que era obrigado pagar cada anno da Capitania de Mossambique, e Sofalla em que lhe coube entrar, sem embargo do asento que se fez nesse Estado, Sobre se lhe quitarem vinte mil x<sup>a</sup> de penção do primeiro anno, e que não hauendo fazenda sua, por onde se pudesse hauer, se haueriaõ pella vossa e dos ministros aSinados no dito aSento os dittos vinte mil x<sup>a</sup> ou a parte, que delles ficasse p̄ pagar, e vendo o que em reposta disse me escreuestes na via do anno passado me pareceo encarregar uos, que me auizeis na volta destas Naos, se se cobraraõ ja estes vinte mil x<sup>a</sup> e sobre quem se carregarã em

receita inuiando me della certidaõ, por que naõ Sendo Cobrados, tenho mandado que o Procurador da minha fazenda os fala arrecadar Neste Reino pella vossa, Com effeito, e sem dillaçaõ.

Escrita em Lisboa a 4 de Abril de 1626.

DIOGO DE COSTA.

DOM DIOGO DA SILVA.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, viceroy, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. In my letter of the 24th of February 1624 I commanded that Nuno da Cunha should pay in full the sum of forty thousand cruzados which he was under obligation to pay every year for the command of Mozambique and Sofala, to which he was appointed, notwithstanding the agreement made in that State that twenty thousand cruzados should be deducted from this sum for the first year; and that if he possessed no property from which this sum could be raised, that the said twenty thousand cruzados should be levied from your property and that of the officials connected with the said agreement, or from the persons responsible for the payment; and seeing what you wrote to me in reply to this last year, I think fit to charge you to inform me, by return of these ships, whether these twenty thousand cruzados have been already recovered, and into whose books the receipt of them was entered, sending me a certificate of it, because if they have not been paid I have given order for my crown attorney to recover the amount from your property in this kingdom, effectually, and without delay.

Written in Lisbon, the 4th of April 1626.

DIOGO DA COSTA.

DOM DIOGO DA SILVA.

---

Conde Vizo Rey Amigo. Eu El Rey vos inuio muito Saudar, Como aquelle que amo. Vendo o que me escreuestes na via do anno passado Sobre as minas de Monomotapa, e a Informaçãõ que Dom Nuno Alv Pereira deu aCerca dellas, me pareceo dizer vos, que particularmente encarregueis a pessoa que Seruir a Capitania de Sofalla a averiguaçaõ das minas p̃ via de Contrato ou pellos meynos, que vos parecerem mais Convenientes para

melhor effeito do negocio, e do que rezultar desta averiguação me avizareis Com particularidade, e juntamente de vosso parecer.

Escrita em Lisboa a 4 de Abril de 1626.

DIOGO DE COSTA.

DOM DIOGO DA SILVA.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, viceroy, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. Seeing what you wrote to me last year concerning the mines of Monomotapa, and the information relating to them given by Dom Nuno Alvares Pereira, I think fit to instruct you particularly to entrust the search for them to the captain of Sofala, by means of a contract, or on conditions which appear to you more convenient for the better accomplishment of the matter; and you shall report to me in detail the results of this search and your opinion thereon.

Written in Lisbon, the 4th of April 1626.

DIOGO DA COSTA.

DOM DIOGO DA SILVA.

Conde V.Rey amigo. Eu El Rey vos inuio muito Saudar como aquelle que amo, Por carta minha de 26 de Março do anno de 620 mandey que fosse executado Ruy de Mello de Sam Payo pello vinte e quatro mil, e quinhentos  $\text{H}^{\text{os}}$  que em Mossambique se acharaõ da Fazenda de D. Esteuaõ de Ataide que o dito Ruy de Mello sendo capitaõ daquella Fortaleza recolheo da maõ de Feitor Manoel de Moraes Sopico, e depois disso Lembrey p outras cartas o effeito desta execuçaõ, athe que o anno de 623 me respondestes, que Ruy de Mello tinha dado satisfaçaõ na receita que se fez ao Executor geral do inventario das Couzas, e fazenda, que se achou de Dom Esteuaõ de Ataide, que se avaliaraõ nos ditos vinte e quatro mil e quinhentos  $\text{H}^{\text{os}}$  e por eu mandar se declarase se Com effeito se arecadou a dita cantia de Ruy de Mello de Sam Payo, e Sobre que official se carregou em Receita, ou em que forma deu satisfaçaõ della me inuiastes na via do anno passado em reposta disso huã Certaõ do Contador Dg<sup>o</sup> Roiz p que se mostra a forma em que tinha dado satisfaçaõ, e p que eu resolvy, que ella naõ he bastante, vos encarrego, e mando ordeney, que logo Com effeito

Seja executado o d<sup>o</sup> Ruy de Mello de Sam Payo, pellos ditos vinte e quatro mil, e quinhentos H<sup>os</sup> em que se avalliarão os bens de Dom Esteuaõ de Ataide, que elle recolheo em Mossambique, tomando se lhe Somento em desconto os tres mil, e noue centos e Sincoenta e Sinco H<sup>os</sup>, duzentos, e quarenta e tres res que diz terem diuidas de Dom Esteuaõ, que não cobrou carregando se a mesma cantia em receita sobre o executor geral para a cobrar das pessoas, que a deuem a fazenda de Dom Esteuaõ, e o dinheiro de tudo, esta execuçaõ se depositará em huã arca de tres chaues athe se dar final Sentença na Cauza, que corre Contra os herdeiros de Dom Esteuaõ de Ataide, pello que ficou deuendo a minha fazenda e ver se ha, se os vinte e quatro mil e quinhentos H<sup>os</sup> em que foy orcado valer o ouro, prata, escrituras, conhecim<sup>os</sup> e Couzas deste inventario, e saõ Cobradeiros ao tempo que Ruy de Mello os tomou, e a elle se lhe dira, que tendo pago, e entregue os vinte mil quinhentos, quarenta e quatro H<sup>os</sup>, cento e Sincoenta e Sete Res, que faltaõ para a Cantia dos ditos vinte e quatro mil e quinhentos H<sup>os</sup> podera requerer os descontos, que diz tem Com a Fazenda de Dom Esteuaõ, e Se lhe diffirira a isso Conforme ao regimento, e pellas dillaçoens do que se tem vzado nesta Cobrança, me pareceo dizer vos que se não ordenardes, que logo se faça execuçaõ p̄ esta diuida nos bens e fazenda de Ruy de Mello, a hei de mandar hauer pella vossa. Escrita em Lisboa a 15 de Abril de 1626. Dom Diogo da Silua. Diogo de Costa.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, viceroy, friend, I the king send you many greetings, as one whom I love. In my letter of the 26th of March 1620 I commanded an execution to be made on the goods of Ruy de Mello de Sampayo for the twenty-four thousand five hundred cruzados recovered from the property of Dom Estevão de Ataide in Mozambique, which sum the said Ruy de Mello, being the captain of that fortress, withdrew from the care of the factor Manuel de Moraes Sopico; and afterwards in other letters I reminded you to carry out this execution, until in the year 1623 you replied that Ruy de Mello had given a satisfactory account of the goods and property of Dom Estevão de Ataide in an inventory presented to the general executor, and which was valued at the said sum of twenty-four thousand five hundred cruzados.



Having commanded a declaration to be made as to whether the said sum was really recovered from Ruy de Mello de Sampayo, and what official held the receipt of it, or in what manner he had made satisfaction for this sum, you sent me in reply last year a certificate from the accountant Diogo Roiz, explaining the manner in which he had done this, and as I have passed a resolution that this is not sufficient, I charge and command you to give order forthwith that an execution be levied on the property of the said Ruy de Mello de Sampayo, for the said twenty-four thousand five hundred cruzados, which sum was estimated to be the value of the property of Dom Estevão de Ataide, of which sum he took possession in Mozambique, deducting only the 3,955 cruzados 243 reis which he says are still owing to Dom Estevão and which he did not receive, entering this sum in the books of the general executor to be recovered from the persons who are responsible for it to the property of Dom Estevão. And all the money resulting from this execution shall be deposited in a coffer with three keys until the final sentence is given in the case brought against the heirs of Dom Estevão de Ataide for the sum still owing to my treasury, and it is seen whether the twenty-four thousand five hundred cruzados roughly estimated to be the value of the gold, silver, and goods, contained in the statements of this inventory, at the time Ruy de Mello took possession of this sum, have been recovered. And the latter shall be informed that when he has paid and delivered up the 20,544 cruzados 157 reis wanting to make up the said sum of 24,500 cruzados, he may reclaim the sum which he says should be deducted from the property of Dom Estevão, and satisfaction shall be given to him in this matter in accordance with the regulations. On account of the delay in recovering this money, I think fit to inform you that if you do not give order for this debt to be forthwith recovered by an execution on the goods and property of Ruy de Mello, I shall order it to be levied from your property.

Written in Lisbon, the 15th of April 1626.

DOM DIOGO DA SILVA.

DIOGO DA COSTA.

---

Conde VRey Amigo. Eu El Rey vos inuio muito Saudar como aquelle, que amo. ordenareis, que nos capitullos, que se fazem para

os Sindicantes tirarem residencias aos Capitaens das fortalezas desse Estado, se acrecenten perguntarem, e averiguarem o Estado em que acharem a fortaleza asim de artelharia, como de moniçoens, e numero de soldados, e como estaõ reparados os muros, e tudo o mais, que tocar a boa guarda, e deffençaõ della, sendo este o primeiro artigo p̄ onde haõ de começar as residencias, e todas as que se tirarem daquy em diante dos Capitaens das fortalezas desse Estado, e em particular de Mallaca, Dio, Chaul, Damaõ, Bacaim, Sofalla, Mombaça, e Mascate tereis Cuidado de me inuiar por vias todos os annos dirigidos ao secretario das materias do Estado da India. Escrita em Lisboa dezasete de Abril de mil Seis centos vinte e Seis. Dom Diogo da Silua. Diogo de Costa.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, viceroy, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. You shall give order that to the list of questions drawn up for the judges to examine the captains of the fortresses of that State there shall be added a clause that they are to question them concerning the condition in which they found the fortress, as regards artillery, ammunition, number of soldiers, the manner in which the walls were repaired, and all else touching its safety and defence, every examination to be begun by questions on these points. And henceforward you shall take care to send me a report every year of all the examinations of the captains of the fortresses of that State, and particularly of Malacca, Diu, Chaul, Damão, Sofala, Mombasa, and Muscat, addressing it to the secretary of state for India.

Written in Lisbon, the 17th of April 1626.

DOM DIOGO DA SILVA.  
DIOGO DA COSTA.

---

Dom Francisco Mascarenhas vizoRey da India amigo. Eu El Rey vos envio muito Saudar. vy o que o Conde de vidigueira Sendo VRey desse Estado me escreveu em carta Sua de tres de Março do anno passado sobre as duas mutras de diamantes que Se Salvaraõ da nao Sam Ioaõ que se perdeo o anno de Seis centos, e vinte dous na paragem do Cabo de boa esperanza e assim o que o Conselho de minha fazenda deste Reino me consultou sobre as

perolas que se acharão em Mossambique Sem registo do homê Castelhana da nação que aly foy morto que hia embarcado na nao Santa Izabel da armada do anno de 623, e visto como corre ligio aSerca destes diamantes, e perolas Hey por bem que a Cauza Se Siga athe final Sentença pellos procuradores de minha Coroa, e fazenda assim no feito, como no dereito, e se me avizará da Sentença que se der na materia, advertindo que as perolas, ou o preço dellas em Cazo que se vendaõ haõ de estar depositadas em parte Segura, e que a nao Saõ Ioã se entende fez naufragio em trinta e Sinco graos do Cabo de boa esperanza, e que Sendo assim não podia ter lugar o pretexto que se podia pertender de lhe não prejudicar a falta de não Serem registados os diamantes. Escrita em Lisboa a 31 de Março de 1627. Dom Diogo da Silua, o Arcebispo de m<sup>ca</sup>

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Dom Francisco Mascarenhas, viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well. I have seen what the count of Vidigueira, when viceroy of that State, wrote to me in his letter of the 3rd of March of last year, concerning the two diamond seals which were saved from the ship *São João*, which was lost in the year 1622 in the vicinity of the Cape of Good Hope; and also the advice given me by the council of my treasury of this kingdom concerning the pearls found in Mozambique unregistered, belonging to a Spaniard who died there, who took passage in the ship *Santa Izabel* of the fleet of the year 1623; and seeing that a law suit is in course of hearing concerning these diamonds and pearls, I think fit that the case should be proceeded with by the attorneys of my crown and treasury until final sentence is passed, in fact and in law; and information shall be sent to me of the sentence given in the matter. I make known to you that the pearls, or the price of them if they have been sold, must be deposited in a safe place; and as it is understood that the ship *São João* was wrecked in latitude 35° near the Cape of Good Hope, this being so, the pretext which may be brought forward, that the fact of the diamonds not having been registered is not to his prejudice, cannot hold good.

Written in Lisbon, the 31st of March 1627.

DOM DIOGO DA SILVA.

THE ARCHBISHOP OF M<sup>ca</sup>

• • • • a petição de Dom Nuno Aluares Pereira aSerca da notificação que se mandou fazer a Diogo de Souza de Menezes Capitão da Fortaleza de Massambique, e Sofalla, e a Seus procuradores Sobre não meter nos Rios mais roupas que a que Sempre foy Costume meter se pellos Capitaens passados.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

• • • • Dom Nuno Alvares Pereira's petition concerning a notice which was ordered to be sent to Diogo de Sousa de Menezes, captain of the fortress of Mozambique and Sofala, and to his attorneys, that he should not send to the rivers a larger quantity of cloth than that usually sent by former captains.

3rd of April 1627.

---

Dom Francisco Mascarenhas VizoRey da India amigo. Eu El Rey vos envio muito Saudar. vy o que o Conde de vidigueira Sendo VRey desse Est<sup>o</sup> me escreveo na via do anno passado em reposta do que por Carta minha de 25 de Fevereiro do anno de 1622 lhe ordeney me informasse aSerca da prorogação que me pediaõ da Sua ordinaria os relligiosos da Companhia de Jesus que rezidem em Massambique, e nos rios de Cuama, e Conquista de Manamotapa, e ouve por bem que se lhe dem de ordinaria duzentos mil rês por anno para Sustento de oito relligiosos que Seraõ obrigados a ter em Massambique, e rios de Cuama, de que lhes ha de passar provizaõ pello concelho de minha fazenda. E fez bem o dito vRey em lhes prorogar a ordinaria que se lhe daua por dous annos mais alem do tempo que por mim lhes foy prorogado, mas não em dilatar tanto a informaçã que se lhe pedio o anno de mil Seis centos, e vinte dous Sobre esta materia. Escrita em Lisboa a Sinco de Abril de mil Seis centos, e vinte Sete. o Arcebispo de m<sup>ca</sup> Dom Diogo da Silua.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Dom Francisco Mascarenhas, viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well. I have seen what the count of Vidigueira, when viceroy of that State, wrote to me last year in reply to the order which I gave him in my letter of the 25th of February 1622 to send me information regarding the extension of the

allowance paid to the religious of the Society of Jesus residing in Mozambique, the rivers of Cuama, and the conquest of Monomotapa, for which they petitioned me, and I have thought fit that an allowance of two hundred thousand reis be paid to them per annum for the support of eight religious, whom they shall be under obligation to maintain in Mozambique and the rivers of Cuama, for which an order is to be sent to them by the council of my treasury. And the said viceroy did well in extending the allowance made to them for two years beyond the time of the extension granted to them by my order, but not in delaying so long the information on this matter which was demanded of him in the year 1622.

Written in Lisbon, the 5th of April 1627.

THE ARCHBISHOP OF M<sup>ca</sup>  
DOM DIOGO DA SILVA.

---

Dom Francisco Mascarenhas VRey da India Amigo. Eu El Rey vos envio muito Saudar Sendo eu informado que estando prezo Francisco de Aguiar Evangelho, e sentenceado por toda a vida para a Conquista de Monomatapa e em mil x<sup>o</sup> em dinheiro para o ouvidor de Cochim pela Culpa que rezultou contra elle da devassa que se tirou da offença feita o dito ouvidor, fora tirado da prizaõ em que estava com ajuda de outros de fora que por força tomaraõ as chaves ao Carcereiro, com que abriraõ as portas ferindo elle com huma faca a hum dos guardas, e que propondo se este cazo na Rellaçaõ de Goa em prezença do Conde da Vidig<sup>ra</sup> Sendo meo VRey desse Estado, se Sentenceara pelos mais vottos, que fosse comprir o degredo de Manamotapa em que estava condemnado nas guerras de Ormus em quanto durassem, e acabadas ellas hiria continuar com o degredo que tinha, mudando se lhe para ormus por este Segundo delicto em lugar de castigo mandey pedir informaçãõ ao dito Conde da Vidg<sup>ra</sup> VRey do que nisto havia, e enviando me elle os autos nas Vias do anno passado, dos quaes e da sentença que no cazo se deo se me fez Rellaçaõ, e havendo visto eu Resolvy que a prim<sup>ra</sup> Sentença foy dada conforme a justiça, e no que toca a Segunda Sêtença do cazo da tirada da prizaõ, havia por bem que se revogue Visto a quallidade delle, e que de novo se sentencee a cauza na Rellaçaõ com toda a demostraçaõ de rigor da justiça que a materia pede, tendo se respeito a

estar Sentenceado pela primeira Sentença em degredo perpetuo p<sup>a</sup> a conquista de Manomotapa o que ordenareis se dee a execuçaõ, Escrita em Lx<sup>a</sup> a 22 de Março de 1628. Rey. Duque de Villa hermoza : Conde de Ficalho.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Dom Francisco Mascarenhas, viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well. Being informed that Francisco de Aguiar Evangelho, being a prisoner and sentenced for life to the conquest of Monomotapa, and condemned to pay the sum of one thousand cruzados to the judge of Cochin, as penalty for the excesses of which he was proved guilty in the trial conducted by the said judge, escaped from the prison in which he was confined by the help of others outside, who forcibly obtained the keys from the gaoler, with which they opened the door, one of the guards being wounded by him with a knife; and that this case being brought before the supreme court of Goa, in presence of the count of Vidigueira, then my viceroy in that State, a sentence was passed by a majority of votes commuting the transportation to Monomotapa, to which he had been condemned, to service in the wars of Ormuz while those wars lasted, and that on the conclusion of them he should continue to suffer the banishment to which he was condemned, his removal to Ormuz for this second crime taking the place of a punishment; I commanded that information concerning this matter should be asked from the said count of Vidigueira, and he sent me the documents last year, an account of which and of the sentence passed in the case was given to me; having considered the matter, I have resolved that the first sentence was passed according to justice, and as regards the second sentence inflicted in punishment of his escape from prison, I think fit, considering the character of it, that it shall be revoked, and that a new sentence be passed in the case by the supreme court, with every demonstration of lawful severity which the matter demands, bearing in mind that by the first sentence he is condemned to perpetual banishment to the conquest of Monomotapa; what you order shall be put into execution.

Written in Lisbon, the 22nd of March 1628.

THE KING.

DUKE OF VILLAHERMOSA.

COUNT OF FICALHO.

Eu El Rey Faço saber aos que este Aluara virem que hauendo respeito ao que por parte das pessoas providas por mim da Feitoria da Fortaleza de Massambique se me representou, e o que alegara em Seu fauor para haverem de Servir o dito cargo como Seus antecessores nelle, e o aforamento que o Conde da vidigueira vRey da India fez a Ioaõ Coelho Freire das Ilhas de Angoxa, e trate dos rios a ella anexos se não confirmar por mim. Hey por bem que o dito aforamento não haja efeito, e que se faça para isso as declaraçoens necessarias nas partes que convierem que elle esta registado do Contheudo neste Aluara que se cumpra como nelle se conthem sem duvida nem embargo algum; o qual valerá como carta sem embargo da ordenação do 2º livro tt 40 que dispoem a Contrario, e se passou por tres vias. Francisco de Abreu a fez em Lisboa a xxv de Março de mil seis centos, e vinte oito. Arcebispo de Lisboa. Luis da Silva.

*[English translation of the foregoing.]*

I the king make known to you to whom this order shall come, that having regard to the representations made to me on the part of those persons appointed by me to the succession of the factory of the fortress of Mozambique, and to the motives brought forward in favour of their holding the said office in the same manner as their predecessors in it; and as the grant of the islands of Angoxa and the trade of the rivers included in it, which the count of Vidigueira, viceroy of India, bestowed on João Coelho Freire, has not been confirmed by me, I think fit that the said grant be cancelled, and that the necessary declarations of the contents of this order be made in the places where it is advisable to register it; which order shall be accomplished in accordance with its contents, without any question or impediment being raised, and it shall be as binding as a letter, notwithstanding the decree of book 2nd, record 40, which orders to the contrary; and it is sent by three routes.

Drawn up by Francisco de Abreu in Lisbon, the 25th of March 1628.

ARCHBISHOP OF LISBON.  
LUIS DA SILVA.

Conde de Linhares vRey da India amº Eu El Rey vos envio muito saudar como aquelle que amo. Por parte de Dom Nuno Aluares Pereira se me fez a petição que Sera com esto em que pede lhe conceda em Capitania de Iuro, e herdade fora da Ley mental quatro centas legoas de costa dezde Inhabane para a parte de cabo de boa esperanza com as capitancias do Estado do Brazil, para nella fazer huma, ou mais fortalezas em conservaçoã, e Segurança do commercio, e na forma que se conthem na mesma petição sobre a qual ordeney que se houvesse aqui informaçoã. E havendo a visto, Me pareceo remeter vos a dita petição e informaçoã, e encomendar vos que a proponhais no conselho que vos ha de aSistir, e aSim no de minha fazenda desse Estado em rezaõ do que se aponta do prejuizo do commercio de Mossambique, e Sofalla E considerada bem a materia se aponte o que parecer que me enviareis avizando me do que se vos offerecer. E mandey que dezde aqui se vos comonicasse em razaõ de hirdes advertido para em cazo que tomeis Massambique fazerdes aly deligencia, e vos informardes, e tomardes as noticias necessarias para se ver tudo nos conselhos em que ordeno que esta materia se veja. Escrita em Lisboa a 24 de Ianeiro de 629. Rey. Duque de villa Hermoza. Conde de Ficalho.

[English translation of the foregoing.]

Count of Linhares, viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. Dom Nuno Alvares Pereira has presented me the petition which will be sent with this, in which he asks me to grant him the captaincy of four hundred leagues of coast from Inhambane towards the Cape of Good Hope, with perpetual rights to it for himself and his heirs, which is not in accordance with the *lei mental*,\* and also the captaincies of the state of Brazil, in order that he may construct there one or more fortresses for the preservation and security of commerce in the manner stated in the said petition. Concerning which I gave order for information to be obtained here, and having examined it, I think fit to remit to you the said petition and information, and to charge you to lay it before the council that assists you and also before the council of my treasury in that State, that any

\* The ancient law relating to succession to Crown property.



reasons for which it might be prejudicial to the commerce of Mozambique and Sofala may be pointed out. And the matter being well considered, let it be decided what report it appears advisable to send to me, and inform me of your opinion. I have commanded that this should be communicated to you at this place, that you may be informed thereof, so that in the event of your putting into Mozambique you can take measures there for obtaining information and all the necessary reports, that the whole matter may be examined by the councils before which I have commanded it to be laid.

Written in Lisbon, the 24th of January 1629.

THE KING.

DUKE OF VILLAHERMOSA.

COUNT OF FICALHO.

Conde de Linhares vRey da India amigo. Eu El Rey vos envio muito saudar como aquelle que amo. O Conde de vidig<sup>ra</sup> sendo meu VRey desse Estado me deu conta nas vias do anno de 1627 do avizo que por via de Diogo de Souza de Menezes Capitaõ de Massambique de se ter noticia de trinta, ou quarenta homens, e huma mulher que estaua vinte dias de caminho de cabo das correntes para a banda de Sul da perdiçaõ da nao Saõ Ioaõ que troxira este recado hum Pataxo que por estar para partir ao tempo que se lhe deu a noua por via dos cafres naõ tivera lugar de mandar lá Saber Serteza della sobre o que se fazia diligencia. E vendo eu o Sobre dita me pareceo encomendar vos muito que naõ estando ja recolhida aquella gente de que se teue noticia se trate disso com todo o cuidado, e mandeis fazer todas as deligencias por Se Saber della, e se recolher toda a que puder ser reprehendendo o Capitaõ do pataxo que foy ao Cabo das correntes, e troxe esta noua a Massambique de naõ parar mais por isso, e mandar algum recado aquella gente com ã os animasse a esperar. Escrita em Lisboa a 19 de Fevereiro de 1629. Rey. Duque de villa Herm<sup>ra</sup>.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count of Linhares, viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. The count of Vidigueira, when

he was my viceroy of that state, sent me a report in the year 1627 of information given by Diogo de Sousa de Menezes, captain of Mozambique, that a report had been received of thirty or forty men and one woman from the wrecked ship *São João*, who were twenty days' journey south of Cape das Correntes, which report was brought by a pinnace that being on the point of sailing at the time when the Kaffirs brought the information, the captain had no means of sending to obtain exact information of them, for which measures should have been taken. Having seen the aforesaid, I think fit earnestly to recommend you, if these people of whom intelligence has been received are not already rescued, to treat of this matter with every care, and to command all measures to be taken for obtaining information of them, and for rescuing as many as possible; and that you censure the captain of the pinnace who went to the Cape das Correntes and brought this report to Mozambique, for not staying longer for this purpose and not sending some assistance to them to encourage them to wait.

Written in Lisbon, the 19th of February 1629.

THE KING.

DUKE OF VILLAHERMOSA.

---

Conde de Linhares vRey da India amigo. Eu El Rey vos envio muito saudar como aquelle que amo. Vy a consulta que pella meza de minha fazenda desse Estado se me fez sobre o excesso que se dizia ouvera contra minha fazenda no ordenado que Dom Nuno Aluares Pereira leou de Governador das minas de Monomotapa, e rezaõ que ouve para se lhe levantar a uerba que por cauza disso estaua posta em Seu tt<sup>a</sup> a qual consulta enviou o Conde de vidigueira Sendo meu vRey desse Estado com carta Sua de dez de Março do anno de 1627. E hey por bem de aprouar haver se levantado a verba que o dito vRey mandou a levantar do titulo de Dom Nuno Aluares Per<sup>a</sup> por quanto El Rey meu Senhor, e Pay que Santa Gloria haja tinha descedida a materia no anno de 1628, e porque os bares de roupas que se lhe pagaraõ eraõ os mesmos que se lhe aSignalaraõ de ordenado. Escrita em Lisboa a 22 de Fevereiro de 1629. Rey. Duque de villa Hermoza. Conde de Ficalho.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count of Linhares, viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. I have seen the ordinance presented by the council of my treasury relating to the salary received by Dom Nuno Alvares Pereira as governor of the mines of Monomotapa, and the reasons brought forward by the council for entering in his deed of agreement the clause that was accordingly entered; which ordinance was sent by the count of Vidigueira, when my viceroy of that State, with his letter of the 10th of March 1627. And I think fit to approve of the clause which the said viceroy commanded to be entered in the deed of Dom Nuno Alvares Pereira, because of the decision given in the matter in the year 1628 by the king my lord and father, now in glory, and because the bars of cloth paid by virtue of it were the same as were assigned to him as his salary.

Written in Lisbon, the 22nd of February 1629.

THE KING.

DUKE OF VILLAHERMOSA.

COUNT OF FICALHO.

Conde VizoRey amigo. Eu El Rey vos envio muito saudar como aquelle que amo. Sendo o trato dessas partes da India oriental taõ importante para minha fazenda, e proveito de meos vaçalhos, antes que as naçoens da Europa, particularmente os oLandezes, e Ingrezes passarem a ellas por virem buscar a Lisboa as drogas, e mercadorias que os Portuguezes traziaõ com que o Reino estaua rico, e florente; depois q̄ os Estrangeiros intentaraõ a mesma nauegação e commercio, se trocou tudo de maneira que estaõ hoje em posse dellas, e tem reduzido esses Reinos, e esse Estado ao aperto que he notorio; e porque naõ Somente convem rezistir lhes com armas, mas divertir lhe o commercio, pellos meynos dellas, fazendo que ganhem menos para o que se require mayor cabedal; que o que minha fazenda empregaua cada anno nas naos de viagem para este fim particularmente: tenho mandado instruir na Cidade de Lisboa huma companhia formada com cabedades das cidades, e villas do Reino que nella quizeraõ entrar conhecendo a vtilidade que ha de ter, e em

que tambem minha fazenda entra como participe principal, como tambem os homens de negocio, e as mais comonidades, e particulares do Reino que o que Serem, e puderem fazer, porque tudo ha de ter voluntario, e a Satisfação dos participes p<sup>a</sup> que sendo os empregos mayores, e os ganhos a respeito delles se tire por este modo o comercio das maons dos estrangeiros: o que hauendo de rezultar em beneficio dos particulares que entrarem na companhia metendo Seu dinheiro proprio, muito mais evidentemente sera em proveito dos pouos, e Camaras por hauer de Ser o que derem das rendas dellas que nenhum dos da governança pode ter por proprias Suas ou de impozicoens meynos Suaues, e faciles e por os quais Sem gastar o principal que Sempre ha de permanecer viuo na comp<sup>a</sup> teraõ breuemente ganhos de importancia cõ que se acrescentã as fazendas das Camaras e haja Substancia para acudir mais larga, e mais promptamente as necessidades, e obras publicas para que muitas vezes falta, e Sendo as camaras em commum ricas consequentemente fica redundando em melhoria e aproueitamento Geral do pouo, e dos particulares, e na administraçã da companhia, em que como fica dito tambem minha fazenda ha de entrar com muito grande cabedal; se ha de ter tambem boa conta, e ordem que infalivelmente tenha nella cada lugar Seguro o principal com que entrar, e os ganhos que lhe pertencerem, e inteira razaõ delles conforme ao regimento que mandey ordenar com todas as boas consideracoens, e para que as cidades, e lugares desse Estado ajudem de Sua parte em cauza que tanto lhes toca, como he o comercio delle, e meynos para dezviar do mesmo Estado os Estrangeiros do Norte que o tem infestado. Me pareceo conveniente que da mesma maneira a imitaçã do que fazem as Cidades, e villas do Reino se deue procurar que as desse Estado entre tambem nesta companhia esforcando se nos Portos que para isso Signalarem, porque tanto que chegarem a quantia de oitenta mil cruzados, permito, e hey por bem que nome em huma pessoa para aSistir na caza da administraçã da companhia que com estas naos mando instruir em Goa, e esta subordinada e sogeita a geral que esta formada em Lisboa, e dependente della em tudo pella forma declarada no regimento, e esta da India ha de entender na fabrica das naos de volta, e seu apresto, e admenistraçã das fazendas que de qui forem, e de lá vierem em retorno, e porque o negocio he da importancia que se deixe ver, vos encarrego, e mando que em

chegando a Goa o trateis com os offeizaes da Camara' daquella Cidade procurando, e instando que venhaõ em entrar na companhia, e signalar para isso seu posto que seja adequado a sua opulencia, e grandesa e aSentado por elles por aSento lançado em Seus livros com esse exemplo se ha de tratar que as camaras das outras Cid<sup>es</sup> e lugares desse Estado venhaõ no mesmo cada huma conforme a sua possibilidade, sobre o que vos, e os mesmos officiaes da camara da cidade de Goa lhes escrevereis persuadindo vos com as razoens aqui apontadas, e com seu exemplo em todo o qual espero ser servido de vos muito a minha satisfaçõ; e que com as primeiras naos me escrevereis que se tem effectuado, e para facilitar obra em q̄ tanto vay mandey que se escrevessem cartas minhas a todas as cidades, e mais lugares desse Estado, e que a Camara de Lisboa como cabeça da coroa de Portugal, e que primeiro se declarou em fauor da comp<sup>a</sup> com posto de sincoenta mil cruzados pagos em tres annos escrevesse a de Goa insitandoa, e persuadindoa ao mesmo, porem de uosso cuidado, e traça fio que o Suçesso ha de corresponder a tençaõ com que se instituiu esta companhia, e se procura seu agmento e conseruação. Escrita em Madrid ao prim<sup>o</sup> de Março de 1629. Rey. Duque de villa Hermoza. Conde de Ficalho.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, viceroy, and friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. The trade of those parts of the East Indies being so important to my treasury and profitable to my subjects before the European nations, particularly the Dutch and the English, went there, when they came to Lisbon in search of the spices and other merchandise which the Portuguese brought thence, by which the kingdom was rich and prosperous; and after the foreign nations entered upon this navigation and commerce everything was changed, so that they are at present in possession of the trade, and have reduced these kingdoms and that state to their present want, which is notorious. And because it is advisable not only to resist them by force of arms, but also to divert the commerce from them and make their profits less, to accomplish which a larger capital is required than that employed by my treasury every year in fitting out the trading ships; for this purpose principally I have commanded a company to be

established in the city of Lisbon, assisted with sums of money from the cities and towns of the kingdom that wish to join it, knowing the advantage it will be, and in which my treasury also enters as principal shareholder, and also men of business, and any other societies and private persons of the kingdom, whoever they may be, may enter, as the whole capital is to be voluntarily subscribed, and to the satisfaction of the shareholders, so that the outlay may be greater and the profits in proportion, and the commerce by this means be withdrawn from the hands of foreign nations. The results of this being to the profit of private persons who put their own money into it, will evidently be much more beneficial to the people and municipal bodies, as what they subscribe is to be paid out of their revenues, and no government officials may put into it their own money or money from taxes. These are beneficial and simple measures, by which the capital always remaining untouched, considerable profits will be quickly gained, with which the treasuries of the municipal bodies will be enriched, and there will be money wherewith to attend more largely and more speedily to public needs and works, for which very often means are wanting. And the municipal bodies being in general rich, this will consequently lead to the advancement and to the general good of the people and of individuals, and to the good administration of the company, into which, as has been said, my treasury is to enter, furnishing a very large sum. Great care is to be taken, and order given, that each town shall absolutely hold in safety the capital with which it enters, and the profits which belong to it, and have a full account of them, according to the regulations which I have commanded to be drawn up with all prudent consideration.

And in order that the cities and towns of India may assist on their part in a cause which touches them so closely, as does the commerce of that state and the measures for driving out the northern nations who have infested it, it has appeared to me advisable that in the same manner, imitating the example of the cities and towns of the kingdom, we must endeavour to induce those of that State to join the company, exerting themselves to pay the sums assigned for this purpose, because whenever the amount reaches eighty thousand cruzados, I allow and think fit that the subscribers nominate a person to assist in the chamber of administration of the company, which by these ships I

command shall be instituted in Goa, and which shall be subordinate and subject to the principal chamber, which is established at Lisbon, and dependent on it in every way, according to the manner stated in the regulations. And the said chamber in India is to have charge of the fabric of the ships for the return voyage and of their equipment, and of the management of the merchandise sent from this country and coming thence in return.

And because the matter is of such importance as is shown, I charge and command you, on your arrival at Goa to treat with the officials of the municipal board of that city, and endeavour to persuade them to join the company, and for this purpose to name a sum which will be adequate to its opulence and greatness; and when they have agreed upon a sum and entered the agreement in their books, with this example proceedings must be taken to persuade the municipal bodies of the other cities and towns of that state to do the same, each one in accordance with its means, concerning which you and the said officials of the municipal body of the city of Goa shall write to them, persuading them to this by means of the reasons herein stated; and by your example I hope you will serve me in all this matter to my great satisfaction, and that by the first ships you will write to me that this has been carried out. And to facilitate the accomplishment of a matter of such great importance, I have commanded that letters should be written in my name to all the cities and towns of that state, and that the municipal board of Lisbon, as being the chief one of the crown of Portugal, and that which first declared in favour of the company, contributing a sum of fifty thousand cruzados to be paid in three years, should write to the municipal board of Goa, inciting and persuading it to do the same; nevertheless I am confident the success of the object for which this company was instituted, its increase, and preservation will be due to your care and management.

Written in Madrid, the 1st of March 1629.

THE KING.

DUKE OF VILLAHERMOZA.

COUNT OF FICALHO.

---

Eu El Rey faço saber aos meu vizorey ou Governador das partes da India, e vedor de minha fazenda Geral dellas que nestas naos que D<sup>e</sup> leuara a Saluamento a esse Estado vaõ duzentos mil em Reales para com o resto do dinheiro que ficou nessas ditas partes do que se enviou os annos passados para compra de Salitre se empregar nelle, e o procedido da duela, e mantimentos que Sobejarem dos galioens que hora envio de Socorro ao dito Estado em ropas pretas para a mina Monomotapa que dito hé, procurando que se beneficem aSim o resto do dito dinheiro que ficou nessas partes como o mais e duellas, e mantimentos de modo que em tudo receba minha fazenda vtilidade, fazendo embarcar o dito Salitre e roupas pretas nas naos de viagem que tornarem para este Reino em lugares bem acondissionados, e em que possa receber dano, e o que proceder nesta materia me dareis conta em particular pello concelho de minha fazenda o que cumprireis por este que naõ passara pella chanceleria, e vay por tres vias Francisco de Abreu a fez em Lisboa a onze de Março de 1629. Arcebispo de Lisboa.

[English translation of the foregoing.]

I the king make known to you my viceroy or governor in India and the overseer general of my treasury in those places, that two hundred thousand reis in reals are sent in these ships, which may God bring safely to that State, to be expended in buying saltpetre, for which the money remaining in the said places from what was sent for this purpose in former years is also to be used; and the proceeds of the *duela* and provisions left over from the galleons which I am now sending to assist the said State are to be expended in buying black cloth for the mines of Monomotapa, as has been said; and you will take care that the remainder of the money remaining in those parts, as also the proceeds of the *duellas* and provisions, is expended in this manner, so that my treasury may receive profit from all; causing the said saltpetre and black cloth to be shipped in the trading vessels returning to this kingdom, safely packed, that they may receive no damage. And you shall send me an account of the proceedings taken in this matter, and a special report by the council of my treasury, of what you accomplish in virtue of this order,



which has not passed through the chancellor, and is sent by three routes.

Drawn up by Francisco de Abreu in Lisbon, the 11th of March 1629.

ARCHBISHOP OF LISBON.

---

Conde Sobrinho vizoRey da India amigo: Eu El Rey vos envio muito Saudar Como aquelle que Amo. vendo o que me escreueo o Conde da vidigeira sendo meu vizoRey desse Estado em carta Sua de dez de Janeiro do anno de 1628, dando me Conta do em que ficauão as cauzas que Corem no juizo de minha fazenda Sobre as duas mutras de Diamantes que Saluaraõ da Nao Saõ Joaõ que se perdeo o anno de 1622 na paragem do Cabo de boa Esperança e se achou não Serem registados, e sobre as perolas que se acharaõ em Mossambique sem registo a Pedro Lopes de medina Castelhanao que aly falleceo que hia deste Reyno embarcado na Nao Santa Izabel da Armada do anno de 1623, e aSim a Rellaçaõ que juntamente enviou sobre o mesmo de procurador de minha fazenda. Me pareceo dizer vos que por quanto Se tem Informaçã Certa que a Nao Saõ Joam se perdeo em trinta e Sinco graos do Cabo de boa Esperança Com o que não pode ter Lugar o protexto de lhe não prejudicar a falta de não serem registados os Diamantes e das perolas Consto a que se não pagaraõ direitos neste Reyno encarregueis particularmente ao procurador de minha fazenda tenha Cuidado de puxar por isso nas cauzas que Correm em razaõ dos ditos diamantes, e Perollas: Escripta em Lisboa a 6 de Abril de 1630: Dom Diogo de Castro.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count and nephew, viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. Seeing what the count of Vidigueira wrote to me when viceroy of that state, in his letter of the 10th of January 1628, giving me an account of the point which has been reached in the cases that are being tried by my treasury relating to the two diamond seals saved from the ship *São João*, which was wrecked in the year 1622 in the vicinity of the Cape of Good Hope, and which were found to be unregistered, and

concerning the pearls found unregistered in Mozambique in possession of Pedro Lopes de Medina, a Spaniard who died there, who took passage from this kingdom in the ship *Santa Izabel* of the fleet of the year 1623, and also the report of the same case sent at the same time by the attorney of my treasury, I have thought fit to inform you that as undoubted information has been received that the ship *São João* was lost in latitude 35°, off the Cape of Good Hope, the pretext that the diamonds being unregistered is not prejudicial to him cannot be brought forward; and as to the pearls, I have proved that no duties were paid on them in this kingdom. You shall particularly charge the attorney of my treasury to bring this forward in the cases relating to the said diamonds and pearls, which are in course of hearing.

Written in Lisbon, the 6th of April 1630.

DOM DIOGO DE CASTRO.

Conde Sobrinho vizoRey da India Amigo. Eu El Rey vos envio muito Saudar Como aquelle que amo. Pello papel que se vos remete com esta Carta se me representou que os Rios de Cuama estam em miseravel Estado e ariscados a vir o Comercio a grande diminuiçã que tudo procede de naõ haver justiça delles nem quem Administre Como convem e se aponta o remedio que nisso se pode dar e vendo eu tudo. Me pareceo remeter vos o mesmo papel e encomendar vos (como faço) primeiro que o negocio se deé a execuçaõ que tomeis sobre elle as informaçoens necessarias das conveniencias de materia, e mais particulares della. E vendo tudo no Concelho que vos assiste e na meza da fazenda da rezoluçaõ que nella se tomar acerca do negocio me dareis conta. Escrita em Madrid a trinta e hum de Março de 1631. Rey. Duque de Villa hermoza, Conde de Ficalho.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, nephew, viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. In the paper sent to you with this letter it has been represented to me that the rivers of Cuama are in a miserable state, and in danger of the commerce being greatly decreased, which is caused by there being no officers of justice

there, and no one to govern as is fitting, and the remedy which could be applied to this is pointed out. And having examined the whole matter, I think fit to send you the paper and to charge you (as I now do) before the matter is put into execution, to obtain all the necessary information concerning the advantages of it, and other details relating to it. And having examined all these particulars in the council which assists you, and in the council of the treasury, you shall report to me the resolution passed concerning it.

Written in Madrid, the 31st of March 1631.

THE KING.

DUKE OF VILLAHERMOZA.

COUNT OF FICALHO.

Conde sobrinho VizoRey da India Amigo. Eu El Rey vos envio muito Saudar como aquelle que amo. o Dezembargador Pedro Alvares Pereira me escreveu em seis de Agosto do anno de Seis centos vinte e nove a Carta de que se vos remete com esta a Copia sobre a diligencia que fez na fortaleza de Mossambique do Cobre, e Salitre que há nos Rios de Cuama: Encomendo vos que em vossa presença façaes ver a materia na meza da fazenda desse Estado, e tomadas todas as informações necessarias averigoado o negocio o façaes logo dar a execução, e do que preceder nisso me dareis conta aggradecendo da minha parte a Pedro Alvares Pereira este Serviço, que me fez. Escrita em Madrid a dez de Abril de 1631. Rey. Duque de Villa hermoza, Conde de Ficalho.

*[English translation of the foregoing.]*

Count, nephew, viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. The chief judge, Pedro Alvares Pereira, wrote to me on the 6th of August 1629 the letter of which a copy is sent with this, concerning the measures which he took in the fortress of Mozambique regarding the copper and saltpetre which are found in the rivers of Cuama. I charge you to cause the matter to be examined in your presence in the council of the treasury of that state; and all the necessary information being obtained, and the business investigated, to forthwith

carry it into execution. You shall give me an account of the proceedings taken in the matter, and thank Pedro Alvares Pereira in my name for this service which he has rendered to me.

Written in Madrid, the 10th of April 1631.

THE KING.

DUKE OF VILLAHERMOZA.

COUNT OF FICALHO.

---

Conde Sobrinho VizoRey da India Amigo. Eu El Rey vos envio muito Saudar Como aquelle que amo. Mandey ver com toda a applicaçã, e Cuidado a Cópia do Contrato que fizestes Com Dom Nuno Alvares Pereira Sobre a conquista de Monomatapa, e postoque entendo que o zello que mostrais do acrescentamento da minha fazenda vos moveria ao por em pratica com tudo por ser esta materia tanto de meu serviço se tratou e Conferio diversas vezes por ordem minha, e apontando se os dannos que della podem resultar se ponderaraõ tambem outras Couzas de grande consideraçã por que não se acha que levaseis ordem minha para fazer o tal contrato nem se sabem o intento que Dom Nuno Alvares primeira tem neste negocio porque não se declara nelle somente fala na Conquista de Monomatapa que parece que não tem Iá que Conquistar pois ao mesmo tempo me avizais vos e Dom Nuno Alvares que eu estou Senhor daquelle Reino, e aquelle Rey meu vassallo não se obrigando Dom Nuno Alvares ao descubrimento das minas havendo dito elle em Cartas suas que as de ouro Saõ muitas e que com facilidade se podem descobrir o que tudo visto, e não estarem ja as Couzas em termos de Conquista se não de se sustentar a Concordia e christianissimo daquelle Rey, e de buscar e beneficiar aquellas Minas de ouro, e prata que tem Capitulado, e concedido para o que offerece a ajuda e favor necessario, e taõ pouco se obrigar Dom Nuno Alvares as minas de Cobre e somente dizer que dará duzentos quintaes de Cobre sujo que apurado ficara em pouca quantia e Ser o que se lhe Concede de muito mayor importancia que as obrigaçoens que elle faz Como se vé da Cópia do Contrato, e por outras razoens de meu Serviço. Me pareceo dizer vos que não Convem que se confirme, e mando que não tenha effeito, e tendo se por vossa

parte toda a boa correspondencia que hé justo com o Monomatapa Como com hum Rey Christaõ e vassallo meu se deve ter trateis logo do descubrimento das minas de prata, e ouro que me tem dado que por tantas vezes se havia encarregado a Dom Nuno Alvares sem por sua via se poder conseguir tratando tambem das de Cobre para o que ordenareis Como por esta Carta vos encarrego muito, e mando que se faça hum forte na parte que parecer mais Segura e aComodada para se poder Concervar, e ter em minha obediencia ao Monomatapa para o qual Sirva tambem de o amparar e defender contra seus Inimigos dando lhe entender quanto Convem para a Seguridade de seu Reino que elle o ajude a Sustentar fortificando tambem as entradas de Cilimane e luago de sorte que os fortes que se fizerem sejaõ em tal forma e Com taõ boa fortificaçaõ que se possaõ deffender Contra qualquer aCometimento dos Inimigos de Europa pelo que se perderia a reputaçã se se tomasse qualquer delles para o que mando ordenar se vos envie hum engenheiro pratico das fortificaçoens modernas, e vos fareis que se acuda com todo o necessario para Concervaçaõ defençaõ destes fortes ordenando tambem que a fortaleza de Monsambique esteja sempre com toda a gente e prevençaõ que tenho ordenado para Sua boa guarda, e defença, pois vos devem ser presentes os intentos que os Inimigos tem de se apoderar daquelle comercio Cercando para esse effeito duas vezes com cercos taõ apertados a mesma fortaleza do que tudo espero Com o favor divino e mediante vosso cuidado que em vosso tempo se acabem de apurar e averigoar as Minas que tanta gente e fazenda tem Custado para Cujos gastos e os das fortificaçoens, me pareceo advertir vos que se poderia aplicar a Curua que se Costumava dar ao Monomatapa e a boca que me tocaõ a mim e importaraõ cada anno sete mil cruzados o arrendamento das Ilhas de Angoxa, e os dezaseis mil xerefins, que por este Contrato se haviaõ de enviar em Cada hum anno em Goa em Cazo que se possaõ escuzar das despezas ordinarias da Fortaleza e prezidio de Mossambique as quaes couzas naõ sãõ de pouca concideraçã quando o Monomatapa me está pacificamente obedecendo.

E Quanto a Gaspar Barboza que aly enviastes com tres Cargos taõ superiores como sãõ os de ouvidor Geral, e Provedor dos deffuntos, e veedor da Fazenda postoque elle seja pessoa de boa opiniaõ naõ se vê que tenha a sufficiencia necessaria para administrar nehum dos Cargos referidos porque cada hum dos dous

primeiros require pessoas de letras e de muita pratica judicial para administrar juridição Geral em todas aquellas Provincias no Civil e no Criminal, e por que no Criminal se lhe reservassem as apelaçoens nos Cazos de morte natural dahy para baizo bá outras penas muy graves em que será de grande inconveniente se fulminem as Cauzas e se fação as condemnaçoens por pessoa sem letras e sem nenhuma noticia de materias judiciaes, e o mesmo inconveniente milita no Cargo do Provedor dos deffuntos por ser os que ali morrem quazi todos traginadores e deixar suas fazendas embaraçadas e ser necessario letras e pratica judicial para julgar as Cauzas que sobre ellas se movem, e o Cargo de Vedor da Fazenda, postoque outras vezes ande em pessoas que não tenhaõ letras a Comissaõ que lhe deo foy para conher as mesmas terras que andarem alheadas sendo pertencentes as Fortalezas sobre as quaes, e sobre os titulllos, e possessaõ dellas ha de haver demandas com os possuidores, e assim fica sendo comissaõ mais de Iustiça que de fazenda porque não há aly minha que Gaspar Barboza podesse administrar suposto o contrato que se fazia com Dom Nuno Alvares de mais que sendo criado vosso, e havendo prohibiçaõ minha para que os vizoReis não provejaõ os officios em seus criados não deveis encarregar tres officios juntos contra a tal prohibiçaõ a Gaspar Barboza não tendo as Letras e sufficiencia necessaria para elles, e não deixa de Ser de consideraçãõ dar lhe tres mil cruzados, a Saber dous a titulo de Sellario, e mil por huma vez a titulo de ajuda de Custo em tempos taõ apertados, e que não mandais pagar o que se deve aos Ministros da Igreja sendo esta obrigaçaõ taõ preciza, e principal a Consideraçãõ do qual, e da obrigaçaõ que tenho de dar a meus vassallos Ministros que tenhaõ a Sufficiencia necessaria para lhes administrar Iustiça principalmente em partes taõ remotas de minha real prezença. Hey por bem que desocupeis a Gaspar Barboza dos cargos referidos, e que o exercicio dos de ouvidor Geral e Provedor dos deffuntos, e Couzas tocantes a elles Couza pellos meyo ordinarios que de antes Costumava correr, e o de vedor da Fazenda se escuze por não ser necessario aly Cometendo se o reconhecimento das terras que se entender pertencerẽ as fortalezas ao ouvidor da Mossambique com appellaçaõ para a Rellaçaõ de Goa. Escripta em Madrid a trinta e hum de Abril de mil seis centos trinta, e hum. Conde de Castro, Conde de Val de Reis.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, nephew, viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. I have commanded the copy of the contract which you entered into with Dom Nuno Alvares Pereira concerning the conquest of Monomotapa to be examined with all diligence and care, and although I gather that the zeal which you show for the enrichment of my treasury will move you to carry it out, nevertheless it being a matter of great importance to my service, by my order it has been dealt with and conferred upon several times; and the evils which it might give rise to being pointed out, various other questions of great weight were also dealt with, by which it is decided that you received no orders from me to make such a contract, nor is it known what Dom Nuno Alvares Pereira's intentions are in this matter, because they are not stated therein, but only the conquest of Monomotapa is spoken of, which conquest appears to be unnecessary, since at the same time both you and Dom Nuno Alvares inform me that I am lord of that kingdom, and the said king is my vassal, Dom Nuno Alvares not undertaking to discover the mines, having stated in his letters that those of gold are numerous and could be easily explored.

All of which being examined, if matters are not already in train for conquest, the most Christian concord is to be continued with the said king, and search is to be made for the mines of gold and silver, and measures taken for working them, which mines he has surrendered and granted, and for which he offers the necessary help and favour. Nor does Dom Nuno Alvares take upon himself any obligation as regards the copper mines, and merely says that he will give two hundred quintals of copper ore, which when purified will be a small quantity.

And as what is granted to him is of much greater importance than the obligations on his side, as seen by the copy of the contract, and for other reasons proper for my service, I think fit to inform you that it is not advisable to confirm it, and I command that it be cancelled; and that you hold on your part friendly intercourse with the monomotapa, which it is fitting should be held with a Christian king and my vassal; and you shall take steps forthwith for the discovery of the silver and gold mines which he has given me, which matter has been entrusted

so many times to Dom Nuno Alvares without any success on his part; and you shall do the same with regard to the copper mines.

You shall give order, as I earnestly charge and command you to do by this letter, for the construction of a fort in the place which appears most safe and convenient to maintain the monomotapa in submission to my authority, and which may also serve to shield and defend him from his enemies, explaining to him how necessary it is for the security of his kingdom that he should help to support it. You shall fortify also the entrances to Quilimane and Luabo in such a manner that the forts which are constructed there may be able to resist any attacks by European enemies; and therefore if any one of them were taken our honour would be lost. For this reason I have issued orders that an engineer experienced in modern fortifications be sent out to you, and you shall take care that all the necessary assistance is rendered for the preservation and defence of these forts, and give instructions also that the fortress of Mozambique shall always contain the number of men, and have the means of defence, which I have ordered for its safety, as you must bear in mind the enemies' intention of possessing themselves of that commerce. This fortress should be encircled for this purpose with two very strong palisades, by all of which I hope with the divine favour, and through your care, that during your term of office the business of exploring and examining the mines may be completed, which has cost so many men and so much money.

I think fit to inform you that for the costs of this and of the fortifications the yearly present which it was usual to make to the monomotapa may be employed, and also the mouth which was paid, and the lease of the islands of Angoxa, which amounted every year to seven thousand cruzados, and the sixteen thousand xerafins which according to this contract were to be sent every year to Goa, if they are not required for the ordinary expenses of the fortress and garrison of Mozambique. These matters are of no little importance now when the monomotapa is submitting peaceably to my authority.

As regards Gaspar Barboza, whom you sent there to fill three such important offices as that of chief judge, guardian of the property of deceased persons, and overseer of the treasury, although he is a person of good judgment it is not considered



that he possesses the necessary qualifications to fill any of the offices referred to, as the two first named require a person of learning and experience in legal matters, as he is to have the general jurisdiction, both civil and criminal, of all those provinces, and in which, in the criminal jurisdiction, appeals in cases of death are heard by him. From these downwards there are other very serious punishments in which it would give rise to great evil for sentence to be pronounced and judgment given by a person of no learning, and having no knowledge whatever of legal matters; and the same inconvenience arises as regards the office of guardian of the property of deceased persons, as those who die there are nearly all travellers, and leave their affairs involved, and it is necessary to have both learning and practice in legal matters to give judgment in the cases which are brought forward concerning them.

Although the office of overseer of the treasury has been given at other times to persons who had no legal knowledge, the commission was conferred upon them on account of their knowledge of the lands subject to this office, and which belong to the fortresses, concerning which, and concerning the claims to them and the possession of them, cases are brought against their occupants, and therefore it is a commission which has to deal with law rather than with property. I have no property there which Gaspar Barboza could administer, the contract with Dom Nuno Alvares being considered. Further, as he is your servant, and I have issued a prohibition against the viceroys bestowing appointments on their servants, you should not, contrary to the said prohibition, have appointed Gaspar Barboza to three joint offices, as he does not possess the learning or qualifications which they require; and it is no trifling matter that you have given him three thousand cruzados, viz. two thousand as salary, and a single payment of a thousand for his expenses, in times of such scarcity, and when you have not given order for the ministers of the church to be paid, which is a most pressing and important duty.

In consideration of which and of the obligation I am under to provide my subjects with capable officers to administer justice to them, especially in countries so distant from my royal person, I think fit that you remove Gaspar Barboza from the said offices, and that the posts of chief judge and guardian of the property of deceased persons and cases appertaining to them be filled in the

ordinary manner, in which they were formerly occupied; and that of overseer of the treasury be dispensed with, as it is not necessary, the superintendence of the lands which are understood to belong to the fortresses being entrusted to the judge of Mozambique, with appeal to the court at Goa.

Written in Madrid, the 31st (*sic*) of April 1631.

COUNT OF CASTRO.

COUNT OF VALDEREIS.

Conde Sobrinho vizoRey da India Amigo. Eu El Rey vos envio muito Saudar como aquelle que muito amo. Vendo que huma das Capitulaçoens que se fizeraõ Com o Monomatapa quando meus Capitaens o meteraõ na possessaõ daquelle Reino foy a principal que elle Seria meu vassallo, e daria todos os annos tres pastas de ouro aos Capitaens de Mossambique, e que elles lhe enviariaõ alguma couza de retorno. Me pareceo dizer vos que com estas tres pastas de ouro se daõ em sinal de obediencia, e vassalagem fica mais proprio o reconhecer se minha pessoa emediatemente Com este genero de tributo, e não mediante outras pessoas porque por este modo ficara mais honrado, e reconhecido o Monomatapa entendendo que hé meu tributario, e assim vos encomendo ordeneis se declare, e que as pastas se me enviem todos os annos, e o retorno que se lhe ha de enviar seja por conta de minha fazenda que será em mayor significaçãõ de minha soberania Real honrando o Com alguma Couza em meu nome como poderia ser huma Copa de Christal, ou otra Couza aComodada a aquelle Rey. Escrita em Madrid a trinta e hum de Abril de 1631. Conde de Castro. Conde de Val de Reis.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, nephew, viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love much. Seeing that one of the principal conditions made with the monomotapa when my captains placed him in possession of that kingdom was that he was to be my vassal, and to give three pieces of gold every year to the captains of Mozambique, and that they would send him some present in return, I think fit to inform you that as these three

pieces of gold are given as a sign of obedience and vassalage, it is more fitting that this species of tribute should be acknowledged by me in person, and not through the medium of others; and in this manner the monomotapa will be more honoured and more grateful, recognizing that he is my tributary. Therefore I recommend you to order this to be published, and that the pieces of gold be sent to me every year, and let the present which is to be sent in return be at the charge of my treasury, which will be a greater sign of my sovereignty; honouring him with some present in my name, such as a crystal goblet or something else suitable to the said king.

Written in Madrid, the 31st of April 1631.

COUNT OF CASTRO.

COUNT OF VALDEREIS.

Conde Sobrinho VizoRey da India Amigo. Eu El Rey vos envio muito Saudar Como aquelle que muito amo. Pella Carta que mando escrever ao Monomatapa de que com esta se vos envia Copia entendereis a rezoluçã que tomei em resposta de outra sua que chegou nas vias do anno passado de seis centos e trinta. Encomendo vos que vendo e ajustando vos em tudo Com o que lhe escrevo vos hajaes nas Couzas daquelle Rey como vos parecer mais Conveniente tratando o Com o Conselho que vos assiste, e porque elle me pediu que lhe mandasse pagar a Crua que lhe costumavaõ dar os Capitaens de Mossambique ou liberdade para meter tres ou quatro mil maticaes de roupa ou por seu dinheiro para dar aos grandes do seu Reino visto ser elle hoje meu tributario, e naõ Convir que pareça que o saõ seus os Capitaens de Mossambique em Lugar de curua lhe concedereis a faculdade que pede para algumas roupas na Cantidade, e forma que parecer ajustada para aquelle Rey receber favor, e naõ se fazer prejuizo ao estaque dellas, e porque eu lhe faço ora merce de honrrar com o habito de Christo ordenareis que com elle se lhe envie tambem alguma couza conveniente a Sua pessoa para que veja o favor Com que o trato, e fique mais arreigado na obediencia e benevolencia de meu Serviço e para que ella se conserve melhor ordenareis com parecer do Concelho que vos assiste hum regimento e instrucçã de Como se haõ de haver os

Portuguezes que andarem nas terras do Monomotapa com elle e Com seus vassallos para que se Conserve sempre em todos a boa amizade Correspondencia, e vniaõ que convem que haja entre huns e outros, e para se dispor o Governo do Seu Reino fareis tambem que em Conformidade da Carta que lhe escrevo se lhe envie as ordenaçoes por que se governaõ estes Reinos com as declaraçoes necessarias conforme a Seus vzos, e Costumes e porque quero ter entendido o que em huma, e outra Couza se fizer vos encomendo e mando que me deis Conta de tudo com distincão. Escrita em Madrid a trinta e hum de Abril de 1631. Conde de Castro, Conde de Val de Reis.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, nephew, viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love much. By the letter which I have commanded to be written to the monomotapa, of which a copy will be sent you with this, you will see the resolution I have taken in answer to his letter which arrived by the ships last year, 1630. I charge you that seeing this, and taking measures in accordance with what I have written to him, you shall act as regards the affairs of the said king in the manner you consider most fitting, dealing in this matter with the council which assists you. And because he has asked me to give order for the yearly present to be made to him which it was customary for the captains of Mozambique to give him, or to grant him license to put three or four thousand miticals worth of cloth for his money into the trade, to enable him to make gifts to the grandees of his kingdom, seeing that he is at the present time my tributary, and that it is not fitting that the captains of Mozambique should appear to be his vassals, instead of the yearly present you shall grant him the license which he asks for a certain quantity of cloth, in such a manner that the quantity shall satisfy the said king without being prejudicial to the monopoly of it. And because I now grant him the habit of the order of Christ, you shall give directions for a present to be sent with it suitable to his person, that he may see with what favour I treat him, and be more firm in his obedience and good will to my service. That this good will may be better preserved you shall issue, in accordance with the opinion of the council which assists you, regula-

tions and instructions as to how the Portuguese who frequent the lands of the monomotapa shall act towards him and his subjects, that the good friendship, intercourse, and union may be maintained which it is fitting there should be between them. And that the government of his kingdom may be settled, you shall also, in accordance with the letter which I have written to him, cause the laws by which these kingdoms are governed to be sent to him, with the necessary declarations in conformity with his usages and customs. And because I desire to know what is accomplished in both matters, I charge and command you to send me a clear account of all.

Written in Madrid, the 31st of April 1631.

COUNT OF CASTRO.

COUNT OF VALDEREIS.

Muito Nobre, e poderoso Rey de Monomatapa. Em Dom Phelipe por Graça de Deos Rey de Portugal, e dos Algarves daquem, e dalem mar em Africa Senhor de Guinem, e da conquista navegação, e Comercio de Ethiopia Arabia Percia, e da India et<sup>a</sup> Vos emvio muito Saudar como aquelle que como Irmaõ muito amo e prezo vy a Carta que me escrevestes nas vias das Naos do anno passado de seis centos e trinta, e havendo entendido della de que tambem me escreveo o meu VizoRey do Estado da India Como se Concluireã as guerras e inquietaçoens que houve nesse Reino Com meus Capitaens vos darem a investidura, e posse delle, e que vos alumiado da verdadeira Luz de Spirito Santo tinheis vindo no Conhecimento de nossa Santa ffeê Catholica, e Recebido a agoa de Santo Baupntismo em que Consiste o principio de thezouro, e a bemaventurança desta, e da vida eterna e que me tinheis feito vassalagem, e estaveis com animo de perseverar nestes intentos, e continuar a boa correspondencia com a estado da India offerecendo a ajuda, e favor necessario para se descubrirem as minas, me pareceo dizer vos que receby de tudo particular contentamento, e que volo agradeço muito, e vos podeis estar Certo que sempre mandarey ter com vossa pessoa, e estado o devida correspondencia como o ordeno ao VRey, e que se vos de toda ajuda e favor para vossa concervassã e despacho para poderes mandar meter com liberdade as roupas que parecer

justo, e vos envio o habito de nosso senhor IEsus Christo de que eu Sou Mestre para honra de vossa pessoa, e por via do VRey se vos enviaraõ tambem as ordenaçoes por que estes Reinos se governaõ cõ as declaraçoes que parecerem convenientes a respeito dos vzos, e Costumes e trato das vossas terras, e sobre o Governo ecclesiastico e espirital mando ao Arcebispo de Goa, e administrador da juridiçaõ Eccleziastica de Mossambique que vos assistaõ e Seguindo, e aComodando vos ao que elles e os Religiozos que tratarem da promulgaçaõ do Evangelho vos advertirem Sera o que mais convenha para vossa Salvaçaõ, e para que vossos vassallos se cheguem ao verdadeiro conhecimento da Santa fice Catholica, e espero eu de vos que vendo os beneficios que por meyo dos obreiros do Santo Evangelho rezultaõ nesse Reino e assim nas couzas espirituaes que saõ as de mayor importancia como nas temporaes resplandeceraõ em vossa pessoa taes effeitos de verdadeiro catholico que a vossa imitaçaõ façaõ todos os vossos vassallos, e ainda vossos vizinhos o mesmo e recebaõ todos a agoa do Santo Bauptismo com fervor, e amor de Deos nosso Senhor. A carta que refferis e enviareis para o Papa naõ veyo e a my me pareceo escrever a Sua Santidade como se fara dando lhe conta de como em vos tem a Igreja Romana outro novo filho; folguey de ver a boa informaçaõ que me daes do procedimento do Capitaõ Manoel gomes Serraõ a que mandarey ter respeito quando se trate de Seu despacho para lhe fazer por isso e por seus serviços a merce que merecer, e no que toca as duvidas que se vos offerecerem, e no demais que convier tratar Com o Estado da India recorrereis ao VRey a quem mando vos assista, e difira em tudo o que for justo, e do que promete estes principios espero que merecereis sempre folgar eu de vos fazer todo o favor que hover lugar, muito nobre e poderozo Rey que como Irmaõ muito amo e prezo nosso Senhor haja sempre vossa pessoa Real e estado em Sua Santa Goarda. Escrita em Madrid a trinta e hum de Abril de 1631.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Most noble and powerful king of Monomotapa, I Dom Philipe, by the grace of God king of Portugal, of the Algarves, and of the sea on both sides of Africa, lord of Guinea and of the conquest, navigation, and commerce of Ethiopia, Arabia, Persia, and

India, etc., greet you well, as one whom I love and esteem as a brother.

I have seen the letter which you wrote to me by the ships of last year, 1630, and having gathered therefrom, as my viceroy of the state of India also wrote to me, how the wars and disturbances in your kingdom had ended, and how my captains gave you the investiture and possession of it; and that, enlightened by the true light of the Holy Spirit, you have come to the knowledge of our holy Catholic faith, and received the water of holy baptism, which is the chief treasure and beginning of happiness in this and in eternal life; and that you have become my vassal, and are disposed to persevere in these intentions, and to continue in friendly intercourse with the state of India, offering the necessary help and favour for discovering the mines.

I think fit to inform you that I received great satisfaction from all this; and you may rest assured that I shall always command a fitting return to be made to your person and state, for which I give order to my viceroy; and that all assistance and favour be rendered you for your preservation; and a license given you by which you may be free to trade with a certain quantity of cloth, according to what appears just; and I send you the habit of the order of our Lord Jesus Christ, of which I am master, to do honour to your person; and the laws by which these kingdoms are governed will be also sent to you by the viceroy, with the declarations which appear fitting to the usages, customs, and dealings of your territories.

And as to the ecclesiastical and spiritual government, I command the archbishop of Goa and the administrator of the ecclesiastical jurisdiction of Mozambique to assist you; and in following and acting according to their instructions and those of the religious who are engaged in preaching the gospel you will be using the means most conducive to your salvation, and by which your vassals may come to the true knowledge of the holy Catholic faith.

And I hope that, seeing the benefit resulting in your kingdom from the labours of the ministers of the holy gospel, both in spiritual matters, which are the most important, and also in temporal, you may show such a good example of a true catholic that all your subjects, and even your neighbours, may imitate

you, and all receive the water of holy baptism, with fervour and love of God our Lord.

The letter which you say you have sent for the pope I cannot find, and I have thought fit that his Holiness should be written to, as will be done, reporting to him how the Roman church has another new son in your person.

I was pleased to see the good account you give me of the conduct of Captain Manuel Gomes Serrão, which I shall order to be borne in mind when his dispatch is treated of, that he may be rewarded as he deserves to be for his services.

And as to the questions which occur to you, and in all further dealings which it is fit to hold with the State of India, you shall have recourse to the viceroy, to whom I give order to assist and to yield to you in all that is just; and from so promising a beginning I trust that you will always deserve that I should be pleased to grant you all possible favours.

Most noble and powerful king, whom I love and esteem as a brother, may our Lord always keep your royal person and state under His holy protection.

Written in Madrid, the 31st of April 1631.

---

Conde Sobrinho VRey da India amigo. Eu El Rey vos envio muito Saudar como aquelle que amo. Vy a vossa Carta de 29 de novembro de 1630 por que me destes Conta das diligencias que haveis ordenado se fizessem por cobrar a gente da perdição da nao de São Joaõ que se entendeo estar na Costa do Cabo das Correntes para o Sul e como não hovesse effeito a jornada aquella paragem de Luis da fonceca que hia em busca de sua molher e filhos por se afirmar com a vltima embarcação vindo do Cabo das correntes que não havia Là noticia de tal gente e porque hum me averey por muito bem servido de tudo o que se trabalhar e por que Se salve alguma daquella gente Se ainda for viva, vos encomendo e encarrego muito que com esta certeza não dizistaes das diligencias para o Conseguir e me avizeis particularmente das que se fizerem e dos que resultar dellas. Escrita em Lx<sup>a</sup> a 14 de Feuer<sup>o</sup> de 1632. Rey Duque de villa. Conde de Ficalho.



[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, nephew, viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. I have seen your letter of the 29th of November 1630, in which you gave me an account of the measures you had ordered to be taken for rescuing the people of the wreck of the ship *São João*, who were understood to be on the coast south of Cape das Correntes, and how Luis da Fonseca's expedition to that place in search of his wife and children was unsuccessful, and that the last vessel which came from Cape das Correntes reported that there was no information of the said people there. And because I shall look upon all measures taken for rescuing some of these people, if any of them are still alive, as a great service rendered to me, I recommend and earnestly charge you with this assurance not to desist from attempts to accomplish it; and you shall inform me particularly of the measures taken and of the results of them.

Written in Lisbon, the 14th of February 1632.

THE KING.

DUKE OF VILLAHERMOZA.

COUNT OF FICALHO.

Conde Sobrinho vRey da India amigo. Eu El Rey vos envio muito Saudar como aquelle que amo. Vendo o que me escreuestes em carta de 24 de Janeiro do anno passado acerca de Se hauer de escuzar o cargo de Administrador da jurisdicão eccleziastica de Mosambique e seu districto me pareceo dizer vos que por elle se hauer criado com boas consideraçoes do Serviço de Deos e bom Governo Espiritual daquellas terras e precedendo informações de pessoas e Ministros praticos não ha que fazer novidade na materia. Escrita em Lx<sup>a</sup> a 14 de Março de 1632. Rey. Duque de villa Ermoza. Conde de Ficalho.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, nephew, viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. Seeing what you wrote me in your

letter of the 24th of January of last year, concerning the abolition of the office of administrator of the ecclesiastical jurisdiction of Mozambique and its district, I think fit to inform you that as this office was created for the purpose of serving God and for the good spiritual government of those lands, after information obtained from experienced persons and ministers, it is unnecessary to make any change in the matter.

Written in Lisbon, the 14th of March 1632.

THE KING.

DUKE OF VILLAHERMOZA.

COUNT OF FICALHO.

---

Conde Sobrinho vRey da India amigo Eu El Rey vos envio muito Saudar como aquelle que amo. Havendo visto o que Se me reprezentou Com occaziaõ de hum avizo que Se teue de estar aprestando em Inglaterra hum pataxe para passar a India a sondar a costa de Mozambique e querendo prouer nos intentos com que se deixa uer se apresta o dito pataxe em prevençaõ delles resolvly que com effeito Se trate Logo de se fortificarem as bocas dos Rios de Cuama com fortalezas Reaes bem guarnecidas de gente e artelharia de alcance pondo sem estado que de todo se perca o Risco de os inimigos ocuparem aquelles postos e que Se despache huma urca e hum pataxe que se fiçaõ aprestando enviandosse nestas embarcaçoens necessario para as ditas fortificaçoens e que o pataxe vay em dereitura a Sofala Levando gente armas e muniçoens e o mais necessario para Se fortificar aquelle posto e algumas peças de artelharia de alcance e deixando aLy o que Convier para aquelle Setio ficar defensauel e Gente que o Guardie passe aos Rios de Cuama por estarem as bocas delles muito de-Semparadas e faltas de tudo e principalmente de gente por andar toda negociando pella terra dentro e fortifique a ponta do Sal de quilimane e que por naõ poderem hir em tuõ pequena varilha os materiaes para as fortificaçoens Se fazerem Logo de pedra e a Sal Se façaõ de terra e faxina e que o forte de quilimane Seja de grandeza bastante e Se guarneça de artelharia e Gente de modo que com elle Se impidaõ Seus intentos e que juntamente Se enviem com hum engenheiro outra pessoa de cuja defellidade talento e zello Se possaõ esperar os bons effeitos de negocio taõ

importante e porque Se fica tratando da execuçaõ destas Couzas para que estas embarcaçoens partaõ quanto antes puder Ser, me pareceo avizar volo por esta para que Se va dispondo o que Convier dando ordem para em Mosambique Se esteja Com tudo o Cuidado e que se previnaõ as Couzas daquella praça em toda forma que Convem para Sua mayor defensaõ. Escrita em Lx<sup>a</sup> a 2 de Abril de 1632 o Conde de Castro.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, nephew, viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. Having seen the representation made to me by reason of information received that a pinnace was being equipped in England to proceed to India to take soundings on the coast of Mozambique, and wishing to provide against the designs, with which, as it is seen, the said pinnace is being equipped, I have resolved that the question should be forthwith effectually dealt with of fortifying the mouths of the rivers of Cuama with royal fortresses, well furnished with men and long range artillery, in such a manner that there may be no longer any danger of enemies possessing themselves of these places; and that the smack and pinnace which are being equipped be despatched, sending in them what is required for the said fortifications; and that the pinnace proceed direct to Sofala, carrying men, arms, ammunition, and other things required for fortifying that place, as well as several pieces of long range artillery; and leaving there what is required for placing this post in a state of defence, and the men to guard it, she shall proceed to the rivers of Cuama, as the mouths of these rivers are in a most abandoned state and in great want of everything, especially of men, as they all go into the interior to trade; and that the Point do Sal of Quilimane be fortified; and as so small a vessel cannot carry the materials for the fortifications, these shall be forthwith built of stone, and at Point do Sal they shall be made of earth and fascines; and that the fort to be built at Quilimane be as large as is necessary, and be furnished with artillery and men, so that by this means their designs may be frustrated.

Besides an engineer, another person is to be sent there, through whose loyalty, talents, and zeal we may hope for the success of so important a business. And as the execution of these matters

is being treated of, so that these ships may set sail as soon as possible, I think fit to inform you of it by this, so that proper preparations may be made, and you shall give order that all vigilance be kept in Mozambique, and that every measure be taken in that fortress for its better defence.

Written in Lisbon, the 2nd of April 1632.

COUNT DE CASTRO.

---

Conde Sobrinho vRey da India amigo. Eu El Rey vos envio muito Saudar como aquelle que amo. Vy o que me escreuestes nas vias que troxe a nao monte do Carmo aCerca do contrato da Conquista das Ilhas de Monomotapa e resgastes dos Rios de Cuama que fizestes com Dom Nuno Alvarez por Capitaõ de Sofalla em Monsabique e porque eu tenho resuloto que Contrado Ser e vinda e não passe adiante e Cessem as comisioens de Gaspar de Barboza que haueis enuiar aos Rios por vedor da fazenda e ouvidor geral recolhendosse elle a goa como Se vos tem avisado fareis que na Cofirmidade da resolação referida Se proceda comprindo inteiramente. E quanto ao modo em que Se deve Continvar a Conquista das minas Considerando huma grande importancia de que Saõ e o muito que vay em o fazer de tal maneira que Se tire aos inimigos a esperanza de os poderem emprender. Havendo eu entendido que Inglaterra Se aprestava hum pataxo para hir Sondar a Costa de Monsambique e querendo prouer nos intentos a que Se presume que Se eucaminha aquella diligencia resolvy que Se trate de forticar Logo com effeito as bocas dos Rios de Cuama quilimane e Luabo e apontando tal de quilimane com fortalezas Reaes bem garnecidas de gente e art<sup>a</sup> de alcance e que tambem Se fortifique e goainca de Gente e art<sup>a</sup> a fortaleza de Soffalla que a porta e paço para as minas de ouro de manica pondo tudo e em esta de taõ deffençauel que Se possa perder o receo de os inimigos occuparem aquelles postos e que nestas naos va o necessario para se fazerem as fortificaçoens Levando ellas ordem de a deixar em Moçambique e em Seu Seguinte se despacharem dous navios que Se ficaõ aprestando para ir em dereitura a Sofalla Levando gente armas e moniçoens e o mais necessario para Se fortificar e aguas pessas de art<sup>a</sup> de alcance e que deixando aLy o que Convie para que fique defensavel possem com o mais a effectuar a fortificação das bocas dos Rios

e da ponta do Sal de quilimane e Se não Levarem materias bastantes para as fortificaçoens se fazerem Logo de pedra e Sal Se fação de terra e faxina e o forte da ponta do Sal Seja de grandeza bastante e Se guarneça de gente e art<sup>a</sup> de modo que assegurem aquella entrada que he de mayor importancia por Ser a de mayor fundo e ao Capitaõ que aSiste na fortaleza de Mosambique mando escrever que elle por Sua parte ajunte e tenha preuenidos todos os materiaes que a terra da de Sy e puder hauer para a obra e avize em Segredo aos Capitaes e pessoas de confiança que andarem nos Rios para que fação o mesmo e todos concorram e Se ajudem e negocio taõ grande e de tanto Serviço meu e bem comum desse Estado.

E aSerca do modo em que Se deue Continvar a Conquista depois da fortificadas as bocas dos Rios e a fortaleza de Soffala e Se convira que Seja por contrato ou Sem elle e a ordem que Se ha de dar no provimento dos gastos da conquista e Gente que nella Se occupar vos encomendo que tomadas todas as informaçoens necessarias e Communicada a materia com as pessoas de mais intelligencia e noticia Considerados os inconvenientes que Se experimentarãõ nos Contrados passados e assim os que houve em Se fazer a Conquista por Conta de minha fazenda me avizeis muito particularmente e por menos de tudo o que achardes com vosso parecer para que tendo eu tudo presente possa tomar a determinação que for servido. Escrita em Lx<sup>a</sup> a 3 de Abril de 1632. o Conde de Castro.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, nephew, viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. I have seen what you wrote to me by the ship *Monte do Carmo* concerning the contract for the conquest of the islands of Monomotapa and the trade of the rivers of Cuama, which you entered into with Dom Nuno Alvares, captain of Sofala and Mozambique, and because I have resolved that the contract be cancelled and not be proceeded with, and his commissions be taken from Gaspar de Barboza whom you sent to the rivers as overseer of the treasury and chief judge, and that he himself withdraw to Goa, as you have been informed, you shall cause proceedings to be taken in conformity with the said resolution, for it to be put fully into execution.

And as regards the manner in which the conquest of the mines should be continued, considering their great importance and the desirability of carrying on this conquest in such a manner that the enemies may lose hope of seizing them; having learned that England is equipping a pinnace to go and take soundings on the coast of Mozambique, and wishing to provide against the designs for which it is presumed this measure is taken, I have resolved that the question shall be immediately dealt with of effectually fortifying the mouths of the rivers of Cuama, Quilimane, Luabo, and Point do Sal at Quilimane, with royal fortresses, well provided with men and long range artillery, and that the fortress of Sofala be also strengthened and provided with men and artillery, as it is the door and entrance to the gold mines of Manica; and that all be provided with such means of defence that it may be no longer feared that enemies will possess themselves of these places.

These ships carry what is necessary for the fortifications, with orders to leave it at Mozambique, and to this end also two ships which are being equipped shall be dispatched direct to Sofala, carrying men, arms, ammunition, and the other things necessary for fortifying that place, with several pieces of long range artillery. Leaving there what is required for putting that place in a state of defence, the remainder may be used in fortifying the mouths of the rivers and Point do Sal at Quilimane. And if they do not carry sufficient materials for the fortifications, these shall at once be built of stone, and at Point do Sal of earth and fascines; and let the fort to be built at Point do Sal be as large as is required, and be furnished with men and artillery, so that this entrance, which, being the deepest, is the most important, may be safely defended.

And I give order for the captain of the fortress of Mozambique to be written to, that on his part he may collect and have in readiness all the materials for this work which the land provides of itself, and which he may find there; and that he may secretly advise the captains and trustworthy persons who frequent the rivers, that they may do the same, and every one may join and assist in a matter of such importance, and so conducive to my service and to the common welfare of this state.

As regards the manner in which the conquest should be carried on after the mouths of the rivers and Sofala are fortified, and

whether it is advisable for this to be done by contract or without it, and what order is to be issued for providing the costs of the conquest and of the men employed in it, I charge you, after all the necessary information is obtained, and the matter is discussed with persons of the greatest intelligence and having most knowledge of it, and the evils arising from past contracts and those suffered when the conquest was carried on by my treasury are considered, to inform me most particularly of all the results of your research, with your opinion; that having the matter before me I may decide according to my pleasure.

Written in Lisbon, the 3rd of April 1632.

COUNT DE CASTRO.

---

Conde Subrinho vizo Rey da India Amigo. Eu El Rey vos inuio muito Saudar como aquelle que muito amo. Naueita, e Galiaõ Sam Francisco de Borja que chegaraõ em 11 de Julho do anno passado ao Porto desta Cidade e pello Dezembargador Paulo Rebello, que veo no Pataxo Santo Antonio, e nossa Senhora de Nazareth que aportou a Ilha de Fayal, e della se embarcou para este Reino se receberaõ tres cartas vossas duas de 27 e 29 de Nouembro de 632 e outra de tres de Feuereiro de 633 e huma de Christouaõ de Brito de vasconcellos Castellaõ de Mossambique, e nellas, e nos papeis, que aCuzaõ se referem as nouas, que tinheis das couzas de Mossambique, e da conquista Monomotapa o que com occaziaõ da queixa que hauia de Diogo de Souza de Minezes Capitaõ de Mossambique, e Sofala ordenastes ao Dezembargador Paulo Rebello enuiando o no Pataxo Santo Antonio a Mosçambique, e vos parecia em razaõ de fortificaçaõ das bocas dos Rios do proseguimento da Conquista de Monomotapa; e aCerca de se hauer de arazar a fortaleza de Sofala, e aSim mesmo os Soccorros, que enuiareis, e determinaueis mandar a Mossambique, e aos Rios, e ordens, que destes, e hauendo visto tudo com a rellaçaõ do que Paulo Rebello obrou em Mossambique por vosso mandado de que disse vos dera conta antes de se partir daquella fortaleza, e o que aviza Christouaõ de Brito do Estado das couzas dos Reinos de Manamotapa desbarate do arrayal soccorros que se enuiaraõ aos Rios athe passar a elles Diogo de Souza de Minezes, e aSim o que me reprezentaraõ os moradores de Mossambique

sobre Suas pertençoens, e Soccorro daquella praça, e Sua fortificação, e outros particulares, e vendo juntamente a informação, que Paulo Rebello deo do Estado das obras da fortificação de Mossambique; me pareceo dizer vos que com as ordens, que se vos enuiaraõ nas Naos, e Carauellas que partiraõ em Seis de Março do anno passado deste Reino e ter a Deos Leuado a Saluamento a esse Estado Se tem prouido conuenientemente a todas as materias de que trataõ as cartas, e papeis refferidos nesta, e na mesma conformidade tratareis de as executar com o zello, e Cuidado que fio de vos conforme a grande importancia dellas o que vos hey p̄ muy encarregado, e juntamente o prouimento da fortaleza de Mossambique para que haja sempre nella a gente do prezidio, que lhe esta Sinalada, e mantimentos, armas, e muniçoens bastantes desse Estado, e que os inimigos da Europa mais apetechem e tantas vezes intentaraõ occupar e aSim Conuem estar sempre muito bem prizidiada, e preuenida e deste Reino tenho ordenado, que na monçaõ de Setembro que vem se procure enuiar o mais Soccorro que se puder preuenir para ella, e para os Rios por quanto chegara a elles a tempo que Seja vinda ordem vossa para se obrarem as fortificaçoens das bocas dos Rios, e que se enuiem em nauios q̄ vaõ em direitura a Mossambique e para dar comprimento a esta ordem se fara todo o esforeso possiuel. Escrita em Lisboa a noue de Março de mil Seis centos trinta e tres. Dom Diogo de Castro.

[English translation of the foregoing.]

Count, nephew, viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love much. Three letters from you, two of the 27th and 29th of November 1632 and another of the 3rd of February 1633, were received by the little ship and the galleon *São Francisco de Borja*, which arrived in the harbour of this city on the 11th of July of last year, and by the chief judge Paulo Rebello, who took passage in the pinnace *Santo Antonio* and the ship *Nossa Senhora de Nazareth*, which put into port at the island of Fayal, where he embarked to come to this kingdom; and also a letter from Christovão de Brito de Vasconcellos, constable of Mozambique.

These letters and the papers referred to in them contain the reports which you have received of affairs in Mozambique and



the conquest of Monomotapa, the orders which you gave to the chief judge Paulo Rebello whom you sent to Mozambique in the pinnace *São Antonio* on account of the complaint made against Diogo de Sousa de Menezes, captain of that place, and your opinion as regards the fortification of the mouths of the rivers, the continuation of the conquest of Monomotapa, and concerning the question of breaking down the fortress of Sofala. They contain also an account of the assistance which you have determined to send to Mozambique and the rivers, and the orders which you have issued.

Having examined the whole matter, with Paulo Rebello's report of what he accomplished in Mozambique by your orders, of which he says he gave you an account before leaving the said fortress, and the information sent by Christovão de Brito concerning the state of affairs in the kingdom of Monomotapa, the destitution of the camp, and the assistance which was sent to the rivers until Diogo de Sousa de Menezes came to that place, and also the representation made to me by the residents of Mozambique concerning its claims and the reinforcement and fortification of that place, and other particulars, and having seen also Paulo Rebello's report of the state of the works of the fortifications of Mozambique, I think fit to inform you that by the orders which were sent to you in the ships and caravels that set sail on the 6th of March of last year from this kingdom, and which God grant have arrived safely at that State, all the matters referred to in the said letters and papers have been properly provided for; and in conformity therewith you shall endeavour to carry them into execution with the zeal and care I expect from you, by reason of the great importance of these matters, which I earnestly entrust to you.

Also with regard to the fortress of Mozambique, you shall see that it always contains the full complement of men assigned to it, and that it is supplied from that State with sufficient provisions, arms, and ammunition, as it is the post most coveted by European enemies, and of which they have so many times attempted to possess themselves; and therefore it is fitting that it should be always well garrisoned and in a state of defence. I have ordered that measures be taken in this kingdom to send in the monsoon of next September all further reinforcements possible for that place and for the rivers, and as soon as they

arrive there you shall give order for the work of fortifying the mouths of the rivers to be undertaken; and they shall be sent in ships which are bound direct to Mozambique. Every possible effort shall be made to carry this order into execution.

Written in Lisbon, the 9th of March 1633.

DOM DIOGO DE CASTRO.

---

Conde Subrinho VizoRey da India Amigo. Eu El Rey vos inuio muito Saudar Como aquelle que muito amo. Por carta de 2 de Abril do anno passado de 632 vos mandey avizar das fortificaçoens que resoluy se fizessem nas bocas dos Rios de Cuama, artelheria, e gente, que haviã de Leuar a fortaleza de Sofalla, e modo em que as mesmas fortificaçoens, se haviã de dispor, e nauios que se ficauã aprestando para esse effeito ao que respondestes pella naueita e Galiaõ Sam Francisco de Borja em carta de 27 de Janeiro do anno passado, que em conformidade da minha ordem avizareis ao Capitaõ de Mossambique fosse peruenindo algumas couzas e dessa Cidade enuiareis carpinteiros, e pidreiros, e dous nauios de remo, que seriaõ percizamente necessarios tanto para a deffensaõ como para ajuda das fabricas que ate meio de 7<sup>bro</sup> do anno passado naõ havia aparecido embarcaõ alguã ingreza, ou olaudeza pella costa de quilimane, e p̄que em consequim<sup>to</sup> das naos deste anno foraõ a Mossambique duas caravellas e cargo de Joaõ de Costa, como se vos avizou, com algumas couzas, e ordens para se dar principio a fortificaçao dos Rios que Deos Sera seruido hauer Leuado a Saluamento, vos emcommendo muito tratais logo desta fortificaçao, para que se proceda nella com toda a presteza, e Cuidado, e se ponha em estado defensauel quanto antes for possiuel, e alguns Mineiros, que haviã de hir e ficariaõ neste Reino, e materiaes, que se houeraõ de leuar nas Carauellas tenho ordenado, que vaõ nas Naos deste anno; e Se vos remetaõ. Escrita em Lisboa a 10 de Dezembro de 1633. Rey. Dom Miguel de Castro.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, nephew, viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love much. By a letter of the 2nd of April

of last year, 1632, I commanded information to be given to you of the fortifications which I had resolved should be constructed at the mouths of the rivers of Cuama, of the artillery and men to be sent to the fortress of Sofala, of the manner in which the said fortifications were to be built, and of the ships which were being equipped for this purpose. In answer to which you sent a letter of the 27th of January of last year by the little ship and by the galleon *São Francisco de Borja*, that in accordance with my order you would advise the captain of Mozambique to proceed with the preparations, and that from Goa you would send carpenters and masons and two vessels with oars, which would be absolutely necessary both for the defence and for assisting in building the forts; and that until the middle of September of last year no English or Dutch ships of any kind had been seen on the coast of Quilimane. And because for this purpose two caravels of the fleet of this year went to Mozambique, according to the information sent to you, under command of João de Costa, carrying various articles and orders for beginning the fortification of the rivers, (which God grant may have arrived safely), I earnestly charge you to deal with the matter of these fortifications immediately, that preparations may be made there with all dispatch and care, and that they be placed in a state of defence as soon as possible. And I have given order that several miners who were to have sailed, but remained in this kingdom, and materials which were to have been sent in the caravels be dispatched in the ships of this year, and be sent to you.

Written in Lisbon, the 10th of December 1633.

DOM MIGUEL DE CASTRO.

Conde Subrinho vRey da India Amigo. Eu El Rey vos inuio muito Saudar como aquelle que muito amo. Nas embarçoens que este anno passaõ a este Estado vay Bertholomeo Cotaõ engenheiro, que o anno passado estaua nomeado para hir nas carauellas, que partiraõ em companhia das Naos a reconhecer as boucas dos rios de Cuama a Cargo de Joaõ de Costa, e obrar as fortificaçoens que se houessem de fazer, e por entaõ partirem as carauellas com preza, e ficar em terra, e vay agora nestas embarçaçoens com Seus Companheiros para se ficarem em Mossambique, e pque podera

Ser, que não tome aquelle porta se aSim contecer ordenareis, que chegando a Goa na primeira monção se lhes deé embarcação em que tornem a Mossambique, e vão entender nas Couzas do meu Seruiço para que fazem esta jornada. Escrita em Lisboa a Sete de Março de mil e Seis centos trinta e quatro. Dom Diogo de Castro.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, nephew, viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. Bartholomeu Cotão, an engineer who was appointed last year to sail in the caravels which left in company with the ships under command of João de Costa, to inspect the mouths of the rivers of Cuama and to plan the fortifications which are to be constructed, sails in the ships which are going to that State this year, as the caravels then left in a hurry, and he remained on shore. He sails in these ships with his companions to remain in Mozambique, and if they do not put into port there, as may happen, you shall give order that after his arrival at Goa he shall be supplied with a vessel in the first monsoon, in which to return to Mozambique to proceed in the affairs of my service for which he undertakes this journey.

Written in Lisbon, the 7th of March 1634.

DOM DIOGO DE CASTRO.

---

Conde Subrinho VRey da India Eu El Rey vos inuio muito Saudar como aquelle que muito amo. Em 31 de Março de 631 vos mandey escreuer que em lugar da Curua, que o Rey Monamutapa pedia se lhe desse, lhe concedessey facultade para meter algumas roupas nos Rios de Cuama na Cantidade, e forma, que parecesse para que lhe recebesse fauor, e não se fizesse prejuizo ao estanque das roupas por não ser conueniente que sendo meu Tributario lhe pagassem tributo os Capitaens de Mossambique, e que com o habito de Christo que se lhe enuiaua lhe mandasseis vir juntamente alguas couzas conuenientes a sua pessoa, e ordenasseis hum regim<sup>to</sup> que guardassem os portuguezes residentes em seu Reino p<sup>a</sup> que se continuasse entre elles, e os vassallos de Monamutapa a boa amizade, e Correspondencia, e para o gouerno, e boa administração de Seus Reinos se lhe remetessem as ordenações p<sup>a</sup> que os meus se gouernão com as declaraçoens necessarias

conforme a seus vzos e Custumes, e p̄que na Naveita, e Galiaõ Sam F<sup>co</sup> de Borja escreuestes, que tornando as Couzas de Monomotapa a Seu antigo Estado executareis o que se vos ordenaua me pareceo dizer vos, que p̄ quanto conuem a meo Seruiço que se cumpra o que por ella mandey o façais aSim. Escrita em Lisboa a oito de Março de mil seis centos trinta e quatro. Dom Diogo de Castro.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, nephew, viceroy of India, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love much. On the 31st of March 1631 I commanded a letter to be written to you that instead of the yearly present for which the king Monomotapa asked you should grant him license to trade with a certain number of pieces of cloth in the rivers of Cuama, in such quantity and in such manner as appeared fitting, that might satisfy him, and might not be prejudicial to the monopoly of the cloth, as it is not proper that being my vassal the captains of Mozambique should pay tribute to him; that you should give directions for various presents suitable to his person to be transmitted with the habit of the order of Christ which was sent to him; that you should draw up regulations to be observed by the Portuguese residing in his kingdom, so that good friendship and intercourse might be maintained between them and the subjects of the monomotapa; and that the laws by which my kingdoms are governed should be sent to him for the government and good administration of his kingdoms, with the necessary declarations in accordance with his usages and customs. And because by the little ship and the galleon *São Francisco de Borja* you wrote saying that when the affairs of Monomotapa were placed on their ancient footing, you would execute the orders given to you, I think fit to inform you that as it is conducive to my service for the orders given concerning it to be carried out, you shall act in accordance with them.

Written in Lisbon, the 8th of March 1634.

DOM DIOGO DE CASTRO.

---

Conde Subrinho VRey da India Amigo Eu El Rey vos inuio muito Saudar como aquelle que muito amo. Ao que por carta de 3 de Abril de 632 vos mandey escrever aCerca

da rezulação, que tinha tomado de que se rezidisse o Contrato da Conquista das minas de Monomotapa feito com Dom Nuno Alṽ Pereira, e Cessassem as comissoens com que haueis inuiado a Gaspar Barboza aos Rios de Cuama, e Sobre as fortificaçoens das boucas delles respondestes em carta de 12 de Ianeiro do anno passado de 633, que tinheis despachado a Mossambique com prouimentos dous Nauios de remos p̃que sem elles a respeito de pouco fundo daquella costa se não poderia fazer nada em quillimane, e logo enuiareis Carpintr<sup>o</sup>, e pridreiros Custumados ao Sol da India p̃que os que fossem deste Reino não poderiaõ com o trabalho, e a Mossambique que tinheis avizado de esta determinação para se hirem dispondo as couzas que aly se podiaõ fazer, e athe 5 de Dezembro de 632 em que partira de Quillimane huma embarcação não fora vista naquella paragem o Pataxo Igrez de que se tiuera avizo o que hia Sandar, e que nos annos passados de 631 e 632 tinheis ja dado vosso parecer sobre aquellas fortificaçoens, e entendieis, que não havia gente nem cabedal para Sustentar aly fortes reaes, e seria mais conueniente hauer hum forte de pouco custo desuiado da praya hũa Legoa com prezidio de quarenta soldados e Capitaõ a que os Cafres aCudaõ de boa vontade, e que a instancia da meza da fazenda enuiareis Gaspar Barboza aos Rios não vendo outra que se lhe avantejasse na Confiança o que se conheceo melhor quando com Sua morte abrazou tudo em tudo e j que como aCabou em Tete em seguimento das verdadeiras noticias ficareis vos sem ellas para fundar vosso parecer, e o não podieis dar, e Com tudo dizieis, que seria mais proueitozo meter nos Rios roupas por Conta da minha fazenda, que contratalos com os capitaens de Mossambique mas que há poucos homens que procedaõ fielmente trazendo ouro nas maõs alem do que os Capitaens de Mossambique p̃ Seu interesse lhe Saõ inimigos oppostos o que se vio claramente em Dom Nuno Alṽ Pereira com gaspar Barboza, e Diogo de Souza de Minezes com Manoel Rauasco, e Com a morte de Dom Nuno Alṽ e gaspar Barboza parara o Contrato, e hauendo eu visto tudo me pareceo agradecer vos muito como o faço terdes mandado a Mossambique os dous Nauios de remo com prouimento, e officiaes para se dar principio a fortificação das boucas dos Rios, e se preuenir o que aly se podia fazer de que me hey p̃ bem Seruido, e fico esperando avizo do que se houer obrado, e vos emcommendo me inuieis rellação por menor da despeza, que se fez com os Nauios.

E quanto as comisioens de Gaspar Barboza com dizerdes, que ellas cessaraõ p̄ Sua morte se naõ satisfaz ao que eu vos tinha mandado escreuer p̄ quanto me deueréis informar do que resultou dos particulares da Comissaõ para eu mandar ver, e ordenar o que mais conuiesse a meu seruiço e aSim vos emcommendo, que o façais nas primeiras Naos dando inteiramente a execuçaõ tudo o que aCerca destas materias tenho ordenado. Escrita em Lisboa a 15 de Março de mil seis centos trinta e quatro. Dom Diogo de Castro.

*[English translation of the foregoing.]*

Count, nephew, viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love much. To the orders which I commanded should be given to you in the letter dated the 3rd of April 1632, concerning the resolution I had taken that the contract made with Dom Nuno Alvares Pereira for the conquest of the mines of Monomotapa should be cancelled, the commissions which you bestowed on Gaspar Barboza, whom you sent to the rivers of Cuama, should be withdrawn, and concerning the fortifications of the mouths of the rivers, you made answer in a letter of the 12th of January of last year, 1633, that you had dispatched two rowing vessels with provisions to Mozambique, as without oars they cannot advance along the coast of Quilimane, on account of the shallowness of the water, that later you would send carpenters and masons accustomed to the Indian sun, as those who go from this kingdom could not do the work, that you had sent information of this decision to Mozambique that there they might make all possible preparations, that up to the 5th of December 1632, when a ship left Quilimane, the English pinnace which, according to information received, was to go to take soundings, had not been seen in that neighbourhood, that in past years, in 1631 and 1632, you had already given your opinion concerning the said fortifications, that you understood both men and money were wanting to maintain royal forts there, that it would be more advantageous to build a fort at little cost one league's distance from the shore, with a garrison of forty soldiers and a captain willingly assisted by the Kaffirs, that at the instance of the council of the treasury you sent Gaspar Barboza to the rivers, knowing no one more worthy of confidence, which was better seen at his death, when everything was thrown into confusion, that as

he died at Tete when in pursuit of reliable information, you are deprived of the said knowledge upon which to found your opinion, and therefore you cannot give it, nevertheless you say that it would be more advantageous for my treasury to put cloth into the trade of the rivers than to enter into contracts with the captains of Mozambique, although few men act honestly when money passes through their hands, besides which the captains of Mozambique, for their own interests, are their declared enemies, as was clearly seen in the case of Dom Nuno Alvares Pereira with Gaspar Barboza, and Diogo de Sousa de Menezes with Manuel Ravasco, and that with the death of Dom Nuno Alvares and Gaspar Barboza the contract had ceased.

Having examined the whole matter, I think fit to render you many thanks, as I now do, for having sent the two rowing ships with provisions and workmen to Mozambique to commence the fortifications at the mouths of the rivers, and for directing all possible preparations to be made there, which I esteem as a great service rendered to me. I am expecting a report of what has been accomplished, and I charge you to send me a detailed statement of the cost of the ships.

As regards Gaspar Barboza's commissions, in saying that they have ceased with his death, you do not satisfy the orders which I commanded to be sent to you, as you should inform me of what has resulted in matters touching the commissions, that I may command it to be examined, and order what is most convenient for my service. Therefore I charge you to comply therewith by the first ships, carrying entirely into execution all the orders which I have given concerning these matters.

Written in Lisbon, the 15th of March 1631.

DOM DIOGO DE CASTRO.

---

Conde Sobrinho VRey da India Amigo. Ev El Rey vos envio muito Saudar como aquelle que muito amo. E a reposta do que ver mandey escrever em 27 de Fevr<sup>o</sup> de 633 sobre dardes de minha parte os agradecimentos a Christovaõ de Brito de Vas<sup>cos</sup> Castelaõ de Monss<sup>es</sup> do procedimento, que teve no tempo que governou aquella praça do Socorro que mandar aos Rios de Cuama e do que fez nas obras da fortificaçaõ, escrevestes pelas Naus do



Cap<sup>m</sup> mor Antonio de Saldanha em Carta de 4 de Novr<sup>o</sup> do anno pass<sup>o</sup> de 633, que Christovão de Brito procede com honrada, e geral Satisfação, e nas obras daquella fort<sup>a</sup> se havia desvelado de man<sup>a</sup> que a este respeito entendieis tinha de todo impossibilitada aSom<sup>e</sup> de que lhe daveis Sempre agradecimentos, e conviria que eu lhe mandasse fazer alguã Merce demonstrativa, E pareceo me dizer vos que presentando se por Sua parte papeis do que fez nas obras da fortificação de Mossambique lhe mandareis fazer por este Serviço que houver lugar. Escrita em Lx<sup>a</sup> a 3 de Fevr<sup>o</sup> de 635. Rey.

*[English translation of the foregoing.]*

Count, nephew, viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love much. In answer to the letter that I commanded to be written to you on the 27th of February 1633, that you should render thanks in my name to Christovão de Brito de Vasconcellos, Castellan of Mozambique, for his conduct during the time he governed that place, the assistance which he sent to the rivers of Cuama, and of what he accomplished as regards the works of the fortifications, you wrote by the ships of the commander-in-chief Antonio de Saldanha, in a letter of the 4th of November of last year, 1633, that Christovão de Brito is acting with honour and giving general satisfaction, and that in the works of the said fortress he has shown such diligence that you understand he has made it impossible for the fortress to be surprised, for which you have always given him thanks, and it would be advisable for me to give order for some marked favour to be conferred upon him. I think fit to inform you that on his presenting papers stating what he has accomplished in the works of the fortification of Mozambique, you shall command him to be rewarded in a fitting manner for this service.

Written in Lisbon, the 3rd of February 1635.

THE KING.

---

VRey da India amigo : Ev El Rey vos envio muito Saudar. Pelas naos que o anno pass<sup>o</sup> de 634 Vieraõ a este Reyno de que foy Capitaõ mor Antonio de Saldanha se receberaõ oito Cartas de Conde de Linhares sendo VRey desse Est<sup>o</sup> de 18, 19, e 24 de Outubro, e 9 de Decr<sup>o</sup> de 633, e de 7 e 8 de Fevr<sup>o</sup> do anno passado

sobre a conquista, e Minas de Manomatapa, e fortificação das bocas dos Rios de Cuama de que mandey se tratasse, levando para esse effeito no anno de 633 Ioaõ da Costa em duas Caravellas a gente artelheria, Muniçoens, e petrechos, que tereis entendido, o qual depois de conhecer as bocas dos Rios passou a Goa, e voltando depois para as Mesmas bocas com Cartas do VRey, e recebendo as do Mineiros, e a Mostras dos Metaes, que tinhaõ descuberto for roubado de piratas, olandezes a vista da Ilha do Corvo lançando tudo primeiro ao Mar E assim se receberaõ pelas Mesmas naos de Antonio de Saldanha hum duplicado da Carta que o Mineiro dom Andre de Vides, e Alvarado me havia escrito quando Ioaõ da costa passou a India e as relaçoens que enviou, e outras da Camara de Goa e de Ioseph Pinto Pereyra Vedor da fazenda geral, e instrumentos que com ella vieraõ de Dom Phelipe Maça, e outras pessoas. E havendo visto tudo o que Ioaõ da Costa referio das Segundas noticias que de volta achara nos rios por dito de hum Mineiro que o estava esperando em Quilimane, e as informaçoens que deraõ pessoas daquellas partes e mandado considerar esta Materia conforme o pedia a importancia della, vista a grande Vtillidade, e avgmento que se podera seguir a minha fazenda, e a meus Reynos, e Vassallos de se acabarê de descobrir, e beneficiar as Minas de ouro, e prata que em sy tem os Reynos de Manomatapa, Mocranga, Quitevi, Butica, Manica, e Chicova de que o Conde de Linhares me enviou mostras, e assim as de prata, e dos mais metaes que se affirma haver nos Mesmos Reynos; E vista a doação que o Emperador Manomatapa me fez das Minas resolvy que se tratasse logo da povoação, e beneficio dellas, e do augmento, e conservação daquella nova Conquista, E que para a Superintendencia do governo della se envie hũa pessoa das partes, e qualidades que se requerem, que eu mandarey nomear, e de que se vos avizarã, o qual ha de ter Superintendencia, e governo dasquellas terras e das fortificaçoens, que nellas Se obrarem na forma do regimento que lhe mandarey dar ficando subordinado ao VRey ou Gov<sup>or</sup> desse Estado.

E porque a principal couza de que se deue logo tratar com o Mayor cuidado hé da Sua fortificação, de suas barras, portos, e entradas por donde podem ser intentadas as Minas pelos inimigos de Europa, e o Rio de Cuama, que hé o principal, pelo qual se navega para as povoações de Senna, e Tete que estaõ ao longo

delle, e por onde corre o Comercio daquellas Reynos vem a sahir ao mar por as duas barras de luabo e Quilimane distantes hũa de outra trinta legoas, e dellas he a de Quilimane de Melhor fundo, e em que podem entrar, e estar os Navios que forem a aquelle Estado, ordeno que logo se faça na barra della na ponta de que se diz do Sul huma fortaleza, como ja tenho mandado a qual tera os Soldados, e arthalaria que for necessaria para sua fortificaçõ e para segurar o porto de modo que se fique defendendo a entrada, e sorgidouro, e neste sitio se ha de fazer praça de armas de todo Estado formando se nella povoaçõ de cazaes, que deste Reyno haõ de hir, de Manr<sup>a</sup> que esteja esta entrada bem segura assim por ser a principal dos Rios, e Minas, como por ser o porto que haõ de hir demandar Minhas Armadas duas vezes no anno nas Monçoens de Março e sett<sup>o</sup> E na Calbeta a que chamaõ a Bahia do linde que dista da barra de Quilimane para o Sul sinco Legoas aonde se diz podem entrar navios se ha de fazer hum forte com Suas peças de arthalaria para segurar que o inimigo naõ possa recolher-se naquelle abrigo.

E porque a barra de luabo que dista como ficar referido trinta legoas para o Sul da de Quilimane he mais larga de povco fundo roim porto e chea de baixos de modo que fica sendo por natureza do sitio difficultoza sua entreda se cegara de todo assim pelo pouco, que nella se perde como por se naõ poder edificar de presente tantos fortes, e fazer despezas que naõ Sejaõ precisamente necessarias, advertindo que para defençaõ daquelles Rios se ha de fazer tudo o mais que tenho mandado acerca desta Materia de que se avizou ao Conde de linhares no anno de 633, e o Mais que for necessario para a segurança delles.

A fortaleza de Sofala que fica ao sul da barra de luabo trinta legoas, e Sessenta da de Quilimane, tenho p̄ informaçõ que esta arruinada, e sem gente, e cõ arthalaria apeada, e só a Serve para os feitores que aly enviaõ os Capitaẽs de Mossambique, E q̄ esta fortaleza e as terras a ella adjacentes confinaõ com as das Minas, das quaes desta por espaço de sitenta legoas pelo que he precizo acodir lhe logo, tenho tambem rezoluto que se repara, e fortifique de tudo o Necessario pondo se lhe a arthalaria conveniente para se defender segurando aquella paragem, elevantado com os reparios que haõ mister as peças apeadas metendo-se lhe athe duzentos Soldados com Sco Castelaõ.

E porque se me propoz que para mayor segurança daquelle

porto se devia fazer hum forte nelle na Ilha a que chamaõ de Luis Pereyra distante de Sofalla duas legoas na parte aonde com artelharia se cobre o Sogidouro dos Navios que entraõ naquelle porto com o que se Seguraria bem a entrada delle, e Se affirma que ainda aquelle forte sera demais effeito para defender a entrada do porto de Sofalla que a fortificação da fortaleza porque a fica impedido immediatamente, Me pareceo remeter vos esta Materia para que todas as informações necessarias Vejais Se convem fazer se o forte refferido na parte que se aponta, e ordeneis, e façais executar o que assentardes.

Pela grande importancia de que hé o porto de Mossambique, cujo Castelaõ ha de ficar Subordinado ao Superintendente das Minas fareis acabar logo a Sua fortificação, e que haja nella os trezentos Soldados effectivos de sua dotação como tenho Mandado, e encarregareis particularmente ao Castelaõ que Se perfeioe a obra da cava do modo que esta disposto, e executando-se o Mais que Sobre esta Materia rezolvy, e Sobre ajuda que os Moradores de Monss<sup>e</sup> haõ de dar para a fortificação.

O porto de Santo Felix na Costa da Ilha de Santo Lourenço distante do de Quilimane cento e quarenta legoas, escreveo o Conde de Linhares que he capaz de Naos, e navios, e na parte de Sul tambem abrigo para as embarcações, e que zeria conv<sup>te</sup> fortificar-se assim pela comodidade dos Muitos Mantimentos que Nelle há, como porque Se o inimigo o occupasse, e Se fortificasse nelle o que lhe seria facil para Se conhecer nos Naturaes a vontade com que agasalhaõ a todos os estrangr<sup>os</sup> Sahiriaõ delle a infestar a Costa de Sofalla, e Monss<sup>e</sup>; e os portos que nella Se fabricarem, de mais da comodidade de terem porto taõ Capaz e vesinho das Minas, e posto que a rezaõ de haverem Mister delle os Mantimentos, se entende que cessará com Muitos que se affirma ha nos Rios bastantes a prover as fortalezas de Sofalla, e Moss<sup>e</sup> todavia em Consideração do mais que se aponta, me pareceo remeter vos esta particular para que se houver Minas, e vos parecer que convem fortificar aquelle porto, sendo como se diz capaz, de recolher Armadas o ordeneis.

E por ser a principal couza de que se deve tratar enviar Soldados e cazaes com suas familias para se Segurarem os portos refferidos, e fazerem Colonias de gente destes Reynos, em todo aquelle Estado e por não dar lugar o aperto em que esta minha fazenda a Se enviarem logo todos os necessarios, resolvy que por

agora Se enviem em quatro Navios duzentos Soldados e assim duzentos Cazaes, e os mais que de huns e outros se puder, e que os Cazados sejaõ officiaes de todos os officios, e lavradores, que levarão os intrumentos delles, e sem antes de todos as Sertes para cultivar, e Semear as terras, e nas Armadas que ao diante forem aos Rios se hiraõ mandando a elles os mais Soldados, e Cazaes que puder ser, e aos que agora vaõ se ordenara ao Superintendente, cujo principal cuidado ha de ser procurar por todos os Meyos o beneficio das colonias escolhendo os lugares aonde haõ de Viver os Cazados que lhes dee toda a ajuda, e favor p<sup>a</sup> que se effectuem nas partes convenientes assim a defenção da terra como a comodidade, e remedio de sua vida de modo, que vindos, e conformes me possaõ servir, e haver propagação de Naturacs destes Reynos que he em que consiste o bom successo que se espera.

E porque convem que com o Superintendente, e soldados va taõbem hum Mestre de Campo e outras pessoas que lhe assistaõ Resolvy que assim se executasse, e fosse mais hum sargento Mayor com ate seis Alferes reformados que saibaõ de fortificações, e que não hindo Mestre de campo va sargento mais com os Alferes, das pessoas que para estes cargos nomear se vos avizareis.

Convira muito para a Segurança daquelle Estado, e das Minas, e comodidade dos Moradores haver nelle creação de Cavalos, e postoque de prezente se não envia a gente necessaria para que haja logo nas quellas partes duzentos de Cavallo como o Conde de linhares apontava todavia pelas Rezoens referidas, e com prosuposto que todos os annos se ha de enviar a gente, e cazaes que se puder, vos encarrego muito, que da Ilha de Caxem mandeis conducir aos Rios de Manomatapa duzentas egoas com Cavalos bastantes para pais que se repartiraõ pelas povoaçoes a respeito de cada huma.

Postoque o Conde de linhares me propunha que nomeasse logo Bispo para aquelle Estado, considerando que per agora esta bastantemente provido com o Administrador Eccleziastico que Nomey para elle o que tem jurisdicão quazi Episcopal houve por bem que se escusasse, ordenando que para em Cazo que ao adiante se haja de nomear Bispo desse Estado desde logo o Ar<sup>co</sup> eleito de Goa seo consentim<sup>to</sup> para a Separação; E aos Relligiozos de S. Dom<sup>us</sup> e da Comp<sup>a</sup> de Iesvs, que tem suas rezidencias naquellas partes Mandey encarregar que enuicm a ellas mais

obreiros para a Cultivação das Almas; E assim ordency que vão alguns Capuchos deste Reyno porque são de vida exemplar, e como não podem adquerir bens se applicarão com mayor fervor a convertaõ de gentio, e augmento de santa fé Catholica: Tambem se enviaraõ para a Cura dos enfermos e feridos quatro Medicos, quatro Boticarios com as Couzas necessarias de botica, quatro Cirirgioens, e quatro Barbeiros, e se procurara que os Mais Sejaõ cazados.

E por se dizer que há em Manomatapa, e nos Rios mayor falta de Mulheres com que os Moradores Cazem que de homeus se mandaraõ nos Navios algumas da Caza pia desta Cidade e algumas Moças do Recolhimento della procurando se que desde aquy vão cazados.

Por se não Saber a artelheria que sera necess<sup>a</sup> nem a que há nos Rios, nem em que distancia ficaõ dos sorgidouros, e passagem das Naos, Se enviaraõ por agora dez peças de bronze de genero de Culebrinas de vinte libras de Calibo, e ate vinte de ferro de genero de Canhaõ de melhor calibo que se achar, e das peças Meudas que levarem os Navios se poderaõ tirar as necess<sup>as</sup> para as fortalezas para guarnecer as defenças e nelles hiraõ tambem dous Sagres, e de dous meos Sagres de bronze, e duas peças mais de bronze de Cascavel emcampanadas, e para ellas, e para quatro das de ferro as mais ligeiras se faraõ encavalgamentos de Campanha para Marchar e fortificar os portos em que se houver de fazer a fortificaçaõ, e hira com esta artelheria para o meneo della huma Cabrilha, hum Martinete e hum Carnequy para a encavalgar brevemente e desencavalgar sendo necess<sup>o</sup> hum cano mato e dous armoens com seus jugos, Visto haver naquella terra boys, E para todo a artelheria hiraõ culheres, soquetes, lanadas, carregadores, e sacatrapos dobrados; e alguns Artelheiros, e hum Condestavel pratico para os adestrar. As armas que tenho mandado, que uaõ neste socorro, saõ trezentos Arcabuzes, cento para as fortalezas, e duzentos para a Campanha quinhentos piques para o Campo, e povoaçõens, cem espinguardas de pederneira, e hum Armeiro e dous serralheiros, dous forneiros, dous Coronh<sup>os</sup> hum official, ou dous de cocheiros, e Carpintr<sup>os</sup> para fazerem encavalgamentos da Campanha quatro Serradores, e hum fundidor de artelhr<sup>a</sup> para reformar a que lá houuer arrebantada e a que de presente não for de vzo, hum Espinguardeiro com sua tenda, cem quintaes de polvora, e hum

polvorista com as Couzas tocantes a seo off<sup>o</sup> para poder refinar e fazer polvora, oito mil ballas de varios calibres cem quintaes de ballas de Chumbo de Mosquete e arcabus, e outros tantos de chumbo para fundir e daquy hiraõ instruida algumas pessoas p<sup>a</sup> fundirem assim ballas como pasta, Sincoenta quintaes de corda em barris, algumas granadas de laõ, trinta lenternas, e meyo foroes, Seis quintaes de vellas de Cera, e cevo, vinte fugareiros duas mil peças de ferramenta de fortificar e cortar Mandeira, e faxina, quarenta ceiroens quinhentas espertas, Vinte Cestoens de esparto, Vinte Canos ordinarios com Seus jugos, Vinte quintaes de enxarte a embranco Sessenta quintaes de pregadura, oito centas borrachas, e oito centas Muchilas de pano quinhentas Canudos para cobrir a corda, hum Engenheiro de fogos, e dous de fortificação e o mais necessario em rezaõ de que tocar a arthelaria, armas, Muniçoens, e Seus petrechos.

Havendo-se beneficiar as Minas, se há consequentemente de abrir o Comercio dos Rios e Cessar a instrancia dos providos da Capitania de Manomapata, e Sofalla, e o tenho assim resoluto, e que o Capitão de Mossambique que ha de estar Subordinado ao Superintendente fique desobrigado da pensaõ que paga por lhes darem fechados, e todos os Meus Vassallos passaõ entrar livremente a comerciar nos Rios, e os direitos que haõ de pagar a minha fazenda assim em Quilimane das fazendas que meterẽ na Alfandega que aly ha de haver como na de Senna, quando Sahirem de ouro, prata e mais metaes que houver, resgates dos Mesmos metaes e do ambar, Seraõ em huã, e outra parte acostumados, e naõ excederaõ dos quintos assim de entrada como de Sahida.

Reprezentou-se me naquellas partes ha grande quantidade de Marfim de que se prouee a India, em o qual se considera grande Vtillid<sup>o</sup> para Minha fazenda. E que aos Reys gentios se paga o direito do dente que os Elefantes poem na terra quando morrem, e se devia mandar fazer estanco de Marfim para se comprar e navegar por conta da minha fazenda assim como direito Real dos Elefantes que se devia cobrar para ella na forma que em Seus Reynos o cobraõ os Reys gentios que tudo o que se comprasse, e Resultasse do Rendimento do Marfim se enviasse pelos Meus officiaes a esse Estado para o Cabedal da pimenta das Naus que vem delle para este Reyno, e compra das roupas que ha de mandar aos Rios para se continuar o Comercio, e despezas

daquelle Estado, e nas fortalezas, e que sendo cazo que faltasse algũa couza para o Cabedal das Naos, e compra das roupas se enviasse em ouro a esse Estado tanto quanto bastasse para os effeitos refferidos com que m<sup>a</sup> fazenda, e ficava aliviando na despeza que se faz com os Cabedaes de Naos da Viagem de todos os annos, e sustentando-se a Conquista de Monomatapa, e Suas fortalezas com os intereces, e ganhos das roupas, e porto que parece que havendo se de abrir, e franquear o Comercio dos Rios (como o Resolvy) não convem que haja estanco no Marfim, mas que seja tudo franco para que com o interece de ganho das Mercancias se animem a commerciar nas quellas partes, todavia me pareceo remeter-vos esta Materia para que vejais se projedicara o estanco do Marfim ao augmento da Conquista, e beneficio das Minas me avizeis do que vos parecer, e juntamente para em Cazo que eu determine que, e não haja me direis que der<sup>tes</sup> se poraõ no marfim de mais do ordinario.

Para se evitarem os descaminhos que pode haver se Marcara com as Armas Reaes desta Coroa todo o ouro, e prata que sahir das Minas do modo que se faz nas Indias de Castella, e para o lavor, e administração das Minas Mandey que se fizesse hum Regimento de que se vos remetera a Cópia, e tambem haõ de hir alguns Mineiros para que se trabalhe nesta Materia com o calor que lhe necessario.

O Superintendente das Minas ha de levar muy encarregado o assento das Alfandegas de Quilimane, e Senna, e cobrança dos direitos dev<sup>os</sup> a minha fazenda em que ordenara se proceda para Melhor forma que se puder, e que Sejaõ respeitados de todos, os officiaes de minha fazenda que nella haõ de assistir guardando-se em tudo os regimentos que lhe forem dados que procurara guardem, e Cumpraõ inteiramente o que tambem vos hey por muy encarregado a vos, e terey por particular serviço fazerdes o assim excutar.

Nas Alfandegas ha de haver feitores, Recbedores, e Escrivaens para Segurança e boa arrecadação de minha fazenda, e haõ de Ser pessoas de limpeza, Confiança, e bons procedimentos pelo Muito que delles se ha de fiar.

Extinguindo-se como tenho rezoluto a intrancia dos providos da fortaleza de Sofalla na forma que athe agora se fez pela creação do novo governo das Minas, e seus Reynos hé justo dar-se satisfação aos providos ate gora e assim tenho rezoluto que



se lhe sabes faça o prejuizo que lhes resulta em fortalezas desse Estado, Viagens, da China, ou despachos, equivalentes.

Os Ministros de Iustica que se haõ de enviar resoly que fosse hum Ouvidor geral, e hum Provedor dos defuntos com a jurisdicãõ de que se vos avizara ; E assim das pessoas que eu nomear, e haõ de ser adjuntos nos cazos que o Superintendente houver de julgar.

Como na paz, e concordia que deve haver entre os Reys Vezinhos ao Estado das Minas, e o Superintendente delle, e Meus Vassalos consiste a mayor parte do bom Sucesso de tudo o que Se intenta, ha de levar muy encarreg<sup>o</sup> que assim o procure por todas as vias possiveis e ao Emperador Manomapata por Ser Christaõ, e Vassalo meo se lhe lançara o habito de Christo, Se o naõ lover ja recebido por lho ter mandado lançar os annos passados e levava hum presente, e outra para os Reys de Quiteve Manica, Mocranga, Batica, e Chicova, e cartas minhas para todos para se lhe darem com os presentes, fazendo lhes de minha parte os offerecimentos convenientes para os reduzir a mayor amizade que se puder. E porque he justo que pela grande estimaçãõ que faço das Couzas daquellas pr<sup>tes</sup> que se tirasse de honrar, e premiar aos que nellas Servirem com Satisfaçãõ, Me pareceo dizer vos que aos que Se Signalarem fazendo algum Serviço particular, os poderis honrar com os habitos, e foros de fidalgos que tendes que prover.

Pela grande importancia de que Sera a Meus Reynos, e vassalos, e a minha fazenda o descobrimento, e beneficio das Minas, e as mais razoens que vos saõ presentes, vos hey por muy encarregado tudo o que tocar a elle, e a Sua Conservaçãõ, e defençãõ, como parte taõ principal do Estado da India, e que lhes deis toda a ajuda e favor que estiver em vossa maõ em todas as moçoens tendo o Superintendente, e officiaes Meus com toda a boa correspondencia para que eu Seja bem servido as contas necessarias para as Minas que haõ de hir desse Estado, Mandareis das Melhores que houver, e Sem dillaçãõ para que naõ faltem nas occasioens, e assim as roupas que hé o de mais consideraçãõ em rezaõ do comercio, das quaes por meyo delle ha de resultar acrescentamento a minha fazenda, advertindo que o Serviço que nesta Materia me fizerdes o terey pelo Mayor, como pelo Contrario me haverey por desservido de assim e na cumprirdes.

Ao Superintendente das Minas se ha de encarregar que procure

por todas as vias possiveis, e que lhe parecerem mais seguras enviar a este Reyno todos os avizos necessarios fazendo relaçaõ Muy particular de tudo o que se acharaõ no descobrimento das Minas e Sua Sustancia como das Couzas cernentas a a segurança, e defençaõ do Estado advertindo do que se deve fazer em cada couza e appontando as de que há necessidade para se lhe acodir com ellas, avizando-vos a vos na mesma forma, os quaes avizos, e Relaçoens podera tambem mandar em algum dos Navios dos que levar contigo, E assim o Mais ouro, e prata que sem prejudicar ao assento, e Segurança do Estado puder enviar, e assim dos Mais Metaes a quantidade que puder para eu ser informado de tudo o que aly há, e mandar prover como for servido. Escrita em Lx<sup>a</sup> 24 de Fever<sup>o</sup> de 635. Rey.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well. By the ships which came to this kingdom last year, 1634, of which Antonio de Saldanha was commander-in-chief, eight letters were received from the count of Linhares, viceroy of that state, dated the 18th, 19th, and 24th of October and the 9th of December 1633, and the 7th and 8th of February of last year, concerning the conquest and mines of Monomotapa and the fortifications at the mouths of the rivers of Cuama, which I commanded should be dealt with, João da Costa having taken over for this purpose, in the year 1633, two caravels with men, artillery, ammunition, and military stores, as you are aware, who after inspecting the mouths of the rivers, proceeded to Goa, returning afterwards to the mouths of the rivers with letters from the viceroy, and having received letters from the miners and specimens of the metals which they had discovered, he was robbed by Dutch pirates, in sight of the island of Corvo, having first thrown everything overboard. And by the same ships of Antonio de Saldanha a duplicate of the letter which the miner Dom André de Vides e Alvarado had written to me when João da Costa went to India was also received, with the reports which he sent, and others from the municipal board of Goa and from Joseph Pinto Pereira, overseer of the general treasury, and the documents sent with it from Dom Philippe Mascarenhas and other persons.

Having examined all the statements made by João da Costa

concerning the second reports which he gathered on his return to the rivers from the narrative of a miner who was awaiting him in Quilimane, and the information received from different persons of those parts, and having commanded this matter to be considered in accordance with its importance, and bearing in mind the great benefit and profit which may result to my treasury and to my kingdoms and subjects if the discovery and working of the gold and silver mines can be carried out, which are situated in the kingdoms of Monomotapa, Mokaranga, Quiteve, Butica, Manica, and Chicova, the count of Linhares having sent specimens to me from them, and also specimens of the silver and other metals which it is reported are to be found in the same kingdoms, and in view of the donation which the emperor Monomotapa made me of these mines, I have resolved that the providing of men and working of them shall be immediately dealt with, and also the increase and preservation of that new conquest; and that for the superintendence of its government a person be sent out possessing the necessary qualifications and abilities, whom I shall cause to be nominated, of which information will be sent to you, and who shall have the superintendence and government of those lands and of the forts which are constructed there, according to regulations which I shall command to be given to him, and he shall be subordinate to the viceroy or governor of India.

As the principal matter to be dealt of immediately with the greatest care is the fortification of the mouths of the rivers, ports, and entrances there, from which places attempts can be made on the mines by European enemies, and also of the river Cuama, which is the course of navigation to Sena and Tete, that are situated on it, and by which the commerce of those kingdoms is carried on, and which empties itself into the sea by two mouths, those of Luabo and Quilimane, thirty leagues apart, that of Quilimane being the deepest and the mouth where ships going to that state may enter and lie at anchor, I command that a fort be immediately constructed at the mouth of this river, at the place called Ponta do Sul, for which I have already given orders. This fort shall contain the necessary soldiers and artillery for its defence and for the security of the port, so that it may protect the entrance and anchoring place, and a drill ground is to be laid out, and a settlement established of married people who are

to sail from this kingdom, so that the said entrance may be well protected, both because it is the chief entrance to the rivers and mines and because it is the port where my fleets shall put in twice a year, in the monsoons of March and September.

A fort shall be built and supplied with artillery at the creek called the bay of Linde, five leagues south of the mouth of Quilimane, where it is said that ships can enter, that the enemy may not take shelter there.

As the mouth of Luabo which, as has been said, is thirty leagues south of Quilimane, is wider, and is a bad port, shallow and abounding in shoals, and the entrance to it on account of its situation being difficult, it shall be entirely closed, both because there is little to be lost by it and because for the present it is impossible to build so many forts, and incur expenses which are not absolutely necessary.

I advise you that for the defence of the said rivers all the other orders I have given in the matter shall be carried out, of which orders information was sent to the count of Linhares in the year 1633, and everything else is to be done that is required for their security.

I am informed that the fortress of Sofala, situated thirty leagues to the south of the mouth of Luabo and sixty from that of Quilimane, is in a ruinous state, with no men, and with its artillery dismounted, and that it only serves to enrich the factors who are sent there by the captains of Mozambique; and that the territory adjacent to this fortress borders on the lands of the mines, the fortress being seventy leagues distant from them; for which reason it is necessary to attend to it immediately. I have resolved that it shall be repaired and supplied with all things necessary for its fortification, that sufficient artillery be placed in it for its defence and the safety of that neighbourhood, that the dismounted artillery be placed in position, and that the repairs required be effected and two hundred soldiers with their castellan be stationed in it.

A suggestion has been made to me that for the better security of the port a fort should be constructed on the island called Luis Pereira, two leagues distant from Sofala, on a spot from which its artillery may cover the anchoring place of the ships that put into the said port, by which means the entrance would be well guarded; and it is said that this fort would be even a better

means of defending the entrance to the port of Sofala than the fortress itself, as the entrance to it would be completely barred. I think fit to lay this matter before you, that being in receipt of all the necessary details you shall consider whether it is advisable to construct the said fort on the site referred to, and shall command and cause your decision to be put into execution.

On account of the great importance of the port of Mozambique, whose castellan is to be subordinate to the superintendent of the mines, you shall cause the works of its fortification to be immediately completed, and the three hundred effective soldiers of its complement to be supplied to it; and you shall particularly recommend the castellan to complete the digging of the trench, so that it may be in readiness; and let all the resolutions I have taken concerning this matter be carried out, and also those concerning the assistance to be rendered by the residents of Mozambique in the fortifications.

The count of Linhares wrote that the port of Santo Felix on the coast of the island of Madagascar, one hundred and forty leagues distant from Quilimane, is capable of containing large ships and vessels, and on the southern side also offers shelter for ships; and that it would be advisable to fortify it, both on account of the abundance of provisions found there and because should the enemy occupy it and fortify themselves there, which it would be easy for them to do, knowing the welcome which the natives give to all foreigners, they will sally out of it and infest the coast of Mozambique and Sofala and the ports which are there, besides the convenience to them of possessing so large a port in the vicinity of the mines; and since the objection that they would lack provisions is understood to be removed by the assertion that there are sufficient in the rivers to supply the fortresses of Sofala and Mozambique, nevertheless in view of the further statements made, I think fit to lay this point before you, so that if there should be mines and it appears to you advisable to fortify that port, being capable as is stated of affording shelter to ships, you shall give orders accordingly.

As the principal question which should be dealt with is the dispatching of soldiers and married people with their families, for the protection of the ports referred to and to establish colonies of subjects of these kingdoms throughout all that state, and as on account of the present impoverished condition of my

treasury it is impossible to send immediately all that is required, I have resolved that for the present four ships shall be dispatched with two hundred soldiers, two hundred married couples, and as many more of each as it is possible to send, and that the married people shall be proficient in all trades, and shall also be labourers and take with them the implements pertaining to each trade and above all the necessaries for cultivating and sowing the lands, and that in the ships which go to the rivers in future as many soldiers and married couples as possible shall be sent; and order shall be given to the superintendent of those who are sailing at present—whose principal care shall be to use every means of benefiting the colonists, and selecting the places where the married people are to reside—to assist and favour them in every way, that the land may be effectually defended in the places where this is necessary and that they may live comfortably and advantageously, so that after their arrival they may serve me accordingly, and the population be increased with subjects of these kingdoms, upon which the good results expected depend.

As it is advisable that a colonel should also be sent out with the superintendent and soldiers, and other persons to assist him, I have resolved that this shall be done accordingly, and that a major and as many as six half-pay ensigns, having knowledge of fortifications, shall also be sent out; and if a colonel does not go, another major shall be sent with the ensigns. You shall be informed of what persons are appointed to fill these posts.

It would be most conducive to the security of that state and of the mines, and to the benefit of the residents, that the breeding of horses should be carried on there, and although the men required for this business are not sent out at present, that there may be two hundred horses in those parts, as the count of Linhares suggested, I earnestly charge you, for the reasons referred to, and it being supposed that every year as many men and married couples as it is possible to send are to go there, to give order to send to the rivers of Monomotapa from the island of Caxem two hundred mares and a sufficient number of stallions, to be divided among each of the settlements.

Although the count of Linhares suggests to me to nominate forthwith a bishop for that state, I have thought fit to declare this to be unnecessary, considering the country amply provided

for, for the present, by the ecclesiastical administrator whom I nominated, and whose jurisdiction is nearly equal to that of a bishop; commanding, in the event of its being necessary in the future to nominate a bishop for that state, that the archbishop elect of Goa shall immediately give his consent to the separation.

I have commanded orders to be given to the Dominicans and Jesuits, who have mission houses in those parts, to send out more workers for the salvation of souls. I have also given order for several Capuchins to be sent from this kingdom, as they lead exemplary lives, and as they may not acquire wealth, they will labour with greater fervour for the conversion of the heathen and the extension of the holy Catholic faith.

Four physicians will be sent out for the assistance of the sick and wounded, also four apothecaries with the necessary articles for their occupation, four surgeons, and four barbers, care being taken that the greater number are married men.

As it is said that in Monomotapa and the rivers there is a greater scarcity of women for the residents to marry than of men, several women from the *Caza-Pia* of this city shall be sent in the ships and several young girls from the house of retirement, seeing that married couples are sent out with them.

Not knowing what artillery is needed, what is now at the rivers, or at what distance it is stationed from the anchoring grounds and from places where the ships pass, ten brass culverins, twenty pounders, will be sent out, and as many as twenty iron cannon of the best caliber it is possible to find. From the smaller pieces which the ships carry the fortresses may be supplied with what they require for the defences, besides which two bronze sakers and two demi-sakers will be sent, and two bell metal swivel guns. For these and for four of the lightest iron pieces field gun-carriages shall be made, to transport them to the ports where the fortifications are to be constructed. A jack-screw, a martinet, and a crane will be sent with this artillery to lift it, and to mount and dismount it with dispatch; and if necessary a heavy cart and two wheels with yokes, as there are oxen in that country. For all this artillery there will be sent scoops, rammers, sponges, loaders, double worms, several gunners, and an experienced chief gunner to drill them.

The small arms which I have commanded to be sent with this reinforcement are three hundred arquebusses, one hundred for

the fortresses and two hundred for the country people, five hundred pikes for the camp and the settlements, and one hundred fire-locks. There will be sent an armourer, two locksmiths, two men to take charge of the furnaces, two gun-stock makers, one or two drivers, carpenters to make the field carriages, four sawyers, one gun founder to repair the cracked artillery and to recast that which has gone out of use, one gunsmith with his implements, one hundred quintals of powder, a manufacturer of gunpowder with all the articles pertaining to his trade, to refine and make gunpowder, eight thousand cannon balls of various sizes, one hundred quintals of leaden balls for muskets and arquebusses, as many quintals of lead for melting, several persons practised in the art of making balls and powder, fifty quintals of match in barrels, several hand grenades, thirty large and small lanterns, six quintals of wax and tallow candles, twenty portable grates, two thousand iron tools for building fortifications, cutting wood, and making fascines, forty baskets, five hundred swords, twenty baskets of esparto grass, twenty ordinary carts with their yokes, twenty quintals of cordage, sixty quintals of nails, eight hundred leather bottles, eight hundred cloth knapsacks, five hundred tubes to protect the match, one artillery engineer, two engineers of fortifications, and all things further required with regard to artillery, arms, ammunition, and military stores.

For the advantage of the mines it is necessary to open the commerce of the rivers, and to prevent those appointed to the succession of the captaincies of Monomotapa and Sofala from entering upon these offices. I have resolved that the captain of Mozambique, who is to be subordinate to the superintendent, shall be exempted from the sum which he pays for the monopoly, and all my subjects shall be at liberty to trade in the rivers. As to the duties which they will have to pay to my treasury on merchandise passing through the custom house which is to be established in Quilimane and through that of Sena on gold, silver, and other metals when trade in the said metals shall be carried on, and on ambergris, in both places the duties shall be those usually paid, and shall not exceed the fifth part either on exports or imports.

It has been represented to me that there is an abundance of ivory in those parts, with which India is supplied, in securing the profits of which it is considered that there is great remissness



on the part of my treasury, and that a duty of the tusk that an elephant touches the ground with when dying is paid to the heathen kings; that a monopoly of the ivory trade should be established, and it should be bought and transported at the cost of my treasury as a royal right on elephants; that the duty of the lower tusk should be paid to my treasury in the same manner as it is paid to the heathen kings in their kingdoms; and that all that is bought and all received as duty should be sent by my officials to India, to be expended in the purchase of cargoes of pepper for the ships which sail from that state to this kingdom, and also in buying cloth to be sent to the rivers, that the commerce may continue, and the expenses of the fortresses and of that state be defrayed; that in case there should not be sufficient for the ships' cargoes and for buying the cloth, the deficiency should be sent in gold to that state from my treasury, for the aforesaid purpose of assisting in the expense of the cargoes for the trading vessels of every year; and that the conquest of Monomotapa and its fortresses should be supported by the gains and profits on cloth.

Although it appears that when free commerce is opened in the rivers, as I have resolved, it is not proper that there should be a monopoly of the ivory trade, but that it also should be free, so that the profit to be gained on merchandise may attract traders to those parts, yet I think fit to lay this matter before you, that you may consider whether a monopoly of the ivory trade would lead to the advancement of the conquest and the benefit of the mines, and advise me of your opinion; and also, in case I should decide that there shall be no monopoly, you shall inform me what duties should be laid on the ivory besides those that are usual.

All the gold and silver extracted from the mines shall be stamped with the royal arms of this crown, in the same manner as in the Spanish Indies, to prevent any misappropriation of it which might otherwise occur. I have commanded regulations to be drawn up for the working and administration of the mines, of which a copy will be sent to you; and several miners are also to be sent out, that this matter may be pushed forward with suitable zeal.

The superintendent of the mines shall receive strict injunctions to attend to the business of the custom houses of Quilimane

and Sena, and to the payment of the duties due to my treasury, and shall command proceedings to be taken in this matter in the most advantageous manner possible. His orders shall be respected by all the officials of my treasury who serve in the custom house, who shall keep strictly to the regulations given to them, and he shall take care that these are observed and are fully executed. I also earnestly recommend this matter to you, and in carrying it into execution I shall consider you have rendered me special service.

There shall be factors, collectors, and secretaries in the custom houses, for the security and good administration of my revenue, who shall be persons of integrity, trustworthiness, and good conduct, on account of the great confidence reposed in them.

The persons appointed to the succession of the fortress of Sofala being prevented, as I have decided, from holding this appointment on the same conditions as they have done to the present time, by the establishment of the new government for the mines in the kingdoms where they are situated, it is only just that those who have been appointed to this fortress shall receive some satisfaction; and therefore I have decided that fortresses in India, expeditions to China, or commissions of equal value shall be bestowed upon them in satisfaction for the damage they receive from this order.

I have resolved that the administrators of justice who are to be sent shall be a chief judge and a guardian of the property of deceased persons, who shall have such jurisdiction as you shall receive information of, as also of the persons whom I shall appoint, and who are to assist the superintendent in the cases in which he shall have to give judgment.

As the greater part of the good success of all that is undertaken depends on the peace and concord which should exist between the kings in the neighbourhood of the mines, the superintendent, and my subjects, the said superintendent shall receive strict injunctions to make every possible effort to preserve this peace. The habit of the order of Christ shall be bestowed on the emperor Monomotapa, who is a Christian and my vassal, if he has not already received it, as I have given orders in former years for it to be bestowed upon him; and a present shall be sent to him and also to the kings of Quiteve, Manica, Mocaranga, Batika, and Chicova, with letters from me to them all, to be delivered with the presents, and in my name such

offers as appear necessary to establish the greatest possible friendship shall be made to them.

And because it is just, on account of the great importance I attach to affairs in those parts, that those who render satisfactory service there should be honoured and rewarded, I think fit to inform you that you may bestow the habits and privileges of noblemen, which you have at your disposal, on those who distinguish themselves by rendering some special service.

On account of its being of great importance to my kingdoms, vassals, and treasury, that the mines should be discovered and worked, and for other reasons of which you are aware, I earnestly entrust to you everything that touches this matter and the preservation and defence of that country, as being such an important part of the State of India. You shall assist and favour the measure by every means in your power, in each monsoon; and with my superintendent and officials shall hold friendly intercourse, that I may be well served. As to the beads which are required for the mines, and which must be sent from India, you shall forward the best that can be procured, without delay, that they may not be in want of them when occasion offers; and also the cloth, which is the most important branch of commerce, and from which my treasury will obtain large profits. Anything you accomplish in this matter I shall esteem as the greatest service you can render me, as in not acting in accordance with this I shall consider that you have served me badly.

Instructions shall be sent to the superintendent of the mines to forward to this kingdom by every opportunity that he considers safe all necessary reports, giving a detailed account of all that has been done in the discovery of the mines, and matters relating to them, as also of everything touching the security and defence of the state, advising what should be done as regards every point, and stating what he needs to be sent to their assistance, informing you in the same way of all this; which reports and accounts he may also send in any of the ships he takes with him, and also all the gold and silver which he can spare without damage to the establishment and security of the state, and also the quantity that he is able to send of other metals, that I may be informed of all that transpires there, and may command such steps to be taken as I think fit.

Written in Lisbon, the 24th of February 1635.

THE KING.

V. Rey da India amigo. Ev El Rey vos envio muito Saudar. Dom Phelipe Maz̃s Capitaõ de Monss<sup>o</sup>, e Sofalla me representou que o Conde de linhares sendo VRey desse Estado, o obrigara a vir no Contrato dos quintos estanco das roupas dos Rios de Cuama dando os quorenta mil pardaos da pensaõ e sustentando os Soldados do prezidio da fortaleza de Mossambique, e os Mineiros que eu mandey a aquelles Rios, e Minas, e que era o gravame de qualidade que lhe não podia dar Satisfaçaõ, e havendo nisto o que referey, me pareceo dizer-vos que deve dar cumprimento ao Contrato ate se executar a extinçaõ do provimento da Capitania de Monss<sup>o</sup>, e Sofala que tenho rezoluto, e cessar a modo de convençaõ que com os Capitaes se celebrava nesse Estado, e entendendo que se lhe fez no Contrato o aggravo de que se queixa poderã tratar de sua justiça pelos meynos ordinarios della. Escrita em Lx<sup>a</sup> a 24 de Fever<sup>o</sup> de 635. Rey.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well. Dom Philipe Maz̃s, captain of Mozambique and Sofala, has represented to me that the count of Linhares, viceroy of India, compelled him to enter into a contract to pay as duty the fifth part, for the monopoly of the sale of cloth in the rivers of Cuama, notwithstanding he pays the forty thousand pardaos and maintains the garrison of the fortress of Mozambique and the miners whom I sent to the said rivers and mines; and that the burden of this was such that he could not carry out the contract. Having examined this matter, I think fit to inform you that he must comply with the contract until the resolution which I have taken to abolish the post of captain of Mozambique and Sofala is carried into execution, and the system of contracts with the captains ceases in that State; and if the damage done to him by this contract is such as he complains of, he may take the ordinary measures for obtaining redress.

Written in Lisbon, the 24th of February 1635.

THE KING.

---

VRey da India Amigo. Ev El Rey vos envio muito Saudar. Pela grande importancia de que hé a fortaleza de Mossambique

taõ apetedida dos Enimigos de Europa que tantas vezes foy acometida delles e por no tempo presente em que tanto prometem as Minas de Manomatapa ser necessario tratar-se com mayor calor de Suas Seguranças, e fortificaçoens, e ter-se entendido que nella se não tem proced° até agora como couvinha nem esta por tanto estado que convem havendo-se ordenado tantas vezes, e tendo-se gastado tanto, e do que se tem obrado faltarem as Noticias necessar<sup>as</sup> Me pareceo encomendar vos que nas primr<sup>as</sup> naus me envieis huã planta daquella fort<sup>a</sup> e huã Rellação para Menor das obras que se ordenarãõ do que nellas esta feito, e desp<sup>nd</sup>° e do que falta por fazer, e quanto custara declerando-se a obra que se fez no tempo de cada hum dos Capitaês passados, e o que importou a despeza, de aquy em diante me Vira todos os annos Rellação das obras que se fizerê de novo cada anno, e do que se gastar nellas, e os Capitaês de Momssambique Seraõ obrigados a enyialas sob pena de se lhes dar em Culpa em Suas rezidencias, e aos Religiozos da Comp<sup>a</sup> que assistem em Mossambique encarregarais de minha parte a Superintendencia das obras da fortificaçãõ, e correraõ com a despeza do dito applicado a elles assim como fazem nas forta<sup>s</sup> de Baçaim, Chaul, e Damaõ, e Dio dando para esse effeito as ordens necessr<sup>as</sup>, e para que juntamente se vã obrando logo o que tenbo rezoluto acerca destas fortificaçoens. Escrita em Lx<sup>a</sup> a 24 de Março de 635. Margarida.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well. On account of the great importance of the fortress of Mozambique, which is so coveted by European enemies, and which has been so often attacked by them, and because at the present time the mines of Monomotapa give such great promise, it is necessary to show greater care for its security and its fortifications; and understanding that up to the present no suitable measures have been taken, and that its condition, notwithstanding the numerous times that orders have been issued and large sums expended, is not satisfactory; and as the necessary reports of the works which have been carried out have not been forwarded; I think fit to command you to send me by the first ships a plan of the said fortress, and a detailed account of what has been carried out as regards the works ordered, the expense of this, what remains to

be done, and the sum required for it; stating what works were carried out during the term of office of each of the former captains, and the sum expended on them. Henceforward every year they shall send me an account of the new works carried out during the year, and what was expended on them; and the captains of Mozambique shall be compelled to send these reports under penalty of its being brought against them at their trials; and you shall entrust in my name the superintendence of the works of the fortifications to the Jesuits who reside in Mozambique, and this will be considered part of the duty for which payment is made to them, as is the case in the fortresses of Raçaim, Chaul, Daman, and Diu. You shall issue the necessary orders for this purpose, and also orders that the resolutions I have passed concerning the said fortifications shall be immediately carried into execution.

Written in Lisbon, the 24th of March 1635.

MARGARIDA.

---

VRey da India Amigo. Eu El Rey vos envio muito Saudar. Em Carta de 27 de Fever<sup>o</sup> de 633 mandey encarregar ao Conde de linhares vosser que fizesse tirar devassa por Ministro de confiança, e intereiza dos Moradores de Mossambique que comercearão com os Cafres vezinhos daquella Ilha a que chamaõ Maraves contra a prohibiçaõ que lhe poz Christovaõ de Brito de V<sup>los</sup> sendo Castellaõ daquella praça, e ordenasse que se castigassem rigorazam<sup>ta</sup> dando-me conta do que fizesse, e prohibindo de novo com graves penas aquelle resgate, e qualquer outro com os Maraves e todas as Mais gente de Cafriria fora dos Rios de Cuama, vendo, e ordenando juntamente o favor, que se poderia fazer aos Cazados de Moss<sup>c</sup> para que pudessem ter algum modo de negociaçaõ para os Rios de Cuama, e tendo Consideraçãõ ao que o Conde me respondeo em rezaõ de não seguir inconveniente de aquelles m<sup>ures</sup> terem trato com os Cafres vezinhos, e em Consideraçãõ de seus serviços feitos nos cercos passados houve por bem de resolver que se lhes permita o Comercio que sempre tiverãõ com os cafres, e negros Maraves que delle não rezulta prejuizo a meo Serviço, nem a minha fazenda antes poderaõ rezultar muitas alicaõ, e outra couza de o não terem, e a devassa que se mandara tirar delles não passara adiante, nem se tratara

mais della, e vos encomendo, e encarrego muito a vigilancia, e cuidado que deveis ter para impedir qualquer communicação, ou tratos dos negros Cafres da Costa de Mossambique com os Olandezes, e outros estrangeiros de Europa, que teria de grandissimo danno dinesticaremse com elles, e lhes poderia facilitar a pretençaõ das Minas de Manomotapa, de que he de crer que naõ estaraõ esquecidos. Escrita em Lx<sup>a</sup> a 28 de Março de 635. Margarida.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well. In a letter of the 27th of February 1633 I commanded orders to be given to the count of Linhares, viceroy, to cause an examination to be made, by a minister of confidence and integrity, into the conduct of the residents of Mozambique who hold commerce with the Kaffirs in the neighbourhood of the said island, whom they call Maraves, contrary to the prohibition issued by Christovaõ de Brito de Vasconcellos, when castellan of that fortress, and to command a severe punishment to be inflicted on them, sending me a report of what was done, and issuing a new prohibition against the said trade, under heavy penalties, and any other trade with the Maraves and all the other tribes of Kaffraria beyond the rivers of Cuama; at the same time giving order to favour as far as possible the married people of Mozambique, so that they might hold some kind of commercial transactions with the rivers of Cuama.

With reference to this matter the count replied that the trade which the said residents carried on with the Kaffirs led to no evil results; and in consideration of their past services during times of siege I think fit to resolve that they shall be allowed to carry on this commerce, as they have always done, with the Kaffirs and Maraves, as it is of no damage to my service or treasury, but on the contrary many evils might result from their not holding this commerce; and the examination for which order was given shall not be proceeded with.

I recommend and earnestly charge you to show great care and vigilance in preventing any communication or trade between the Kaffirs of the coast of Mozambique and the Dutch and other European nations, as it would lead to very serious evil if they should become familiar with them, and it might facilitate their

designs on the mines of Monomotapa, which it is to be supposed they will not neglect.

Written in Lisbon, the 28th of March 1635.

MARGARIDA.

Viso Rey da India amigo. Ev El Rey vos envio muito Saudar. Christovão de Barreto de Vasconcellos Sendo Castellaõ de Mossambique me avizou no anno de 632 que por ser em prejuizo de minha fazenda e do Contrato dos Rios de Cuama resgatarem os m<sup>ores</sup> de Mossambique roupas, e os Cafres vezinhos que os levavaõ por terra aos Rios o prohibira com graves pennas de que escandalizados os Cafres maraves offereceraõ a quatro Naos Olandezas que entaõ andavaõ naquella Costa ajudalas se fossem cecrear Mossambique e o mesmo o fizera o xeque de Ianculo pelo qual o mandara prender, e tratara de dar favor aos Cafres Macuas, enemigos dos Maraves que se naõ atraveraõ a lhe fazer guerra, sem embargo de elle lhes offerecer que lhe faria huma fortaleza: e por ser esta materia de tanta concideraçã mandey encomendar ao Conde de Linhares vosso antecessor por Carta de 27 de Fevereiro de 633 que ordenasse se tirasse devassa por Ministro de confiança, e inteireza dos que comerceraõ com os Cafres Maraves, e tivessem com elles de comonicação, e lhes resgatassem Roupas, e os fizesse castigar rigorosamente, dando me Conta do que ordenasse, e se executasse, prohibindo de novo aquelle Resgate, e qualquer outro com os Maraves, e todas as outras gentes de Cafraria fora dos Rios de Cuama, e ordenasse, e visse juntam<sup>te</sup> o favor que se poderia fazer aos Cazados, e muitos de Mossambique para poderem ter algum modo de negoceação, e trato naq<sup>ta</sup> fortaleza para os Rios de que tirassem alguma sustancia, que os obrigasse a rezidir nella, pois a sua assistencia era de muita ajuda para a conservaçaõ da fortaleza, e Seria tambem meyo de cessar o comercio que tinhaõ com os Cafres vezinhos; Ao que o Conde Respondeo em 19 de outubro do mesmo anno de 633 pelas Naos do Cap<sup>m</sup> mor Antonio de Saldanha q̄ no de 634 vieraõ desse Estado que mandaria tirar a devassa e entendia se naõ seguia dano aos Contratadores dos Rios de Cuama de os moradores de Mossambique comercearem com os Cafres vezinhos aquella fortaleza e faltando lhes aquelle trato por naõ haver aly outro naõ poderiaõ sustentarse porque no mais os



Capitaens os apertavaõ Sempre e que pelo que Serviraõ nos Cercos passados, e assistencia que fazem com todos seus escravos as obras da fortaleza, meresciaõ mais que os outros muitos das fortalezas desse Estado, e despendem muito em sua sustentaçã pella Careza dos mantimentos que ha em Mossambique E havendo visto tudo houve por bem de Rezolver que se permitta aos moradores de Mossambique o comercio que se entende que sempre tiveraõ com os Cafres, e negros Maraves que delle naõ Rezulta prejuizo a meu Serviço nem a minha fazenda, antes de o naõ terem poderiaõ seguirse muitos a huma e outra Couza; E assim ordenareis que se naõ va a adiante com a devassa que se mandou tirar pela informaçã de Christovaõ de Britto que se achaõ naõ ser fundada com o principio se entendeo, e vos encarrego muito a vigilancia, e cuidado que deveis ter para impedir qualquer cominaçã, ou trato de negros cafres da Costa de Mossambique com oLandezes e outros Estrang<sup>ros</sup> de Europa, porque seria de grandissimo dano domesticaremse com elles, e lhes poderiaõ facilitar a pretençaõ das minas do Monomotapa de que he de crer que naõ estaraõ esquecidos, e do que obrardes nesta materia me avizareis. Escritta em Lx<sup>a</sup> a 12 de Fevereiro de 1636. Rey. Manoel de Vasconcelos.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well. Christovão de Brito de Vasconcellos, being castellan of Mozambique, informed me in the year 1632 that as it was prejudicial to my treasury and to the trade of the rivers of Cuama for the residents of Mozambique to sell cloth to the neighbouring Kaffirs, who took it to the rivers by land, he had prohibited this trade under severe penalties, that the Marave Kaffirs, being angered at this, offered to assist four Dutch ships, which were cruising at the time along that coast, in besieging Mozambique, that the sheik of Janculo had done the same, for which reason he had commanded him to be seized, and that he had endeavoured to give assistance to the Macua Kaffirs, enemies of the Maraves, but who did not dare to make war upon them, although he offered to build them a fort.

As this matter is of such importance, I commanded your predecessor, the count of Linhares, in a letter of the 27th of

February 1633, to give order for those persons who had held commerce with the Marave Kaffirs, and who had been in communication with and had sold cloth to them, to be examined by a minister of confidence and integrity, and to cause them to be severely punished, sending me a report of the orders he had given and of what had been accomplished, and issuing a new prohibition of this and all other trade with the Maraves and all the other tribes of Kaffraria beyond the rivers of Cuama; and also to consider and to settle what favours could be granted to the married men and many residents of Mozambique, that they might enjoy some species of commerce and trade with the rivers from that fortress, which might give them some means of support and induce them to remain there, as their presence is of great assistance for the preservation of the fort, and at the same time it would be the means of putting an end to the commerce which they carry on with the neighbouring Kaffirs.

To which the count replied on the 19th of October 1633 by the ships of the chief captain Antonio de Saldanha, which came from that state in the year 1634, that he had caused an examination to be made and he understood that no damage resulted to the contractors of the rivers of Cuama from the commerce of the residents of Mozambique with the Kaffirs in the vicinity of that fortress, and if this trade was to fail them, as they have no other there, they would have no means of support, as in the other branches of commerce the captains always oppressed them. And that by the services they had rendered in past sieges, and by the assistance which they give to the works of the fortress by means of all their slaves, they were more deserving than many other residents of the fortresses of that state, and that their expenses for living are very great, because of the high price of provisions in Mozambique.

Having examined the whole matter, I have thought fit to resolve that the residents of Mozambique should be allowed to carry on the commerce which it is understood they have always held with the Kaffirs and Marave negroes, as it is not prejudicial to my service nor to my treasury, but on the contrary it would be of great prejudice to both if this commerce were to cease.

You shall therefore give order that the examination shall not be proceeded with which was ordered to be made on account of the information supplied by Christovão de Brito, which it has

been discovered was not well founded, as it was at first believed to be.

And I earnestly charge you to bestow such vigilance and care as it is necessary you should bestow in impeding any communication or trade between the Kaffirs of the coast of Mozambique and the Dutch or other European nations, as their becoming familiar with them would be most prejudicial, and would facilitate their designs upon the mines of Monomotapa, which it is to be supposed they have not abandoned.

You shall advise me of what you accomplish in this matter.

Written in Lisbon, the 12th of February 1636.

THE KING.

MANUEL DE VASCONCELLOS.

VRey da India amigo. Ev El Rey vos envio muito Saudar, Considerando a grande importancia de que he a fortaleza de Mossambique por o sitio em que esta, e por ser escala, e abrigo que as Naos que passaõ a essas partes, tem na viagem, e as que da volta obriguadas de temporais aribaõ da paragem do Cabo de boa esperança, sendo tambem a escala e praça de armas para a Conquista e Comercio de terras e minas de Monomotapa, e que por estes Respeitos he muito apetedida dos inimigos de Europa que a intentaraõ occupar as vezes de que tendes noticia, e no tempo prezente em Razaõ do que tem Crescido a fama da Riqueza das Minas se deve Recear que o dezejem, e procurem com mais instancia pelo que he necessaria mayor prevençaõ, e cuidado p<sup>o</sup> atalhar que naõ possaõ elles executar seus desenhos; Me pareceo encomendar vos particularmente por esta Carta tudo o que tocar a aquella fortaleza e que disponhaes nas Couzas toccantes a ella, o que tiverdes por mais Conveniente a meu serviço attendendo muito a fortificaçaõ, provimento, e Segurança de ambas as fortalezas de Mossambique, e Sofalla, de modo que as obras se acabem, e principalmente a Sisterna de Moss<sup>e</sup> e haja em huma, e outra parte, a gente, moniçoens, artelharia, armas, e mantimentos necessarios a sua deffensaõ conforme a minhas ordens, e que em todo Cazo se componha em Moss<sup>e</sup> de Cazas, e roupa, e se proveja de medicamentos o Hospital que tenho mandado que aly haja de modo que se possaõ nelle Curar os

soldados do prezidio, e os enfermos das Naos de viagem que parecem a falta de Remedio, e de vos espero que tratareis de tudo o que conthem esta Carta com tal effeito, e execuçaõ como pede a qualidade de que he. E vos encomendo me avizeis por menor do ordenardes, e se fizer, ficando m<sup>to</sup> a vossa conta fazelo executar, e Saber como se Cumpre. Escritta em Lx<sup>a</sup> a 26 de Março de 1636. Margarida.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well. Considering the great importance of the fortress of Mozambique, because of its position and because it affords shelter and is the port where the ships put in on their voyage to those parts, and where on the return passage they take shelter from storms in the neighbourhood of the Cape of Good Hope, it being also the seaport and stronghold for the conquest and commerce of the lands and mines of Monomotapa, for which reasons it is greatly coveted by European enemies, who have attempted to occupy it at various times, of which you are aware; and at the present day, with the increase of the fame of the riches of the mines it may be feared that they will covet it, and will be more zealous in their endeavours to possess themselves of it, therefore it is necessary to take greater precaution and care to prevent them from carrying out their designs.

I think fit to recommend to you, particularly by this letter, all matters touching the said fortress, and to take such measures with regard to it as appear to you most conducive to my service, bestowing great care upon the fortifications, provisioning, and safety of both the fortresses of Mozambique and Sofala, seeing that the works there are completed, especially the cistern of Mozambique, and in both places let there be sufficient men, ammunition, artillery, arms, and provisions for their defence, in accordance with my orders. And in any case in the hospital which I have commanded to be established in Mozambique let there be rooms, furniture, and medicines, that the sick soldiers of the garrison may be attended to, and also the sick from the trading vessels who appear to require attention.

I trust that you will deal with the matters contained in this letter with the attention and ability which their importance

demands. And I command you to advise me in detail of the orders which you issue and of what is carried out, it being left strictly to your care to cause this matter to be carried into execution, and to inform yourself of how it is accomplished.

Written in Lisbon, the 26th of March 1636.

MARGARIDA.

VisoRey da India. Amº Eu El Rey vos envio muito Saudar. Em 17 de Março de 634 mandey escrever ao Conde de Linhares vosso antecessor que na Nao e embarcaçoens que aquelle anno foruõ a esse Estado hia Bertholameu Coton Egenheiro que o anno antecedente estava nomeado para hir nas Caravelas que partiraõ em Companhia das Naos a Reconhecer as boccas dos Rios de Cuama a cargo de Ioaõ Costa e obrar as fortificaçoens que se houvessem de fazer e que por entaõ partirem as Caravellas com pressa, e ficar em terra se embarcava na Nao Capitania nossa Sãra da oLiveira digo na Nao Cap<sup>ma</sup> com Seus Companheiros para se ficarem em Mossambique, e porque poderia ser que naõ tomassem aquelle porto accontecido assim ordenasse que na primeira monçaõ se lhe desse embarcaõ em que tornasse a Mossambique, e porque o Conde Respondeo Somentem em 9 de Dezembro de 634 que cumpriria a minha posto que entendo terã satisfeito a ella, me pareceo encarregar vos me avizeis particularmente das fortificaçoens que se tem obrado nas boccas dos Rios de Cuama em conformidade do que eu tinha mandado e do que nellas fizeraõ Bertholameu Coton, e seus Companheiros. Escritta em Lxª a 28 de Março de 636. Margarida.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well. On the 17th of March 1634 I gave order for the count of Linhares, your predecessor, to be written to that Bartholomeu Coton was sailing in the ships which went to that State in the aforesaid year, being an engineer who was appointed in the previous year to sail in the caravels that left in company with the ships to inspect the mouths of the rivers of Cuama, under command of João Costa, and to carry out the fortifications which were to be constructed; and as the caravels left, being pressed for time, and he remained behind, he took passage in the flagship *Nossa Senhora da Oliveira*

with his companions, to remain in Mozambique, and as it may be that they were unable to put into that port, in this case order was given that he should be supplied with a ship during the first monsoon in which to return to Mozambique.

As in his reply of the 9th of December 1634 the count merely said that he would comply with my order, although it is considered that he will have carried it into execution, yet I think fit to command you to send me a detailed account of the fortifications which have been built at the mouths of the rivers of Cuama, in accordance with the orders which I have issued, and of what was accomplished there by Bartholomeu Coton and his companions.

Written in Lisbon, the 28th of March 1636.

MARGARIDA.

VisoRey da India Am<sup>o</sup>. Eu El Rey vos envio muito Saudar. Com esta Carta se vos envia a Rellação de huma que Diogo de Souza de Menezes me escreveo em 17 de Fevereiro do anno passado de 635 queixandose de o Conde de Linhares vosso antecessor o dezapossar da Capitania da fortaleza de Çofala que lhe tinha vendido, e de o mandar prender, e vexaçoes que lhe fez, encomendo vos que vendo os particulares de que trata, e tomada informaçã Certa do que passou em tudo ma envieis nas primeiras Naos que partirem desse Estado. Escripta em Lx<sup>a</sup> a 28 do Março de 1636. Margarida.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well. I send you with this letter an account which Diogo de Sousa de Menezes wrote to me on the 17th of February of last year, 1635, complaining that the count of Linhares, your predecessor, had deposed him from the captaincy of the fortress of Sofala, which he had sold to him, and that he had commanded him to be imprisoned, and complaining of the oppression he had suffered from him. I command you to examine the matters of which it deals, and to obtain exact information of all that happened, of which you shall send me a report by the first ships sailing from that state.

Written in Lisbon, the 28th of March 1636.

MARGARIDA.

Diogo de Souza de Menezes escreveu a S. Magestade em Carta de 17 de Fevereiro de 635 que depois de ter feito os Serviços por que sua Magestade que Santa Gloria haja lhe mandou Cartas de muita honra e promessas de grandes merces; o obrigou o Conde VisoRey a que fosse entrar na sua fortaleza de Sofalla levando lhe por ella oitenta mil x<sup>os</sup> de Contado, e que chegando elle a dita fortaleza achara nos Rios de todo perdidos por ser morto Dom Nuno Alvarez e o inimigo Caparaune Rey alevantado do Mocranga ter desbaratado o novo Arrayal com morte de quatro Centos Portuguezes, e seis mil Cafres que nelle hiaõ sem escapar nada, com que nos dittos Rios se levantaraõ logo todos os naturaes, e Vassallos de S. Mag<sup>de</sup> obrigados das ameassaz deste Rey, e o mesmo fizera o Rey Minira, e o de Manica de maneira que so deixou de se perder o forte de Senna, com vinte homens, e o de Tete com treze, e as feiras de Mocranga, e da Manica, a Cinco e a seis homens e hum Padre da Companhia; e que tendo elle avizo deste desbarate, e alevantamento, e aperto em que estes fortes ficavaõ, e que tudo daquellas partes se acabava, e pellos Capitaens Religiozos, e povo lhe encamparem tudo e logo se naõ acudisse com sua pessoa, se Rezolveo a fuzelho com o mayor poder, e Socorro que pode ajuntar, e que depois de dar Conta de tudo o que se passava ao Conde VisoRey, e do Estado em que as Conzas ficavaõ, e que o Socorresse, e naõ deixasse perder aquelle imperio, assim Como se tinha perdido Ceillaõ, Mombaça frotta da China, e a silla do Norte, e mais de quarenta pataxos, se partira para os Rios na monçaõ de Outubro com duzentos arcabuzeiros deixando a fortaleza bem provida de gente e de mais necessario para sua defensaõ, e por Capitaõ della o Christovaõ de Britto que lha tinha entregado; e que Chegara a quillimane, e desbaratara o Principe 1<sup>o</sup> do Rey Mouira fez alevantar o Cerco, e obedecer a todas as terras levantadas, matando mais de dous mil homens, e Cativando grande quantidade de gente, e gado, depois de ter todas as terras debaixo quietas e obedecidas, se partio para Senna com dous mil Cafres de guerra que pagou da Ilha de Luabo, e que com esta gente, e a que levava lhe foy obedecendo outra vez todas as terras levantadas, athe Senha onde chegara depois de passar grandes Riscos e os vencer, e que logo metera guerra na Manica quermendo a Cidade Zimbaoe de el Rey Chicanga matando a todos, e apanhando o mesmo Rey as maos, e o mandara degolar e que por no Rn<sup>o</sup> com o prazimento

dos gr<sup>des</sup> delle outro Rey com obrigação de vassalagem a S. Mag<sup>de</sup> e de mandar descobrir todas as Minas Reaes do ouro do seu Rn<sup>o</sup> para os Portuguezes hirem Comprar, e vender a ella, e que não levaria aos Mercadores os direitos que athe então pagavaõ de suas fazendas que eraõ grandes, e que depois de dado pelo dito Rey comprimento a tudo meteo logo guerra no Mocranga com hum exercito de trezentos homens Portuguezes, e da terra arcabuzeiros, e doze mil Cafres, e que hindo demandar o Rey Coporasine alevantado que estava Com grande exercito na mesma paragem onde tinha desbaratado o nosso arrayal, vieraõ em batalhaõ hum dia de Saõ Ioaõ, e no Cabo de meo dia de trauada a peleja, foy desbaratado, e fugindo, ficando mortos doze mil homens de Sua parte, e a Sua recovagem, molheres gado, e armas, tudo tomado com muita pouca perda da nossa parte, em que Saõ Ioaõ obrara grande milagre que fez no seu dia, e que os mesmos Cafres do novo arrayal e do inimigo Confessaraõ andara na batalha hum homem taõ formozo, e resplandecente animando a gente que parecia o mesmo sol, e que Com esta perda ficara este inimigo para nunca mais erger Cabeça, e o serco das nossas feiras levantado, e as terras todas Sobredecidas, e quietas com grande credito, e Reputaçãõ nossa. e que nestas guerras e Restauraçãõ dos Rios gastou trinta e dous mil, e quatro centos H<sup>dos</sup> despendidos pelo Feitor de sua Mag<sup>de</sup> da fazenda delle Diogo de Souza de Menezes, e que estando dando fim a estes notaveis Serviços que fez a S. Mag<sup>de</sup> no discurso de dez mezes que so fora Cappitaõ daquella fortaleza; O Conde VizoRey por ser seu inimigo Capital, e dezejar de o destruir, e estomagado de elle lhe pedir Socorro Com Rezoluçãõ, e lhe tratar no que ja era perdido em seu tempo, e por lhe encontrar muitas vezes no Cons<sup>o</sup> couzas que não Convinhaõ ao Serviço de sua Magestade, e por todas estas Rezoens de seu poder absoluto, o mandara logo dezapossar da dita fortaleza pello Dezembargador Paulo Rebelo, dando por Cauza na sua provizaõ o fazia por huma Carta que os Cazados de Moss<sup>e</sup> lhe escreveraõ de falcidades contra elle Diogo de Souza como queixozos delle os Constranger a hirem a guerra, e que assim por ter aRecadado da fazenda de Dom N<sup>o</sup> Alvarez o que por sentenços lhe devia no que o Conde VizoRey lhe quebrara o contrato e lhe desa de perda mais de Cento e Cincoenta mil H<sup>dos</sup> a fora o preço porque lhe tenha vendida a dita fortaleza de que tudo tinha protestado, e bons papeis, para Requerer Sua justiya



pois sem Cauza fora dezapossado da dita fortaleza com que ficara de muito rico que era posto por portas por elle VizoRey mandar aRecadar de sua fazenda para a de S. Mag<sup>de</sup> sessenta, e sette mil H<sup>dos</sup> de dous annos de penção não servindo elle a dita Capitania mais que dez mezes, e esses nas guerras de que tinha dado Conta a sua Magestade e que seus acredores lhe venderão athe os fattos de seu vistir e hum escritorio das suas joias que foy ao Leilaõ que valia vinte mil H<sup>dos</sup> o comprara VizoRey por doze mil, por não haver quem se atrevesse alcançar nellas, e vindo elle aquella Cidade a Requerer sua justiça para tornar acabar de servir o tempo que lhe faltava o mandara logo o Conde meter no tronco onde estava havia anno, e m<sup>o</sup>, e lhe tomar aforçozamente duzentos, e quarenta onças de ambar, que trouxera sem lhas querer pagar, e tinha naquella prizaõ fechado de noite, e de dia, sem deixar fallar com elle pessoa alguma com tanto excesso, e tirania que estando a morte o não deixou fallar nem com seu Confessor para o confessar, nem Fizico para o Curar fazendo lhe muitos aggravos fortes, e sem Razaõ com taõ apertada prizaõ só para o matar, e que não só elle pedia justiça a sua Magestade mas toda aquella terra estava espantada do q̄ se tinha vzado com hum fidalgo velho, e de tanta qualid<sup>e</sup> e Serviços como elle estando livre por sentenças dos juizes das ordens de todas as Culpas que visoRey como seu inimigo lhe quiz accumular, sem querer, que se guardem as ditas Sentenças para effeito de elle ser solto daquella taõ apertada prizaõ, onde ja se lhe dera huma vez peçonha de maneira que mostrandose elle livre no Cabo de tres mezes de sua Chegada e habil para hir acabar de servir a sua forta<sup>a</sup> não quizera o vizoRey estar por isso antes mandou para ella Dom Phelippe Mãz que por achar pezada a penção da dita fortaleza o emcampou no Cabo de hum anno, e hora hia entrar nella o Dom Lourenço de soutto mayor, e que por aqui veria sua Magestade que em tres annos teve aquella fortaleza quatro Capitaës não sendo morto mais que hum e que a fortaleza de Dio em tres annos teve scis Cappitaës não sendo morto mais que outro. Que tinha dado Conta a S. Mag<sup>de</sup> das forsas, e aggravos sem rezaõ, e tiranias que com elle se tem vzado, e que via que cada hora se buscaõ modos para o matarem, e elle por Remir sua vida os buscava taõ benign<sup>os</sup> e livrar que o não mattem estando livre só por a Reccar a volta de elle vir botarse aos pees de S. Magestade, e pedir justiça com a qual estava Certo lhe não havia

S. Mag<sup>de</sup> de faltar Como seu Sñor e Chatolico Rey que era, e que assim a teria sua Mages<sup>de</sup> em sua presença daly a hum anno e o mais tardar vindo por terra dos Mouros pedindo esmolha, porque naquelle Estado o tinha posto o dito Conde VisoRey que a tanto o obrigou o grande odio que lhe tomou por Zellar o Serviço de sua Mag<sup>de</sup>, que não deve de lhe estranhar vzar elle de todas as habilidades para se sahir daquella prizaõ, e Remir sua vida como sem falta o havia de fazer que ja tinha modo para isso, e que Deos mandava que se não deixasse mattar p̄q̄ Sabidamente o havia de fazer, e que quando elle tenha Culpas algumas não fogia do Castigo que merecia por ellas quem se vinha deitar aos pees de sua Mag<sup>de</sup>. Francisco de Lucena.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Diogo de Sousa de Menezes wrote a letter to his Majesty, dated the 17th of February 1635, stating that having rendered the services for which his Majesty (may glory be his portion) sent him letters of great honour and promises of great favours, the count viceroy compelled him to enter upon the duties of his fortress of Sofala, making him pay for it the sum of eighty thousand cruzados ready money; and that upon arriving at the said fortress he found that all was lost at the rivers, because of the death of Dom Nuno Alvares and because Caprasine, a rebel king of Mocaranga, had defeated the new camp, causing the death of four hundred Portuguese and six thousand Kaffirs who were there, none escaping, so that all the natives and his Majesty's vassals at the said rivers rose immediately in rebellion, compelled thereto by the threats of this king, as did also the kings of Micira and of Manica, so that everything was lost but the fort of Sena with twenty men, that of Tete with thirteen men, and the markets of Mocaranga and of Manica, with five and six men and a Jesuit father.

That receiving a report of this defeat and rebellion and of the distress of these forts, and that all these parts would be lost, because the captains, religious, and people were abandoning them, if he did not go immediately to their assistance, he determined to do so, assembling the largest possible force and reinforcements; and that, after giving to the count viceroy an account of all that had passed and of the state of affairs, saying

that he would rectify it and not allow that empire to be lost as we had lost Ceylon, Mombasa, the Chinese fleet, the seat of government of the north, and more than forty vessels, he set out for the rivers in the October monsoon with two hundred arquebusiers, leaving the fortress well provided with men and what it further required for its defence, with Christovão de Brito, who had delivered it over to him, as captain.

That he reached Quilimane, and defeated the prince, son of the king Moucra, caused the siege to be raised, and brought all the rebel lands into obedience, killing more than two thousand men and capturing a great number of men and cattle.

When all the lands were pacified and brought into subjection and obedience, he set out for Sena with two thousand Kaffir warriors from the island of Luabo, whom he paid, and with these men and those he had with him he was again successful in bringing all the rebel lands as far as Sena into obedience.

He reached that place after surmounting great dangers, and immediately carried the war into Manica, burning the town of Zimbaoe belonging to the king Chicanga, killing all, and seizing the said king, he commanded him to be put to death, and with the consent of the nobles of the kingdom he put another king in his place, under obligation of his becoming a vassal of his Majesty and of commanding all the royal gold mines of his kingdom to be pointed out, that the Portuguese might go there to buy and sell, and on condition that he should not make the merchants pay the high duties upon their merchandise which they had been paying up to that time.

After the said king had agreed to all, he declared war upon Mokaranga, taking with him an army of three hundred arquebusiers, Portuguese and men of the land, and twelve thousand Kaffirs, and going in search of the rebel king Caprasine, who with a large army was at the same place where he had defeated our force, a battle was fought at midday on the feast of St. John, Caprasine being defeated and put to flight, twelve thousand of his men being killed, and his baggage, women, cattle, and arms all captured, with very little loss on our side. This was a great miracle worked by St. John on his feast day, the Kaffirs themselves of the new army and of the enemy's camp confessing that during the battle a man went among them encouraging them, who was of such beauty and splendour that he appeared to be

the very sun. The said enemy suffered so by this loss that he could never raise his head again, the siege of our markets was raised, and all the lands brought to obedience and pacified, to our great honour and fame.

That in these wars and restoration of the rivers he expended thirty-two thousand four hundred cruzados, paid by his Majesty's factor out of his, Diogo de Sousa de Menezes' property, and that while he was concluding these important services rendered to his Majesty during the space of ten months, for which time and no longer he held the captaincy of the said fortress, the count viceroy being his mortal enemy, and wishing to ruin him, being angered because he had resolutely asked him for assistance and had spoken to him of the losses which had already occurred during his time, and had opposed him frequently in the council in matters which were contrary to his Majesty's service, for all these reasons, his power being absolute, he commanded the chief judge Paulo Rebello to dispossess him of the said fortress, stating in his order that his motive for so doing was a letter addressed to him by the married men of Mozambique, which letter contained calumnies against him, Diogo de Sousa, as they were angry with him for compelling them to go to war and also because he had recovered from the property of Dom Nuno Alvares what was owing to him by sentences.

In which the count viceroy had broken his contract, and had caused him the loss of more than one hundred and fifty thousand cruzados, besides the sum for which he had sold the said fortress to him, of all of which he has certified and attested papers to claim redress, since he was dispossessed of the fortress without cause, though much of his term was unexpired, and had been reduced to beggary, because the viceroy had commanded sixty-seven thousand cruzados to be levied from his property to be paid to his Majesty's treasury, which is the sum payable for holding the fortress for two years, although he had not held the said captaincy more than ten months, during which time he was employed in the wars of which he has given his Majesty a full account, and that even his clothes were sold by his creditors, and a coffer with his jewels which was put up to auction, being worth twenty thousand cruzados, was bought by the viceroy for twelve thousand, as no one dared to bid higher.

And on his proceeding to that city to claim redress, with the

intention of returning to finish his term of office, the count immediately commanded him to be thrown into prison, where he remained a year and a half, and he took from him by force two hundred and forty ounces of ambergris which he took with him, for which he refused to pay, and he kept him confined in the said prison night and day, allowing no one to speak to him, and his cruelty and tyranny were such that although he was dying he would not allow his confessor to speak to him in order to hear his confession, nor a doctor to cure him, inflicting many great injuries on him without cause, and keeping him in such close confinement only to kill him.

That not only did he appeal to his Majesty for justice, but that all the land was struck with amazement at the treatment inflicted on an aged nobleman of such high position and service as himself, being acquitted by the sentences of the judges of all the crimes of which his enemy the viceroy had accused him, who would not allow the sentences to be carried into effect and that he might be set free from his close confinement, where already once he had been given poison.

And thus when at the end of three months after his arrival he had shown himself ready and eager to go to his fortress to finish his term of office there, the viceroy would not agree to it, but sent there Dom Philippe Mascarenhas, who finding the payment for the fortress too heavy, abandoned it at the end of a year, and Dom Lourenço de Sotomayor was now about to take it over, by which his Majesty would see that there had been four captains of the said fortress during the space of three years, although only one had died, and that at the fortress of Diu there had been six captains during three years, only one having died.

That he had given his Majesty an account of the violence, unreasonable injuries, and tyranny from which he had suffered, and that he saw that every hour means were sought to put him to death, and therefore he sought efficacious means of saving his life, and of shielding himself from being killed when set at liberty through the fear of his returning to throw himself at his Majesty's feet to ask for justice, which he was certain his Majesty as his lord and the Catholic king would not fail to grant him, and therefore he would come into his Majesty's presence within a year from that time at the latest, journeying through the lands of the Moors, asking alms, as the said count viceroy had brought

him to this condition by the great hatred which he bore him for having zealously defended his Majesty's interests, and therefore his Majesty should not be astonished at his employing every means of escaping from the said imprisonment and of saving his life, which he would accomplish without fail, as he had the means of doing so, and that God willed that he should not be killed, which was evidently the intention, and that being guilty of any faults, he, who came to throw himself at his Majesty's feet, would not flee from the punishment they deserved.

FRANCISCO DE LUCENA.

---

V. Rey da India Amigo. Ev El Rey vos envio muito Saudar. Ao Conde de Linhares vosso antecessor mandey escrever em 5 de Fevr° de 633, que havendo Visto huã petição dos Religiozos de São Domingos sobre lhes mandar confirmar as terras, e dezimos dellas que se lhe davaõ para sua Sustentação nos Rios de Cuama que o Conde por alvara Seo lhes confirmara com parecer dos meus procuradores da Coroa e fazenda, e que tendo consideração aos Respeitos por que lhe foraõ concedidos, e a Seo procedimento nasquellas partes na Conversão das almas, e do Rey Manomatapa, e Seus Irmaõs, havia por bem de lhe conceder a confirmação que pediaõ na forma de Seo alvara para os gozarem em quanto assistem nos Rios, com declaração que não teriaõ jurisdicção a ellas, nem poder algum por nenhuma Via nas Minas que houvesse ouro, prata, Cobre, ou outras quaesquer, nem lhe pertenceriaõ as especerias das mesmas terras, por quanto per as taes consenção tocarem a minha fazenda ficavaõ fora das doaçoens, de que lhe faria passar os despachos necessarios p<sup>a</sup> o effeito referido. E por que dentro se me fez instancia sobre a materia, tereis particular cuidado de fazer executar a minha ordem, e de me avizar de como assim o cumpristes. Escrita em L<sup>a</sup> e 8 de Março de 638. Margarida.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well. On the 5th of February 1633 I commanded that the count of Linhares, your predecessor, should be informed by letter that having seen a petition from the Dominicans for an order confirming the donation of the lands and their tithes in the rivers of Cuama which

were given to them for their maintenance, which was confirmed by an order from the count by the advice of the attorneys of my crown and treasury; and bearing in mind the reasons for which this was granted to them, and their conduct in those parts as regards the conversion of souls and of the king Monomotapa and his brothers, I have thought fit to grant them the confirmation for which they asked, in accordance with the count's order, that they shall enjoy them during such time as they remain in the rivers, with a declaration that they shall have no jurisdiction over them, nor any power whatever as regards mines of gold, silver, copper, or any other mines which may be discovered, nor shall the spices in the said lands belong to them, as these by agreement are the property of my treasury, and were not included in the donations; and the necessary orders will be passed in accordance with the above. And as with reference to this matter a petition has been presented to me, you shall take special care to cause this my order to be carried into execution, and to advise me that you have done so accordingly.

Written in Lisbon, on the 8th of March 1638.

MARGARIDA.

---

Vizo Rey da India Amigo Eu El Rey vos inuiu m<sup>to</sup> Saudar. Em 27 de Março de 635 se vos avizou de Como me informara Frey Hyeronimo de Paixão sendo Vigario geral da ordem de Sam Domingos do muito fruto, que fazião na Conuersão das almas os Seus Relligiozos a Monomotapa, e que hauiaõ bautizado ao Emperador daquellas partes, e seus Irmaõs Leuando a Goa o Irmaõ do Leuantado Caprazine, que Sustentaõ, e se bautizara tambem tomando o nome de Dom Miguel, e que o Conde de Linhares vosso antecessor lhes não hauia aCudido para Sua Sustentaçaõ pello que lhes mandey agradecer Seus procedimentos pella Carta que se vos remeteo, e se vos emcommendou que a este Irmaõ do Manomotapa Dom Miguel procurasseis aCommodar em algum modo de vida ao que respondestes em 23 de Dezembro de 635 pella Nao Capitania Nossa Senhora de Saude que a minha carta se daria ao Vigario geral vindo das Fortalezas do Norte aonde andava vizitando, a que era aSim, que os Relligiozos Domunicos Bautizaraõ ao Monomotapa e segundo a informaçãõ do Conde fora por não hauer entãõ nenhum sacerdote, e hauiaõ

elles procedido de modo naquellas partes que foraõ cauza da diuizaõ dos Seculares de que se originou serem os meus capitaens desbaratados, e que o menino Dom Miguel era Catiuo de Dom Nuno Alvarez Pereira que o houe de boa guerra, e o deo ao Conde, quando passou para Mossambique, e por lhe parecer ao Conde indecencia Seruir se delle por ser filho de Rey postoque tirano, e Leuantado o entregara aos Relligiozos Domunicos para o criarem, e dotrinarem aCudindo lhe de Sua fazenda para Seu Sustento e vestido, e p̄ ser Seu Catiuo lhe naõ dera ordinaria de minha fazenda, e me fizera Seruico delle, e hauendo visto o que fica refferido me pareceo dizer vos, que por o menino Dom Miguel ser meu Catiuo ficaua sendo mayor a razao de se aCudir a Seu Sustento, e se lhe dar o melhor modo de vida que parecesse conforme ao que se vos ordenaua pella carta refferida nesta, e p̄ Ser Irmaõ do Emperador e Conuertido a fée se lhe deue fazer toda a honra, e fauor que custumaõ receber os mais, que se amparaõ da minha protehçaõ, e nesta conformidade vos emcommendo, que o disponhais dando me Conta do que fizerdes. Escrita em Lisboa a 17 de Janrº de 1639. Rey, Duque de Villa Hermoza, Conde de Ficalho.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well. Information was sent to you on the 27th of March 1635 that Friar Jeronimo de Paixaõ, vicar-general of the Dominicans, had informed me that great fruit in the conversion of souls had been gained by his religious in Monomotapa, that they had baptized the emperor of those parts and his brothers, and had brought the brother of the rebel Caprazine to Goa, whom they maintained, and who also was baptized, taking the name of Dom Miguel, and that the count of Linhares, your predecessor, had given them no assistance in his support. For this reason I commanded thanks to be given to them for their conduct, by the letter transmitted to you; and you were recommended to provide the said brother of the monomotapa, Dom Miguel, with some means of living.

To which you answered on the 23rd of December 1635, by the flagship *Nossa Senhora de Saude*, that my letter would be given to the vicar-general on his return from the north, where he was visiting the fortresses, that it was true the Dominicans had baptized the monomotapa, that, according to the count's infor-



mation, the reason of this was that at that time there was no priest there, that their conduct in those parts had been such as to cause the separation of the seculars, which led to the defeat of my captains, that the child Dom Miguel was Dom Nuno Alvares Pereira's prisoner, captured in fair war, that he gave him to the count when he passed through Mozambique, that the count, thinking it unseemly to employ him in his service, being the son of a king, although a tyrant and in rebellion, delivered him to the Dominicans to educate him and to give him religious instruction, paying for his maintenance and clothing out of his own property, and that being his prisoner, he did not make him an allowance at the cost of my treasury, but presented him to me.

Having examined the aforesaid, I think fit to tell you that the child Dom Miguel being my prisoner, there is still greater reason to assist in his support and to provide him with the best possible means of living, in accordance with the orders given you in the letter referred to in this; and being brother of the emperor and a convert to the faith, all the honour and favour should be shown to him which it is customary to show to those who avail themselves of my protection. I recommend you to dispose matters in accordance with this, sending me an account of all that you accomplish.

Written in Lisbon, the 17th of January 1639.

THE KING.

DUKE OF VILLAHERMOSA.

COUNT OF FICALHO.

VRey da India amigo. Eu El Rey vos enuio muito Saudar. Pella Nau Capitania Nossa Senhora de oLiueira Receby as vossas Cartas de 14 de outubro de 637 e 27 de Setembro de 638, em que avizauéis dos prouimentos que mandaéis a fortaleza de Mossambique estado das obras della auzencia que fez o Capitão Dom lourenço Sottomayor hindo aos Rios de Cuama ordem que dereis sob pena do Cazo mayor para os Capitaens de Mossambique não poderem sahir daquelle Praça expriencias que se fizeraõ das Minas de Monomotapa pellos Mineiros que a ellas foraõ em prezença do Prouedor dos Rios Francisco Figueira de Almeida Como se mostra dos papeis que enuiastes E hauendo visto tudo me pareceo encommendar vos muito o cuidado que deueis ter da

Fortaleza de Mossambique para que aquella Praça Se hé tão importante esteja Sempre prouida de mantimentos armas e monicoens bastantes a Sua defenza cheyo o numero dos Soldados do Prezidio della, e que façais acabar a obra da Caua de que ha tanto que Comessou, e Se tem encommendado todos os annos sem athe agora se hauer feito.

E quanto a Rezolação que com parecer do Conselho que vos assiste tomastes para se prohibir aos Capitaes de Mossambique fazer auzencia daquella fortaleza, Saluo em Cazo de guerra que requieira aSistencia pessoal por ser aSim muy conuiniente, e Contra meu Serviço o que os Capitaens Costumauaõ fazer passando aos Rios Leuados de Seus intereisses e deixando a Praça entregue a pessoas de menos Satisfação do que Se requiere ariscada a hum Cometimento dos inimigos que tanto dezejaõ senhoriarsse della; houue por bem que em Conformidade do mesmo aSento Se paçasse a Prouizaõ que se vos inuiara Com este Carta que fareis executar. E no que toca as Minas, parece que de mais de que nas de ouro naõ Custuma hauer beta continuada que se possa fabricar e Laurar por que o Sol o Cria a flor da terra e em entrando mais abaixo Se perde a vea os Cafres na buraes bastaõ Como a experiencia tem mostrado para por Comutaçã dos pannos, e Contaria que se lhes leuaõ, darem todo o ouro que de aly se poderia tirar sem tantos riscos e despezas Como eraõ necessarias hauendo de penetrar huma tão vasta regiaõ, e a Segurar dos Cafres que tem grandes Ciumes de q̃ lhes querem tomar o ouro e a terra mayormente que das diligencias feitas athé agora naõ Constou que possa Ser de alguma Vtilidade a beneficiar aquellas Minas pello mal que respondem e se há outras mais ricas os Cafres as ocultaõ Como o Cuidado, e Cautela que se tem visto, E ainda se lhes Conhece mais Sobre as Minas da prata de que athé agora naõ houve remedio para alcançar Noticia Certa hauendosse procurado por tantos meyo: Pello que se deue reseruar aquella empresa para melhor occaziaõ que Deos Sera Seruido de dar e que liure esse Estado da India dos inimigos que a oprimẽ possa metersse nella mais Cabedal, e esperanças de bom successo. Escripta em lisboa a 15 de Feuereiro de 1640. Rey. Duque de Villa Ermosa, Conde de Ficalho.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well. By the flagship *Nossa Senhora d'Oliveira* I received your letters dated the 14th of October 1637 and the 27th of September 1638, in which you gave information of the supplies which you sent to the fortress of Mozambique, the condition of the works, the absence of the captain Dom Lourenço Sottomayor on the occasion of his going to the rivers of Cuama, the order you issued that the captains of Mozambique should not leave that fortress under penalty of high treason, and the experiments made of the mines of Monomotapa by the miners who went there, in presence of the superintendent of the rivers, Francisco Figueira d'Almeida, as shown in the papers which you forwarded.

Having examined the whole matter, I think fit to earnestly recommend you to have such care of the fortress of Mozambique as you should have, so that the said fortress, if it is so important, may be always provided with provisions, arms, and sufficient ammunition for its defence, and contain its full complement of soldiers as a garrison, and that you should cause the trench to be completed which was commenced so long ago and has been ordered every year, and up to the present has not been finished.

As regards the resolution which you took by the advice of the council which assists you, to prohibit the captains of Mozambique from absenting themselves from the fortress, except in cases of war which require their personal attendance, as this arrangement is most advantageous, and the habit of the captains in going to the rivers for their own interests, leaving the fortress to persons not possessing the necessary ability, thus exposing it to the risk of being attacked by the enemies who are so eager to obtain possession of it, is most prejudicial to my service, I was pleased that an order should be issued in conformity with the said resolution, which will be sent to you with this letter, and which you shall enforce.

As regards the mines, it further appears that in the gold mines it is not usual to find a continuous vein which can be exploited and worked, as the metal is formed by the sun on the surface of the earth, and the vein ends without penetrating farther. Experience has shown that the Kaffirs in their pits are all that is required, because in exchange for cloth and beads

brought to them they give all the gold which can be obtained from that place, without the many risks and expenses necessary for penetrating so vast a region and protecting it from the Kaffirs, who have great fear that we desire to take the gold and the land from them. Above all, the steps taken up to the present have not shown that there would be any advantage in working the said mines, on account of the small profit obtained from them, and if there are any richer mines the Kaffirs conceal them if they know of them, on account of the fear and suspicions spoken of.

Further as regards the silver mines, notwithstanding the many steps taken there have been no means of obtaining positive information concerning them. Therefore this enterprise must be reserved for a more favourable occasion, which God will be pleased to grant, and this state of India being delivered from the enemies who oppress it, more capital may be put into it, with hopes of great success.

Written in Lisbon, the 15th of February 1640.

THE KING.

DUKE OF VILLAHERMOSA.

COUNT OF FICALHO.

---

Vizo Rey da India amigo. Eu El Rey vos enuio muito Saudar, Hauendo visto a Informaçã que deu Dom Phelipe Martins, sobre os Cafres Maraues, e mais Couzas particulares tocante a fortalleza de Mossambique que o VRey Pedro da Silua enuiu em Carta de seis de Nouembro de 636, me pareceo dizervos esta satisfeito ao que se ordenou em 12 de Feuereiro do mesmo anno de 636, e encommendar vos que em Conformidade do que Se lhe avizou se permita aos moradores de Mossambique o Comercio dos Cafres vezinhos daquella fortalleza que não forem inimigos declarados, e que se esteja Com muita vigilancia e Cuidado de se impedir qualquer Comonicaçã ou trato dos Cafres daquella Costa Com os oLandezes, e outros estrangeiros de Europa porque seria de grandissimo danno demesticaremse com elles o meyo de se lhes facilitar a pretençã das Minas de que he de crer que não estaraõ esquecidos, e a esse resp<sup>to</sup> e do interesse que rezulta daquelle Comercio aos moradores de Mossambique se deue dissimular quanto possa Ser Com alguns procedimentos

Seus em que Se não perca rejustaçãõ facilitando lhes o trato dos Portuguezes para se lhes não dée occaziaõ faltando lhes a dos oLandezes; escripta em Lisboa a 11 de Março de 1640.

Margarida.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well. Having seen the information given by Dom Philippe Martins concerning the Marave Kaffirs, and the other particulars relating to the fortress of Mozambique which were sent by the viceroy Pedro da Silva in his letter of the 6th of November 1636, I think fit to inform you that the orders given on the 12th of February of the same year 1636 have been carried out, and to charge you, in conformity with the instructions sent to him, to allow the residents of Mozambique to trade with the Kaffirs in the neighbourhood of that fortress, who are not declared enemies, and that there should be great care and vigilance used in impeding any intercourse or trade between the Kaffirs of that coast and the Dutch and other European strangers, as it would be most prejudicial for the Kaffirs to become familiar with them, and would be the means of facilitating their designs on the mines, which we may suppose they will not neglect. For this reason the profits gained by the residents of Mozambique from this commerce must be concealed as far as possible, as well as the manner of their dealings, by which means in re-establishing this commerce nothing will be lost, because by facilitating their trade with the Portuguese, they will not need to deal with the Dutch.

Written in Lisbon, the 11th of March 1640.

MARGARIDA.

---

Eu El Rey: Faço Saber a vos meu vizo Rey ou Governador das partes da India, e ao vedor da minha fazenda geral dellas, que por quanto esta minha fazenda contratada com o Conde de Athaya para lhe dar juro neste Reyno de vinte omilhar pellos quorenta mil e tantos cruzados ao que for que tem nesse Estado procedidos da venda da Capitania de Sofalla que a Condeza sua May vendeo tanto que Constar da Cantia Cuta que he para com isso se remediar a falta do Cabedal. Hey por bem e vos mando que Logo Lanceis maõ do dito dinbeiro e façais fazer delles e do

mais que ficou do Nao Saõ Juaõ de Deos o emprego da Pimenta e mais drogas que Costumaõ vir por Conta do Cabedal dandosse aos procuradores do Conde Conhecimentos em forma e os mais papeis que pedir para se passar o dito Padraõ; Bertholomeo da Silua o fez em Lxª a dezaseis de Março, de mil seis centos quorenta e hum, Affonço de Barros Caminha o fez escrever: Rey: Henrique Correa da Silua:

[English translation of the foregoing.]

I the king make known to you my viceroy or governor of India and to the overseer of my general treasury there, that as my treasury has an agreement with the count of Athaya to pay in this kingdom two per cent interest for the sum of forty thousand cruzados or thereabouts, or whatever sum he possesses in that state, the proceeds of the sale of the captaincy of Sofala which was sold by the countess, his mother, as soon as he proves for certain what sum he possesses wherewith to supply the amount wanting to complete the capital, I am pleased and command you to obtain possession of the said money, and to expend it with what remains from the ship *São João de Deos* in buying pepper and other merchandise upon which this capital is usually expended, giving the count's attorneys formal receipts and the other requisite papers, so that the said order may be issued.

Drawn up by Bartholomeu da Silva in Lisbon, the 16th of March 1641.

Affonso de Barros Caminha caused it to be written.

THE KING.

HENRIQUE CORREA DA SILVA.

Conde V. Rey amigo. Eu El Rey vos envio muito Saudar como aquelle que amo. Da Vias que os Capitaens Manoel de Liz e Bertholameu Gonsalves trouxeraõ este anno tenho entendido a rezoluçaõ com que nesse Estado fizesses executar o que por Carta de 18 de Março do anno passado de 640 vos mandey escrever aCerca da minha aclamaçaõ, e juramento do Principe Dom Theadozio meu muito amado e prezado filho Concorrendo da vossa parte em hum e outro acto com tanto affecto e demost-

traçoens de alegria como de vossa pessoa e qualidade Se devia esperar Conrrespondendo em tudo as obrigaçoens com que nascestes de que vos podeis Certificar terey sempre particular Lembrança para volo gratificar no que se offerecer, e mandar ter muita Conta com vossa pessoa.

Aos Prelados fidalgos, e Ministros que vos assistiraõ na occaziaõ do meu aLevantamento mando agradecer o animo com que o ajudaraõ a festejar mandando responder a suas Cartas com as que vaõ em Companhia desta para lhes fazerdes remeter Significando de minha parte as mais pessoas de Conta, que me Servem nessas partes a quem naõ escrevo, e aos Reys vizinhos quanto me dou por Satisfeito de Seus bons animos de lealdades para lhe remunerar em Seus particulares. O que toca as naos oLandezas de que mandastes conta presuitiaõ nessa barra impedindo o Comercio, e sahida deste Reino tomada da nao quietação e Navio de Mossambique de grande dano ha sido tudo e muito para Sentir postoque ja agora he de Crer que com as ordens, e tratado das partes, que tenho assentado com os Estados geraes das provincias unidas de Olanda e nos mandey remeter em Março passado haverãõ Suspendido todo o acto de hostilid<sup>e</sup> Contra minhas armas nesse oriente com tudo vos encomendo muito que Sem embargo disto uos hajais com os oLandezes Com tanta Cautella, e recatto que procurando Conservar as praças lhe naõ deis occaziaõ de as poderem aCometer por pouco defençaveis nem de chegar a rompimento com elles em quanto as guerras com Castella de que he forçado naõ alevantar maõ e o pouco Cabedal com que he notorio achey esta Coroa quasi enhausta de todo naõ devem lugar a poder meter mayor emprego de soccorro na India e a volo Significar assim envio as duas embarcaçoens que hora com o fauor de Deos estaõ para fazer uiagem della a Cargo dos Capitaens Ioaõ da Costa e Pero de oLiveira, e auizamos o estado em que se achaõ as Couzas para que a este respeito trateis por todos os meos que vos for possivel de naõ perder reputação com os Reys desse estado e oLandezes da maneira que a pertençaõ que elles tem de Ceilao se lhes naõ facilite e vos possais aproveitar do Soccorro que na monçaõ de Março do anno que vem detrimino enviarvos e se fica despachando com o qual vos hiraõ juntamente as rezoluçoens dos negocios de que me destes Conta e reposta das Conçultas que me fizestes pellas Listas do despacho de mercas.

De vosso Zello Confio muito melhor do que se vos podia

advertir havereis obrado nas materias do meu Serviço e prevenido as Couzas de mayor importancia da Conservaçã e defença desse Estado para que por omisssã se naõ arrisquem pelo que deixo de vollo recomendar estando certo que em primeiro Lugar tereis provido de tal Sugeito a Fortaleza de Mossambique e Sofalla que Cagou pello Claveiro que Deos perdoe que naõ ha que recear qualquer invazaõ naquella praça como taõ apetevida das nasçoens de Norte. A Dom Phelipe Mêz geral de Ceilao encomendo particularmente a defença daquellas Fortalezas e Empulsaõ dos oLandezes das que tem occupado na mesma Ilha e de Seu valor espero procedera em tudo de maneira que tenha muito que he agradecer o mesmo escrevo a Cidade de Macao por outra Carta em ambas vos encomendo façais remeter brevemente conservando no zello e fidelidade a Cada qual dessas partes no que as obras naõ puderem Suprir com vosso animo e prudencia em cuja disposiçaõ deixo por hora tudo o mais que se vos pudera dizer nesta e Certificando vos que de vosso disvello e vigilancia se podem prometer todas os bems aceitos.

Nesta via se vos remetem alguns tratados mais das pases de oLanda e dous Maços de papeis em razaõ dellas que os Estados geraes de Suas provincias me inviaraõ p<sup>a</sup> Antonio vendimar geral de Suas esquadras nestas partes hua, e outra Couza lhe fareis logo intimar p̄ pessoa de toda satisfaçaõ pratica, e que tenha authoridade e Confiança para de vossa parte lhe propoz as razoens q<sup>a</sup> ha p<sup>a</sup> que da Sua se guarde a Suspençaõ de armas Conforme ao Capitulado e muy Sido com o fauor devino Segundo avizo meu embaixador espero q<sup>a</sup> Malaca e outras praças q̄ os oLandezes occupaõ se me restituãõ. Escrita em Lx<sup>a</sup> a 6 de Dz<sup>bo</sup> de 1642.

Rey.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, viceroy, friend, I the king greet you well as one whom I love. In the letters brought this year by the captains Manuel de Liz and Bartholomeu Gonçalves I have seen the determination with which you caused to be executed in that state the orders which I commanded should be given to you in a letter of the 18th of March of last year, 1640, relating to my elevation, and the oath to my well beloved and esteemed son the prince Dom Theodosio, concurring on your part in both acts with such affection and demonstration of joy as could be expected from a person of your



position, corresponding in every way with the obligations of your birth, which you may rest assured I shall always specially bear in mind, to reward you whenever occasion offers and to command great honour to be shown to you.

As to the prelates, noblemen, and ministers who assisted you on the occasion of my elevation, I command thanks to be given to them for the good will with which they assisted in the festivities, and I have directed letters to be written in answer to theirs, which letters are sent with this that you may cause them to be forwarded to them, representing in my name to those persons of position who are serving me in those parts and to whom I have not written, as also to the neighbouring kings, what great satisfaction their good will and loyalty gave me, for which I will reward them individually.

As regards the Dutch ships which, as you reported, were watching that port (of Goa), impeding the commerce and departure from that kingdom, and with regard to the capture of the ship *Quietação* and the ship from Mozambique, the great damage resulting from all this, and how much it is to be regretted, although we may suppose that already, on account of the orders and the terms of the treaty which I have settled with the states-general of the United Provinces of Holland, which I commanded should be sent to you last March, they have suspended all acts of hostility against my arms in the east, nevertheless I earnestly charge you, notwithstanding this, to proceed with such caution and prudence as regards the Dutch that, while you maintain the forts, you give them no opportunity of attacking them, as they have little means of defence, nor shall you cause any rupture with the Dutch, as the wars with Castile to which I am compelled to give my constant attention, and the scarcity of funds, as I found the treasury of this crown nearly exhausted, which is notorious, do not allow of any greater expense for reinforcements for India. And I advise you thereof by the two ships which by the favour of God are now ready to make the voyage under command of the captains João da Costa and Pedro d'Oliveira, who will inform you of the state of affairs.

For this reason you shall endeavour by every means in your power not to lose credit with the kings of that state and with the Dutch, so that they shall not be assisted in their designs on Ceylon, and that you may profit by the reinforcements which I

have decided to send you during the March monsoon of the coming year, and which are being prepared. At the same time the decisions will be sent to you, with reference to the matters which you reported to me, and the answer to the opinions which you sent to me as regards the lists of the grants to be made.

I trust to your zeal more than to any instructions which could be given to you, that you will have pushed forward matters connected with my service and have taken precautions as regards the most important questions of the preservation and defence of that state, so that it may not be imperilled by neglect, for which reason I shall not recommend the matter to you further, being confident that in the first place you will have appointed to the fortress of Mozambique and Sofala (which I entrusted to the custodian of the keys of the order of Christ, whom God pardon) such a satisfactory subject that no fear need be entertained of any invasion of the said fortress, which is so coveted by the northern nations.

I particularly recommend to Dom Philippe de Menezes, general of Ceylon, the defence of those fortresses and the expulsion of the Dutch from those which they have occupied in that island, and I trust to his valour that he will act in such a manner that I may have great cause to thank him. I have written another letter to the same effect to the town of Macoa. I recommend you to cause them both to be delivered with despatch, maintaining each in zeal and fidelity, in which places no works can supply the need of your good will and prudence. To your discretion I leave for the present all that might be further said to you on the matter, assuring you that from your care and vigilance every good result may be expected.

By this opportunity some more copies of the agreement of peace with Holland are sent to you, and two packets of papers touching this matter, which the states-general of the Dutch provinces forwarded to me for Antonio van Diemen, general of their forces in those parts. You shall forward both of these to him by a person of confidence, experience, and in every way satisfactory, who shall have authority to suggest to him, in your name, the reasons for which he should on his part maintain the suspension of arms, in accordance with the treaty, and thus, with God's will, according to my ambassador's report, I hope

that Malacca and other forts occupied by the Dutch will be restored to me.

Written in Lisbon, the 6th of December 1642.

THE KING.

Conde VizoRey da India Amigo. Eu El Rey vos inuiro muito Saudar como aquelle que amo. Hauendo visto a vossa Carta de 25 de Julho de 641 na qual respondendo a outra de 16 de Janeiro de 639 que se hauia escrito a vRey Pedro da Silua vosso antecessor Sobre se fazer dilligencia em Mossambique, e quillimane para averiguar o Cazo da morte de Dom Nuno Alvarez Pereira, que Deos perdoe, que se dizia fora morto com peçonha naquellas partes, Sendo Capitaõ de Sofala, para constar judicialmente de verdade, e satisfazer a queixa dos Seus Irmaõs e dos Condes da Feira, Seus Sobrinhos, refferis que sem embargo das dilligencias, que tinheis noticia se haniaõ feito p̄ alguns ministros, que depois disso foraõ a Mossambique, e se entender que Dom Nuno Alvarez Pereira sobre muita falecera de sua duença p̄ hauer tempos, que andaua enfermo, e o clima da terra ser duentio naturalmente. Por satisfazerdes a ordem refferida avizarieis a Gonçalo de Andrade, que tinheis inuiado a Mossambique a outros particulares, tomasse de nouo informacao do cazo, e do que se achasse dareis Conta, e p̄que a materia he taõ graue, que Conuem muito apurarse, para que hauendo Culpados naõ fiquem sem castigo, vos emcommendo e mando tenhais particular Cuidado de puxar pella dilligencia que haueis de Cometer a Gonçallo de Andrade, e me avizeis do q̄ della rezultar para o ter entendido, escrita em Lisboa a 5 de Março de mil seis centos quarenta e tres. Rey.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. I have seen your letter of the 25th of July 1641, in answer to a letter of the 16th of January 1639, which was addressed to the viceroy Pedro da Silva, your predecessor, with reference to taking measures in Mozambique and Quillimane for examining into the death of Dom Nuno Alvares Pereira, whom may God pardon, who, according to report, died from poison in those parts, being captain of Sofala, and to obtain legal

proofs of the truth, and satisfy the complaints of his brothers and of the counts of Feira, his nephews. In which letter you state that, notwithstanding the information you have received of the measures which were taken by various officials who afterwards went to Mozambique, and that it is understood, after obtaining much evidence, that Dom Nuno Alvares Pereira succumbed to his illness, he having been ill for a long time, and the climate of that country being unhealthy, yet to comply with the aforesaid order you will advise Gonçalo de Andrade, whom you have sent to Mozambique on other business, to procure fresh information upon the case, and that you will send a report of the results of his research. As the matter is so important, it should be thoroughly investigated, that if there are criminals they may not go unpunished. I charge and command you to show special care to push the matter forward by the measures which you entrust to Gonçalo de Andrade, and you shall advise me of the result, that I may be informed thereof.

Written in Lisbon, the 5th of March 1643.

THE KING.

---

Eu El Rey faço Saber aos que este aluara Virem, que por justas Consideraçoes de meu scruiço, e p̄ attender ao bem Commum de meus vassallos destes meus Reinos Como dos de todas minhas Conquistas, e partes da India. Hey p̄ bem e me praz de lhes franquear, e deixar liure a todos em geral o Comercio, e nauegação das ditas partes da India, que athe agora estaua prohibido, porque elles possão liuremente nauegar, e mandar a elles Seus Nauios, e das ditas partes vir para este Reino por Sua Conta e risco, Com as mais que sahirem do porto desta Cidade com todas as mercadorias que quizerem, e lhes bem parecer, pagando os direitos Custumados na Caza da India, e nas ditas partes Conforme aos foraes, e Regimento, excepto a Canella que neuhuma pessoa de qualquer qualidade que seja podera trazer das ditas partes porque a hey p̄ estanque, e prohibida aos ditos meus vassallos, e reseruo para mim o poder se nauegar por Conta da minha fazenda sob as pennas que comtem nos regimentos das prohibiçoes das mais Couzas que athe agora eraõ prohibidas por elles, que ninguem podia trazer, se naõ eu, ou quem minha Licença tinha p̄que todas hey de hoje em diante por liures, e

geraes a todos os ditos meus vassallos para elles as poderem liuremente nauegar, leuar as ditas partes e trazer dellas, como melhor lhes estiuer, e bem parecer sem outra Condição alguma, mais que a de pagarem os direitos do que Leuarem e troxerem em huma e outra parte conforme aos ditos foraes, e regimentos com tal declaração, que os officiaes das ditas embarcaçoens Seraõ todos portuguezes, e os capitaens dellas Seraõ nomeados p̄ elles querendo o fazer, e aprouados p̄ mim. E sendo me necessario inuiar alguma Infantaria a India poderey mandar nos ditos Nauios a que Commodamente poderem Leuar pagandose lhe os ordenados, e mantimentos p̄ conta da minha fazenda, e querendo, que nas ditas embarcaçoens va, o uenha alguma quantidade de fazenda prohibidas, ou naõ prohibidas por Conta da minha se lhe pagara dellas os fretes p̄ ratas como pagarem os mais dos particulares, pello que mando aos Vedores da minha fazenda, neste Reino, e a meu VizoRey, e vedor geral da minha fazenda do Estado de Brazil e do Reino de Angolla, e a todos os mais gouernadores, capitaens mores, e officiaes da minha fazenda, e justiça, Cumpraõ e façãõ Cumprir e guardar inteiramente esta minha pronizaõ, Como nella se Contem, e façãõ publicar cada hum pella parte que lhe tocar nos dstrictos de suas jurisdicoens, para venha a noticia de todos meus vassallos, e valha como Carta feita em meu nome e passada p̄ minha chanceleria posto que p̄ ella naõ passe sem embargo das ordenaçoens do 2º Lº ttº 39 e 40, que o Contrario dispoem. Manoel Antunes o fez em Lisboa a doze de Dezembro de 1643 Gaspar de Faria a fiz escrever. Rey o Marquez de Montaluaõ.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

I the king make known to you to whom this my letter patent shall come, that for just motives conducive to my service, and in consideration of the common good of my subjects of these my kingdoms and of those in all my conquests and places of India, I think fit, and am pleased, to open and to leave free to all in general the commerce and navigation of the said Indian parts, which up to the present have been prohibited, so that all may freely navigate and send their ships there, and come thence to this kingdom, at their own cost and risk, as also all ships sailing from the port of this city, with all the merchandise they wish and

think fit to carry, paying the customary duties in the Indian custom house and in the said parts, in accordance with the orders and regulations; with the exception of cinnamon,—which no person of whatever station may bring from those parts, as I have the monopoly of it, and it is prohibited to these my said subjects, and the power is reserved to me to ship it at the expense of my treasury,—under the penalties stated in the regulations relating to other goods which have been prohibited up to the present. And it may not be brought over excepting by me, or anyone who holds my license.

And from this day henceforward I have opened all other branches of commerce to all my said subjects in general, so that they may ship commodities freely, and take them to those parts, or bring them thence, as appears to them most fitting, with no other condition than that of paying the duties on what they carry there, or bring thence, in both places, in accordance with the said orders and regulations; with this declaration, that the officers of the said ships shall all be Portuguese, and the captains shall be nominated by them, if they so wish it, and approved by me.

And if I require to send infantry to India, I shall be free to send in the said ships the number that they can conveniently carry, their pay and provisions being paid by my treasury; and if I wish these ships to carry there, or to bring thence, a certain quantity of merchandise, prohibited or not prohibited, the property of my treasury, freight shall be paid at the same rate as upon merchandise of private persons.

For which reason I command the overseers of my treasury in this kingdom, and my viceroy of Brazil, and the overseer of my treasury there and in the kingdom of Angola, and all my other governors, chief captains, and officers of revenue and justice, to accomplish, enforce, and cause this my order to be strictly observed, in conformity with the contents thereof, and each one of them shall cause it to be published, in accordance with his office, in the districts under his jurisdiction, that it may come to the notice of all my subjects; and it shall be as binding as a letter written in my name and passed through the chancellor, although it has not passed through the latter; notwithstanding the decrees of the second book, chapters 39 and 40, which order to the contrary.

Drawn up by Manuel Antunes in Lisbon, the 12th of December 1643.

Gaspar de Faria caused it to be written.

THE KING.

THE MARQUIS OF MONTALVÃO.

Conde de Aveiras Vizo Rey da India Amigo. Eu El Rey vos inuio muito Saudar como aquelle que amo tenho entendido, que as fortalezas de Mossambique, e Sofalla não estão preuenidas, guarnecidas, e fortificadas como conuem a meo Seruiço, e Conceruação de rios de Cuama, e se pode temer, que os inimigos desta coroa intentem alguma facção danoza e prejudicial a meus Vassallos, e Conuem aCudirhe de maneira q̄ possam rezistir a Seus intentos, emcomendo vos que façais aCudir aquellas praças com tudo aquillo que for nescessario para sua deffença, e fortificação, guarnecendo as de gente, pella muita falta, que aly hã della, e Como a fortaleza de Sofalla não he capaz de deffença nescessaria, e p̄ esta rezaõ nos annos passados se tinha ordenado, se fizesse aly noua força para a deffença daquella praça, de que depende a dos Rios de Cuama, dareis ordem a que com effeito se faça logo huã fortaleza no mesmo porto de Sofalla na forma, que melhor vos parecer, e em modo, que bem possa deffender a entrada daquella praça, e leuandose para isso todos os materiaes, e officiaes nescessarios, para que se faça a obra, de que me auizareis para ter entendido o que nisto tendes obrado, e da mesma maneira ordenareis, que se faça hum forte na Ilha de Luabo na ponta de Quillimane do Sal para se defender a entrada dos Rios, e p̄que este negocio he de tanta importancia como tereis entendido, espero de vosso zello, e Cuidado, que em tudo procedereis de modo, que vollo mando agradecer. Escrita em Lisboa a vinte e quatro de Feuereiro de mil seis centos quarenta e quatro. Rey.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count of Aveiras, viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. I understand that the fortresses of Mozambique and Sofala are neither garrisoned, nor fortified, nor in such an effective state as is conducive to my service and to the preservation of the rivers of Cuama; and it is to be feared that

the enemies of this crown may attempt some attack, to the damage and prejudice of my vassals. It is advisable to assist them in such a manner that they may be able to frustrate those designs. I charge you to cause these fortresses to be supplied with all that is necessary for their defence and fortification, furnishing them with men on account of their great need of them.

As the fortress of Sofala does not suffice for the defence required, for which reason in past years orders were issued to build a new fort there for the defence of the aforesaid place, upon which the safety of the rivers of Cuama depends, you shall give order to the effect that a fort shall be immediately built in this port of Sofala, in whatever way appears to you most fitting, and in such a manner that it may defend the entrance to the said place, conveying there for this purpose all the requisite workmen and materials, that the work may be carried out, of which you shall give me information, that I may know what you have accomplished.

In the same way you shall command a fort to be constructed in the island of Luabo, at the Ponta do Sal of Quilimane, to defend the entrance to the rivers.

And because this business is so important, as you will have understood, I trust that you will act in this matter with such zeal and care that I may command thanks to be offered to you.

Written in Lisbon, the 24th of February 1644.

THE KING.

---

Conde VRey da India Amigo. Eu El Rey vos inuio m<sup>o</sup> Saudar Como aquelle que amo. Por parte do Prezidio da Fortaleza de Mossambique se me representou q̄ tendo Cada hum dos Soldados delle por Regimento dos Reis meus predecessores dez Cruzados de Soldo em Cada tres mezes, alem de quatro de mantimento, de alguns annos a esta parte lhe naõ pagauaõ mais que Seis, e que naquella fortaleza naõ hauia Hospital nem se reformariaõ Soldados, hauendo muitos Soldados muitos duentes, e Velhos, de que tudo Rezultava acharem-se em grande prejuizo, e m<sup>o</sup> falto de todo o nescessario para remedio de huns, e outros, e p̄que naõ he justo se falte a taõ percizas nescessidades. Hey p̄ bem e mando que aos Soldados se restitua a dotaçaõ de dez cruzados, e que os velhos se reforme, e passando ao Seruiço da India



se ponhaõ em Seu Lugar outros, que entrem a merecerem o daquella fortaleza, e sejaõ de mayor Vtilidade, e que logo se faça nella Hospital, o qual fareis prouer do necessario muito pontual e inteiramente ordenando se tenha Com aquella fortaleza em cada hum dos pontos referidos a Conta que merece em os Soldados, que nella me Seruem. Escrita em Lisboa a 4 de Abril de 1644.  
Rey.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. Representation has been made to me on the part of the garrison of the fortress of Mozambique, that every soldier being entitled by the regulations of their Majesties, my predecessors, to ten cruzados of pay each quarter, besides the four cruzados for their maintenance, for the last few years only six have been paid to them, that there has been no hospital in the said fortress, and that no soldiers were discharged on half-pay, although there were many very old and infirm. The result of all this has been that they find themselves in great straits and very destitute of all necessary things; as a remedy for both, and because it is not just to leave such pressing needs unredressed, I think fit and command that the soldiers' pay of ten cruzados shall be restored to them, and that the old soldiers shall be put upon half-pay and be transferred to the Indian service, being replaced by others whose entrance into the said fortress may improve the service thereof, and who may be of greater use; and that a hospital shall be forthwith established there, which you shall most punctually and completely provide with the necessary things; giving order that with reference to the said fortress due care shall be bestowed on every one of the aforesaid points relating to the soldiers who serve me therein.

Written in Lisbon, the 4th of April 1644.

THE KING.

VRey da India Amigo. Ev El Rey vos envio muito Sandar como aquelle que amo, O Conde de Aveiras sendo VRey desse Estado, em Carta de Sinco de Dezembro do anno passado de 643, Me aviza que ficava tratando de ver se havia alguã pessoa que quizesse armar para hir a Mossambique carregar de Escravos, e

navegalos ao Brazil, com que se podia remedear a falta, que naquellas partes fazem os de Angola, e porque, eu tenho rezoluto, que se abra este Comercio, como Vereis de outra Carta desta via, encomendo vos m<sup>te</sup> que procureis, quanto vos for possivel, que isto Se Consiga, e com a mayor frequencia, que poder ser, no que me averey por bem Servido de vos. Escrita em Lx<sup>a</sup> a 13 de Janeiro de 645, e eu o Secretario Affonço de Barros Caminha a fiz escrever. Rey.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. The count of Aveiras, being the viceroy of that state, advised me, in a letter of the 5th of December 1643, that he was taking steps to ascertain whether any person could be found willing to equip a ship to proceed to Mozambique to load with slaves and convey them to Brazil, by which means the scarcity of Angola slaves in those parts would be remedied. I have resolved that this commerce shall be opened, as you will see by another letter sent by this opportunity. I earnestly charge you to use every means in your power to cause this commerce to be carried on with the greatest possible frequency, in which I shall consider that you are rendering me good service.

Written in Lisbon, the 13th of January 1645. I the secretary Affonço de Barros Caminha caused it to be written.

THE KING.

---

VRey da India amigo. Ev El Rey vos envio muito Saudar como aquelle que amo; Tendo entendido que Sera muito conveniente a meo Serviço, proveito de minha fazenda, e da dos Vassalos, abrirse o Comercio de Mossambique para o Brazil carregando aly de escravos, e levandos naquellas partes, para com isso Se Suprir a falta dos de Angola, e com este presuposto concedy Licença a hum Navio de particulares, que partio deste Reyno o anno passado, e de proximo a Iulio Moniz da Silva Capitaõ daquela praça, e lhe encomendey muito persuadissem aos moradores dasquelles Rios, que quizessem armar, e fazer o Mesmo, de que me pareceo avizar vos para que o tenhaes entend<sup>o</sup> Escrita em

Lx<sup>a</sup> a 13 de Janeiro de 645 e eu o Secretario Affonço de Barros Caminha o fez escrever. Rey.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. Having understood that it would be most conducive to my service, and advantageous to my treasury and vassals, to open a trade from Mozambique to Brazil, to bring cargoes of slaves from that place to those parts, to supply by this means the deficiency of Angola slaves, upon this understanding I granted a license to a ship belonging to private persons, which left this kingdom last year; and I earnestly recommended Julio Monis da Silva, captain of that place, to persuade the residents of those rivers to fit out [ships] to do the same, of which I think fit to advise you, that you may be informed thereof.

Written in Lisbon, the 13th of January 1645. I the secretary Affonço de Barros Caminha caused it to be written.

THE KING.

V. Rey da India Amigo. Ev El Rey vos envio muito Saudar como aquelle que amo: El Rey das Ilhas de Maldiva me representou que para a passificação de Seus Reynos lhe heraõ necessarios, quatro centos Soldados pagos por hum anno, e que para isso se haviaõ nestes sessenta mil x<sup>os</sup>, E que em rezaõ das necessidades em que esse Estado se achava, naõ poder acudir com elles, me pedir a fortaleza de Sofalla para logo se vender, para do procedido della se fazer esta despeza; E porque minha fazenda se naõ acha de presente em Estado de fazer taõ grande despeza, nem ter lugar o que este Rey pede da d<sup>ta</sup> fortaleza de Sofalla, por Ser contra o decreto dos providos, e dos que me Seruem nesse Estado: encomendo vos muito que deis ao dito Rey todo o favor que vos pedir para passificação de Seus Reynos, dando as Couzas desse disso Estado lugar a isso. Escrita em Lx<sup>a</sup> ao prim<sup>o</sup> de Abril de 1645. Eu o Secretario Affonço de Barros Caminha a fiz escrever. Rey.

[English translation of the foregoing.]

Viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. The king of the Maldivé islands has represented to me that for the pacification of his kingdoms he requires four hundred soldiers with their pay for a year, and that sixty thousand cruzados would be required for this purpose, and that as on account of the straits in which this State finds itself it cannot provide this sum, he has asked me for the [lease of the] fortress of Sofala to be sold forthwith, and from the proceeds of the sale to pay the said expenses. And as the present state of my treasury does not allow of its providing so large a sum, and it not being possible to grant the petition of the said king as regards the fortress of Sofala, as it is contrary to the rights of those appointed to it, and of those who serve me in that state, I earnestly charge you to grant the said king all the assistance for which he asks for the pacification of his kingdoms, if the affairs of that state permit you to do so.

Written in Lisbon, the 1st of April 1645.

I the secretary Affonço de Barros Caminha caused it to be written.

THE KING.

VRey da India amigo. En El Rey vos envio muito Sandar. Avendo visto o que o Procurador e Irmao da misericordia da pouoação de Senna Rios de Cuama escreveraõ em 27 de Junho do anno passado de 644 aCerca dos Religiozos Carmelitas descalços, que deste Reino foraõ no galiaõ S. Bento que se perdeu em Mossambique a licença, que me pediraõ para averem de fundar Caza na d<sup>a</sup> pouoação. Me pareceo dizer vos que em nenhuã maneira Concintais que se eriga a dita Caza goardandosse neste particular as ordens dadas para se naõ fundarem mosteiros nesse Est. Escrita em Lx<sup>a</sup> a 10 de Janeiro de 646 e eu o secretario Affonço de Barros Caminha a fez escrever. Io Marquez de Montalvaõ.

[English translation of the foregoing.]

Viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well. Having seen what the procurator and brother of the Misericordia of the

town of Sena, rivers of Cuama, wrote on the 27th of June last year, 1644, with reference to the barefooted Carmelites who sailed from this kingdom in the galleon *St. Bento*, which was lost at Mozambique, and the license for which they asked me to found a house in that town, I think fit to inform you that you are in no way to consent to the foundation of the said house, observing on this point the orders issued prohibiting the foundation of monasteries in that state.

Written in Lisbon, the 10th of January 1646.

I the secretary Affonço de Barros Caminha caused it to be written.

THE MARQUIS OF MONTALVÃO.

---

VRey da India Amigo. Eu El Rey vos envio muito Saudar. Com esta se vos Remite a Copia de huns Capitulos que aquy me foraõ presentados tocantes a descaminhos que ha em minha fazenda nos Rios de Cuama, e outros particulares sobre os quaes vos encomendo muito, que mandeis devassar por pessoa de toda a Confiança e verdade procurando, que Seja com o segredo possivel e que na arrecadação da mesma fazenda se proceda de maneira que naõ aja os descaminhos referidos, e avendo Culpado ordenareis que se Castiguem Conforme suas Culpas, e do que se obrar nesta parte me avizareis para o ter entendido. Escrita em Lisboa a 21 de Março de 646 e Eu o secretario Affonço de Barros Caminha a fez escrever. Rey. Marquez de Montalvaõ.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well. With this is transmitted to you a copy of various papers presented to me here, touching the disorders in my treasury in the rivers of Cuama, and other particulars, concerning which I earnestly charge you to cause the matter to be investigated by a thoroughly trustworthy and reliable person, carrying this out with all possible secrecy; and that my treasury be managed in such a manner that the said disorders may not occur; and you shall give order that if anyone is convicted of guilt, he shall be punished according to his crime. You shall report what is accomplished in this matter, that I may be informed thereof.

Written in Lisbon, the 21st of March 1646.

I the secretary Affonço de Barros Caminha caused it to be written.

THE KING.

THE MARQUIS OF MONTALVÃO.

V.Rey da India amigo. Eu El Rey vos envio muyto Saudar Ao Capitaõ da Fortaleza de Mossambique, mando escrever que para mayor Segurança dos Contratos dos Rios de cuama, e amizade do Rey do monomotapa sera Conveniente a meu Serviço ter em Sua Carta hum prezidio de trinta ate quarenta Soldados na forma em que elle o pode, e por quanto se acha minha fazenda muy exausta para o hauer de Sustentar Como Convem lhe encomendo que de Sua parte trabalhe quanto for possivel para que os moradores daquella fortaleza e Rios queiraõ dar de cada quatro Corjas de pano hum para sustento do mesmo prezidio o que em tendo faraõ de boa vontade segoarde lhes que lhes tirey a grande serviço o que neste particular fizerem, e que averigoandose este negocio envie daLy hũ Capitaõ de toda a Confiança para assistir na Corte do mesmo Rey de que vos avizo para que o tenhais entendido. Escrita em Lisboa a 25 de Março de 646. E eu o Secretario Affonço de Barros Caminha a fez escrever. Rey. o Marquez de Montalvaõ.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well. I have commanded that the captain of the fortress of Mozambique be written to, that for the greater security of the trade of the rivers of Cuama and the friendship of the king of Monomotapa, it would be conducive to my service to provide a garrison of thirty to forty soldiers at his court in any manner that he finds possible, and that as my treasury is in too exhausted a state to be able to maintain this garrison in a fitting manner, I recommend him, on his part, to make every possible effort to induce the residents of Mozambique and of the rivers to give one corja of cloth out of every four, for the maintenance of the said garrison, which I understand they will be willing to do on the assurance that I shall esteem anything that they do in this matter as a great

service; and that this business being arranged, he shall send there a captain in every way trustworthy, to reside at the court of the aforesaid king; of which I inform you, that you may be advised thereof.

Written in Lisbon, the 25th of March 1646.

I the secretary Affonço de Barros Caminha caused it to be written.

THE KING.

THE MARQUIS OF MONTALVÃO.

VRey da India amigo. Eu El Rey vos envio muito Sandar Em nome de Ignaizo Nogueira de Castilho residente nessas partes se me deu petição sobre lhe haver de fazer merce de ouvidorza de Mazcate e tendo respeito a boa informação que delle ha e ao Ser filho de Dezembargador Manoel Nogueira e irmão de Dezembargador Pedro Nogueira, que nos Rios de Cuama foi morto a espingarda por fazer seu officio vos encomendo que Sendo Ignacio Nogueira Capaz e benemerito daquelle lugar o occupeis nelle e nos mais que por suas partes e suficiencia merecer e muito volo hey por encarregado para que Com estas Consideraçõens procureis aComodalgo que de assy o Comprevedes me dareis por servido escrita em Lisboa a 27 de Março de 646. Rey.

*[English translation of the foregoing.]*

Viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well. A petition has been presented to me in the name of Ignacio Nogueira de Castilho, a resident of those parts, to bestow upon him the post of judge of Muscat, and bearing in mind the good reports concerning him, and that he is the son of the chief judge Manuel Nogueira, and brother to the chief judge Pedro Nogueira, who was killed by a gunshot in the discharge of his duty in the rivers of Cuama, I command you if Ignacio Nogueira is qualified and worthy of this office to employ him therein, and in other offices which his abilities and qualifications render him worthy of, so that under these conditions you shall satisfy him, as in so doing you will be serving me.

Written in Lisbon, the 27th of March 1646.

THE KING.

Dom Phelipe Mascarenhas vizoRey Amigo Eu El Rey vos envio muito Saudar. Muito vos agradeço como avizastes nas vias do anno passado o haverdes enviando Ensayadores a Fortaleza de Monsambique e Rios de Cuama, para Remedio do Engano, que nessa Cidade se achaua no ouro em po o que daquellas partes se leuaua alha, e de que com zello me auizaõ feito queixa os officiaes da Camara dessa Cidade, como se vos avizou, e de outros particulares em Carta de quinze de Janeiro de 1647 o Espero que este por meo, E com vosso Cuidado se ha de remediar hum dano taõ geral, E tambem espero que quando possa Ser, E ouuer oCaziaõ ordinario que na Caza de moeda se trabalhe pello que o Pono se anima com isso. Escrita em Lisboa a 8 de Feueireiro de 1649. Rey o Marquez de Montalvaõ.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Dom Philipe Mascarenhas, viceroy, friend, I the king greet you well. I thank you much for having (as you informed me last year) dispatched assayers to the fortress of Mozambique and the rivers of Cuama, to remedy the frauds discovered in that city (Goa) with respect to the gold dust which is brought from those parts, of which I was informed the zealous officials of the municipal body of that city had complained. This was reported to you, as well as other particulars, in a letter of the 15th of January 1647. I trust that by this means, and with your care an evil so generally felt will be remedied, and I also trust that when it is possible and the opportunity occurs, you will command that in the mint every effort be made to encourage the people in this matter.

Written in Lisbon, the 8th of February 1649.

THE KING.

THE MARQUIS OF MONTALVÃO.

---

Dom Phelipe Mascarenhas VizoRey Amigo. Eu El Rey vos invio muito Saudar. Em humas Cartas me escreuestes na via do anno passado da data de 15 de Dezembro de 647. Em reposta de outra que vos mandey Escreuer referis que na via das naos da Armada de Luis de Miranda Henriques me haueis dado conta do



que entendeis aCerca da obra de forte que se entendia ser necessario fazerse em quilimane e do de Sofala. E porque não chegaraõ as vossas Cartas que disto tratavaõ, Em aquellas obras saõ taõ necessarias como os deue ser prezente Julguey por necessario, tornar uolas a encomendar de nouo E aSim o faço Com o encarecimento. Escrita em Lisboa a 18 de Feuereiro de 1649. Rey o Marquez de Montoalvaõ.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Dom Philipe Mascarenhas, viceroy, friend, I the king greet you well. In letters which you wrote to me by the ships of last year, dated the 15th of December 1647, in answer to one which I commanded to be written to you, you state that by the ships of the fleet of Luis de Miranda Henriques you sent me a report of the information you had gathered with reference to the fortifications which it was considered necessary to build in Quilimane and Sofala. And as your letters treating of this matter did not reach me, and the said works are so necessary, as you must bear in mind, I judged that it was expedient to earnestly recommend them to you again, as I now do.

Written in Lisbon, the 18th of February 1649.

THE KING.

THE MARQUIS OF MONTALVÃO.

---

Dom Phelipe Mascarenhas vizoRey Amigo. Eu El Rey vos invio muito Saudar. Recebeose huma Carta vossa de 5 de Ianeiro do anno passado para me destes Conta que de Monssambique não hauia chegado a essa Cidade, embarcação alguma, Em que pellas que da mesma Cidade de Monssambique, foraõ a Dio em chaul hauereis entendido fora oCaziaõ disso, não ouverem chegado dos Rios de Cuama a Monssambique os Pataxes, que se Esperavaõ, Como o que o Capitaõ daquella Fortaleza não pudera Satisfazer aos Moradores dessa Cidade, Em elles receberaõ com isso perda Considerauel, Em da mesma maneira minha Fazenda Em que por intenderem, Em se vos queixarem, e que a dita falta não fora o Cazo, se não de industria tinhais enviado a Mossambique e aos Rios, hum ministro que, Iustifica para que Conhecendo da

aueriguação desta maneira, podesse Tambem dar Cumprimento ao que vos tenho em Carregado Sobre Couza daquellas partes, em ao mais que se offerecesse, sobre arrecadação dos Restos da Pensaõ por que não se continuando as obras a que estão applicadas, e he aquelle Capitaõ deuedor de muita Fazenda e hauendo visto tudo, em o que Sobre a mesma materia me consultou o meu Conselho vltamarino me pareceo dizer uos, que foy acertado hauerdes mandado Ministro a Monssambique, e Rios de Cuama, em que volo agradece muito e emcomendar uos que procureis de vossa parte, que os Culpados em Cazo taõ danoso, e de roim Exemplo Seia Castigados como o merecerem Suas Culpas E a toda com mostração particular, para que serua do exemplo, e do que fizerdes, e Compraõ das Sentenças me avizareis. Escrita em Lisboa a 18 de Feueireiro de 1649. Rey. o Marquez de Montaluaõ.

*[English translation of the foregoing.]*

Dom Philipe Mascarenhas, viceroy, friend, I the king greet you well. A letter was received from you of the 5th of January of last year, in which you reported to me that no ship had come to that city (Goa) from Mozambique, and you will have learned from the ships which went to Diu and Chaul from Mozambique that the reason of this was that the vessels from the rivers of Cuama, which were expected in Mozambique, had not arrived. For which reason the captain of that fortress could not meet his engagements with the residents of that city, by which they suffered considerable loss, and my treasury also in the same manner.

For this reason they complained to you that the said neglect of payment would not have occurred if you had sent to Mozambique and the rivers an official for the purpose of enquiring into the matter, so that having investigated it he could also carry into execution the orders I have given you concerning the affairs of those parts, and other matters relating to the levying of the remainder of the contract money, as the works for which it was intended have not been continued; and the said captain is in debt for a great quantity of merchandise.

Having examined the whole matter, and taken the advice of my ultramarine council upon it, I think fit to inform you that it was ascertained you had despatched an official to Mozambique

and to the rivers of Cuama, for which I thank you, and charge you on your part to see that the transgressors in a matter so prejudicial, and showing such a bad example, shall receive a punishment equal to their guilt, with great publicity, that it may serve as an example. You shall advise me of what you accomplish, and the sentences carried into execution.

Written in Lisbon, the 18th of February 1649.

THE KING.

THE MARQUIS OF MONTALVÃO.

---

Dom Phelipe Mascarenbas VizoRey Amigo. Eu El Rey vos invio muito Saudar. Com o oCaziaõ do que no anno de 1645 me Escreveo Iulio Monis da Silva, Capitaõ que foy de Monsambique sobre o Estado em que achara as Couzas dos Rios de Cuama e Pouca da obidiencia de Seus moradores vos mandey por Carta de 15 de Dezembro de 646 que fizesseis aCudir a tudo o que na dita Carta se uos apontou, como julgasseis que mais Convinha a meu Seruiço a que Respondestes em 15 de Dezembro de 647, que os Rios Se achavaõ ccm Estado que mais necessitavaõ de Serem prouidos de moradores que de Primeiros poucos que aly rezidem mas que trateis do que vosso ordenava, pellos mais Suvaues meos que fosse possiuel, e aSim fio de vos que o hauereis feito, mas porque de nouo o que auizeis da falta de moradores nos Rios Em ponto este muy ensemcial, tanto para o trato, em comercio, como para a defenza de qualquer aCometimento, de inimigos, vos quis encomendar por esta que na forma, em que melhor o possaes fazer e da gente, que melhor vos parecer, prouereis enviar aly alguns moradores, na quantidade que uerdes que Convem, e for possivel. Escrita em Lisboa a 18 de Feuereiro de 1649. Rey o Marquez de Montalvaõ.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Dom Philippe Mascarenhas, viceroy, friend. I the king greet you well. On account of what Julio Monis da Silva when captain of Mozambique wrote to me in the year 1645 concerning the condition in which he found the affairs of the rivers of Cuama and the want of obedience among the residents, I commanded you in a letter of the 15th of December 1646 to cause the

matters pointed out in the said letter to be attended to, in such a manner as you should judge most fitting for my service. To which you replied on the 15th of December 1647 that the rivers were found to be deficient in what they required most, that is to be furnished with settlers, as from the first only a few resided there, but that you were taking the most beneficial measures in your power to carry out the orders given to you. I trust that you will have done this accordingly, but as you again send information of the scarcity of residents at the rivers, this being a most essential matter, both as regards trade and commerce and also for the repulse of any attack by enemies, I think fit to charge you by this to send residents there in the manner most convenient to you, and from the people who appear to you most fitting, as many as you consider necessary and it is possible to send.

Written in Lisbon, the 18th of February 1649.

THE KING.

THE MARQUIS OF MONTALVÃO.

---

Dom Phelipo Mascarenhas VizoRey Amigo. Eu El Rey vos invio muito Saudar. Em nome do Rey Monomotapa Se me prezentou aquy o papel de que se vos envia a copia e da Carta de suberñação e uassalagem que me fez e postoque por o papel ser feito para vos deue hauer chegado outro Semelhantes com tudo por me não hauerdes auizado de Couza alguma que toque as materias que aquelle Rey aponta no dito papel, volo quiz enviar, e encomendar vos, que uejais e achando que ha que prouer ou ordenar o façaes como de vosso confio particularmente no que toca a Segurança daquelle Rey pello receo que com Respeito de ser christão mostra de seus vassallos. Escrita em Lisboa a 26 de Março de 649. Rey. o Marquez de Montalvaõ.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Dom Philippe Mascarenhas, viceroy, friend, I the king greet you well. A paper was presented to me here in the name of king Monomotapa, of which a copy is sent to you, and also of the letter of submission and vassalage which he makes to me, and although the paper is such that a similar one must have

reached you, nevertheless, as you have not sent me any information whatever touching the matters which the aforesaid king refers to in the said paper, I think fit to send it to you, and to charge you to look into this, and finding that there are measures to be taken or orders to be issued, you shall do so, according to the confidence I repose in you, especially as regards the safety of the said king, because of the fear which, on account of his being a Christian, he entertains of his vassals.

Written in Lisbon, the 26th of March 1649.

THE KING.

THE MARQUIS OF MONTALVÃO.

Conde VRey Amigo. Ev El Rey vos envio muito Saudar como aquelle que amo. Dom Phelipe Martins uosso antecessor com Carta sua de 14 de Janeiro do anno passado me enviou o tresllado da devassa que nessa Cidade de goa fez tirar da perda do galeão Sacramento, e nao Atalaya da armada do Capitaõ mor Luis de Miranda Henriques que fizeraõ naofragio no cabo de boa Esperança, de que tive o justo sentimento a que taõ grandes perdas obrigaõ e havendo a mandado ver e o que nella se referia de alguns portuguezes e o Capitaõ do Nao Atalaya Antonio de Sacram<sup>to</sup> de Noronha, se haverem Salvado Com alguma pedraria e peças de valor; me pareceo emcomendar vos muito que logo que com o favor de Deos chegardes a essa dita Cidade mandeis fazer toda a diligencia por auerigoar a quantidade e qualidade do que se Salvou e que se restetua a seus donos se não havendo ainda feito. Escripta em Lx<sup>a</sup> a 8 de Feu<sup>o</sup> de 650. Rey.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, viceroy, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. Dom Philipe Mascarenhas, your predecessor, sent me a copy, with a letter of the 14th of January of last year, of the enquiry which he caused to be made in that city of Goa regarding the loss of the galleon *Sacramento* and the ship *Atalaya*, belonging to the fleet of the chief captain Luis de Miranda Henriques which were wrecked at the Cape of Good Hope, which was the cause of just grief to me, as such great losses demand; and

having caused it to be examined with the statement made therein that various Portuguese and Antonio de Sacramento de Noronha, captain of the ship *Atalaya*, had been saved, as also some precious stones and other valuables, I think fit to charge you earnestly that as soon as with God's favour you arrive at the said city of Goa you command every means to be taken to ascertain the quantity and quality of what was saved, and to cause it to be restored to its owners, if this has not already been done.

Written in Lisbon, the 8th of February 1650.

THE KING.

---

Conde VRey Amigo. Ev El Rey vos envio muito Saudar como aquelle que amo. Alvaro de Sousa de Tavora Capituõ de Mossambique me escreveu em 30 de Janeiro de 648; que em razã de huma provizaõ que o vRey Dom Phelipe Mascarenhas vosso antecessor fez passar para que naquella fortaleza naõ Corresse o ouro na forma que de muitos annos a esta parte se costumava tinha recebido dano consideravel. Pedindo me que por com a dita baixa se lhe haver quebrado Seu contracto, lhe fizesse quita da dita perda, e mandasse mais, que o ouro corresse como de antes por naõ haver Cauzas que obriguem ao contrario; e porque para se lhe poder responder he necessario vosso credito contracto e as condicioens delle, Como apontou o Procurador de minha fazenda [a que aqui Se deu vista] vos quis encarregar [como o faço] que nas primeiras naos que dahy partirem despois de receberdes esta carta, me envieis por vias Copia do dito Contrato, avizando me juntamente de vosso parecer, e das Cauzas que ouve, para se alterar o preço do ouro, e se foy com ordem minha; escripta em Lx<sup>a</sup> a 27 de Março de 651. Rey. O Conde de Ode Mira.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, viceroy, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. Alvaro de Sousa de Tavora, captain of Mozambique, wrote to me on the 30th of January 1648 that he had sustained considerable damage from an order issued by your predecessor, the viceroy Dom Philippe Mascarenhas, to the effect that gold should not circulate in that fortress in the way which had been in use for

many years up to the present time, and begging me to make him compensation for the said loss, as by this alteration his contract had been broken; and further that I should command that gold should circulate as formerly, as there were no motives which called for the contrary. And as before replying to him it is necessary to have your registered contract and the conditions thereof, as was stated by the attorney of my treasury, who gave his opinion upon it in this place, I think fit to command you, as I now do, to send by the first ships sailing from Goa after the receipt of this letter a copy of the said contract, informing me at the same time of your opinion, and of the causes which led to the alteration in the price of gold, and whether this was done by my order.

Written in Lisbon, the 27th of March 1651.

THE KING.

THE COUNT OF ODEMIRA.

Conde Sobrinho Am<sup>o</sup> Ev El Rey vos envio muito Saudar como aquelle que muito amo. Em resposta de algumas advertencias que mandey fazer ao v<sup>o</sup> Rey Dom Phelippe Mascarenhas vosso antecessor, sobre particulares de Mossambique, escreveo em 25 de novembro de 650 que as obras se hiaõ continuando, posto que Com vagar, p<sup>la</sup> falta de pagamento da pensaõ que para ellas paga o Capitaõ mas que de proximo as havia encomendado a Luis Ribeiro Calheiros, pessoa de bons procedimentos, e diligente, E que vltimamente lhe avizara, se trabalhava nellas com mais calor, o que se devia a sua applicaçã e que a Relaçã de Goa havia ordenado, que em lugar dos outros Castigos que se costumaõ dar aos deliquentes, lho desse degredo para Mossambique, e Rios de Cuama, por de outro modo ser difficultozo enviar aly gente, e que tambẽ se haviaõ feito alguns aforamentos novos, para a paga do mesmo prezidio. E porque em huma e outra Cauza convem muito a meu Serviço se continue, e que por todas as vias se trate de que as obras vaõ em crescimento, e ou por via da Rellaçã ou por outras se enviem aLy alguns moradores por muita falta que delles ha, sendo aq<sup>la</sup> praça taõ apetecida de inimigos, vos o hey por muy encarregado, e encomendado, e que a Luis Ribeiro Calheyros agradeçais de minha parte o

que faz, para que o Continue, significando lhe que do que fizer terey particular lembrança. Escritta em Lx<sup>a</sup> a 24 de Janeiro de 652. Rey.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, nephew, friend, I the king greet you well as one whom I love much. Your predecessor, Dom Philippe Mascarenhas, wrote on the 25th of November 1650, in reply to various notices which I commanded should be sent to him with reference to the affairs of Mozambique, that the works were being continued, but slowly, on account of the non-payment of the sum due by the captain for the contract, but that latterly he had entrusted them to Luis Ribeiro Calheiros, a person of good conduct and diligence, and that recently the latter had advised him that the works were being carried on with more zeal, which was due to his care; and that in the supreme court of Goa he had commanded in lieu of the customary punishments inflicted on delinquents, that they should be banished to Mozambique and the rivers of Cuama, as it was difficult to send people there in any other way, and that he had also made some new grants of land to pay the garrison there. And as in one way and another it is much to my service that these measures should be continued, that every means should be taken to push forward the works, and that residents should be sent there by the supreme court or by other means, as there is a great scarcity of them, the said place being so much coveted by enemies, I earnestly recommend and entrust it to you; and you shall give thanks to Luis Ribeiro Calheiros, in my name, for what he has done, and advise him, that he may be disposed to continue this, that I shall specially bear it in mind.

Written in Lisbon, the 24th of January 1652.

THE KING.

---

Conde Sobrinho Am<sup>o</sup> Ev El Rey vos envio muito Saudar como aquelle que muito amo. Havendo mandado agradecer a Dom Phelippe Mascarenhas vosso antecessor por carta de 8 de Fevereiro do anno de 649 ter enviado alguns ensayadores a fortaleza de Mossambique e Rios de Cuama, para se evitar o dano



que nessa Cidade de Goa, se achava no ouro em poo, que daquellas partes hia a ella, respondeo em carta de 25 de novembro de 650 que os ditos ensayadores continuavaõ em seu officio, com o que se hia achando no ouro o melhoramento que se pertendeõ, E que na Caza da moeda se laurava muito ouro, e prata sendo que estava extinto o baterie moeda nella, e que ficava arrendada por Conta da minha fazenda. E porque convem continuar se o que fica referido, vos o encomendo encarrego muito, e que como o ditto Dom Phelippe devera fazer, e o naõ fez me avizeis nas primeiras embarcaçoens de viagem, com a clareza necessaria do preço por que se fez o arrendamento que Dom Phelippe escreveo, e a que pessoas, e por que annos. Escritta em Lx<sup>a</sup> a 24 de Janeiro de 652. Rey.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, nephew, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love much. Having commanded thanks to be offered to your predecessor, Dom Philippe Mascarenhas, by a letter of the 8th of February of the year 1649, for having dispatched several assayers to the fortress of Mozambique and the rivers of Cuama, to avert the abuses discovered in that city of Goa regarding the gold dust sent from those places to the said city, he answered by a letter of the 25th of November 1650 that the said assayers were continuing their duty, by which means an improvement was found in the gold, as had been expected; and that in the mint a great quantity of gold and silver was being struck, the coining of money having then fallen into disuse, and it had been leased for the benefit of my treasury. As it is advisable to continue the aforesaid work, I recommend and earnestly charge you to do so, and to inform me with requisite clearness by the first trading vessels, as the said Dom Philippe should have done and did not do, of the price of the lease of which Dom Philippe wrote, to what persons it was given, and for what number of years.

Written in Lisbon, the 24th of January 1652.

THE KING.

---

Conde Sobrinho Am<sup>o</sup> Ev El Rey vos envio muito Saudar como aquelle que muito amo. Havendo mandado ver, o que o VRey Dom

Phelippe Mascarenhas vosso antecessor me escreveo em carta de 25 de Novembro de 650 Sobre se haver de dismantelar a fortaleza de Sofalla, a respeito de sua pouca Vtilidade de presente, e grandes despezas que faz por não apontar os fundamentos que se quer materia de tanta importancia, me pareceo dizer vos, que não convem ser dismantelada a dita Fortaleza antes tratar se muito de sua Conservaçã como vos encomendo que o façaes assim pela memoria de a d<sup>a</sup> fortaleza ser Cauza de fazer tributario a minha Coroa, El Rey de Manomotapa, e outros como també para ter sugeitos os regulos circumvizinhos, e Segurar o Comercio de meus Vassalos, e o resgate de ouro, e marfim, e tambem por em rezaõ da mesma fortaleza terem os mouros e gentios respeito aos moradores daquelles Rios Cuja christandade convem não ser desamparada, e quando Sobre tudo se offereçaõ nesta resoluçaõ outros inconvenientes mais forçozos que as razoens apontadas (como pode succeder) proporeis de novo a materia no Conselho que vos assiste, chamando a elle as pessoas de mais autoridade E experiencia, que para as Couzas grandes se Custumaõ chamar, e ouvidas ellas, e tomados Seus vottos, me remetereis tudo por vias com vosso parecer, com a clareza e distincã que se requere, para eu mandar ver tudo Com atençaõ, e rezolver o que mais conveniente for a meu Serviço, e bem daquella christandade. Escritta em Lx<sup>a</sup> a 6 de Fevereiro de 652. Rey.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, nephew, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love much. Having caused an examination to be made of what your predecessor the viceroy Dom Philippe Mascarenhas wrote to me in a letter of the 25th of November 1650 with reference to the dismantling of the fortress of Sofala, on account of the little need there is of it at present and the great expense it entails, as the essential points of so important a matter are not considered, I think fit to inform you that it is not advisable to dismantle the said fortress, but rather earnestly to strive to preserve it, as I now recommend you to do, remembering that the said fortress was the cause which led to the king of Monomotapa and others becoming tributaries to my crown, and also that it serves to hold the neighbouring petty rulers in subjection, and to protect the commerce of my subjects and the

gold and ivory trade, and also because the Moors and heathens respect the residents of the rivers on account of the same fortress, and it is not right to abandon the Christians there.

Above all, if there are other more weighty objections to this resolution—as is possible—than those stated, you shall again lay the matter before the council which assists you, summoning to it those persons of the greatest authority and experience whom it is usual to summon for important questions, and having heard them and taken their votes you shall transmit to me by the ships a report of the whole matter and your opinion, with due clearness and distinctness, that I may command the whole matter to be examined with attention and pass the resolution found most conducive to my service and to the good of the said Christian settlement.

Written in Lisbon, the 6th of February 1652.

The KING.

---

Ioão de Maya Caldeira Servir do Feitor da fortaleza de Monsambique não se declara os annos que Servio dando conta do seu recebim<sup>to</sup> nos Contos de Goa se lhe duvidaraõ seis mil secenta, e seis cruz<sup>as</sup> que se montaraõ em trezentos digo em tres mil trezentos secenta praças que havia pago contra as ordens de V. Magestade por se não acharem matriculados, nem Confrontaraõ Sendo Cap<sup>m</sup> da dita fortaleza Dom Francisco de Soutto mayor, Francisco de Silveira craveira, Domingos de Govea coutinho, Antonio de Britto Pacheco, Luis do Rego de Negreiros, e Julio Monis da Silva ; da vida digo da duvida referida se deu conta a V. Magestade por Carta de 22 de Dezembro de 648 que se apresenta f 211 e depois de tomadas as imformaçoens necessarias foi V. Mag<sup>e</sup> servido mandar por Carta de 20 de Fevereiro de 651 que a dita quantia se cobrasse pella fazenda dos ditos Capitaens que mandaraõ fazer semelhantes despezas cada hum o que tocasse a Seu tempo em Vertude da dita Carta se mandou aos Contos da Cidade de Goa que se desse a execuçaõ o referido nella, de que tendo noticia Dom Francisco de Lima Capitaõ que hia a entrar na dita Capitania de Monsambique, e sofala fez peticaõ em que pedia se lhe mandasse ordenar a gente necessaria para guarda da dita fortaleza com Certidoens de Matricula geral Como V. Magestade mandava aLias protestava não lhe prejudicar ao menagem

que havia de dar em Cazo que se houvesse de perder a falta de gente para Sua defenza a Legando por exemplo a provizaõ que o Conde Vidigueira sendo VRey havia passado em 12 de Janeiro de 624 sobre Semelhantes duvidas em favor dos Capitaens da dita fortaleza f 24. A provizaõ e petiçaõ referida se vio no governo na Cidade de Goa com os Consielheiros do mesmo governo Conselho da fazenda Provedor mor e outros Ministros, e havendosse a Carta referida de V. Magestade de 20 de Fevereiro de 651 E a proposta do ditto Dom Francisco de Lima foraõ de parecer vniformemente sendo primeiro ouvido o Procurador da Coroa, e fazenda q̄ visto as praças duvidadas naõ serem fantasticas nas faltas de Matricula e que naõ Confrontaraõ por se lhes naõ achar tº lhes parecees se naõ innovasse Couza alguma do Estillo que athe aquelle tempo Correo, e se guardasse a dita Provizaõ do Conde da Vidigueira pellos fundamentos della, e ser ordinaria receberem em semelhantes fortalezas pessoas que naõ passaraõ a Goa por naturais de Guerra, e os Portuguezes mudarem os nomes, e haverem hido ao Reino m<sup>tos</sup> por homes do mar, e assentarem praça de soldados, e se os taes naõ fossem admitidos naõ haveria gente para os pregidios nem a fortaleza de Monsambique poderia ser socorrida de Goa pella falta de gente que ordinariamente se exprimenta e entendendo os Capitaens, e feitores que se lhes naõ havia de Levar em Conta as tais praças naõ admeteriaõ pessoa alguma que naõ tivesse titulo o que seria em grande detrimento da fortaleza e que como os Soldados fosse affectivos se deviaõ Levar em Conta, e parecees mais que o Cobrarsse dos Capitaens passados o de seus herdeiros as praças naõ Confrontadas que hera materia de muita Consideraçãõ e Cauzada digo Cauzaria de grãde detrimento aos Vassallos o que tocasse, e que de huma e outra couza se desse Conta a V. Magestade com a Copia do dito assento e que entre tanto se naõ innovasse Couza alguma e que nos Contos se sobtivesse na execuçaõ de V. Magestade mandava fazer nos Capitaens referidos the hir reposta de V. Magestade. E Suposto o referido nos parece que falta nestes papeis declararse que annos servio o dº feitor e que annos serviãõ os ditos Seis Capitaens quanto tempo cada hum que praças saõ consignadas a dita fortaleza quantas havia Matriculadas nellas quando se admitiraõ as referidas para servir em Conhecimento da necessidade que havia dellas na dita fortaleza pª Sua defença; isto he o que se nos offerece na materia deste requerim<sup>to</sup> o que ha Com favor

delle he o referido no assento do governo de Goa fundado na provizaõ do Conde de Vidigueira V. Magestade mandara o que for servido. Lisboa 26 de Agosto de 652. Francisco de Feixas de V<sup>os</sup> Antonio splandiaõ, Manoel Correa, Marco Roiz Tinoco.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

João de Maya Caldeira, who held the office of factor of the fortress of Mozambique, for what number of years is not stated, giving an account of his receipts in the treasury of Goa, a doubt was brought forward as to six thousand and sixty-six cruzados, which was the cost of three hundred and sixty soldiers, who had been paid contrary to your Majesty's orders, as they were not enrolled and did not appear, the captains of the said fortress being Dom Francisco de Sotomayor, Francisco de Silveira Craveira, Domingos de Govea Coutinho, Antonio de Brito Pacheco, Luis do Rego de Negreiros, and Julio Monis da Silva.

The said doubt was reported to your Majesty in a letter of the 22nd of December 1648, set forth in folio 211, and after obtaining the necessary information, your Majesty was pleased to command in a letter of the 20th of February 1651, that the said sum should be recovered from the property of the said captains who gave order for such expenses to be incurred, recovering from each one the sum expended during his time. In virtue of the said letter, order was given to the treasury of the city of Goa to carry into execution the order contained therein.

This coming to the knowledge of Dom Francisco de Lima, who was going to take possession of the said captaincy of Mozambique and Sofala, he presented a petition, in which he asked that an order should be given for him to be furnished with a sufficient number of men to guard the said fortress, with certificates of their having been entered on the general register, as your Majesty commanded, otherwise he protested that the oath which he was to take should not be brought against him in the event of there not being the full number, on account of the scarcity of men for its defence, bringing forward as an instance the order issued in favour of the captains of the said fortress by the count of Vidigueira, when viceroy, on the 12th of January 1624, with reference to similar doubts.

The order and aforesaid petition were laid before the govern-

ment in the city of Goa, assisted by the councillors of the said government, the council of the treasury, the chief magistrate, and other ministers, and having seen the aforesaid letter from your Majesty of the 20th of February 1651 and the said Dom Francisco de Lima's proposition, and having heard the attorney of the crown and treasury, all were uniformly agreed that as the soldiers to whom the question related were not imaginary, though they had not been enrolled, and that they did not appear because they were not on the register, they were of opinion that no innovations whatever should be made in the customs in use up to that time, and that the said order of the count of Vidigueira should be observed, on account of the reasons for which it was issued, and because it was usual to receive in such fortresses persons who did not go to Goa, being natives of the country, and as some Portuguese had changed their names, and many of them had gone to the kingdom as sailors, and had enlisted as soldiers, if these were not admitted there would be no men for the garrisons, and no assistance could be sent from Goa to the fortress of Mozambique on account of the scarcity of men generally experienced. And the captains and factors, understanding that the cost of such soldiers would not be credited to them, would not admit anyone who had not been enrolled, which would be greatly to the detriment of the fortress; and if the soldiers were effective the cost should be credited to them.

It further appeared to them that to recover the cost of the unregistered soldiers from the former captains, or their heirs, was a question of great importance, and would cause much loss to the subjects to whom it referred, and that a report of both these matters should be given to your Majesty, with a copy of the said decision, and that meanwhile no innovation whatever should be made; and that in the treasury the execution which your Majesty commanded should be levied on the property of the said captains should not be carried out until your Majesty's reply is received.

The above being understood, we find that it has been omitted in these papers to state how many years the said factor held that office, what number of years each one of the aforesaid six captains served, what number of soldiers are assigned to that fortress, and how many registered soldiers there were in it when the soldiers referred to were admitted on account of the

need of them for the defence of the said fortress. This is the opinion we have to offer upon the matter of this petition, what reasons there are in favour of it are stated in the decision of the government of Goa, founded on the order of the count of Vidigueira. Your Majesty will order according to your pleasure.

Lisbon, the 26th of August 1652.

FRANCISCO DE TEIXAS DE VASCONCELLOS,  
ANTONIO SPLANDIÃO,  
MANUEL CORREA,  
MARCO ROIS TINOCO.

Conde Sobrinho Amigo Eu El Rey vos envio muito a Savdar como aquelle que muito amo responderaõ os Governadores vossos antecessores em Carta de 22 de Dezembro de 651 e outras minhas de 27 de Março do dito anno Sobre a pertençaõ que Alvaro de Souza de Tavora Capitaõ q̄ foi de Monsabique tinha de se lhe fazer alguma quita pella perda que a Legava recebera em Seu Contrato com a alteraçãõ de ouro e que eu mandasse Corresse Como de antes que os emSayadores que o VRey Dom Phelipe mãz emviara a aquella Capitania, principiaraõ a por ouro em Seu toque, mas que naõ fora, de effeito algum porque ficou Sempre Correndo na forma antiga; e porque desta repostã se naõ vem em reconhecimento verdadeiro da queixa que faz Alvaro de Souza que pedia que o ouro tornasse Como de antes que vem a Ser o mesmo que dizẽ os Governadores, e assim sem mais clareza se naõ entende a alteraçãõ que ouve no ouro nem por que tempo pois do que se dis que se castige com evidencia que Sempre correo em huma mesma forma vos emcomendo que informando vos de tudo me avizeis da verdade com clareza, e Certeza. Escrita em Lisboa a 24 de Ianeiro de 653. Rey o Conde de odeimira.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, nephew, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love much. The governors, your predecessors, replied by a letter of the 22nd of December 1651 to my letter of the 27th of March of the same year, referring to the ex-captain of Mozambique Alvaro de Sousa de Tavora's claim that some compensation should be made to him for the loss which he alleges he received

by his contract, by reason of the alteration in gold, and that I should command gold to be circulated as formerly; that the assayers sent to that captaincy by the viceroy Dom Philippe Mascarenhas had commenced by trying the gold, but this had been of no avail, as it continued to be circulated under the former conditions, and by which reply no real information of Alvaro de Sousa's complaint is given, the latter having asked that gold should be circulated on the former conditions which, according to the governors, are the same; and therefore unless a clearer explanation is given it is not possible to understand what alteration was made as regards gold, and during what time, as upon evidence that gold has always been circulated on the same conditions, let him be punished for what he states. I charge you on obtaining information of the truth of the whole matter to advise me thereof with clearness and with certainty.

Written in Lisbon, the 24th of January 1653.

THE KING.

THE COUNT OF ODEMIRA.

---

Conde Sobrinho Amigo Eu El Rey vos envio muito a Saudar como aquelle que muito amo os Governadores Vossos antecessores em Carta de 28 de Dezembro de 651 entre outras Couzas me deraõ Conta de os Inglezes digo de os Ingreses haverem mandado no anno de 650 huma Nau Sua a Mossambique Carregada de fazendas em grande danno da minha, e da de meus vassallos, e que por Manoel de Souza Capitaõ daquela Praça os haver recebido por Seu particullar interesse (sendo que tinha ordens em Contrario do VRey Dom Phellipe Mascarenhas) ficavaõ negociando outra para o anno de 651 a mandarem a mesma Capitania com titullo de hir a Pemba cujo Rey estava Levantado e que postoque por esta via se atinuava o trato de meus Vassallos se hia dissimulando cõ os mesmos Ingrezes athe melhor oCaziaõ, e porque do que fica referida se deixa Ver bem quanto Contra meu Serviço, e Sua obrigação procedeo Alvaro de Souza havendo tantas prohibiçoens para nas Conquistas se não admitirẽ Estrangeiros, a Comerçar, e so se poder dar aguarda, e refresco as uaçoens amigos, o que foi Cauza da minha fazenda, e vassallos terem perdas Concideraveis nesse Estado, e não podia Ser Sem



grande interesses, e aproveitamentos do mesmo Alvaro de Souza como avizaraõ os Governadores de mais dos Ingresses por este modo virem em Conhecimento daquella Capitania riquezas trato e meneo della fui servido rezolver que por hora se va dissimulando com Ingresses athe outra ordem minha naõ Consentindo que aLy tenhaõ trato algum em Mossãbique nem se lhe dei mais que refrescos, e aguada Conforme as ordens antigas, e que se diz que tinha Alvaro de Souza do V. Rey Dom Phelipe Mascarenhas, que a elle se pessa por Iustiça e Conforme as minhas Leis estreita Conta de Seus procedimentos, e perdas que Cauzou a minha fazenda Segurando o as Logo pella Sua, e que fizer, e Suceder com Copia da Sentença me dareis conta avizitando me todos os annos de estado deste negocio porque o quero ter entendido, e tambem esCuzareis quanto Vos for possivel o Comercio Com as naçoens de Eropa, e o dar se lhes canela ou outra alguma droga por Couza que Leva esse Estado para que este modo se evitar Sua cobiça e a navegaçaõ que com ella fazem a este Estado. Escritta em Lisboa a 22 de Março de 653. Rey. o Conde de ode-mira.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, nephew, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love much. The governors, your predecessors, in a letter of the 28th of December 1651 reported to me, among other things, that the English had sent a ship to Mozambique laden with merchandise in the year 1650, to the great prejudice of my revenue and that of my subjects. And that as Manuel de Sousa, captain of that fortress, had received them for his own private interests, in spite of the orders to the contrary issued by the viceroy Dom Philippe Mascarenhas, they were preparing to send another in the year 1651 to the aforesaid captaincy, under pretext of going to Pemba, the king of which island has risen in rebellion.

And although by this means the commerce of my subjects was diminished, they continued to tolerate the said English until a better opportunity, and as this clearly shows that Alvaro de Sousa has acted greatly to the prejudice of my service, and contrary to his obligations, there being so many prohibitions against admitting foreigners to trade in the conquests,—it being allowed only to provide friendly nations with water and refreshments,—which has been the cause of considerable losses to my treasury

and to my subjects in that state, and by which the said Alvaro de Sousa must have gained great profits, as the governors have reported. Besides which, by this means the English have gained information of the said captaincy and of its riches, trade, and administration.

I am pleased to resolve that for the present the English shall be restrained until I give other orders, refusing to allow them to carry on any commerce in Mozambique, and providing them only with refreshments and water, in accordance with the former orders and those which, it is said, Alvaro de Sousa received from the viceroy Dom Philipe Mascarenhas; that Alvaro de Sousa be dealt with according to justice, a strict account being demanded of his conduct, in conformity with the laws and of the loss to my treasury of which he was the cause, the said loss being forthwith recovered from his property.

You shall send me a report of what occurs and of what is done, with a copy of the sentence; and advise me every year of the state of this business, as I desire to be informed thereof. You shall also impede as far as possible all commerce with European nations, and their being supplied with cinnamon or any other merchandise in return for what they take to that state, so that by this means the covetousness which prompts them to navigate to India may be dispelled.

Written in Lisbon, the 22nd of March 1653.

THE KING.

THE COUNT OF ODEMIRA.

---

Conde Subrinho Amigo. Eu El Rey vos inuio muito Saudar como aquelle que muito amo. Por me hauerdes auizado em Carta de oito de Ianeiro do anno passado em reposta de outra minha de vinte e quatro de Feuereiro de 652, que ficauis com intento de fazer hua junta de pessoas de experiencia das Couzas de Mossambique para se ver de que meyo se podira viar para euitar o danno, que se recebe na falcificaçaõ do ouro que referis ser grande, e o pouco que na materia fizeraõ os ensayadores, que aly inuiu o VRey Dom Philipe Máz, me pareceo emcomendar vos de nouo o effeito da dita Junta, e rezulaçaõ, no cazo de se hauer dillatado, e tambem vos encommendo, e emcarrego muito, que para o mesmo negocio inuieis a Monssambique hua pessoa de

letras, e toda a satisfação com ordem que deuisse das pessoas, que falsificaraõ ouro, e que dous dos mais culpados se inuiem a essa Cidade para serem castigados com rigor e demonstraçãõ para exemplo, visto que a Culpa de falcificar ouro, he especie de falcificaçãõ de moeda couza que as Leis prohibem com tanto rigor, como vos deue ser prezente e aos ministros, que os haõ de sentenciar. escrita em Lisboa a 23 de Feuereiro de 1654. Rey. o Conde de odemira.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, nephew, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love much. As you advised me by a letter of the 8th of January of last year, sent in reply to my letter of the 24th of February 1652, of your intention to call a council of persons experienced in the affairs of Mozambique, to consider what measures should be taken to avoid the losses occasioned by the falsification of gold, which you refer to as being very heavy, stating the little benefit derived in this matter from the assayers whom the viceroy Dom Philipe Mascarenhas sent there, I think fit to remind you again of the importance of the said council and resolution, in case any delay has occurred.

I also recommend and earnestly charge you, as regards this same business, to dispatch to Mozambique a lawyer in every way satisfactory, with orders to examine the persons who have falsified gold, and let those two who are considered most guilty be sent to that city to be punished with rigour and publicity, as an example, seeing that the offence of falsitying gold is similar to the falsification of money, a crime punished by the laws with such rigour, which you must bear in mind, as also the judges who are to sentence them.

Written in Lisbon, the 23rd of February 1654.

THE KING.

THE COUNT OF ODEMIRA.

---

Conde Subrinho Amigo. Eu El Rey vos inuio muito Saudar como aquelle que muito amo. Hauendo mandado ver de nouo o que me escreuestes em 21 de Ianeiro do anno passado e os papeis, que juntamente inuiastes tudo em satisfaçãõ e reposta do que em

Carta de 6 de Feuereiro de 652, vos hauia man<sup>do</sup> escreuer sobre se hauer de Conceruar, ou dismantelar o forte de Sofalla, me pareceo dizer vos, que para tudo, e pellas rezoens refferidas na dita minha Carta, e outras que de nouo se Concideraraõ conuem Conceruar o dito forte, o melhor que for possiuel, e aSim volo emcommendo, e encarrego muito, e que ponhais nisso todo o Cuidado e dilligencia, que fio de vosso Zello, e porque tambem se me representou, que conuinha fortificar, quilimane pella vtilidade de que Sera, e Segurança do Comercio, vos hey outrosy por muy emcommendado, e encarregado, que façais ver o negocio em Conselho, e tomando as mais informaçoens necessarias, executeis o que se vencer por votos, e se julgar ã mais conueniente e Seguro para tudo, e do que se fizer me dareis Conta. escrita em Lisboa a 25 de Feuereiro de 1654. Rey. o Conde de odemira.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, nephew, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love much. Having commanded what you wrote to me on the 21st of January of last year to be again examined, as also the papers which you forwarded at the same time, they being all written in compliance with and in answer to the contents of the letter of the 6th of February 1652, which I commanded should be written to you, with reference to preserving or dismantling the fort of Sofala, I think fit to inform you that after consideration of the whole matter, and for the reasons stated in my aforesaid letter and others which have since occurred to me, it is advisable to preserve the said fort in the best possible manner, which I earnestly recommend and charge you to do, and to give this matter such care and attention as I expect from your zeal.

As it has been further represented to me that it is advisable to fortify Quilimane, as it would be of great utility and would protect commerce, I also earnestly recommend and charge you to lay the matter before the council, and after procuring all further information required, you shall act in accordance with the majority of votes, and carry into execution what is considered to be most fitting and to the advantage of all. You shall send me a report of what is accomplished.

Written in Lisbon, the 25th of February 1654.

THE KING.

THE COUNT OF ODEMIRA.

Conde Subrinho Amigo Eu El Rey vos inuio muito Saudar como aquelle que amo. Por se ter entendido q̄ das licenças que os Vizo Reis, e governadores desse Estado concederaõ nos annos passados a moradores de Mossambique, e seu destrito para se hirem viuer a India, resultava a grande falta de gente, que aly ha de presente e que ainda em Janeiro do anno passado concederaõ os governadores, vossos antecessores licença a An<sup>to</sup> de Torres e a seu genro Antonio Ferreira de Andrade para se hirem de Mossambique para essa Cidade, com suas mulheres e familias o que tudo he em grande dezseruiço meu, e danno irreparavel daquellas terras p̄ Se saber, que Antonio de Torres era hum dos homens de mayor cabedal, e gente que hauia nellas me pareceo dizer vos, que Conuem a meu Seruiço (e aSim o ley por bem) que vos, nem os Vizo Reis, ou gouernadores, que vos sucederem, nem outro algum ministro meu, possaes conceder nem concedais daquy em diante Licença, a nenhum morador de Mossambique, nem do Rios de Cuama para se auzentarem daquellas terras, e quando tinhaõ taes razoens, que alegar que pareça não podem escuzar as ditas Licenças, mas consultareis p<sup>a</sup> lhe mandar diffirir como conuier a meu seruiço, e a razaõ; e esta rezulacão fareis tomar em Lembrança para ao de adiante se executar muy inteira e pontualmente. Escrita em Lisboa a 7 de Março de 1654 Rey. o Conde de odemira.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, nephew, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. Understanding that the licenses granted by the viceroys and governors of that state in past years to the residents of Mozambique and its environs, for them to proceed to India to settle there, have been the cause of the great scarcity of people in that place at present, and that as late as January of last year the governors, your predecessors, granted licenses to Antonio de Torres and to his son-in-law Antonio Ferreira de Andrade, to leave Mozambique to proceed to Goa with their wives and families, all of which is greatly to the prejudice of my service and of irreparable damage to those territories, it being understood that Antonio de Torres was one of the richest men in that place in capital and men.

I think fit to inform you that it is conducive to my service,

and I think proper, that neither you nor the viceroys or governors who succeed you, nor any other of my ministers, shall have power to grant, nor shall grant, from this time henceforward, license to any resident of Mozambique or of the rivers of Cuama to absent themselves from those lands; and when they shall put forward such reasons that it appears impossible to refuse the said licenses, you shall consult me, so that I may command these to be granted to them in a manner fitting my service, and in accordance with justice. And you shall cause a memorandum to be made of this resolution, that for the future it may be carried into execution strictly and entirely.

Written in Lisbon, the 7th of March 1654.

THE KING.

THE COUNT OF ODEMIRA.

---

Conde Subrinho Amigo. Eu ElRey vos invio m<sup>to</sup> saudar como aquelle que muito amo. Da carta que me escreuestes em oito de Janeiro passado, em reposta de outra minha de 24 do mesmo mez do anno de 652 fiquey entendendo o Cuidado com que ficaueis de fazer continuar com as obras de caua e fortaleza de Mossambique, e de conceruar em amizade a Dom Francisco de Lima Capitaõ della, Com Luis Ribeiro Caualleiros, que corre com as ditas obras, p̄ entenderdes que Convinha ser aSim, e porque de tudo fico com satisfaçaõ, volo quiz dizer por esta, e emcomendar vos muito (como o faço) que o Continueis, quanto vos for possiuel, pois Sabeis a importancia daquella fortaleza, e quanto apetedida he dos inimigos de minha Coroa. Escrita em Lisboa a 9 de Dez<sup>o</sup> de 1654. Rey. o Conde de odemira.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, nephew, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love much. By the letter which you wrote to me on the 8th of last January, in answer to mine of the 24th of the aforesaid month of the year 1652, I observe your care in causing the works of the fortress of Mozambique and the trench to be continued, and in maintaining friendship between Dom Francisco de Lima, the captain thereof, and Luis Ribeiro Cavalheiros, who has charge of the works, as you understood that it was advisable to act thus.

And as all this is to my satisfaction, I wish to inform you thereof by this, and earnestly to charge you, as I now do, to continue these measures as far as possible, as you are aware of the importance of that fortress, and how greatly it is coveted by the enemies of my crown.

Written in Lisbon, the 9th of December 1654.

THE KING.

THE COUNT OF ODEMIRA.

Conde Visso Rey Amigo Eu El Rey vos emvio muito Saudar como aquelle que amo. Mando vos Remeter em Companhia desta Carta as Copias de duas que receby de El Rey de Manamatapa para que tendo noticia do que nella pede o favoreçais em tudo o que vos for possivel porque assim o pedem as rezoens e muito em particular a de se haver reduzida a nossa Santa ffee Catholica e o fareis com taes demonstraçoens que entendaõ os Reis da India se quizerẽ seguir taõ Santo exemplo haõ de achar em mim toda a boa corespondencia, e toda a aSistencia que ouverem mister em seres particulares. Escrita em Lisboa a 15 de Março de 655. Rey o Conde de odemira.

*[English translation of the foregoing.]*

Count, viceroy, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. I command to be sent to you with this letter copies of two which I received from the king of Monomotapa, so that, being informed of what he asks for in them, you shall show him all possible favour, as there are motives for so doing, principally because he has become a convert to our holy Catholic faith; and you shall do so with such demonstrations as may show the kings of India that should they wish to follow so holy an example, they will find in me all the friendship and assistance which each one individually may have need of.

Written in Lisbon, the 15th of March 1655.

THE KING.

THE COUNT OF ODEMIRA.

Conde vizoRey Amigo. Eu El Rey vos emvio muito Saudar como aquelle que amo. A huã carta que em vinte quatro de Janeiro de mil Seis sentos Sincoenta e tres mandey escreuer ao Conde de obbidos vosso antessussor Sobre o remedio que se poderia aplicar a falcificação do ouro de Monçambique que uay em grande cressmento Respondeo Dom Bras de Castro por não hauer cido bastante o dos ensayadores que se mandaraõ a aquella fortaleza nem as regorozas penas para isso se haviaõ posto ficaua fazendo diligencia com as pessoas que habitaraõ aquellas terras e se achauaõ nessa Cidade para ver se para alguma via se podia remedear o dito dano e porque este negocio he da importancia que sabeis e de que depende o trato E comercio dos moradores dessa Cidade vos encomendo muito e mando que tomando noticia delle e do que estiuer feito e faltar por fazer trateis com todo o Cuidado do remedio que se lhe pode dar e o executeis dando me conta do que fizerdes para o ter entendido. Escrita em Lisboa a Sinco de Feuereiro de mil Seis Sentos Sincoenta e Seis. Rey.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, viceroy, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. To a letter of the 24th of January 1653, which I gave order to be written to the count of Obidos, your predecessor, with reference to the remedy which might be applied to the falsification of gold in Mozambique, which is greatly on the increase, Dom Bras de Castro replied that as the two assayers who had been sent to the said fortress and the rigorous penalties imposed had not been sufficient, he was taking steps, in conjunction with persons in that town who had resided in those lands, to discover whether there were any means of remedying the said evil. And as this business is of such importance, as you are aware of, and as upon it depend the trade and commerce of the residents of that town, I command and earnestly recommend you, on obtaining information of what has been done and what there is to do, carefully to consider what remedy may be applied, and carry it into execution; giving me an account of what you accomplish, that I may be informed thereof.

Written in Lisbon, the 5th of February 1656.

THE KING.



Conde vizo Rey Amigo. Eu El Rey vos envio muito Saudar como aquelle que amo. Por se euitarem os danos que minha fazenda e de meus vaçalhos desse Estado virião receber se a nação Ingreza como o dezeja em procura fazer com suas embarcaçoens se introduzesse no trato e Comercio de monçãbique mandey escriuer ao conde de obbidos vosso antessussor em vinte dous de março de mil Seis Centos Sincoenta e tres que em nenhum modo consentisse antes estrouasse o dito trato por so melhor modo que ser pudesse ordenando que aos Ingrezes se a cazo algum nauio seu fosse a mesma conquista se desse Somente refresco e agoada e que contra Aluaro de Souza e Sua fazenda em pena de hauer aly recebido hũ nauio Ingres se procedesse como fosse Iustica e auizasse todos os annos de que se fosse fazendo e por que Dom Bras de Castro em Carta de oito de Ianeiro de mil Seis Centos Sincoenta e quatro respondeo que a minha ordem Sobre os Ingrezes se daria a execuçaõ quanto fosse possiuel e aSy o hauia ordenado a Dom Francisco de Lima que estaua em moçambique e que Aluaro de Souza hera falecido com tantas diuidas e pouca fazenda que escasamente bastaua o que se lhe achou para satisfazer o que devia a minha como tudo vereis mais largamente das Cartas referidas que estaõ nessa Secretaria e por a materia Ser graue e importante e muy digna de seu remedio se trazer na memoria vos hey por muy encomendado que aSy o procureis quanto vos for possiuel e por todas as vias e que contra a fazenda de Aluaro de Souza façaes proceder conforme a culpa que se lhe prouar tendo entendido que ha noticia que Dom Francisco de Lima tem quantidade de fazenda Sua e se vos Constar que o mesmo Dom Francisco o naõ desmerece com seus procedimentos naquella conquista de que me tem chegado algua queixas lhe agradeceréis de minha parte o Seruiço que me fez em estoruar que hum nauio Ingres que foi a monçambique em seu tempo naõ tivesse trato nem Comercio como Dom Bras me avizou e de tudo o que fizerdes E succeder me hereis dando Conta particular escrita em Lisboa a dez de Feuereiro de mil seis Centos Sincoenta e Seis. Rey.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, viceroy, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. To prevent the damages which would be suffered by my treasury and by my subjects in that state, if the English

nation with their ships succeed in introducing themselves into the trade and commerce of Mozambique, as they desire to do, I commanded the count of Obidos, your predecessor, to be written to on the 22nd of March 1653 on no account to consent in any way to this trade, but rather to prevent it in the most effectual manner possible, commanding that in the event of any English ship putting in at that conquest, she should be supplied only with refreshments and water, and that he should take proceedings in accordance with the law against Alvaro de Sousa and his property as a penalty for having received an English ship, and should send information every year of what was being done.

Dom Bras de Castro replied in a letter of the 8th of January 1654 that my order relating to the English should be carried into execution as far as possible, and that he had given orders accordingly to Dom Francisco de Lima, who was in Mozambique; and that Alvaro de Sousa had died, leaving so many debts and so little property that what he was found to possess was barely sufficient to pay his debt to my treasury; of all of which you will find a more detailed account in the letters referred to, which are in the office of the secretary there.

As the matter is serious and important, and deserves that a remedy to it should be borne in mind, I earnestly recommend you to endeavour to rectify it by every means in your power, and to proceed against the property of Alvaro de Sousa in consideration of the guilt of which he was convicted, bearing in mind that there is information that Dom Francisco de Lima is in possession of a large amount of his property.

If it is proved to you that the said Dom Francisco by his conduct in the said conquest has not shown himself unworthy of it, as various complaints have reached me concerning him, you shall give him thanks in my name for the service he rendered to me in preventing an English ship that put into Mozambique during his term of office from carrying on trade or commerce, as Dom Bras informed me. And you shall send me a special account of all that you accomplish, and of all that takes place.

Written in Lisbon, the 10th of February 1656.

THE KING.

---

Conde vizoRey Amigo Eu El Rey vos envio muito Saudar  
Como aquelle que amo. Por parte de Dona Petronilha da Cunha

viuua de Diogo de Souza de Minezes moradora nesse Estado se me reprezentou aqui a grande pobreza em que ficou por morte do dito seu marido demais de ficar deueno a minha fazenda noue mil xerafins e que querendo ella satisfazelos de procedido da fortaleza de Çofala Cuja auçãõ lhe pertence pello dito seu marido se lhe naõ queixara ahy tomar conhecimento do Seu requerimento Sem mostrar folhas Corrida nos auttos pedindo me vos mandase ordenar que se lhe admitisse sev requerimento postoque naõ presentasse a dita folha visto naõ ter outro remedio de poder dar satisfaçaõ enComendo uos que ouuindo aos procuradores da Corroa e fazenda façaes Consultas digo Conçultar a dita folha digo a dita Dona Petronilha no dereito que tiuer na dita fortaleza sem embargo de naõ presentar a dita folha vindo disseo a declaraçaõ necessaria na dita Conçulta para Com noticia de tudo se resolver o que for justo. escrita em Lisboa a ninte Seis de Ianeiro de mil seis Centos Sincoenta e Sete. Rainha. o Conde de Odemira.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, viceroy, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. Representation has been made to me here on the part of Dona Petronella da Cunha, widow of Diogo de Sousa de Meneses, a resident in that state, of the great poverty in which she was left by the death of her husband, besides which she was in debt to my treasury nine thousand xerafins; and that, wishing to satisfy this debt by the proceeds of the fortress of Sofala, which belongs to her through her said husband, they refused in that place to take any notice of her petition, unless she presented a certificate of her inheritance among the deeds. She petitions me to command you to give order that her claim shall be admitted, although she does not present the said certificate, seeing that she has no other means of satisfying the debt.

I charge you, after hearing the attorneys of the crown and treasury, to cause the said Dona Petronella's claim to the said fortress to be considered, notwithstanding she does not present the said certificate. The requisite declaration of this order is to be sent to the council, so that upon obtaining information of the whole matter, a just decision may be arrived at.

Written in Lisbon, the 26th of January 1657.

THE QUEEN.

THE COUNT OF ODEMIRA.

Conde vizo Rey Amigo Eu El Rey vos envio muito Saudar Como aquelle que amo. Por dom Iulianes de Noronha hauer uindo Consultado na lista dos despachos do anno de mil Seis Centos quorenta e Sete na Capitania de Sofalla Contra as ordens e poribiçoës que ha p<sup>a</sup> se não Consultar ahy a dita fortaleza nem neste Reino sem Licença e a dita Consulta ser muy antiga e se não poder ver se não agora e dom Iulianes podir tambem ter feito despois algum seruiço Com que adquirisse merecimento me pareceo dizer uos que não fui seruido deffirir a dita Consulta e que elle deue requerer de nouo para tornar auer Conçultado nas merces que merecer o que lhe mandareis dizer pello Secretario do Estado para que elle trate de Seu requerimento. escrita em Lisboa a uinte dous de feureiro de mil Seis Sentos Cincoenta e Sete. Rainha. o Conde de odemira.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, viceroy, friend, I the king greet you well as one whom I love. Dom Julianes de Noronha having sent among the list of despatches of the year 1647 a consulta on the captaincy of Sofala, contrary to the orders and prohibitions against deliberating upon the said fortress in this place or in this kingdom without license, and as the said consulta is of an old date and could not be examined until the present time, and as Dom Julianes may afterwards have rendered some service by which he acquired merit, I think fit to inform you that I do not approve of the said consulta, and that he must appeal again, so that a council may be held as to what favours he deserves. You shall give order for him to be informed of this by the secretary of state, that he may treat of his petition.

Written in Lisbon, the 22nd of February 1657.

THE QUEEN.

THE COUNT OF ODEMIRA.

---

Conde vizo Rey Amigo Eu El Rey vos envio muito Saudar Como aquelle que amo. Por avisos que se tiueraõ da India e pello que se Continha em algumas Cartas de Dom Francisco de Lima Capitaõ da Fortaleza de Sofalla Escritas a Dom Bras de Castro se entendeo que os Francezes tinhaõ feito hum forte ou

fetoria na Ilha de São Lourenço e que obrigados de necessidade ou Com intento de tomarem noticia do Citio forças e trato da mesma fortaleza de Sofalla foraõ em hua embarcação de digo em embarcação pedir soccorro ao mesmo Dom Francisco com Carta do seu Capitão de que ou do achreis noticias nesta secretaria, E por que nos principios, se athalhaõ a menos Custo Couzas que ao diante nem Com muito tem facil o remedio Como tudo vos he prezente vos quiz encomendar lo faço com instancia que Com todo o encarecimento e segredo procureis e ordeneis ao Capitão de Soffalla que ally se achar que procure devertir os intentos dos Franceses quaesquer que forem e isto por todos os meyoys que se lhe oferecerem mas com grande Cautella e que Com ella procure tambem que os naturaes da India de Goa digo da India de São Lourenço lhe não deem ajuda nem fauor porque por estimado e não tirando delles fruto do trato e da nauegação desistirão della que he o meu intento e deue ser a de meus uaçallos leacs. Escrita em Lisboa a uinte Sete de Feuereiro de mil Seis Sentos Sincoenta e Sete. Rainha. o Conde de odemira.

*[English translation of the foregoing.]*

Count, viceroy, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. By information sent from India and also contained in various letters which Dom Francisco de Lima, captain of the fortress of Sofala, wrote to Dom Bras de Castro, it is seen that the French have built a fort or factory in the island of Madagascar, and that compelled thereto by necessity, or with the intention of obtaining information of the site, forces, and trade of the fortress of Sofala, they came in a boat to the said Dom Francisco, to ask for assistance, bringing a letter from their captain, of which you will obtain information in the office of the secretary.

As at the beginning an evil may be prevented at little cost, which later even with great expense it is difficult to remedy, of which you are aware, I desire to recommend to you, and I earnestly command you with all care and secrecy to endeavour to obtain that the captain of Sofala, who is in that place, shall endeavour to frustrate the designs of the French, whatever they may be, by every means in his power, but with great caution, and to have care also that the natives of Madagascar and of India do not give them any assistance or favour, because by this means,

seeing that they do not obtain any profit from the trade and navigation, they will desist from it, which is my intention and should be that of my loyal subjects.

Written in Lisbon, the 27th of February 1657.

THE QUEEN.

THE COUNT OF ODEMIRA.

---

Antonio de Mello de Castro Governador Amigo. Ev El Rey vos envio muito Saudar. Fre Domingos de Ruzario Religiozo da ordem do Patriarcha Saõ Domingos que a este Reino veyo desse Estado me reprezentou aquy, que o VRey Ruy Lourenço de Tauora por cujas razoens do serviço de Deos e meu Concedeo em meu nome aos Religiozos da dita ordem Curas em todas as dotrinas, e Christand<sup>es</sup> de Monomotapa Liberdade de poderem embarcar no pataxo que o Capitaõ de Mossambique manda para Sena duas vezes no anno os Seus provimentos que vem a Ser para cada hum dos Religiozos, Curas hum barril de tres almudes de vinho para as missas e outro de Seis almudes de farinha para hostias hum fardo de Seis maos de assucar, hum Saco de amendoas dous buyoens de doce de Concerva E meyo bar de roupa de Ladrinhos que Saõ duzentos bertangins negros. Pedindo me lhe mandasse Confirmar a Liberdade das Sobreditas Couzas E porque o requerimento dos ditos religiozos se tem por justificado, Vos encomendo, e mando que lhe Confirmeis em meu nomê a Liberdade que vos Constar que ja tem e que em Lugar do barril de Seis almudes de farinha que Se escuza possaõ Levar quatro maos de Sera Laurada para o culto divino o que se entendera naõ se vos offerecendo inconveniente na dita Confirmaçaõ ou prejuizo de terceiro de que me devais dar Conta e de assy o hauerdes Executado na forma referida me avizareis. Escrita em Lishoa a 14 de Março de 662. Rainha. o Conde de Soures.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Antonio de Mello de Castro, governor, friend, I the king greet you well. Friar Domingos do Rosario, a religious of the order of St. Dominic, who came to this kingdom from that state, has represented to me here that the viceroy Ruy Lourenço de Tavora, for motives of God's service and of mine, granted in my name to

the religious and priests of the said order in all the parishes and Christian settlements of Monomotapa license to import their provisions in the vessel which the captain of Mozambique sends twice a year to Sena, which amounts for every religious doing duty there to one barrel of three almudes of altar wine, and another containing six almudes of flour for hosts, one fardo of six maos of sugar, one sack of almonds, two cases of preserves, and half a bar of cloth of Ladrinhos, which is two hundred pieces of black cotton cloth. He has desired me to command the license for the above-mentioned articles to be confirmed to him.

As the petition of the said religious is found to be just, I charge and command you to confirm in my name the privilege, which it is proved to you that they already hold, and instead of the barrel of six almudes of flour referred to, they may take four maos of refined wax for divine worship, if it appears to you that the said confirmation will give rise to no evil or prejudice to a third party, of which you shall send me a report, and you shall also inform me that you have carried this into execution in the manner stated.

Written in Lisbon, the 14th of March 1662.

THE QUEEN.

THE COUNT OF SOURES.

Antonio de Mello de Castro vRey da India Amigo. Ev El Rey vos envio muito Saudar. Havendo visto o que me escrevestes, em Carta de 25 de Janeiro do anno passado, Sobre a licença que Dom Manoel Mascarenhas Capitaõ de Sofalla deu a hum Pataxo, para passar de Mossambique a este Reino, e a tres ou quatro homens, moradores dos Rios, os mais ricos que aly havia, embarcando juntamente no dito Pataxo a pimenta da nao graça tudo contra a forma de minhas ordens sem que lho pudessem impedir os protestos que lhe fez o Feytor daquella Fortaleza; me pareceo diser vos, que ainda que Dom Manoel Mascarenhas devia guardar m<sup>to</sup> pontualmente, minhas ordens, e regimentos como lho mando escrever com tudo se lhe deue relevar hauer remetido a este Reino, as fazendas e pimenta da nao graça; posto que sem ordem minha nem da que devia ter vossa; por hauer vindo a salvam<sup>to</sup> no tempo presente e hauer dez annos, que estava destruida em Mossambique aonde se hia

perdendo sem os vReys vossos antecessores a mandarem a este Reino e no que toca a vinda dos homens cazados de Mossambique, e que deo Licença para virem a Portugal sem proceder Licenssa vossa lho mando estranhar. E ordenareis que se não conceda mais semelhantes Licença pelo tempo adiante. Escrita em Lisboa a 16 de Março de 1665. Rey.

[English translation of the foregoing.]

Antonio de Mello de Castro, viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well. Having seen what you wrote to me in a letter of the 25th of January of last year concerning the license which Dom Manuel Mascarenhas, captain of Sofala, granted to a small vessel to proceed from Mozambique to this kingdom with three or four of the wealthiest men among the residents of the rivers, sending also in the same vessel the pepper from the ship *Graça*, all of which is contrary to my orders, the protests of the factor of the said fortress being of no avail in restraining him, I think fit to inform you that although Dom Manuel Mascarenhas must most strictly observe my orders and regulations, and to this effect I command a letter to be written to him, yet he must be acquitted of blame in sending the merchandise and pepper of the ship *Graça* to this kingdom without my orders, or an order which he should have received from you, as it has now arrived safely, while for ten years it was being spoilt in Mozambique, where it was left to waste, owing to your predecessors, the viceroys, not forwarding it to this kingdom.

As regards the married men who came from Mozambique, to whom he granted leave to proceed to Portugal without obtaining your license, I command him to be censured for so doing, and you shall order him not to grant such licenses in future.

Written in Lisbon, the 16th of March 1665.

THE KING.

---

Antonio de Mello de Castro VRey Amigo Eu El Rey vos envio m<sup>o</sup> Saudar. os officiaes da Cuza de Misericordia da Fortaleza de Monsambique, me deraõ conta por cartas suas de primr<sup>o</sup> de Outubro de 663, e 10 de Ian<sup>o</sup> do anno passado da falta em que se achava aquella Fortaleza (sendo a mais importante do estado



da India) de cazados e soldados para sua defenza, e que ainda que o houvesse pazes com as Nasçoens do Norte, não estava segura do inimigo Arabio a intentar (como fez a Mombaça) e porque este negocio he da importancia que vos he prezente; Me pareceo encomendar-vos m<sup>to</sup> que informando-vos do Estado em que de prezente se acha a fortificação daquella fort<sup>a</sup> me avizeis Logo, e que em quanto as guerras do Reyno, não daõ Lugar a lhe remeter alguns Cazaes e Infantr<sup>a</sup>, tenhais m<sup>to</sup> particular cuidado, de aprover de tudo o que lhe for necess<sup>o</sup> advertindo Vos que se vos ha de pedir estreita Conta de qualquer descuido que nisso houer, e aos Capitaës da dita fortaleza, ordinareis que sob pena do cazo mayor guardem os privilegios que aquelles moradores saõ concedidos no tocante a suas Liberdades, e Lecito comercio, e que não devirtaõ as fazendas da Alfandega, nem as tomem para seus contratos, tirando-as com violencia a seus donos p<sup>a</sup> depois fazerem estanques dellas, e dos mantimentos e constando-vos que obraõ o contr<sup>o</sup> do que fica refer<sup>o</sup> os mandareis suspender, e tirar devassa de seus procedim<sup>os</sup>, que remetereis ao Meo Conselho Ultram<sup>o</sup> para serem castigados como o Merecem. Escrita em Lx<sup>a</sup> a 14 de Abril de 1665. Rey.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Antonio de Mello de Castro, viceroy, friend, I the king greet you well. The officials of the house of mercy at the fortress of Mozambique, in their letters of the 1st of October 1663 and the 10th of January of last year reported to me that in the said fortress, which is the most important in the state of India, there was a scarcity of residents and soldiers for its defence, and although there was peace with the northern nations, it was not safe from an attack by the Arabian enemies, as happened at Mombasa.

As this business is of importance, as you are aware, I think fit earnestly to charge you, upon obtaining information of the present condition of the said fortress, to inform me immediately thereof; and as the wars of the kingdom do not allow of any married people and infantry being sent to it, you shall take very great care to furnish it with all it requires, being informed that you will be called to strict account for any neglect in this matter.

And you shall command the captains of the said fortress, under pain of high treason, to observe the privileges which have been granted to the residents as regards their liberties and lawful commerce, and not to divert merchandise from the custom house, nor seize it for their own trade, forcibly depriving the owners of it in order to establish afterwards monopolies of it and of provisions. And if you have proofs that they are acting contrary to the aforesaid order, you shall command them to be suspended from office, and cause an examination to be made of their conduct, which you shall transmit to my ultramarine council, that they may receive the punishment they deserve.

Written in Lisbon, the 14th of April 1665.

THE KING.

---

João Nunes da Cunha VizoRey da India: Ev El Rey vos envio muito Saudar. Antonio de Mello de Castro Capitaõ da Fortaleza de Moçambique, me deo Conta do Miseravel Estado em que achou aquella fortaleza, falta de gente de sua lotaçã, Armas, polvora, e mais petrechos de guerra de que necessitava para resistir a hum serco se acazo os inimigos lhe quizerem por e que convinha m<sup>to</sup> acodir lhe se com as couzas referidas; encomendovos Muito (pelo que pode Suceder) que atendendo muy particularmente a defença e reparo da dita Fortaleza a provejais de tudo o de que necessita, dispondo sobre a despeza o melhor modo que vos parecer Mais Vtil a sua muita conveniencia, e grande importancia de que he aquella praça de que me dareis Conta para o ter entendido. Escrita em Lisboa a 8 de Iaur<sup>o</sup> de 666. Rey.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

João Nunes da Cunha, viceroy of India, I the king greet you well. Antonio de Mello de Castro, captain of the fortress of Mozambique, has reported to me the miserable state in which he found the said fortress, in want of men, arms, powder, and other military stores which it requires to be able to withstand a siege, should the enemies wish to attack it; and that it is most necessary to supply it with all that is here referred to. I earnestly charge you on account of what may happen to give particular attention to the defences and repairs of the said

fortress, and to supply it with all that it requires, arranging for the expenses in the manner which you consider most fitting, on account of the great convenience and importance of the said fortress, of which you shall send me a report, that I may be informed thereof.

Written in Lisbon, the 8th of January 1666.

THE KING.

---

Ioão Nunes da Cunha VRey da India, Eu El Rey vos envio muito Saudar: Havendo mandado ver o que me escreveu o VRey Antonio de Mello de Castro em Carta sua de 6 de Ianrº do anno passado, dando-me conta, como a Custa de seo trabalho tinha ajustado com os Povos desse Estado, o pagar cada pessoa a oitava parte de Suas rendas, para Satisfação da paz de Olanda, por espaço de 16 annos sem embargo dos Relligiozos da Compª, e os de S. Domingos terem a isso Suas duvidas, e juntamente os Moradores de Moçambique, e Rios de Cuama, persuadidos de Luis de Mendonça lhes dizer que Antonio de Mello fazia este pitotario pª se proveitar delle; E porque convem que esta contribuição se continue, e cobre com effeito; me pareceo ordenar-vos muito (como o faço por esta minha Carta) que tanto que com o favor de Deos chegardes a India, façaes executar geralmente esta Contribuição em todas as partes desse Estado, na forma em que esta ajustado, e assentado com os Povos pº dito VRey Antonio de Mello de Castro. Escrita em Lisboa a 29 de Ianrº de 666. Rey.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

João Nunes da Cunha, viceroy of India, I the king greet you well. Having commanded what the viceroy Antonio de Mello de Castro wrote to me in a letter of the 6th of January of last year, to be examined, in which he reported to me how by dint of his exertions he had arranged with the people of that state for each person to pay the eighth part of his income during sixteen years in satisfaction of the peace with Holland, notwithstanding the objections to this brought forward by the Jesuits and Dominicans, and also by the residents of Mozambique and the rivers of Cuama, on the instigation of Luis de Mendonça, who

informed them that Antonio de Mello had made this arrangement that he might profit by it. And because it is advisable that this tax should be continued and should be effectually levied, I think fit to command you, as I now do by this my letter, immediately that, with God's will, you reach India, to cause it to be generally enforced in every part of that state, according to the manner agreed upon and settled with the people by the said viceroy Antonio de Mello de Castro.

Written in Lisbon, the 29th of January 1666.

THE KING.

---

João Nunes da Cunha VRey da India: Eu El Rey vos envio muito Saudar. El Rey de Manomotapa me pediu por Carta Sua de 20 de Abril de 663, vos mandasse escrever, e ao Capitão de Moçambique tivesseis cuidado da Conservação do prezidio que lhe assiste em Sua Carta, e da boa correspondencia que se deve ter com elle; encomendo-vos que informando-vos do modo da assistencia deste prezidio na Carta deste Rey façais nisso acerca do que pede que mais Convier a meo Serviço, e conservação desse Estado. Escrita em Lx<sup>a</sup> a 8 de Março de 666. Rey.

*[English translation of the foregoing.]*

João Nunes da Cunha, viceroy of India, I the king greet you well. The king of Monomotapa in his letter of the 20th of April 1663 asked me to command a letter to be written to you and to the captain of Mozambique, to the effect that you should have care to maintain the garrison which assists him at his court, and to continue the friendly intercourse which should be maintained with him. I charge you, upon obtaining information of the assistance rendered by this garrison in the court of the said king, to accomplish in this matter, as regards his demands, whatever is most conducive to my service and to the preservation of that state.

Written in Lisbon, the 8th of March 1666.

THE KING.

---

*Carta do Visorei da India á ElRey.*

[Copied from a manuscript in the Bibliothèque Nationale, Paris. Département des Manuscrits. Portugais Vol. 33, folio 222.]

Snor,—A Ignacio Sarmiento de Carvalho, mandey conseruasse o Prezidio na Corte de Monomotapa, na forma das ordês repetidas de V. Mag<sup>de</sup>, e da ultima de oito de Março de 666, elle me responde que não tem gente, nem eu a tenho para lha mandar. Se V Mag<sup>de</sup> não acudir com gente, e mais gente, a este Estado, uira como caza sem a lugarador a cair com o tempo, sem que ninguem a derrube, isto repito, e repeterey em muitas cartas, porque desta falta procedem todos os malles da India. A Real pessoa de V. Mag<sup>de</sup> D's guarde muitos annos.

Goa 9 de Janeiro de 1668.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

*Letter from the viceroy of India to the King.*

My Lord,—I ordered Ignacio Sarmiento de Carvalho to maintain the garrison in the court of Monomotapa, according to your Majesty's repeated orders, and that of the 8th of March 1666. He replied that he had no men, and I have none to send him. Unless your Majesty succours this state with men, and still more men, it will be like a house without a tenant, which falls in time without being pulled down. This I repeat, and will repeat in many letters, for from this want arise all the evils of India. God keep your Majesty's royal person for many years.

Goa, 9th of January 1668.

---

Conde VRey da India Amigo. Eu o Principe vos envio muito Saudar, como aquelle que amo. Huma pessoa que tem certa noticia das couzas de Mossambique, e Rios de Cuama deo no meo Conselho vltamarino, hum papel cuja copia vay incluza nesta assignada pelo Secretario Manoel Barr<sup>to</sup> de Samp<sup>o</sup> e como tudo seja em ordem a conservaçaõ daquella fort<sup>a</sup> e bem da Conquista dos Rios, fortificaçaõ dos portos do mar delles, vos encomendo, e

mando que mandãdo ver em Conselho com os Ministros que vos assistê trateis com todo o cuidado, e como espero de vosso zelo demandares acudir as Couzas mais importantes que vos parecerem, para o bem, e augm<sup>to</sup> daquellas partes, e havendo vassalos moradores nellas que a Sua custa queiraõ fazer as fortificaçoens convirá que tenhais particular tençaõ a Seos Requerim<sup>tos</sup> deffirindo lhes com parecer dos do Conselho desse Estado de tudo me dareis conta com toda a miudeza, e em quanto vos naõ vay a rezoluçaõ Sobre o negocio da Comp<sup>a</sup> de Monsambique de que me fizestes avizo tendo vos a m<sup>to</sup> particular Serviço, o que nisto obrardes. Escrita em Lx<sup>a</sup> aos 20 de Março de 669. Principe.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, viceroy of India, friend, I the prince greet you well, as one whom I love. A person having positive information upon the affairs of Mozambique and the rivers of Cuama has presented a paper to my ultramarine council, of which a copy is enclosed in this, signed by the secretary Manuel Barreto de Sampaio; and that all may be in good order for the preservation of the said fortress and for the welfare of the conquest of the rivers, and the fortification of the sea ports of these, I recommend and command you, that after having directed it to be examined in the council with the ministers who assist you, to have due care, as I expect from your zeal, to command those things to be attended to which appear to you to be most important as regards the welfare and progress of the said parts.

And there being subjects among the residents there who are willing to undertake the fortification at their own cost, it is advisable that you should pay particular attention to their petitions, granting these upon the advice of the members of the council of that state. You shall send me an account of the whole matter, with every detail. As the decision upon the matter of the Company of Mozambique, of which you informed me, is not sent, what you accomplish in this business I shall esteem as a very special service.

Written in Lisbon, the 20th of March 1669.

THE PRINCE.

Luis de Mendoça Furtado VRey da India amigo. Eu o Principe vos envio muito Saudar. A Theodorio Garcia assistente nos Rios da Cuama ha mais de vinte annos tenho concedido Licença para se embarcar para este Reino com sua familia: encomendo-vos que entendendo que sua assistencia naquellas partes he vtil lhe escreuaes que dando lhe Lugar as Suas conuinencias a assistir mais annos nos Rios lhe tereis a Serviço para ser presente nas occazioens que se offerecerem de seus despachos. Escrita em Lx<sup>a</sup> a 21 de Março de 1671. Principe.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Luis de Mendoça Furtado, viceroy of India, friend, I the prince greet you well. More than twenty years ago I granted license to Theodorio Garcia, a resident of the rivers of Cuama, to take passage to this kingdom with his family. I charge you, upon understanding that his residence in those parts is advantageous, to write to him that if it is convenient to him to remain some years longer at the rivers, you will esteem this as a service rendered, to be borne in mind when opportunity offers to answer his petitions.

Written in Lisbon, the 21st of March 1671.

THE PRINCE.

Luis de Mendoça Furtado VRey da India amigo. Eu o Principe vos envio muito Saudar. Mandando ver, e Considerar Com particular atentaõ a parte da consulta, que nesse Estado se fez por ordem do Conde de Saõ vicente Joaõ Nunes da Cunha vRey, que delle foy no tocante aos Capitaens das fortalezas da India: Fuy servido resolver que nesta monçaõ se enviasse huma companhia de infãtaria formada de sem homes e as municoens armas e ferramentas, de que em outra Carta vos mando dar Conta para Socorro da fortaleza de Mosambique, que o poluarista, que envio a esse Estado para polvora noua e refinar a que necessitar deste beneficio, e o salixse ponelo em sua conta va primeiro a esta praça e veja a poluora que aly estiuer deixando a melhor e que a ruim passe a goa para se remediar naõ se tendo nella e para seruir em goa de Mestre poluorista da caza de poluora tudo o que destas se Envia para a fortalca de Mosambique seja entregue ao feitor

de minha fazenda e Se lhe carregue em receita com internação do Reitor do collegio da comp<sup>a</sup> assistente naquella Ilha e Se não possa dispender couza alguma Sem a mesma intervação na forma que desenia nas cazas de administraçã das mais fortalezas desse Estado e assim tereis entendido que na monção de Setembro com o fauor diuino tenho ordenado Se envie cabo que exercite os cabos daquella fortaleza e superitende nas fortificaçoens della Rios, e de mais costa de Africa, e tambem fuy servido resolver que se tire contracto de Monsabique aos Capp<sup>ães</sup> e fique o Comercio daquella Ilha e Rios Liure a todos os meus vassallos Segurandosse pellos dereitos do Comercio e quantidade que importal o dinheiro que os Capitaes eraõ obrigados a dar pello Contracto, ou por outro meyo que parecer ao Conselho da fazenda desse Estado ser mais Suave, conuiniente ouviudo primeiro os homens do negocio e que esta minha resulação se publique e Logo para hauer de ter efeito no tempo que houver de entrar de novo capitaõ para que fique Lugar aos homes de negocio e mais vassallos do Estado de tratarem dos generos de Seu emprego e vos com o conselho da fazenda podereis dispor Alfandega em Monsabique com os ministros necessarios e Conuiniente para boa arrecadação de minha fazenda e não hauendo quem compre a dita fortaleza a que não esta anexo o contracto nem por esta cauza deixareis de mandar executar esta minha ordem de Ser o comercio Liure a meus vassallos e nesse cazo procureis nesta Capitania hum soldado de Satisfação que Sirua athe que o provido nella ache comprador e no tocante aos mais pontos que a parte da dita consulta declara em quanto nelles não tomo resulação por esperar me deis noticia mais certa, vos ordeno e mando ponhaes tudo o cuidado e preuenir e remediar os damnos que a consulta aponta como espero de vosso zello e conhecimento que tendes das couzas do Estado para as remediardes. Escrita em Lx<sup>a</sup> a 21 de Março de 1671. Principe.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Luis de Mendouça Furtado, viceroy of India, friend, I the prince greet you well. Having commanded those remarks of the council held in that state by order of the count of São Vicente, João Nunes da Cunha, late viceroy, which dealt with the captains of the fortresses of India to be examined and considered with par-



ticular attention, I was pleased to resolve that in this monsoon a company of one hundred infantry shall be sent out, with ammunition, arms, and iron implements, of which I command an account to be given to you in another letter, for the reinforcement of the fortress of Mozambique; and that the manufacturer of gunpowder whom I am sending to that state to make new powder, to refine that which requires it, and to take charge of the saltpetre, shall go first to that fortress to inspect the powder there, leaving the good and sending the bad to Goa to be improved, if this cannot be done in that place, and he shall hold the post in Goa of chief manufacturer of gunpowder in the powder factory.

Let any of these things which are sent to the fortress of Mozambique be delivered to the factor of my treasury, and entered into his books, with the coöperation of the rector of the Jesuit college resident in the said island, and none of these things can be disposed of without similar coöperation on his part, in the manner established in the houses of administration of the other fortresses of that state.

In the same way you will have understood that in the monsoon of September, with the divine favour, I have commanded an officer to be sent out to drill the officers of that fortress and to superintend the fortifications thereof, and of the rivers and the remainder of the African coast.

I was further pleased to resolve that the contract of Mozambique shall be withdrawn from the captains, and the commerce of the said island and the rivers be left free to all my subjects, the sum of money which the captains were obliged to pay for the contract being supplied by the duties on the commerce, or by other means which appear to the council of the treasury of that state to be more beneficial and convenient, after first asking the opinion of men of business. Let this my resolution be published immediately, that it may be enforced upon the entrance into office of a new captain, that commercial men and other subjects of the state may have time to make arrangements concerning the commodities which they wish to purchase, and that you, in conjunction with the council of the treasury, may establish a custom house in Mozambique with the requisite and suitable officials for the good administration of my revenue.

Should there be no purchaser for the fortress, which is not included in the contract, you shall not for this reason neglect to

command this my order to be put into execution, that commerce shall be free to my vassals. In this case you shall appoint a soldier in every way satisfactory, to serve in the said captaincy until the captain appointed shall find a purchaser.

As regards the other points touched upon in the said council, as I have not come to any decision respecting them, as I hope that you will send me more reliable information, I order and command you to have every care of the matter, and to take steps for remedying the evils pointed out by the council, as I trust that through your zeal, and by your knowledge of the affairs of that state, they will be remedied.

Written in Lisbon, the 21st of March 1671.

THE PRINCE.

---

Eu o Principe como Regente, e Sucessor dos Reinos de Portugal, e Algarves, faço Saber aos que este meu Alvara que val como Ley virem que eu mandei ver e Considerar por Ministros e pessoas inteligentes, zelosas de meu Serviço e do bem Commum as vtilidades que se Seguirão a meus vassallos, assy os que forem moradores neste Reino como nos Estados do Brazil, India, e Ilhas de se abrir e estabelecer Comercio Liure deste Reino e do Brazil para Mossambique, e Rios de Cuama, e depois de Ser conferida, e ventilada materia de tanta importancia em que Se concideraraõ as consequencias inconvenientes que podia haver ponderandose com toda a Circunspeção prudencia e attenção todas as circunstancias Concernentes a este negocio houve por bem e me praz conceder o dito Comercio Liure aos meus vassallos que forem moradores neste Reino, Ilhas, e Estado do Brazil e mais conquistas para que Liurementemente possaõ mandar Suas embarçaõens a Mossambique Rios de Cuama, Mombaça e portos de toda a Costa de Affrica desde o Cabo de Boa Esperança ate o de guardafu e todas as Ilhas a ella adjacentes e voltarem aos mesmos portos donde Sairem ou aos que lhe parecer, Sendo deste Reino e Suas Conq<sup>tas</sup> e tem a liberdade de Levarem e trazerem, venderem, e Comprarem todos os generos de fazendas pimenta, cravo, canella, e mais drogas prohibidas e Sem impedimento algum com declaração que este Comercio e navegação Comeceraõ no mes de Março do anno que vem de 673, e que vReys, Governadores e Capitaes de Fortalezas ou de quaesquer Praças assy do Brazil como da

India Generaõs, Capitaõs mores de quaesquer armadas cabos de alguma esquadra, ou Capitaõs de mar e guerra em nenhum Cazo nem de baixo de algum pretexto, ainda que seja de meu Serviço detenhaõ impediaõ ou molestem navio algum de meos vassallos que for comerciar a qualquer dos portos de sua jurisdicãõ cem cominaçãõ de que fazendo o Contrº se lhe dara em Culpa na Sua residencia, e de pagar de Sua fazenda as perdas, damnos, e demoras que se seguirem ao navio que detiverem impedirem, ou molestarem, mas antes lhes ordeno que lhes dem todo o bom expediente e despezas necessarios Sem dilaçãõ alguma para que possaõ entrar e sair quando quizerem e acharem que lhes convem, e para que melhor Se augmente este Comercio e se naõ possa considerar impedimento algum mandis Cessar o Contrato que os Capitaõs da fortaleza de Sofalla faziaõ de que rezultava a prohibiçãõ do Comercio dos Rios para que meus vassallos vzem delle com toda a liberdade, e franqueza. Pelo q̄ mando ao meu vRey ou Governador das partes da India e ao vedor geral de minha fazenda em ellas Governador Capitaõ Geral do Estado do Brazil e mais Governadores e Capitaõs mores delle e do Reino de Angola, e das Ilhas Provedores de minha fazenda e mais ministros e pessoas a que o Conhecimento deste Alvara tocar o Cumpraõ e façaõ inteiramente Cumprir e dar a execuçãõ Como nelle he declarado e por cada hum em Sua jurisdicãõ o faça publicar nos Lugares publicos para vir a noticia de todos exhortando a meus vassallos a que façaõ esta navegaçãõ mostrando lhes a facilidade e as vtilidades e Liuros que podem tirar da liberdade deste Comercio no qual hey por bem que os mesmos Governadores se possaõ interessar com elles em Carregado que mandis passar o presente Alvara que se Cumprira inteiramente como nelle se Conthem e para Seu Cumprim<sup>to</sup> derrogo, e hey por derogado qualquer Ley Alvara, Provizaõ, e Cartas que se hajaõ passado antes desta que impidaõ a execuçãõ della como se de todas e de cada hua delles se fizera a qui part<sup>ar</sup> mençaõ e tera força ainda que seu effeito dure mais de hum anno sem embargo da ordenaçãõ Lº 2º ttº 40 em Contrario Sendo primeiro publicado em minha chanceleria. Pedro de Araujo o fez escrever. Lisboa a 13 de Fevereiro de 672. Principe.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

I the prince, as regent and heir to the kingdoms of Portugal and the Algarves, make known to those to whom this my letter patent, which is to be as binding as a law, shall come, that I have commanded the advantages to be examined and considered by ministers and persons of intelligence, zealous for my service and for the public welfare, which would result to my subjects, both those residing in this kingdom and those in the states of Brazil, India, and the islands, from the opening and establishment of free commerce between this kingdom and Brazil, and Mozambique and the rivers of Cuama; and after conferring upon and discussing a matter of such importance, and considering the evil results to which it might give rise, weighing with due circumspection, prudence, and attention, all the circumstances bearing upon this business, I have thought fit and am pleased to grant the said free commerce to my subjects, residents of this kingdom, of the islands, and of the state of Brazil and other conquests; so that they may be free to send their ships to Mozambique and the rivers of Cuama, Mombasa, and all the ports of the coast of Africa, from the Cape of Good Hope to Cape Guardafui, and to all the adjacent islands, and shall be free to return to the same ports from which they set sail or to what ports they think fit belonging to this kingdom and its conquests; and have liberty to take there, and bring thence, to sell, and to buy, all kinds of merchandise,—pepper, cloves, cinnamon, and other spices prohibited,—without any impediment whatever; declaring that this commerce and navigation shall commence in the month of March of the coming year 1673; and that the viceroys, governors, captains of fortresses or of any stations both of Brazil and India, generals, commanders-in-chief of any fleets, commanders of squadrons, naval or military captains, shall on no occasion, or under any pretext, even that of my service, detain, impede, or molest, any ship belonging to my subjects which shall go to trade with any of the ports under his jurisdiction, under penalty, upon acting to the contrary, of it being brought against him at his trial, and of paying with his property the losses, damages, and delays suffered by the ship which he may have delayed, impeded, or molested. I command them rather to give them every con-

venience and the necessary despatch, without any delay, that they may enter and leave when they wish and think fit.

And that this commerce may be the better increased, and no impediment whatever may be put to it, you shall command the contract made by the captains of the fortress of Sofala to cease, which gave rise to the prohibition of the commerce of the rivers, that my subjects may make use of it with all freedom and license.

Therefore I command my viceroy or governor of Indian parts, the chief superintendent of my treasury there, the governor and captain general of the state of Brazil, other governors and commanders-in-chief of that place and of the kingdom of Angola and of the islands, overseers of my treasury, and other ministers and persons whom this letter patent may concern, to observe it, and to cause it to be strictly observed, and to carry it into execution in accordance with its contents; and let each one cause it to be published in the public places within his jurisdiction, that it may come to the knowledge of all, exhorting my subjects to undertake this navigation, explaining to them the facility of it, and the uses and advantages which they may derive from the freedom of this commerce, in which I am pleased to permit the governors themselves also to take part.

I command you to order this present letter patent to be sent to them, the contents of which shall be strictly observed; and that it may be accomplished I annul and consider to be annulled any law, charter, order, or letters, which have been passed previously to this, and which impede the execution thereof, as if of all and of each one particular mention was made herein; and this shall have force, even though its effect shall last more than a year, notwithstanding the decree of book 2nd, record 40, to the contrary, being first published in my court of chancery.

Pedro de Araujo caused it to be written.

Lisbon, the 13th of February 1672.

THE PRINCE.

Alvara de 13 de Fevereiro de 672 aos vassallos moradores no Reino Ilhas, e Brazil comerciar nos portos e Ilhas da Costa de Affrica athe o Cabo de Goardafu trazendo, e vendendo as fazendas

prohibidas, e os Capitaens de Sofalla não contivem com os contractos.

Dom Pedro por graça de Deos Principe de Portugal, e dos Algarves daquem e dalem mar em Africa, e de Guinem &c., Como Regente, e successor dos ditos Reinos. Faço saber a vos Vedor Geral da minha Fazenda do Estado da India que eu fui servido mandar por Alvares de tres de Fevereiro deste prezente anno de 1672 conceder licença aos meus vassallos moradores nestes Reinos, e Ilhas, e Brazil para poderem commerciar livremente nos Portos, e Ilhas da Costa de Africa athe o Cabo de Guardafu levando trazendo, e vendendo todas as fazendas prohibidas e que os Capitaens da Fortaleza de Sofalla não contivem com o contracto que tinhaõ para ficar franco a meus Vassallos do mez de Março do anno que vem de Seis Centos Setenta, e tres em diante como vereis da Copia incluza do dito Alvares aSignada pello Manoel Guedes Pr<sup>o</sup> Escrivão de minha Fazenda o q<sup>l</sup> fareis Registrar nas partes onde convier e publicar nos lugares costumados para vir a noticia de todos, e pello que vos toca o dareis e fareis dar a execução assim, e da maneira que nella se conthem, e a dita Copia se dara tanta fé e credito, como se fora o proprio Alvares por mim aSignado. O Principe nosso Sñor o mandou pello Marq<sup>s</sup> de Fronteira de Seus concelhos de Estado e Guerra Gentil home de sua camara, e seu vedor da Fazenda.

Pedro de Aronjo o fez em Lisboa a Sinco de Março de Seis centos Setenta, e dous annos. Manoel Guedes Pereira a fez escrever. Dom Ioão Mascarenhas.

Para o Vedor Geral da Fazenda da India. 1<sup>a</sup> via. Registada a Repartição da India a f 38.

Conforme o proprio.

LUIS SOARES DA COSTA.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Charter of the 13th of February 1672 to subjects resident in the kingdom, the islands, and Brazil, granting them license to trade at the ports and islands of the coast of Africa as far as Cape Guardafui, taking there and selling prohibited merchandise; and that the contracts of the captains of Sofala shall cease.

I Dom Pedro, by the grace of God prince of Portugal and of the Algarves, of the seas on both coasts of Africa, and of Guinea;

etc., as regent and heir of the said kingdoms, make known to you the chief superintendent of my treasury of the state of India, that I was pleased to command by a charter of the 3rd of February of this present year 1672 that license should be granted to my subjects residents of these kingdoms, of the islands, and of Brazil, to trade freely in the ports and islands of the coast of Africa as far as Cape Guardafui, taking there, bringing thence, and selling all the prohibited merchandise, and that the contracts held by the captains of the fortress of Sofala should cease, that commerce may be left free to my subjects from the month of March of the coming year 1673 henceforward, as you will see by the enclosed copy of the said charter signed by Manuel Guedes Pereira, secretary of my treasury, which you shall cause to be registered in the necessary parts and published in the usual places, that it may come to the notice of all, and upon your part you shall execute it and cause it to be executed according to the manner therein set forth; and as much faith and credit shall be attached to the said copy as if it were my proper charter signed by me.

The prince our lord commanded this through the marquis of Fronteira, of his councils of state and of war, gentleman of his bed chamber, and his superintendent of the treasury.

Drawn up by Pedro de Araujo in Lisbon, the 5th of March 1672.

Manuel Guedes Pereira caused it to be written.

Dom João de Marcarenhas.

For the chief superintendent of the treasury of India.

Registered in the Indian office f. 38.

In accordance with the original.

LUIS SOARES DA COSTA.

---

Conde Viso Rey da India Amigo. Ev o Principe vos envio muito a Saudar como aquelle que amo. Mandeí Ver a vossa Carta em que me representais o que vos parece sobre a ordem que se vos havia remetido tocante ao Comerssio Livre de Monsambique, e Considerar particularmente as rezoens que nella espendeis para haver de Correr o Contrato pella minha fazenda; e depois de visto tudo meveamente me pareceo remeter vos os pareceres que sobre esta materia me deraõ para que vendo vos

as rezoens de huns, e outros votos com esplicação e espriencia que tendis desta materia, e Conveniente digo e Conveniencia desse Estado da minha fazenda e de meus Vassallos, e de quaõ importante he para tudo naõ so a Conservação daquella praça mas o augmento della, e dos Rios, e pouvação de tantas terras dispunha e Tenente particular com madura ponderação o que vos parecer mais Conveniente para se conseguir o fim que se pertende. E espero eu que seja anual forma que fique estabelecida Couza taõ importante em beneficio Comum, e que tenha eu muito q̃ vos agradecer no aCerto della, e do que neste obrardes do regimento que derdes, e ordens q̃ passardes me fareis avizo remetendo me as Copias de tudo com as rezoens que foraõ fundamêto ao que mandardes dispor para se ficar entendendo com toda a clareza. Escrita em Lisboa a 22 de Setembro de 672. Principe.

*Copia.*

Viose aquella parte da Consulta que na India se fez no tempo de Visso Rey o Conde de Sam Vicente que trata dos Capitaens da fortaleza daquelle Estado a ordem que S. A. ao Visso Rey Luis de Almeida furtado para se tirar o contrato aos Capitaens das fortalezas de Mossambique e Ser Livre o Comerssio aos Vassallos de sua Alteza de Eroupa America, Africa, e Azia o parecer do VRey sobre esta materia em resposta da ordem que lhe foi a Consulta do Conselho Ultramarino Sobre os mesmos particular.

Pareceo me que o principal fundamento da resolução de Sua Alteza em deixar o Comerssio Livre dos Rios aos Vassallos, era por facilitar com esta Liberdade a pouvação daquellas terras porem achando o VRey da India outros meynos para Se Conseguir se conforma em tudo com o parecer do VRey em que hera o Comerssio dos Rios por estanque a Conta da fazenda real bem Considerado que ainda que de hum estanque que tinhaõ os Governadores de Mossambiq se passa a outro neste Segundo Se melhoraõ os Vassallos muito em rezaõ das fazendas dos particulares se comprarem por Seus justos preços, e naõ Se lhe fazerem os pagamentos em outro bairo e em marfim por Subido e exorbitante preços Como Costumaõ fazer os Governadores de Mossambique que heraõ principal queixa, e ruina dos Vassallos e quando a difficuldade de Se poder satisfazer a este novo estanque,



os trinta mil Cruzados, e as pagas do provido na fortaleza e as do Castellaõ como o VRey que o facilita o ha de executar se deve entender Se Conseguira tudo com acerto em ordem ao Serviço de Sua Alteza, e bem de seus vassallos pois a mayor difficuldade consistia no pagamêto dos primeiros quartéis que o VRey avisa tem por onde se remedee; porem se deve advertir ao VRey que o estanque ha de Correr pella faz<sup>a</sup> de Sua Alteza se não deve estender a mais que aos Rios na forma que o tinha os Governadores de Monsambique por seu Contrato e que toda a Costa de Africa, e Ilha adjacentes Sera Livre o Comerssio, aos Vassallos de Sua Alteza assim da India como de Brazil, e mais Conquistas na forma do decreto de Sua Alteza de dezanove de Março de Seicentos Setenta e hum, e assim parece que Sua Alteza lhe ordene o disponha Como escreve fazendo aquelle regimento e ordem que convem para o bem acerto deste negocio Visto, o zello, e espiencia com que se acha nas Couzas daquelle Estado o que deve executar Sem demora, e quando o tempo mostre que o successo Se não ajustaõ com os effeitos que pretenderem fica Lugar a Sua Alteza vzar das mais ordens Liberdade publica dos Vassallos, e porque este negocio he o mais importante para a Conservaçãõ do Estado da India deve Sua Alteza mandar rezolver para neste avizo se expedirem as ordens para chegarem ao tempo que o VRey o ha de dispor no fim do trienio do Governador que esta em Mossambique q̄ acaba em Abril do anno que vem de 673 e Se acrescente que o VRey que acha com espiencia que he da mais do bom aCerto e Se deve Se Seguem a que elle aponta.

Pareceo que Sendo neste negocio dos principaes da Conservaçãõ do Estado da India, e vendose, e Vintilandose em Varias Iuntas pareceo Ser Conveniente aquelle remedio que Sua Alteza mandou se executasse por decreto de dezanove de Março de Seicentos Setenta e hum e meu ja Conformidade de se passarem as ordens Considerandosse entãõ o pouco Cabedal que tinha a fazenda de Sua Alteza na India porem todas as Vezes que se acha outro remedio e meyo como agora aponta o V.Rey que sua alteza se deve valler delle a ordenar lhe que na forma em que faço avizo aSim o execute ao deixar estabelecido de modo em tempo do seu governo que os VReis vindo vos o não possa da alterar fazendo regimento, e ordens necessarias para Sua execuçaõ pondo a logo no effeito no trienio vindo vro como declara de que

dara Conta a sua Alteza Com a Cópia do regimento e ordens Com que esta baleceio para Sua Alteza a provar tudo.

Pareceo sobre o ponto do Comerssio Livre q̄ Sua Alteza mandou tratar naõ só no Cons<sup>o</sup> Vltamarinho mas em Iuntas particular das pessoas de que se formou de talento ou espriencia despois de tudo visto e Considerado rezolveo Sua Alteza por decreto de dezanove de Março de Setenta e hum que fose o Comerssio Livre podera ser que para mostrar que Sua Alteza o tirava aos particulares hera Só com tenção de aproveitar Seus Vassallos, e naõ Com interece proprio Como aponta o VRey, e despois de assim decretado por Sua Alteza se espediraõ as ordens p<sup>a</sup> todas as Conquistas aSinadas por Sua Real maõ, e Sem nova Cauza ou espriencia lhe parece Se naõ deve alterar por naõ haver ordens em Contradas em taõ breve tempo ou nunca Se porem em execuçaõ estas ordens de mais de que se Sua Alteza o mandar tirar aos que tem merce desta fortaleza e tomar por estanque he certo que todos os Ministros que onumerem de tratar este negocio todos Saõ dependentes do V.Rey e ficar se hia o impedimento de Commerciarem nos Rios de Vassallos de Sua Alteza e ficara Sendo VRey que for perpetuo Capitaõ de Sofalla sem se poder remediar para fazer os pagamentos parece que menos se faziaõ athe agora como o mesmo VRey aponta na Sua Carta pois Se naõ faziaõ nunca, e agora s<sup>t</sup> lhe tardarem seis mezes naõ lhe faltaraõ os dosse, e que he este negocio de tanta importancia que se havia de ver com os ministros, e pessoas donde se tomou a primeira rezoluçaõ. Pareceo que ainda em cazo que se considere algum inconveniente na execuçaõ da proposta e parecendo do VRey se deve admitir o froco de naõ embarcar o darsse oCaziaõ a que o mesmo VRey a toma para naõ obrar o que asegura a Sua Alteza tanto em vertude Vtil do Seu serviço, e dos Vassallos. Bem considerado que perdendo se esta oCaziaõ de que depende Conservaçãõ de Mossambique, e a pouvaçaõ e interesse de toda a India tarde mal, Consequira.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, viceroy of India, friend, I the prince greet you well, as one whom I love. I have commanded your letter to be examined, in which you represent to me your opinion upon the order which was sent to you concerning the free commerce of Mozambique,

and I have commanded particular attention to be given to the reasons which you bring forward in it why the trade should be undertaken by my treasury.

After again examining the whole matter, I think fit to forward to you the opinions given to me upon the matter, that having seen the motives of the votes of both sides, with the knowledge and experience which you possess of this matter, [after considering] the advantage to that state, to my treasury, and to my vassals, and for this purpose how important it is not only to preserve the said place, but to advance it, as also the rivers, and increase the population of such extensive lands, you may give orders in this matter according to what you consider, after mature deliberation, to be most conducive to the attainment of the end in view.

I trust that the conditions established, may be so important to the public welfare, that from the good results thereof I may have cause to thank you well. You shall send me information of what you accomplish, and the regulations and orders which you issue, forwarding me copies of all, and with the principal reasons for the measures which you command to be taken, that the matter may be understood with due clearness.

Written in Lisbon, the 22nd of September 1672.

THE PRINCE.

*Copy.*

That part of the resolutions of the council held in the Indies during the time of the viceroy the count of Saint Vicente which deals with the captains of the fortresses of that state was examined, and an order was sent to the viceroy Luis de Almeida Furtado to withdraw the contract from the captains of the fortress of Mozambique and leave the commerce free to his Highness's subjects in Europe, America, Africa, and Asia. The viceroy's opinion on this matter, in reply to the order given to him by advice of the ultramarine council, is as follows:—

It appears to me that the fundamental motive of his Highness's resolution to leave the commerce of the rivers free to his subjects was to facilitate by this license the settlement of those lands, nevertheless, should the viceroy of India find other means of attaining this end, his opinion should be acted upon in every

way, which was that the royal treasury should hold the monopoly of the commerce of the rivers, considering that even though in this we pass from one monopoly held by the governors of Mozambique to another, yet this second monopoly would be greatly to the advantage of the subjects, because the merchandise of private people would be bought at fair prices, and payment would not be made in other merchandise and in ivory at high and exorbitant prices, as was the custom of the governors of Mozambique, which was the principal complaint of the subjects and the cause of their ruin.

As to the difficulty that this new monopoly would not produce the thirty thousand cruzados and the salaries of the captain appointed to the fortress and of the castellan, as the viceroy who has to carry it into execution must bear in mind, the other results attained will be to the advantage of his Highness's service and the benefit of his subjects, as the greatest difficulty was the payment for the first quarter, for which the viceroy advises he has the means.

Nevertheless the viceroy must be informed that the monopoly held by his Highness's treasury must not be extended beyond the rivers, in the same way as the monopoly held by the governors of Mozambique by virtue of their contract, and that all the commerce of the remaining coast of Africa and the adjacent islands must be free to his Highness's subjects, both those of India and Brazil, and the other conquests, in accordance with his Highness's decree of the 19th of March 1671.

Thus it appears that his Highness should command him to order and provide according to what he writes, drawing up the regulations and orders which are required for the success of this business, in consideration of his zeal and the experience he possesses of the affairs of that state. This should be carried into execution without delay, and when time shows that the results are not such as were expected, his Highness may issue other orders with regard to a general license to subjects. As this business is the most important for the preservation of the state of India, his Highness should cause a decision to be taken, so that the orders may be dispatched quickly, to arrive at the time when the viceroy has to settle the matter, at the end of the governor of Mozambique's third year, which terminates in April of the coming year 1673. To which is added that as the viceroy, who

is experienced, considers that this measure is most conducive to success, his suggestion should be followed.

It appears that this business, being the most important for the preservation of the state of India, having been conferred upon and discussed in various councils, the remedy which his Highness commanded should be carried into execution by a decree of the 19th of March 1671 was considered to be advantageous, and orders were issued accordingly. Nevertheless upon considering the small capital possessed by his Highness's treasury in India, whenever other remedies or measures are discovered, as the viceroy points out at present, his Highness should take advantage of them, and command him to take measures in accordance with the information sent; and to have the matter settled during his term of government in such a manner that the viceroys who succeed may not be able to make changes, by drawing up the regulations and orders necessary for carrying it into execution, and bringing them into force at the end of the three years as stated. Of which he will send an account to his Highness, with a copy of the rules and orders by which it is regulated, for his Highness to approve of all.

It appears that as regards the question of free commerce, which his Highness commanded should be dealt with not only by the ultramarine council but also by special councils of persons of intelligence and experience, after considering the whole matter, his Highness resolved by a decree of the 19th of March 1671 that the commerce should be free, it may be necessary to show that if his Highness withdrew the commerce from private persons, it was to benefit his subjects and not for his own interest, as the viceroy states; and after his Highness had thus decreed, orders signed by his royal hand were despatched to all the conquests.

It appears to him that without new motives or experience no change should be made, that contrary orders may not be issued in so short a time, or these orders will never be carried into execution; besides which if his Highness commands the commerce to be withdrawn from those upon whom this fortress has been bestowed, and takes the monopoly of it himself, it is certain that all the officials who may have to deal with the matter are dependent on the viceroy, and if there were an impediment preventing his Highness's subjects from trading in the rivers, the

viceroiy being always superior to the captain of Sofala there would be no way of remedying this matter, by finding means of making the payments.

It appears that still less have these been made up to the present, as the said viceroy states in his letter, since they were never paid, and at present if they are six months overdue they are not paid within twelve. And this business is of such importance that it must be examined by the ministers and persons who passed the first resolution.

It appears that even though objections should be brought against the carrying out of the proposition and opinion of the viceroy, the remissness must be admitted of not seizing or allowing the said viceroy to avail himself of the opportunity of carrying into execution what he assures his Highness is so greatly to the advantage of his service and of his subjects. It being well understood that if this occasion, upon which depends the preservation of Mozambique and the populating of and advantage of the whole of India, is lost, these results will be with difficulty attained.

---

Eu o Principe como Regente e Sucessor dos Reinos de Portugal e Algarves, Faço Saber aos que este Alvara virem que por outro qual como ley passado em treze de Fevereiro de seis centos setenta, e dous fui servido conceder licença a meus vassallos que fossem moradores neste Reino, Ilhas, Brazil, e mais conquistas para que livremente pudessem mandar suas embarcações a Massambique Rios Cuama, Mombaça, e portos de toda a Costa de Africa desde o Cabo de boa esperança athe o de Guardafu, e todas as Ilhas a ella adjacentes, e voltarem aos mesmos portos onde sahize, ou aos que lhe parecessem. Sendo deste Reino, e suas Conquistas com a liberdade de levarem, trazerem, venderem, e Comprarem todos os generos de fazenda, pimenta, Cravo, Canella, e mais drogas prohebidas, e escravos sem impedimento algum. Hey por bem, e me praz por fazer merce aos ditos meus vassallos que na forma do Alvara aSima Referido navegarem para aquellas partes suas fazendas, e embarcações possaõ tambem trazer dellas ouro, alem das drogas declaradas no dito Alvara que se cumprará com este como nelle se conthem ainda que seu effeito dure mais de

hum anno, e de naõ passar pella Chanceleria sem embargo da ordenaçãõ do L<sup>o</sup> 2<sup>o</sup> tt<sup>os</sup> 39, e 40 em contrario.

Pedro de Araujo a fez em Lisboa a vinte de Março de seis centos setenta, e quatro annos. Manoel Guedes Perr<sup>a</sup> o fez escrever. Principe. Aluara por que V. Alteza fuz merce aos Vassalos que navegarem Suas embarçaõens para os portos da Costa de Africa do Cabo de boa esperanca athe o de guardafu, e Ilhas a ella adjacentes que possaõ trazer ouro, alem das drogas que V. Alteza lhe concedeo por Aluara de treze de Fevereiro de mil seis centos setenta, e dous como aSima se declara. 2<sup>a</sup> via. Dom Ioã Mascarenhas.

Por Rezuluçãõ de Sua Alteza de 17 de Março de 1674.

Regd<sup>o</sup> no L<sup>o</sup> dos Reg<sup>os</sup> da Fazenda de S. Alteza da Rep<sup>ta</sup> da India f 141.

Regd<sup>o</sup> no L<sup>o</sup> 37 dos Reg<sup>os</sup> da caza da India as f 330 em Lx<sup>a</sup> nos 31 de Março de 1674. Ioze de Chaves de Abreu.

Conforme a proprio.

LUIS SOARES DA COSTA.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

I the prince, as regent and heir of the kingdoms of Portugal and the Algarves, make known to those to whom this my charter shall come that by another charter of the character of a law, issued on the 13th of February 1672, I was pleased to grant license to my subjects residents of this kingdom, the islands, Brazil, and other conquests, freely to send their ships to Mozambique, the rivers of Cuama, Mombasa, and the ports of all the coast of Africa from the Cape of Good Hope to Cape Guardafui and all the adjacent islands, and to return to the same ports whence they sailed, or to any port they think fit in this kingdom and its conquests, with liberty to take there and bring thence, to sell and buy, all branches of merchandise, pepper, cloves, cinnamon, and other prohibited spices, and also slaves, without any impediment whatever.

I think fit and am pleased, in order to favour the said subjects, that when in the manner set down in the aforesaid charter they send their merchandise and ships to those parts, to grant license for them also to bring gold from thence, besides the spices stated in the said charter, which shall be done by the present charter,

according to the manner therein set down, although its effect lasts more than a year and that it has not passed through chancery, notwithstanding the order to the contrary in Book 2nd records 39 and 40.

Drawn up by Pedro de Araujo in Lisbon, the 20th of March 1674.

Manuel Guedes Pereira caused it to be written.

Charter by which your Highness grants license to subjects whose ships go to ports of the coast of Africa from the Cape of Good Hope to Cape Guardafui, and the adjacent islands, to bring gold from thence, besides the spices for which your Highness granted license by the charter of the 13th of February 1672.

Dom João Mascarenhas.

By resolution of his Highness of the 17th of March 1674.

Entered in the register of his Highness's treasury, Indian division, f. 141.

Entered in book 37 of the register of the Indian Office, f. 330.

In Lisbon, the 31st of March 1674.

Jozé de Chaves de Abreu.

In conformity with the original.

LUIS SOARES DA COSTA.

---

Conde vRey da India Amigo Eu o Principe vos envio muito Saudar como aquelle que amo. Pella prouizaõ que com esta minha Carta vos mando remeter, fuy servido confirmar a Carta patente que passastes a nova junta do Comercio Livre de Moçâbique e Rios de Cuama quando uiastes em meu nome aquelle tribunal e porque convem que tenhais noticia do Regimento que aquy se deu a junta do comercio geral do Brazil vos mando remeter o treslado delle para que naquelles cazos em que se puder aplicar ao bem expediente da nova Iunta que ahy se formou o mandeis assim executar. Escrita em Lisboa ao seis de março de mil Seiscentos Setenta e siuco. Principe. Conde de valde Reis.



[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, viceroy of India, friend, I the prince greet you well, as one whom I love. By the order which I command to be sent to you with this letter I was pleased to confirm the letters patent which you dispatched to the new council of the free commerce of Mozambique and the rivers of Cuama, when you sent there the said tribunal in my name. And as it is fitting that you should be informed of the regulations issued here by the council of the general commerce of Brazil, I command a copy of them to be sent to you, so that upon occasions when they might be applied to the advantage of the new council which has been formed there, you shall command them to be carried into execution.

Written in Lisbon, the 6th of March 1675.

THE PRINCE.

THE COUNT OF VALDEREIS.

Conde vRey da India Amigo Eu o Principe vos envio muito Saudar como aquelle que amo. Havendo visto o que me escreveo o Padre Frr. Manoel de gouvea em carta de vinte hum de Agosto de mil Seis centos setenta e tres que por vossa ordem assiste na junta do comercio dos Rios de Cuama dando me Conta que convinha muito haver nelles hum capitaõ geral com duzentos homes para fazerem entregar Com Sua assistencia ao imperador de monamatapa as terras que os moradores dos Rios lhe tinhaõ vzuparda e impedir as tiranias que lhes faziaõ ao mesmo imperador e seus vassallos e que dessa Cidade Se enviassem para Monçabique quatro, e Seis fragatas pequenas com quarenta homens cada hum para reduzirem outra vez a novo Comercio e contrato os Regullos das Ilhas Sirculenhas que ameaçados do inimigo Arabio naõ premetiaõ em Seus portos os barcos que destrito de monçabique que naõ fazer resgute nelles e que tambem Seria conveniente que para a conservaçaõ da infantaria que assiste naquella fortaleza ouvisse nella hum ospital administrado pellos Religiozos da companhia; e porque visto he materia de Consideraçã me pareceo dizer vos Sobre os dous pontos das fragatas assistirem em Monçabique para franqueare o Comercio e Conservaçã do ospital daquella praça provindo os ministros do

concelho que vos assiste despunhais o que vos parecer mais conviniente e no que toca aos Rios Sem terem as utilidades da Companhia se não deve por vora alterar Couza alguma em quanto não houver rēdimento para se pudarem Sustituir estes dispendios. Escrita em Lisboa aos quatorze de Março de mil Seis centos settenta Sinco. Principe. Conde de valde de Reis.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, viceroy of India, friend, I the prince greet you well, as one whom I love. I have examined what the father Friar Manuel de Gouvea, who, by your order, has taken part in the council of commerce of the rivers of Cuama, wrote to me in his letter of the 21st of August 1673, that it would be extremely advisable to station there a commander in chief with two hundred men, who by his aid would compel the residents of the rivers to surrender the lands which they have usurped from the emperor of Monomotapa, and would prevent the violence which they have offered the same emperor and his vassals; and that from Goa four or six small vessels should be sent to Mozambique, each one carrying forty men, to bring again the petty rulers of the adjacent islands to submit to the new system of commerce, as, being threatened by the Arabian enemy, they do not allow ships from the province of Mozambique to enter their ports or to trade there; and also that it would be advisable for the preservation of the infantry who serve in the said fortress to establish a hospital there under the management of the Jesuits.

As this is a matter of importance, I think fit to inform you, as regards both points, the stationing of the vessels at Mozambique for the freedom of commerce, and the preservation of the hospital of the said fortress, that after consulting with the officers of the council which assists you, you shall take such measures as you consider most fitting. And as regards the rivers, for the present no changes whatever unless to the advantage of the company should be made, as the profits do not suffice for such expenses.

Written in Lisbon, the 14th of March 1675.

THE PRINCE.

THE COUNT OF VALDEREIS.

Conde vRey da India Amigo Eu o Principe vos envio muito Saudar como aquelle que amo. Havendo visto o que me escreveraõ os Deputados da junta do Comercio de Monçãbique em carta de vinte tres de Janeiro de mil Seis centos Setenta quatro dando me Conta da Criação da dita junta e o que se tenha obrado aCerca do Comercio dos Rios e Como haveis mandado para se introduzir Com mais acerto ao D<sup>o</sup>r Manoel Serraõ Alfaya que faleceo brevemente em que em Seu Lugar passara a Sena Antonio Correa de Sua que havia hido em companhia sua com o Cargo de Superintendente da fazenda Real Levando para os Rios as Roupas que pareceraõ necessarias e que para o expediente deste negocio Se criara huma junta em Monçãbique e outra na Povoação de Sena para informar Com toda a vertude a geral de goa nomeandose os officiaes que pareceraõ convinientes para o manejo de hum negocio taõ importante, e que Seria necessario enviarse deste Reino em todas as Naos algumas orfaas do Castello e Cazaes mandose repartir as terras que parecessem necessarias para a dota de Cada huma fazendose em Momçãbique hum recolhimento para nelle reziderem ate Se cazarem que por a Fortaleza de Dio estar reduzida a miseravel estado Seria aCerto praticarse com ella o mesmo qu' em Monçãbique pondo Se lhe hum castelaõ que a governasse com Soldo Limitado e assentandose o Contrato na mesma forma de Monçãbique com que Se Sariaõ os roubos dos Capitaës e as queixas dos gentios que tinhaõ dezemparedo aquella Praça e Considerandose tudo o que fica referido me pareceo dizer vos que ponhaes todo o cuidado na Povoação dos Rios porque continuando Sera mayor fortificação que Se pode Concliderar Sendo muito Conviniente que Seja da mesma gente da India e mais Capaz para Se pozentarem aquellas terras que vos lhe deveis repartire para sua abitação vzando das Provizoens Concedidas aos vReys para puderem prover os Cargos de justiça guerra, e fazenda do destreito dos Rios nas orfaãs que cazarem cõ Portuguezes que queiraõ ir povoar as mesmas terras e no tocante a Se por castelaõ na fortaleza de Dio por esta não ter contrato nem as mais da India como Mosãbique e não haver com que premiar os que me Servirem nesse estado Se não deve alterar o que a junta aponta e Sem vossa imformação e parecer com o dos conselheiros que vos assistem porem ordenareis que Se tirem as rezidencias dos Capitaës desta e das mais fortalezas Com aquellas atenção que

convem e Sendo comprehendidos os fareis castigar com todo o rigor para exemplo dos mais com que Se evitarão as queixas que ha delle e em quanto ao Recolhimento que a junta aponta que se faça em Moss<sup>c</sup> continuando ella a tendo Cabedaes pello tempo adiante Se pudera obrar dando me conta disto para Se poderem remeter deste Reino as orfaãs que Se pedem para a povoação dos Rios as quaes poderaõ Cazar e dotalhas os vReys na forma que Se faz Com as do recolhimento de nossa Senhora da Serra com os officios dos mesmos Rios da justiça fazenda ou guerra e repartir lhe terras.

Escrita em Lisboa aos quatorze de Março de mil Seis centos Setenta e Sinco. Príncipe. Conde de valde Reys.

*[English translation of the foregoing.]*

Count, viceroy of India, friend, I the prince greet you well, as one whom I love. Having examined what the deputies of the council of commerce of Mozambique wrote to me in a letter of the 23rd of January 1674, giving an account of the establishment of the said council and of what had been accomplished as regards the commerce of the rivers, and how, that it might be more successfully established, you had sent there the chief judge Manuel Serrão Alfaya, who died shortly afterwards, and was replaced at Sena by Antonio Correa de Sá, who had accompanied him as superintendent of the royal treasury, taking to the rivers all the cloth that appeared to be necessary; that for the dispatching of this business, a council will be established at Mozambique and another at the town of Sena, to send authentic information to the general council of Goa, the officials having been nominated who appeared to be necessary for managing a business of such importance; that it would be necessary to send from this kingdom by all the ships some orphan girls from Castello and Cascaes, giving order for the lands which appear to be needed for the dowry of these to be distributed among them, establishing in Mozambique a house of retreat where they may live until their marriage; and that, as the fortress of Diu is in a miserable state, it would be advisable to take the same measures with regard to it as were put in force in Mozambique; appointing a castellan to govern it, with a limited salary, and establishing a trade on the same conditions as that of Mozambique, by which means the thefts of

the captains would be prevented, and the complaints of the people averted, these having abandoned the said place.

All the aforesaid matters having been considered, I think fit to inform you that you should give every care to the populating of the rivers, because the continuation of this measure will be the best means of fortification which could be suggested, and it would be most advisable that the population should consist of people of India. To render these lands more suitable for settlement, you shall distribute them among the settlers, that they may inhabit them, making use of the authority granted to the viceroys, giving them power to bestow upon orphan girls who marry Portuguese, who are willing to inhabit the said lands, the judicial, civil, and military posts of the province of the rivers.

As regards appointing a castellan to the fortress of Diu, as it and the other fortresses of India have no trade like Mozambique, and there are no means of rewarding those who serve me in that state, no such alteration should be made as the council proposes, without your information and the opinion of the councillors who assist you. Nevertheless you shall command the captains of that fortress and of the others to be tried with due care, and on being convicted, you shall give order for them to be severely punished, as an example to the others, by which means the complaints concerning them will be avoided.

As regards the house of retreat which the council suggests should be established in Mozambique, the council being continued and there being sufficient funds in the future it may be carried into execution, giving me an account of this matter, that the orphan girls desired for the populating of the rivers may be dispatched from this kingdom. And the viceroys may give them in marriage, and bestow upon them as dowry the judicial, civil, and military posts of the said rivers, and divide lands among them, as is done with the orphans of the retreat of our Lady of Serra.

Written in Lisbon, the 14th of March 1675.

THE PRINCE.

THE COUNT OF VALDEREIS.

Eu o Principe como Regente e Governador dos Reinos de Portugal Algarves faço Saber aos que esta minha provizaõ virem que tendo respeito ao que me representou o Conde de Lauradio meu VRey e capitaõ geral da India em razão da nova junta que por minha ordem mandou formar Sobre o comercio Livre de Monçãbique e Rios de Cuama para haver de correr o contrato por conta de minha fazenda pellas Convienciencias que disso lhe poderaõ resultar aos vassallos daquelle Estado tudo em augmento delle e da fortaleza de Monçãbique Hey p̄ bem de Confirmar como por esta confirmo o Regimento que o dito Conde vRey com assento do Conselho da fazenda deu a Iunta para Sua administração o qual se guardara e cumprira inteiramente e como nelle se contem e esta Se registara na India nas partes onde for necessario e valera como carta e não passara pella Chanceliria Sem embargo da ordenaçãõ do Livro Segundo tt<sup>as</sup> 39 e 40 em contr<sup>o</sup>. Bascoal de Azavedo a fazem em Lisboa a Seis de março de Seiscentos e Setenta e Sinco. Principe. Conde de valde dos Reis. O Secretario Manoel Barreto de Sam Payo a fiz escrever. Provizaõ por que v. A. ha por bem de Confirmar o Regimento que o Conde e vRey da India Luis de Mendonça Furtado Com assento do Conselho da fazenda deu a nova Iunta do Comercio de Monçãbique e rios de Cuama para Sua administração e haver de Correr o contrato por Conta da fazenda Real como nesta se declara Para V. A. Para rezolaçãõ de S. A. de quatorze de Março de mil Seis centos Setenta e Sinco em consulta do Conselho ultramarino de 7 de Fevr<sup>o</sup> do dito anno. Registada nos Livros da Secretaria do Conselho ultramarino as folhas Sento e tres em Lisboa aos vinte hum de março de mil Seis centos Settenta e Sinco.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

I the prince, as regent and governor of the kingdoms of Portugal and the Algarves, make known to those to whom this my order shall come, that with respect to what has been represented to me by the count of Lauradio, my viceroy and captain general of India, as regards the new council, which by my order he commanded should be established for the free commerce of Mozambique and the rivers of Cuama, that the trade should be carried on by my treasury, on account of the advantages to my

vassals of that state which may arise from this, these advantages being conducive to the greater prosperity of the state and of the fortress of Mozambique, I think fit to confirm, as I now do by this order, the regulations which the said count and viceroy, with the concurrence of the council of the treasury, gave to the council for its administration, which regulations shall be observed, and strictly carried out, in accordance with their contents. This shall be registered in India in the necessary places, and shall be as binding as a letter, and shall not pass through chancery, notwithstanding the decree of book 2nd records 39 and 40 to the contrary.

Drawn up by Pascoal de Azavedo in Lisbon, the 6th of March 1675.

THE PRINCE.

THE COUNT OF VALDEREIS.

The Secretary Manuel Barreto de Sampayo caused it to be written.

Superscribed: An order by which your Highness is pleased to confirm the regulations which the viceroy of India, the count Luis de Mendonça Furtado, with the concurrence of the council of the treasury, gave to the new council of the commerce of Mozambique and the rivers of Cuama, for its administration, and the trade is to be undertaken by the royal treasury, as herein stated by your Highness. By the resolution passed by his Highness on the 14th of March 1675, upon a conference of the ultramarine council of the 7th of February of the said year. Registered in the books of the office of the secretary of the ultramarine council, p. 103.

In Lisbon, the 21st of March 1675.

---

Eu o Principe como Regente e governador dos Reinos de Portugal Algarves faço saber aos que esta minha provizaõ virem que tendo respeito ao que me representaraõ os Ministros da Iunta do Comercio de Monçambique e Rios de Cuama e razaõ da enviaõ da mesma junta feita pello vRey Luis de Mendonça Furtado Com parecer dos ministros do Conselho da fazenda para a qual nomeou Seis Deputados ficando a dita junta independente de todos os tribunaes e immediata e my cõcedendo lhe todo o poder

mando Jurisdiçãõ franqueza e privilegiosos que tem a Companhia geral do Comercio do Brazil e visto o que fica referido e o que Sobre isso responderãõ os meus procuradores da Coroa e fazenda e Comvir a meu Serviço que se continue a dita junta e tenho toda authoridade que Convem para que o fim para que foi inuada Sua com vtilidade deste Reino e daquelle estado e se contigaõ os bens effeitos que delle se esperaõ, Hey por bem de informar como por esta confirmo a Carta patente qu' o dito vRey passou a dita junta em nove de Ianeiro de mil Seis centos e Setenta e quatro para que se Cumpra e guarde muito inteiramente como nella se contem com toda a jurisdiaõ e poder e o mais que nella Se declara e em esta provizaõ que vallera como carta e não pasçara pella Chanceliria Sem embargo da ordenaçãõ do Livro terceiro titulllos trinta e nove e 40 em contrº a qual Se registara na India nas partes em que for necessario para que se tenha noticia do que por ella ordeno. Pascoal Azavedo a faz. Escrita em Lisboa a Seis de Março mil Seis centos e Setenta e Sinco. o Secretario Manoel Barreto de Sam Payo a fez escrever. Principe. Conde de valde Reis. Provizaõ por que v. A. ha por bem de confirmar a Carta patente que o vRey da India Luis de Mendonça furtado com parecer dos ministros do Conselho da fazenda passou aos deputados da nova Iunta do Comercio de Monçabique e Rios de Cuama para que se cumpra e guarde com toda a jurisdiaõ e poder que nelle se conthem como nesta se declaraçãõ Para V. A. Por rezolaçãõ de V. A. de tres de março de mil Seis centos e Setenta e Sinco em consulta do Conselho vltramarino de 6 de Feveirº do dito anno. Registada nos Livros da Secretaria do conselho vltramaniao as folhas Sento e tres em Lisboa aos vinte hum de março de 1675.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

I the prince, as regent and governor of the kingdoms of Portugal and the Algarves, make known to those to whom this my order shall come, that with respect to what was represented to me by the members of the council of commerce of Mozambique and the rivers of Cuama, with regard to the sending there of the said council as established by the viceroy Luis de Mendonça Furtado, with the advice of the ministers of the council of the treasury, to which council he nominated six



directors, the said council to be independent of all the tribunals and to be a court of the first instance, it being granted all the power, authority, jurisdiction, liberty, and privileges enjoyed by the general company of the commerce of Brazil.

Having examined the aforesaid and the observations of my attorneys of the crown and revenue upon this matter, and considering it to be fitting for my service that the said council should continue and should enjoy all necessary authority, that the end for which it was sent there may be attained, to the advantage of this kingdom and of that state, and the good results expected from it may be gained, I think fit to confirm, as by this order I do confirm, the letters patent which the said viceroy gave to the said council on the 9th of January 1674, that they may be carried into execution and most strictly observed, according to their contents, with all legal authority and power, as also what is further declared in them and in this order, which shall be as binding as a letter, and shall not pass through chancery, notwithstanding the decree of book third, records 39 and 40 to the contrary.

This shall be registered in all the necessary places of India, that what I have ordered in it may be known.

Drawn up by Pascoal Azavedo.

Written in Lisbon, the 6th of March 1675.

The secretary Manuel Barreto Sampayo caused it to be written.

THE PRINCE.

THE COUNT OF VALDEREIS.

Superscribed: Order in which your Highness thinks fit to confirm the letters patent which the viceroy of India, Luis de Mendonça Furtado, upon the advice of the ministers of the council of the treasury gave to the directors of the new council of commerce of Mozambique and the rivers of Cuama, that they may be carried into execution and observed with all the legal authority and power contained in them, as declared herein by your Highness. By your Highness's resolution of the 3rd of March 1675, upon a conference of the ultramarine council of the 6th of February of the said year. Registered in the books of the secretary of the ultramarine council, page 103, in Lisbon, on the 21st of March 1675.

Conde vRey amigo Eu o Principe vos envio muito Saudar Como aquelle que amo. Havendo a vossa Carta de vinte de Janeiro do anno passado de mil Seis centos e Setenta e quatro tocante a Andre furtado da companhia de IEsvs o mandey ouvir sobre os particulares da India que praticou com os Ministros que lhe deputey em primeiro Lugar a empreza de Mascate e pellas Consideraçoes que lhe Apontou E os Ministros fizeraõ pareceo mui conveniente pello em execuçaõ para isso fim mandey dispor o meyo Convinentes e quando se tratava delles Sobrevieraõ alguns accidentes que obrigarã a Suspende este intento dezejando eu que elle fosse avante e como se entendeu naõ podia passar a India este anno aquelle Socorro que Andre Furtado apontava Ser necessario para Se conseguir a empreza acharse nella a vossa pessoa Se passou e naõ aos particulares de moçãbique e Rios de Cuama e se viraõ novamente as vossas Cartas e as de Ioaõ de Souza Freire que trataraõ da materia dos Rios em que tambem mandey ouvir Andre Furtado que propoz tambem este negocio. Pareceo que estando Ioaõ de Souza Freire dentro dos Rios de Cuama para Sahir com exercito em razaõ das desconfanças e mais suspeitas que havia do Emperador de Monomotapa tendo Conceigo hum negocio que as Segurança entregar lhe as Minas de prata de que lhe havia trazido a mostra e Ser Irmaõ devoto que estava nas mesmas minas ambos queixozos e offendidos do Emperador Se devia esperar o effeito desta empreza porque havendo sido bom devieis ajudar o progresso deste negocio de tanta importancia e quando naõ haja sido falice Concideradas as Circunstancias devieis acudir aquella parte para Conservar aquella Conquista na forma em que te agora se fez procurando a melhora ficando na vossa disposiçaõ a direcçaõ deste negocio ouvindo o Conselho de Estado e me confirmei com o referido fiando da vossa prudencia e do grande conhecimento que tendes das Couzas desse Estado, que acudireis a Monçãbique e aos Rios naquella forma que os accidentes mostravem que he mais conveniente a meu Serviço valendo vos do Lucros do Contrato de Monçãbique para as Satisfaçoes prezidios e para dar cales ao descubrimento Contabolamento das minas para cujo fim em cazo que as minas tenhaõ effeito se vos remete a Lougue nesta monçaõ procurando para o exame dellas alguns mineiros dessa Parte da India em quanto Se acha algum desta parte que se possa enviar e Se fica fazendo deligencia e em

quanto se não acha ou hum ou outro se trabalhara no apurar da prata na forma em que se puder fazer ainda que toscamente E porque tambem se representou que Sendo a impreza de Mascate de tão grande importancia e Sabindo da feitoria de Congo a mayor parte do dispendio que fazia a Armada do estreito e quanto mais persistia mais era o rēdimento da feitoria menor o Comercio do Arabio e se debilitava com esta assistencia se devia continuar todos os annos a Armada que o Estado pudesse fazer para este fim e invernar naquellas partes Sendo possivel porque faria mayor effeito atormentaria mais o Arabio e poria a Mascate em forma que viesse a ser mais facil a empreza e que esta continuação das Armadas não impossibilitava os progressos de Moçambique pois ate agora se faziaõ só a fim de enfrear o Arabio e acrescetar o rēdimento da feitoria que Servia ao Seu dispendio ficando ainda assim sem impossibilidade para se acudir a parte de Moçambique e Rios Cujo dispendio havia de Sahir dos Lucros do negocio e comercio pella forma que se tinha dado aquelle contrato administrado pela minha fazenda Com o que me confirmeis tambem e assim podeis continuar com as armadas que vos forem possiveis no Estreito da Percia na forma que te agora se fazia apertando quanto puder ser a praça de Mascate e applicando a esta despeza os rendimentos da Feitoria do Congo abrando a que Comforme as Circunstancias e accidentes do tempo e dos successos for mais conviniente para o fim que se pertende entendendosse que na forma sem embarçaõ de huma e outra Couza se podem Continuar os progressos de Moçambique e Rios e ter opprimidos os Arabios que Saõ as duas Couzas mais importantes hoje a India e na consideraçaõ de o Serem mandeis considerar qual destas duas emprezas havia de preceder no cazo em que o Estado se achasse com forças emprender alguma dellas porem como isto dependa do inteiro conhecimento proximo do Estado das Couzas me pareceo que vos como conselho de Estado deveis julgar a qual das duas emprezas era mais facivel que essa devia Sera proferida e que Sendo ambas igualmente factiveis se devia preierir aquella que julgasseis mais importante para a Conservaçã desse Estado na occaziaõ de as emprender assim o ficareis entendõ e que Sendo procurara na monçaõ futura Soccorer vos com tudo quanto for possivel para que se possa Conseguir e huma e outra empreza. Escrita em Lisboa aos tres de Abril de mil Seis centos Setteuta e Sinco. Principe.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, viceroy, friend, I the prince greet you well, as one whom I love. Having received your letter of the 20th of January of last year, 1674, concerning André Furtado, of the Society of Jesus, I commanded his opinion to be asked upon the affairs of India, which he discussed with the ministers whom I deputed to him, speaking in the first place of the enterprise to Muscat. And considering the reasons which he stated, and which the ministers brought forward, it appeared most advisable to carry it into execution, to which end I commanded proper measures to be taken, and while these were being dealt with various circumstances occurred which compelled this design to be suspended, though I desire it to be pushed forward.

It being understood that it was impossible to send this year to India the reinforcements which André Furtado stated were required in that place to carry out this enterprise, they proceeded to discuss matters concerning yourself and the affairs of Mozambique and the rivers of Cuama. Your letters and those of João de Sousa Freire dealing with the subject of the rivers, and the counsel of André Furtado, who suggested the matter, have been again examined. It appeared that if João de Sousa Freire is in the rivers of Cuama, ready to advance with an army, on account of the distrust and other suspicions entertained with regard to the emperor of Monomotapa, having undertaken an enterprise which we are assured will cause the silver mines to be delivered to him, of which a specimen was brought to him by his zealous brother, who was in those mines, both of whom complain of, and are displeased with the emperor, we should await the result of this enterprise, which being successful, you should give your assistance in advancing this most important matter.

Should it be unsuccessful, the circumstances being considered, you should send assistance to that place to preserve the said conquest upon the same footing established up to the present, and endeavour to advance it, the management of this business being left to your discretion, with the opinion of the council of state.

I have sanctioned the above, trusting that by your prudence and your extensive knowledge of the affairs of that state, you

will take such measures with regard to Mozambique and the rivers as circumstances prove to be most conducive to my service, availing yourself of the profits of the trade of Mozambique for rewards and the charges of the garrisons, and to successfully conclude the discovery of the mines. For which purpose, in case the mines are successful, means are sent to you by this monsoon, efforts being made to obtain for the inspection of the mines various miners from that part of India, and steps are being taken to discover whether there are any in this place whom it is possible to send, and if neither one nor the other are found, they shall endeavour to examine the silver as well as they are able to, even though roughly.

As it was further represented that the enterprise against Muscat was of the greatest importance, and that the larger part of the expenses for the fleet of the strait was furnished by the factory of Congo, it being insisted upon that the greater the profits of the factory, the less extensive was the commerce of Arabia, which was weakened by this assistance, the fleet which the state is able to support for this purpose should be continued every year, and should if possible winter in those parts, because thus its results would be larger, it would be of greater utility in molesting Arabia, and would place Muscat in a position which would render the enterprise more feasible. It was also considered that this maintenance of the fleets did not impede the progress of Mozambique, because up to the present the fleet was formed with the sole purpose of restraining Arabia, and increasing the profits of the factory, which served to supply its expenses; and even thus, it was not impossible to succour Mozambique and the rivers, the expenses of which were to be paid from the profits of the trade and commerce, upon the conditions of the said trade being undertaken by my treasury; which I also approved of.

You may therefore continue to maintain the fleets which you are able to keep in the straits of Persia, in the same manner as up to the present, restraining the fort of Muscat as far as possible, expending the profits of the factory of Congo in meeting this expense, and taking those measures which, according to circumstances and to present occurrences and events, are most conducive to the attainment of the end in view, in such a manner as, offering no hindrance to either matter, will allow of the progress of Mozambique and the rivers and the oppression of the Arabians

to be continued, which are the two most important matters of the day, as regards India.

In consideration of their being so, you shall give order to consider which of these two enterprises shall have precedence, in the event of the state having the forces to enable it to undertake one of them; nevertheless as this depends on absolute and close knowledge of the condition of affairs, I think it fitting that you with the council of state should judge which of these two undertakings is most feasible, and that this one should be given the preference; and both being equally feasible, the one which you judge to be the most important for the preservation of that state should be given the preference, when there is an opportunity of undertaking them, which you must understand accordingly, and that measures will be taken to send you, in the coming monsoon, all the assistance which it is possible to afford, so that both these enterprises may be carried into execution.

Written in Lisbon, the 3rd of April 1675.

THE PRINCE.

---

Dom Pedro de Almeida VizoRey da India amigo eu o Príncipe vos envio muito Saudar. Considerando a importancia do negocio de Mosambique, e Rios, e mandando Ver esta materia naõ Só com avizo do VRey Luis de Mendonça na Nau Saõ Pedro de Rates que obrigaraõ ao dos Rios mas com todas as noticias que haviaõ chegado antecedente, e que havia praticado Andre Furtado da companhia de Jesus quando aqui veyo p ordem do mesmo VizoRey que era conveniente acodir lhe promptamente pellas Consequencias, e vtilidades que se poderiaõ tirar para esse Estado, e este Reino como tambem os receyos de que de todo fossem prejudicado os Comercios com algum intentos das naçoens ambiciozas delles, e attender a Separança da Mombaça commersio da India para aquelle Costa de Africa, e Ilhas adjacentes. Fuy Servido rezolver que na monção de Setembro que Vem passam a Mossambique Sinco embarçaõens com Seicentos Infantes, e Seus officiaes e Sincoenta cazaes para se dar principio a pouvação dos rios com ordem que podendo estes Cazaes dezembarcar Logo de passagem em quillimane o façãõ empreza vtil ao mesmo Moss<sup>e</sup> rios, e Estado da India, e se julgou que a mais Conveniente mais necessaria, e mais vtil Seria o Castigo de El Rey

de Pate, e dos mais regullos Levantados daquella costa, e Ilhas que hera o fim e que se destinava a Armada de Dom Hjeronimo Mauoel na ocazião em que os Arabios foraõ Sobre Mossambique, e ali chegou Luis de Mendonça, e de presente o obrigou mandar duas fragatas huma a Mossambique, e outra a Mombaça porque nesta forma se poderia Sem perder tpo facilitar o commersio intimidar aquelles Regulos e refrear os Arabios, e como vos dispnzestes a passar a India nesta monçaõ, e com prudencia, e autoridade das interesse, e direçaõ se podera emCaminhar ao bom fim que dezejo Couza taõ importãte como he dar conta digo forma ao que tenho nos Rios recuperar o que a insolencia, e maõ governo tem perdido nelles reduzir os Regullos Levantados emprender faças que parecerem Convenientes para se vtilizar o Estado da India e ainda poderse passar a esperanza de Sua recuperaçã Vos ordeno, e mando que chegado a Goa depois de tomar posse do governo daquelle Estado, e com todas as noticias das couzas de Mossambique passeis aquellas partes para os effeitos referido com o mesmo titulo poder e jurisdicãõ de VRey desde o Cabo delgado athe o Cabo de boa Esperança e Ilhas adjacentes debaixo da mesma Patente e menagem que me tendo dado. Levantando vola mais governo da India em quanto tiverdes nos Rios porque do mais governo da India o haõ de dar os Governadores que Sahirem nas Vias que mando abrir quando hoverdes de partir ticando elles com toda a jurisdicãõ Só naquella parte, e Comessareis a Vencer desdoa em que vos embarcardes em Goa Vinte mil Cruzados de ordenado, e a do anno que deste Reino se vos haõ de remeter nas monçoens a Mossambique nos que aly vos detiverdes e p que a forma que se tem tomado no Contrato dos Rios por Conta da minha fazenda, e a direçaõ que se lhe tem tomado digo dado para Se haver de menejar podera Convir que Com a execuçãõ digo ocaziãõ deste socorro e da Vossa passagem aquellas partes Se altere em parte ou em todo a forma que Se tem dado a direçaõ deste Contrato, Vos mando, e emcomendo muito que antes que sahia de Goa dexeis aSentada, e ajustada aquella que Se deve ter observar e guardar em quanto naõ mandar outra Couza em Contrario tomando para isso os pareceres dos Deputados da junta, e das mais pessoas que vos parecer entendendo juntamente que nos mais annos seguintes Se ha de ajudar daqui, e dar callor a Continuaçãõ deste negocio, e Sem embargo das pervençoens que mando fazer em Mossambique e

Rios que Vereis da *Copia da Carta* que mando escrever ao Supretendente da minha fazenda em Mosambique pello Patoxo Saõ Ioaõ de Deos que vai em vossa Companhia que ha de tomar e ficar naquella Ilha para o ter entendido quando Vos o naõ possais tomar para lhe dardes as ordens Convenientes Vai ordem da junta de Administração do tabaco para daquelle effeito Se entreguem a Vossa trinta mil Cruzados os quaes despenderis na Compra de mantimentos, e mais Couzas que julgardes por necessarias para a empreza de Pate, e Socorro dos rios, e nesta parte naõ excedereis emjujar por mayor quantia que esta que Se vos declara pello danno que pode rezultar do contrario bem considerado tambem que Sendo o negocio de Pate, e Socorro dos Rios de tanta Consideraçã para a India deve o mesmo Estado Concorrer Com o mayor esorço que for possivel, e porque Convein Sempre que Vã Com Vosço pessoa de zello e espriencia e que Seja digna de fazerdes della toda a confiança Considerando a tella feito Luis de Mendonça de Ioaõ de Souza freire em o mandar aos Rios com o posto de capitaõ geral delles. Hey por bem com o mesmo titullo, e posto achandose ainda nos Rios exercendo em quanto aly estiverdes, e achandosse ja de Volta em Goa passe com Vosço com este mesmo posto para vos Suceder quando por algum cazo falteis ficando o mesmo titulo de Capitaõ geral de Mossambique, e Rios com poderes, e jurdiçoens que atualmente tem, e parecendo vos que Convem a meu Serviço aplicar lhos, ou diminuir lhos nesta partes o fareis; e para que as Couzas sobredito possa ter seu comprido effeito, e deixardes ajustado, e compostos tudo o cõveniente a ella vos detereis nos Rios por tempo de dous annos findos os quaes, e entregando o governo como fica referido a Ioaõ de Souza freire passareis a Goa a continuar o governo daquelle estado entendendo porem que Convein a meu Serviço aSistirdes mais tempo aLê do dous annos; que vos declaro depois de chegarde aos Rios podereis continuar o tempo que julgardes cõveniente para de todo assentardes, e dardes forma ao que aly ha que fazer, e por quanto na empreza do Pate Se consideraõ as Conveniencias q̄ Se apontaõ nesta, e podera succeder que em tempo ou algum novo accidente tenha esterado ou em parte ou em todas as ditas consideraçoens, e impossibilidade digo impossibilitado esta empreza ficarã Sempre na vossa disposiçã emprender, ou naõ esta façã, e advertireis que ao tempo que ouverdes de partir para Mossam-



bique Como aSima vos ordeno quando vos embarcardes no tempo que vos parecer mandareis abrir as Vias do Sucessa que hora mando remeter ao Guardiaõ do Cõvento de Saõ Francisco de Goa deixado entregue o governo a pessoa ou pessoas que nellas se acharem nomeadas, e no Cazo q̃ seja falecido Ioaõ de Souza freire no tempo que partirdes para Mossambique trareis em vossa Companhia a pessoa da India que julgardes mais capaz p<sup>a</sup> vos ajudar em tudo, o de que vos emCarrego, e Com os Requezitos necessarios pã vos poder Suceder Com o mesmo titulo na mesma forma do que havia de vzar Ioaõ de Souza freire advertindo tambem que as mais pessoas que comVosco troxerdes da India Sejaõ de toda a Capacidade, e assim estas Como o Mestre do Campo que de ca Vai Com a Infantaria Se devem proceder pellas antiguidade de Suas patentes, e na elleiçaõ do Mestre do Campo se provera seja em pessoa que possa satisfazer bem as obrigaçoens deste officio, e fallecendo Ioaõ de Souza freire Como fica dito podereis escolher Sogeito mais Capaz para o Seu posto naõ obstante que pella antiguidade da Sua patente os outros o prefiraõ, e Sucedendo fallecerdes vos e ficar Ioaõ de Souza freire e a elle, e aos Seus Sucessores por Sua morte lhe concedo a mesma faculdade em quanto naõ determinar o Contrario prevendo a propriedade, e quãdo vos pareça ocupar a Dom Rodrigo da Costa nesta jornada o podereis fazer acomodando o Como Convier a meu Serviço naõ obstante hir por Capitaõ mor das Naos quando elle Se acomode a isso e advirtireis para a vossa partida de Goa para Mossambique ha de Ser na monçaõ de Ianeiro de 678, o mais cedo que puderdes para q̃ vos possais achar em Mossambique que ainda algum tempo antes de chegar aquella Ilha, e Socorro que daqui ha de partir em Setembro, e nesta forma possais ter Lugar de dispor o que for mais Conveniente para o Receber, e alojar. espero eu de quem Vos Sois do amor e zello que tendis a meu serviço disponhais este negocio de maneira que rezultem ao Estado da India a este Reino as vtilidades que Consideraõ, e a vos huma grande Gloria desta açãõ que tereis muito presente para vos fazer merce. Escrita em Lisboa a 5 de Abril de 677.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Dom Pedro de Almeida, viceroy of India, friend, I the prince greet you well. Bearing in mind the importance of the affairs

of Mozambique and the rivers, and having commanded this matter to be examined not only with the reports concerning the rivers forwarded by the viceroy Luis de Mendonça in the ship *São Pedro*, but with all the previous reports which had previously arrived, and the information furnished by André Furtado, of the Society of Jesus, when he came here by order of the aforesaid viceroy, who declared it to be advisable to supply him promptly with assistance, on account of the results and profits which might be gained for that state and this kingdom, and also owing to fear that the commerce would be in every way damaged by the designs of the nations who are covetous of it, by attempting the separation of Mombasa and possessing themselves of the trade from India to that part of the African coast and the adjacent islands :

I have thought fit to resolve that in the monsoon of next September five ships shall proceed to Mozambique with six hundred infantry, their officers, and fifty married people to commence the populating of the rivers, with orders that should these married men be able to land in passing Quilimane, they shall do so, and undertake some enterprise useful to Mozambique itself, the rivers, and India. It appears that the enterprise which would be most proper, most necessary, and most advantageous, would be the punishment of the king of Pate and the petty kings of that coast and the islands who have risen in rebellion, for which purpose the fleet of Dom Hieronimo Manuel was destined at the time when the Arabs attacked Mozambique and Luis de Mendonça reached that place ; and at the present day he is compelled to dispatch two frigates, one to Mozambique and the other to Mombasa ; and in this manner, without loss of time, they will facilitate commerce, intimidate the said petty kings, and restrain the Arabs.

As you are preparing to proceed to India in this monsoon, and with prudence, authority, interest, and good management, a matter of such importance may be brought to the successful issue which I desire, such as putting into good order what I possess in the rivers, regaining what insolence and bad government have lost, subjecting the petty kings who have rebelled, undertaking the military enterprises which appear fitting and useful for the state of India, and as even the hope may be entertained of recovering what has been lost, I order and command you upon

arriving at Goa, after taking possession of the government of that state and obtaining all the information you can upon the affairs of Mozambique, to proceed to those places for the purposes referred to, with the same title, power, and jurisdiction of viceroy from Cape Delgado to the Cape of Good Hope and the adjacent islands, under the same commission and the same oath which you have sworn to me.

You will be relieved of the government of the remainder of India during the time you are in the rivers, because it is to be ruled by the governors who are named in the letters which I command to be opened when you set sail from Goa, and they are to have sole jurisdiction over that part.

From the day upon which you set sail from Goa you shall receive a salary of twenty thousand cruzados, and the years' salary which is to be remitted to you from this kingdom in the mousoons shall be sent to Mozambique during such time as you remain there.

As the conditions upon which the commerce of the rivers carried on by my treasury is established and the rules provided for the administration of it may require to be changed in part, or the entire management of it altered, on the occasion of this reinforcement and your journey to those parts, I command and earnestly recommend you before setting sail from Goa to leave the rules which are to be observed and kept until contrary orders are given well established and settled, obtaining for this purpose the opinions of the deputies of the council and such other persons as you think fit, understanding at the same time that in the following years assistance is to be sent from this kingdom for the zealous continuation of this matter, notwithstanding the measures which I command shall be taken in Mozambique and the rivers, which you will see from the copy of the letter which I command to be written to the superintendent of my treasury in Mozambique and sent by the pinnace *São João de Deus*, which sails with you, and which is to put in and remain at the said island, to give information if you are unable to put in there to issue the necessary orders.

An order is sent from the council for the administration of tobacco to deliver to you thirty thousand cruzados, which you shall expend in purchasing provisions and other things that you judge requisite for the enterprise against Pate and the support of

the rivers; and you shall not exceed the amount stated and send for a larger sum to this place, on account of the damage which might be occasioned by your acting to the contrary.

As it is considered that this enterprise against Pate and the support of the rivers is of such importance to India, the said state must take part in it, affording all the assistance possible.

And as it is advisable that you should be always accompanied by a person of zeal and experience, who may be worthy of the confidence which you shall repose in him, and as Luis de Mendonça in sending João de Sousa Freire to the rivers as commander in chief considers him competent for this purpose, I think fit that if he is still at the rivers he shall enjoy the same title and post during such time as you remain there, and should he have already returned to Goa, he shall accompany you, holding the same post, to replace you when for any reason you shall be absent, enjoying, with the said title of commander in chief of Mozambique and the rivers, the power and jurisdiction which he actually possesses; and should you think it conducive to my service to increase or to decrease this power, you shall act accordingly.

That the aforesaid matters may be brought to a successful conclusion, and that you may leave all things conducive to this end settled and in good order, you shall remain two years at the rivers, at the end of which time, having made over the government to João de Sousa Freire, as aforesaid, you shall proceed to Goa, to continue governing that state; nevertheless you must understand that should it be conducive to my service for you to remain longer than the two years stated after your arrival at the rivers, you may remain there during such time as you judge to be necessary, that you may perform what is to be done there, and leave matters settled and in good order.

As regards the enterprise against Pate, the advantages have been considered in this, but it may be that by time or by some new occurrence these considerations will have lost their weight, entirely or in part, and this enterprise may have become impossible, therefore it is left to your discretion to undertake it or not.

I inform you that when you set sail for Mozambique, according to my order, when you embark, at such time as you think fit, you shall command the letters of succession to be opened, which I

am now sending to the superior of the convent of São Francisco at Goa, making over the government to the person or persons named therein.

In the event of João de Sousa Freire's death before you set sail for Mozambique, you shall take with you from India the person whom you consider to be most capable of assisting you in all the matters which I have entrusted to you, and having the necessary qualifications to enable him to succeed you with the same title and in the same manner as João de Sousa Freire was to have done. I inform you also that the other persons whom you shall take with you from India must have all the necessary abilities, and that these, as well as the colonel who sails from here with the infantry, shall have precedence according to the seniority of their commissions; and the colonel who is elected must be a person who is able to successfully carry out the duties of this office.

In the event of João de Sousa Freire's death, as aforesaid, you may elect to replace him the person who is most capable of filling his post, notwithstanding that by the seniority of their commissions others should have the preference.

In the event of your death, and of João de Sousa Freire replacing you, I grant the same power to him, and to those who succeed him after his death, until such time as I think fit to order to the contrary.

If you think fit to employ Dom Rodrigo da Costa in this expedition, you may do so, employing him in a manner fitting my service, although he sails as commander in chief of the ships, if he is willing.

I inform you that you should leave Goa for Mozambique in the monsoon of January 1678, as early as you can, that you may reach Mozambique before the reinforcements that are to sail from this place in September arrive at that island, and in this manner you may be enabled to arrange for receiving and quartering them.

I hope that from your love and zeal for my service, you will execute this business in such a manner that the state of India and this kingdom may receive the advantages referred to, and that you will gain great glory from this action, which I shall bear in mind to reward you.

Written in Lisbon, the 5th of April 1677.

Governadores do Estado da Índia Ev o Principe vos envio muito Saudar. Mando ao VizoRey Dom Pedro de Almeida a Mossambique e Rios na forma que o tereis entendido pellos despachos, e ordens que vos saõ presente, e ainda que vos ficaeis com juridição separada imdepedente das suas ordens em quanto se tiver naquellas partes Com tudo me pareceo dizer vos que sendo o fim a que o mando de tanta importancia, e Vtilidade a esse Estado Como bem se deixa Considerar dos effeitos que pode produzir a Sua jornada para a liberdade, e Segurança do Comerçssio da India para aquella Costa Ilhas, e Rios Sera muy Cõveniente este fim e a meu Serviço tenhais Cõ o VRey toda a Corespondencia, e o ajudeis pella vossa parte com tudo aquillo que ao Estado for possivel para o progresso daquelle designio no tempo em que o V.Rey se detiver naquellas partes em que podera necessitar de algumas Couzas para Conseguir o que lhe ordeno, e isto Sem embargo de que deste Reino se ha de ajudar, e dar Callor a Continuaçaõ deste negocio pella facellidade com que dessa vizinhança Se lhe podera acudir mais promptamente Com a noticia q̃ elle der. E lhe mando escrever que da mesma maneira que se Logre o bom effeito do Socorro do empenho, e da vtilidade desse Estado o que tudo vos hey por mim emCarregado, e espero que assim o executeis Com aquelle cuidado, e zello, que de Vos se espera. escrita em Lisboa a 8 de Abril de 1677.

Principe.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Governors of the state of India, I the prince greet you well. I send the viceroy Dom Pedro de Almeida to Mozambique and the rivers, as you will understand by the despatches and orders with which you are acquainted; and although your jurisdiction is separate and independent of his orders during the time that he remains in those parts, nevertheless I think fit to inform you that as the purpose for which I send him there is of such importance and advantage to that state, as is plainly shown, and as the results which may be attained by his journey, with regard to the freedom and security of the commerce of India on that coast and those islands and rivers, will be most conducive to my service, you shall correspond with him and render him on your part all the assistance which the state can provide for the advancement

of the said design, while the viceroy remains in those parts, during which time he may require some help to carry out my orders.

You shall do this, notwithstanding that from this kingdom he is to be assisted in energetically carrying this matter into execution, because from your vicinity to him you may more promptly assist him upon being notified by him of his needs. And I command him to be written to, that in the same way he may avail himself of the advantage of the assistance, diligence, and utility of that state. All of which I earnestly recommend to you, and trust that you will act accordingly, with the care and zeal which are expected from you.

Written in Lisbon, the 8th of April 1677.

THE PRINCE.

Manoel Ferreira Carualho profeso da ordem de Sam thiago veedor e Contador geral dos Rios de Sofala e Mossambique pelo Principe nosso Sñor &c. Certifico que as f 22 do Liuro primeiro dos Registos Reaes que se uie nesta veedoria, e Contadoria geral dos ditos Rios, esta Registado hum extracto do qual o theor do verbo ad uerbum he o Seguinte. Eu o Principe Como Regente e governador dos Reinos de Portugal e Algarues Faço Saber a vos Manoel Ferreira que ora mando por Veedor e Contador geral e administrador de minha Fazenda dos Rios de Sofalla e Mossambique, que nos pagamentos dos Soldos e ordenados dos officiaes da guerra Iustica e fazenda dessa Conquista Sigais o extracto Seguinte naquelles em Cujas patentes, Cartas, Prouizoens, e Aluaras naõ Leuaraõ declarado por mim o que han de vencer de Seus Soldos de que haueis de mandar fazer assento nos Liuros a que tocar assim da primeira plana da Carta 3º e Comp<sup>a</sup>, os q<sup>m</sup> Soldos han de vencer todas aquellas pessoas que me Seruirem nessa Conquista Com declaraçãõ da quarta parte dos Soldos Com que aqui mando assistir as mulheres, e familias de alguns dos ditos officiaes. Hauereis de Soldo Com o nosso Cargo a Rezaõ de Sincoenta mil Res por mez que he o que vos mandey declarar. o Pagador geral dessa Conquista hauera por mez quorenta mil Res de seu Soldo para sy e Seus Caxeiros. Official mayor, e Comiqario de Mir<sup>a</sup> hauera por mez vinte sinco mil Res. o Primeiro official da vedoria, e Contadoria gr<sup>a</sup> hauera de soldo por mez doze mil Res. o Escriuaõ da Receita e despeza de

Thezoureiro geral hauera por mez doze mil Res. Hum Almoixerife das Armas monçoens e mantimentos hauera por mez Seu Escruiaõ da Receita e despeza hauera por mez doze mil Res. Hum merinho da vedoria e Contadoria geral hauera por mez dez mil Res Seu Escruiaõ hauera por mez oito mil. Hum guarda Liuros hauera por mez seis mil Res Dous Continuos hauera por mez Seis mil Res. Hum ouuidor geral e auditor da gente de guerra hauera por mez vinte sinco mil Res. Seu Escruiaõ que tambem ha de seruir na Auditoria e Correiaõ hauera por mez douze mil Res Hum merinho da ouuidoria geral da Correiaõ e Audit<sup>r</sup> hauera por mez dez mil Res Seu Escruiaõ hauera por mez oito mil Res. Hum Porteiro hauera por mez sinco mil Res quatro homens da vara haueraõ cada hum por mez tres mil res. Hum condestauel que vay deste Reino hauera por mez tres mil nouecentos e sincoenta res. Ao Phizico da conquista quinze mil Res. Ao Sirurgiaõ mor quinze mil res. Ao mestre de campo do 3<sup>o</sup> guarniçaõ da conquista quorenta e Seis mil E quatro centos Res. Ao sargento mayor vinte seis mil por mez. A cada hum dos Ajud<sup>tes</sup> Supras a duzentos Res por dia. Ao Capellaõ mor do 3<sup>o</sup> dez mil res por mez. Ao Capitaõ da Comp<sup>a</sup> dez mil res por mez. Ao Furriel mor seis mil res por mez. Ao Tambor mor seis mil Res por mez. A cada Capitaõ da Infantaria dezaseis mil Res por mez. A cada hum dos Alferes da Infant<sup>a</sup> oito mil Res por mez. A cada hum dos sargentos do numero seis mil quatro Centos res por mez. A cada hum dos sargentos supras oitenta res por dia. A cada hum dos Cabos de esquadra oitenta res por dia. A cada Tambor e page da genetta a Sincoenta Res por dia. A cada embandeirada quorenta res por dia. E porque os soldos dos Razos vencem neste Reino a Sincoenta res por dia sendo Estillo dar se lhe mais na India assim se fara entendendosse o mesmo com os sargentos supras e Cabos de esquadras Samente. E os mais Praças que houuer na guarniçaõ dos Rios de Sofalla se ha de seguir com ellas o estillo q̄ aLy se pratica no pagamento de seus soldos, e ordenados s̄ alteraçãõ alguma, e assim se executara Como officiaes mayores e menores soldados e os mais que vencem Soldos, e ordenados na Praça de Mossambique, e os Capitaës de mar e guerra que uaõ nestas embarçaõens han de ser socorridos na forma dos Capitaës de Infantaria porem na Consignaçaõ que vay para o pagamento da gente do mar e Artilheiros das mesmas embarçaõens.



E a todos os officiaes da guerra, Iustiça, e fazenda se ha de pagar na forma sobre dita e aquelles q̄ por minha ordem mandey assistir nesse Reino Com a quarta pr<sup>o</sup> de seus Soldos a suas Cazas, e familias se ha de decontar em cada mez a que importara dita quarta parte para Se inteirarem vinte mil Cruzados de ordenado do vRey e Capitaõ Geral que em cada hum anno mando hir deste Reino menos o que se ha de entregar nos Rios do abatimento da dita quarta parte. E nesta Confirmitade se faraõ os ditos pagamentos Seguindo em tudo novo Regimento p<sup>o</sup> que ordeno ao VRey e Capitaõ Geral, e mais off<sup>es</sup> mayores, e menores de Iustiça, fazenda, e guerra Cumpraõ este extracto Como nelle se conthem sem embargo nem Contradiçaõ alguma de quaesquer ordens que houuer em Contrario e de naõ passar pela chanceleria o qual sera Registado nos Liuros dos officios da veedoria e Contadoria geral, e mais partes aonde for necessario. Antonio Serraõ Carualho o fez em Lisboa a dezaseis de outubro de 658. O Secretario Manoel Barreiro de Sampayo o fez escreuer. Principe. Conde Valdos Rios. por Rezulaçaõ de sua Alteza de 14 de Outubro de 677. Em Consulta do Concelho vltr<sup>o</sup> de dez do dito mez e anno, e naõ conthem mais o d<sup>o</sup> Registo Com o theor do qual mandey passar a presente Certidaõ de Copia por my assinada p<sup>a</sup> Constar onde Convenha. Manoel da Fonceiqua official de veedoria e Contadoria geral a fez em Mossambique as dous dias do mez de Junho de 678 annos. Manoel Ferreira.

Conforme o propio.

LUIS SOARES DA COSTA.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

I Manuel Ferreira Carvalho, knight of the order of Santiago, controller and accountant general of the rivers of Sofala and Mozambique for our lord the prince, certify that on folio 22 of book 1st of the royal register existing in this office of the controller and accountant general of the said rivers is entered an extract, which word for word is as follows:—

I the prince, as regent and governor of the kingdoms of Portugal and the Algarves, make known to you Manuel Ferreira, whom I at present send to be controller and accountant general and administrator of my treasury of the rivers of Sofala and

Mozambique, that in paying the salaries of the military and civil officers of that conquest you shall follow the following extract with regard to those in whose patents, letters, orders, and charters I have not stated what salary they are to enjoy, of which you shall cause an entry to be made in the proper books, which salaries shall be paid to all those persons who serve me in that conquest, with a statement of the fourth part of the salaries, which part I command to be paid in this place to the wives and families of some of the said officers.

With your office you shall enjoy a salary of fifty thousand reis per month, which is what I have commanded. The paymaster general of that conquest shall be paid a salary of forty thousand reis per month for himself and his cashiers. The chief official and commissioner of merchandise shall have twenty-five thousand reis per month. The chief official of the controller and accountant general's office shall have twelve thousand reis per month. The secretary who keeps the accounts of the chief treasury shall have twelve thousand reis per month. The receiver of customs duty on arms, ammunition, and stores shall have  
The secretary who keeps his accounts shall have twelve thousand reis per month. An official of the accountant general's office shall have ten thousand reis per month, and his secretary shall have eight thousand. A bookkeeper shall have six thousand reis per month. Two messengers shall have six thousand reis per month. A chief magistrate and military auditor shall have twenty-five thousand reis per month. His secretary, who has also to serve as auditor of the court, shall have twelve thousand reis per month. An official of this magistracy shall have ten thousand reis per month. His secretary shall have eight thousand reis per month. A porter shall have five thousand reis per month. Four attendants shall have three thousand reis per month each. A chief gunner who sails from this kingdom shall have three thousand nine hundred and fifty reis. The physician of the conquest shall have fifteen thousand reis. The chief surgeon fifteen thousand reis. The colonel of the forces of the conquest forty-six thousand four hundred reis. The major twenty-six thousand reis per month. Each of the additional adjutants two hundred reis per diem. The chief chaplain of the army ten thousand reis per month. The captain of a company ten thousand reis per month. The quartermaster six'

thousand reis per month. The chief drummer six thousand reis per month. Each captain of infantry sixteen thousand reis per month. Every infantry ensign eight thousand reis per month. Every sergeant of the number assigned six thousand four hundred reis per month. Each supernumerary sergeant eighty reis per diem. Each corporal eighty reis per diem. Each drummer and equerry fifty reis per diem. Each standard bearer forty reis per diem. And as the salary given to priests in this kingdom is fifty reis per diem, they shall receive a higher salary in India, according to the usual custom, the same being understood with regard to the supernumerary sergeants and corporals only.

With regard to the pay of the other soldiers of the garrison of the rivers of Sofala, the rules in existence in that place shall be followed without any alteration whatever, the same being done with regard to the officers of high or low grade, soldiers, and other persons receiving pay and salaries in the fortress of Mozambique.

The naval and military captains sailing in these ships are to be paid in the same manner as the infantry captains, but from the consignment sent for the payment of the sailors and gunners of the said ships.

All the military and civil officers are to be paid in the manner aforesaid, and as to those whom I command by my order to give the fourth part of their salaries in this kingdom for the assistance of their houses and families, this fourth part shall be deducted every month to make up the twenty thousand cruzados for the yearly salary of the viceroy and commander in chief, whom I send from this kingdom, deducting from this fourth part the sum which has to be paid out of it at the rivers.

The payments shall be made in accordance with this, the new regulations being strictly observed, therefore I command the viceroy and commander in chief and the other military and civil officers of all ranks to observe this extract according to the manner therein stated, notwithstanding any orders which may have been issued to the contrary, and notwithstanding that it has not passed through chancery, and it shall be entered in the books of the officials of the superintendent and accountant general's office and wherever else is necessary.

Drawn up by Antonio Serrão Carvalho in Lisbon, on the 16th of October 1658.

The secretary Manuel Barreto de Sampayo caused it to be written.

THE PRINCE.

THE COUNT OF VALDEREIS.

By resolution of his Highness of the 14th of October 1677, after a conference of the ultramarine council on the 10th of the said month and year.

The said register contains nothing further, and I commanded the present certified copy to be made in accordance with its tenor, and signed by me, that it may appear where necessary.

Drawn up by Manuel da Fonseca, official of the superintendent and accountant general's office in Mozambique, on the 2nd of June in the year 1678.

MANUEL FERREIRA.

In accordance with the original.

LUIS SOARES DA COSTA.

---

Dom Pedro de Almeida VRey da India amigo. Eu o Principe vos envio muito saudar. Por Ioaõ Gonçalves de Brito aSistente nessa Cidade me Representar que tenha hum Irmaõ por nomem gonçalo Ioaõ morador nos Rios de Senna passara a esse Estado para lhe aSistir e por em aRecadeçaõ Seos bens por Serem de muita consideraçaõ, e se achar sem filhos, e que tendo hora noticia que o d<sup>o</sup> Seu Irmaõ hera falecido, querendo passar aos Rios lhe naõ permetira licença por estar prohibido a passar-se aquellas partes sem especial licença minha; e porque as cauzas saõ muito justificadas, e a Sua aSistencia naquelles Rios necessaria, porque se naõ por maons alheas a fazenda do dito Seu Irmaõ que lhe tocaua me pedia lhe fizesse merce conceder licença para poder passar dessa Cidade, ou de qualquer outra parte desse Estado em que se achar aos ditos Rios de Senna, ou mandar os procuradores que lhe parecer a tratar da cobrança da dita fazenda sem que se lhe impida a d<sup>a</sup> jornada naõ obstante qualquer ordem ou prohibiçaõ minha em contrario, e visto o que me Representa elle pareceo ordenar vos que naõ hauendo inconveniente lhe concedais a licença que pede. Escrita em Lisboa a 25 de Ianeiro de 680. Principe.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Dom Pedro de Almeida, viceroy of India, friend, I the prince greet you well. João Gonçalves de Brito, who resides in that city of Goa, has represented to me that he had a brother named Gonçalo João, a resident of the rivers of Sena, and that he had been to that state to assist him in putting his property, which was very considerable, into good order, as he had no sons; and having at the present time received information of his brother's death, and wishing to proceed to the rivers, leave was refused him, as it is prohibited to go to those parts without my special license.

As his motives are very justifiable, and his presence in the rivers is necessary, that other persons may not lay hands on the property of his brother, which belongs to him, he asks me to grant him license to proceed to the said rivers of Sena from that city, or from any part of that state in which he finds himself, or to send there such agents as he thinks fit to recover the said property, and that he may not be impeded in making the said journey, notwithstanding any of my orders and prohibitions to the contrary.

Having examined what he represents to me, I think fit to command you to grant him the license for which he asks, if there is no objection to doing so.

Written in Lisbon, the 25th of January 1680.

THE PRINCE.

Dom Pedro de Almeida VRey da India Amigo. Ev o Principe vos envio muito Saudar. Havendo mandado ver o que me escrevestes de Mossambique em Carta de 25 de Julho de 678 dando me Conta de que estando embarcado para partir para Passe chigamo Barco de Quilimane e vos troxeira huma Carta do emperador de que enviastes a Copia, Como tambem as que tivestes de Ioaõ de Souza Freire, e do Capitam mor de Zimbaoe, e que dilatastes a jornada por deixardes ajustadas as Contas que troxe o dito Barco que foi tam pouco o Cabedal e tantas as dividas em que estaveis que por naõ ser possivel, satisfazer a todos destes satisfaçaõ em prezente. Me pareceo agradecer vos [Como por esta o faço] a dilligencia que fizestes, e do avizo que mandastes.

Escrepta em Lx<sup>a</sup> a 23 de Março de 680. Príncipe. Conde de Valde Reys.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Dom Pedro de Almeida, viceroy of India, friend, I the prince greet you well. Having commanded what you wrote to me from Mozambique in a letter of the 25th of July 1678, to be examined, in which you reported to me that being on board ready to set sail for Passe, a ship arrived from Quilimane, bringing you a letter from the emperor, of which you forwarded a copy, as also copies of those which you received from João de Sousa Freire and the chief captain of Zimbaoe; that you delayed the journey that you might leave the accounts brought by the said ship settled; and that the sum which you possessed was so small, and the debts so numerous, that it was impossible to pay all, but you had satisfied the creditors for the present. I have thought fit to thank you, as I now do, for the steps which you took, and the information which you have sent.

Written in Lisbon, the 23rd of March 1680.

THE PRINCE.

THE COUNT OF VALDEREIS.

---

Antonio Paes de Sande Governador da India, Ev o Principe vos envio muito Saudar. Pello Alvara em forma de Ley, que com esta vos mando remeter sereis entendido Como foi servido ordenar que o Comercio de Mossambique e Rios de Sofala Seja livre a todos meus vassalos assim destes Reinos como da India, e mais dominios, e Conquistas desta Coroa na forma que do mesmo Alvara vereis; encomendo vos muito, e mando que pella parte que vos toca o façaes publicar nesse estado para que venha a noticia de todos, e se cumpra como nelle Se declara, e Como o espero do zello Com que me sirvis. escripta em Lx<sup>a</sup> a 24 de Março de 680. Príncipe.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Antonio Paes de Sande, governor of India, I the prince greet you well.

By the letters patent in the character of a law, which I give order to be sent to you with this, you will understand that I have been pleased to command that the commerce of Mozambique and the rivers of Sofala shall be free to all my subjects, both of these kingdoms and of India, and of the other dominions and conquests of this crown, in such a manner as you will see declared in the said charter. I earnestly recommend and command you to cause this to be published in that state, in the places which concern you, that it may come to the notice of all, and may be observed according to its contents; as I expect you will do from the zeal with which you serve me.

Written in Lisbon, the 24th of March 1680.

THE PRINCE.

Ev o Principe Como regente, e Governador dos Reynos de Portugal e Algarves faço Saber aos que este meu Alvara em forma de Ley virem que mandando Conciderar Com toda a atenção as Cartas Consultas noticias e papeis que nas vltimas Naos vieraõ da India, e os que se acharaõ na Secretaria de estado, e se me offereceraõ por pessoas particulares Sobre o Comercio de Mossambique e Rios de Soffalla e bem examinados por Ministros de toda a supozição inteligentes nas materias da fazenda Letras, e de Estado: fui Servido rezolver que o dito Comercio Seja livre a todos meus vassallos assim destes Reinos Como da India, e mais dominios, e Conquistas desta Coroa, para que naõ haja estanque algum em todo o genero de Mercadorias, e mantimentos que por Contratto Custumavaõ entrar nos Rios, e sair no tempo que Corria pellos Capitaõs de Sofalla, e depois delles pella Iunta que Se formou em Goa por Conta de Minha fazenda que hey por bem Se extingaõ E porque a Iunta podera ter Contrahido algumas dividas, ou ter alguns effeitos metidos nos Rios ou em Mossambique para o negocio que administrava, assim para satisfaçaõ dellas, Com para os livros que pertencem a minha fazenda. Hey por bem que as dividas se satisfaçaõ pellos ditos effeitos que houver em Mossambique, e dentro dos rios pertencentes a mesma junta, e que estes generos persedaõ nos resgates e vendas athe de todo Serem Consumidos, naõ metendo a Iunta outros alguns de novo alem dos referidos. e satisfeitas as partes ou em parte ou em todo pello procedido ajuntadas as Contas pellos Ministros, e

officiaes da mesma Iuncta de que presistiraõ os que forem necessarios athe aquelle tempo que bastar para se findarem estes ajustamentos, e do que Se ficar devendo justificadas, e reconhecidas as ditas Contas pello Governador da India, e VRey Dom Pedro de Almeida, e vistas por elle mandarã Consignar o pagamento nos rendimentos das Alfandegas que se eregiraõ, asy em Mossambique Como naquellas partes dos rios que o VRey julgar mais Convenientes, impondo lhes aquelles direitos assim de entrada Como Sahida que ao VRey parecerem mais justos para as despezas daquella Conquista; e pello que respeita as dividas Contrahidas pella junta darã Consignaçaõ na parte, e quantidade que lhe parecer mais Conveniente de sorte que Se naõ falte a este pagamento, e as despezas necessarias daquella Conquista, e da quantidade que se der para pagamento das dividas se fara rateyo pellos Accredores, para que Cada hum Seja pago Cado anno Conforme a porçaõ da sua divida para o que apresentaraõ os documentos por onde Conste, fazendose os pagamentos Com todo arrecadaçaõ para que Se naõ tornem a repetir. E Sendo Cazo que vendidos todos os effeitos que pertencerem a dita Iuncta haja Subejos estes applicaraõ as despezas de Mossambique, e Rios. E para que se tenha noticia desta minha Rezoluçaõ, e possaõ os vassallos, e naturaes vzar deste Comercio em vtilidade Sua, e de meu Serviço, Se publicara este meu Alvares na India de Mossambique, e Rios e se Registara nas partes necessarias; o qual naõ passará pella Chancelaria e valera Como Carta Sem embargo da ordenaçaõ do L<sup>o</sup> 2 ttos 39 e 40 em contrario e se passou por quatro vias. Manoel Rodrigues de Monorim o fez em Lx<sup>a</sup> a vinte e quatro de Março de seis centos e oitenta o Secretario Andre Lopes de Laure o fez escrever. Principe. Conde de Valde Reis. Alvares em forma de Ley por que V. A. ha por bem que o Comercio de Mossambique, e Rios de Sofalla Seja livre a todos os vassallos desta Coroa para que Se naõ haja estanque algum em todo o genero de mercadorias e mantimentos que por Contrato entravaõ nos Rios, e Sahiaõ no tempo que Corria pellos Capitaens de Sofalla e despois pella Iuncta do Comercio de Goa que V. A. manda se extingaõ tudo na forma que neste se declara que vay por quatro vias, e naõ passara pella chancelaria. Para V. A. ver. Por decreto de 21 de Março de 680. Registada nos Livros de officios da Secreta<sup>a</sup> do Conselho vltamarino a f. 240 em Lx<sup>a</sup> 2 de Abril de 680. Andre Lopes de Laure.



[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

I the prince, as regent and governor of the kingdoms of Portugal and the Algarves, make known to those to whom this my charter, of the character of a law, shall come, that having commanded the letters, conferences, reports, and papers which were brought by the last ships from India, as also those found in the office of the secretary of state and those presented to me by private persons, referring to the commerce of Mozambique and the rivers of Sofala, to be examined with due attention by capable ministers, experienced in legal matters and in affairs of the treasury and the state, I was pleased to resolve that the said commerce should be free to all my subjects of this kingdom, India, and the other dominions and conquests of this crown, that there may be no monopoly whatever of any of the merchandise and provisions imported into or exported from the rivers, as was the case at the time when contracts were held by the captains of Sofala and later when the trade was carried on for my treasury by the council established at Goa, which I think fit shall be abolished.

As the council may have contracted debts, or may have some merchandise at the rivers or in Mozambique for the business which it managed, with a view to the payment of these debts, and because the transactions pertain to my treasury, I think fit that these debts shall be paid by the said merchandise which may be in Mozambique and at the rivers belonging to the aforesaid council, and that this merchandise shall be employed in the trade and sales until none remains, and the council shall not send any other merchandise than that referred to.

The parties being paid, in part or entirely, by the proceeds, and the accounts collected by the ministers and officials of the said council, those members who are needed continuing in their offices until these matters are concluded, the debts which remain unpaid, being proved and acknowledged by the governor and viceroy of India, Dom Pedro de Almeida, he shall command them to be paid out of the revenue of the custom houses which shall be established in Mozambique and in those parts of the rivers which the viceroy considers most fitting.

The viceroy shall impose such duties on the imports and

exports as he considers most just, to defray the expenses of that conquest.

With regard to the debts contracted by the said council, he shall command the sum which he considers to be fitting to be supplied in the place which appears to him most advisable, so that the debts may not fail to be paid, and the sum required for the expenses of the said conquest may be forthcoming. And the sum granted to pay the debts shall be distributed among the creditors, so that each one may be paid so much every year in accordance with his share of the debt, for which they will present papers in which it is clearly stated; and good order shall be observed in these payments, so that they may not be repeated.

If after the sale of all the merchandise belonging to the council, there should be a surplus, this shall be employed in the expenses of Mozambique and the rivers.

That this my resolution may be made public, and my subjects and the natives may make use of this commerce, to their benefit and that of my service, this my charter shall be published in India, Mozambique, and the rivers, and shall be registered in the necessary places, which charter shall not pass through chancery, and shall be as binding as a letter, notwithstanding the decree of book 2nd, records 39 and 40, to the contrary. It has been sent in quadruplicate.

Drawn up by Manuel Rodrigues de Monorim, in Lisbon, the 24th of March 1680.

André Lopes de Laure, the secretary, caused it to be written.

THE PRINCE.

THE COUNT OF VALDEREIS.

Superscribed: Charter of the character of a law, by which your Highness thinks fit that the commerce of Mozambique and the rivers of Sofala shall be free to all the subjects of this crown, that there may be no monopoly whatever of any merchandise and provisions which were imported and exported at the rivers by contract at the time when this was held by the captains of Sofala, and later by the council of commerce of Goa, which your Highness commands to be abolished, in the manner declared herein. Which charter is sent by four routes, and shall not pass through chancery. For your Highness to examine. By a decree

of the 21st of March 1680. Registered in the official books of the secretary of the ultramarine council, nº 240, in Lisbon, the 2nd of April 1680.

ANDRÉ LOPES DE LAURE.

Dom Pedro de Almeida VRey da India Amº Ev O Principe vos envio muito Saudar. Havendo mandado ver o que me escrevestes de Mossambique em Carta de 12 de Julho de 678 Sobre a duvida que o Superintendente da fazenda Real desta fortaleza Antonio Correa de Saa por a naõ guardar em parte o Regimento que Levou o Vedor gèral dos Rios de Sofalla Manoel Ferreira por que lhe Concedy poder dispor dos effeitos pertencentes a dita Fortaleza, So por Sua ordem por Se encontrar o dito Regimento Com as ordens que se deraõ ao dito Superintendente pello Concelho da fazenda do Estado da India, e pellas Cazas dos Contos de Goa. E mandando tambem ver o que o mesmo Superintendente me escreveo Sobre este particular fuy Servido mandar passar a Provizaõ que Com esta se vos remete, Sobre a forma da jurisdicaõ que ha de ter o dito Vedor geral na administraçaõ da fazenda Real ; e vos em Comendo muito e mando façaes dar Cumprimento a dita Provizaõ Como o espero do Zello que tendes de meu Serviço. Escripta em Lxª a 26 de Março de 680. Principe. Conde de valde Reys.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Dom Pedro de Almeida, viceroy of India, friend, I the prince greet you well. Having commanded what you wrote to me from Mozambique in a letter of the 12th of July 1678 to be examined, concerning the objections raised by Antonio Correa de Sá, superintendent of the royal treasury of that fortress, against observing a part of the regulations given to the chief overseer of the rivers of Sofala, Manuel Ferreira, by which I granted to him power to dispose of the effects belonging to the said fortress solely by his order, the said regulations being contrary to the orders given to the superintendent by the council of the treasury of the state of India and by the treasury of Goa ; and having commanded what the said superintendent wrote to me upon this matter also to be examined, I was pleased to command an order to be issued, which

is sent to you with this, relating to the form of jurisdiction which the said chief overseer is to have in the administration of the royal treasury; and I earnestly charge and command you to cause the said order to be carried into execution, for which I trust in your zeal for my service.

Written in Lisbon, the 26th of March 1680.

THE PRINCE.

THE COUNT OF VALDEREIS.

---

Francisco de Tavora Vizo Rey do Estado da India amigo. Eu o Principe vos envio muito saudar. Luis de Figueiredo Cardozo da companhia de IEsus pella muita experienciã, e noticias que tem das couzas dos Rios de Cuama me offereceo o papel que vos mando entregar a Copia com esta carta, e vos ordeno que chegando a Goa tomeis informaçã do que elle conthem, e achando nesta materia a Serteza que ensinuaõ as noticias que elle dá mandareis empregar do cabedal que vay nesta monçaõ a parte que vos parecer conveniente em Beirames, ou outro qual genero que vos parecer, e o entregareis ao Governador dos Rios que houver de hir em vossa companhia p<sup>a</sup> que ponha em pratica este negocio porque ainda que se ache que he dobrado o preço saõ os avanços de qualidade que se deve tratar esta materia em grande atençaõ para que tenha effeito. Escrita em Lisboa a 20 de Fevereiro de 1681. Principe.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Francisco de Tavora, viceroy of the state of India, friend, I the prince greet you well. Luis de Figueiredo, of the Society of Jesus, because of his great experience and the information he possesses of the affairs of the rivers of Cuama, has presented to me a paper, of which I command a copy to be dispatched to you with this letter. And I command you, upon your arrival at Goa, to obtain information with regard to its contents, and finding the matter to be as his report shows, you shall command such part as you think fit of the sum sent in this monsoon to be expended upon cotton cloth, or whatever commodity you think fitting, which you shall deliver to the governor of the rivers who is to sail in your company, to carry the matter into execution, because

even though the price is found to be doubled the advantages are so important that great attention should be given to this matter, in order to ensure its success.

Written in Lisbon, the 20th of February 1681.

THE PRINCE.

Vizo Rey do Estado da India amigo Eu o Principe vos envio muito saudar. Com esta vos mando entregar a Copia de huma consulta que me fez o concelho vltamarino sobre a carta que me escreveo El Rey de Manamotapa, e porque pella boa intençãõ que elle tem a meu Serviço me pareceo toda a boa correspondencia vos ordeno que depois de tomardes huma exacta informaçaõ, e por ella vos constar de tudo o que na Sua Carta Refere, façais Satisfazer o que o concelho aponta na consulta, e continuar com este Rey a boa amizade que se deve ao Seu bom animo, e do que nisto obrardes me dareis conta. Escrita em Lisboa a 21 de Fevero de 1681. Principe.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Viceroy of the state of India, friend, I the prince greet you well. I command a copy of the advice given to me by the ultramarine council to be transmitted with this, relating to a letter written by the king of Monomotapa; and because I think fit that he should meet with a similar return for the good will which he shows for my service, I command you, after obtaining exact information and proving all that he states in his letter, to carry out what the council suggests in their advice, and to maintain with this king the friendship which his good will deserves. And you shall send me an account of what you accomplish in this matter.

Written in Lisbon, the 21st of February 1681.

THE PRINCE.

Francisco de Tauora vRey da India amigo. Eu o Principe vos envio muito Saudar. Hauendo mandado ver o que me escreveraõ os Deputados da Iunta Geral do comercio de Massambique em carta de dois de Novembro de 679, de que com esta se vos envia a Copia aSerca do Estado em que se achaua aquelle comercio

gastos que lhes acresceraõ com o nouo Socorro que mandey aquella Fortaleza falta das remessas dos effeitos, que mandaraõ aos rios e grandes descaminhos que se faziaõ na Fazenda Real p̄ cuja cauza estaua a dita Iunta com muitas duvidas como mais particular vereis da mesma carta. Me pareceo dar vos esta noticia para que chegando aquelle Estado possais com as que nelle tomardes sobre estes particulares por remedio nos descaminhos que se apontaõ pode alterar o que esta aSentado, e Só com avizo vosso se dispora o que convier. Escrita em Lx<sup>a</sup> a 5 de Março de 681. Principe.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Francisco de Tavora, viceroy of India, friend, I the prince greet you well. Having commanded an examination to be made of what the deputies of the general council of commerce of Mozambique wrote to me in a letter of the 2nd of November 1679, of which a copy is transmitted to you with this, with reference to the condition of the said commerce, the increase of their expenses by reason of the reinforcements which I dispatched to that fortress, the deficiency in the payments for merchandise which they had sent to the rivers, and the great disorders occurring in the royal treasury, for which reasons the said council had many debts, of which you will find a more detailed account in the same letter, I think fit to give you this information, that upon your arrival in that state, with the knowledge of these matters which you receive, you may apply a remedy to the disorders which, it is stated, may disturb what has been settled, and only by your judgment can suitable steps be taken.

Written in Lisbon, the 5th of March 1681.

THE PRINCE.

---

Francisco de Tauora vRey da India amigo. Eu o Principe vos envio muito Saudar. Por justas consideraçoens de meu Serviço que a isso me movem, fuy Servido rezolver que o Socorro que nesta monçaõ houver de hir para Massambique e Rios va em direitura a Goa em vossa comp<sup>a</sup> hindo toda a gente que nas tres embarçaçoens poderem leuar : e que nellas se embarque tambem a pessoa que eu nomear para governar os Rios para que chegando

vos com este Socorro a Goa animeis esse Estado; e Com as noticias que depois de vossa chegada tomardes das couzas de Massambique, e Rios, possais na primeira monção mandar para Sofalla, assy o Governador, como o Socorro, e Gente que vos parecer conveniente, tendo entendido que na monção do anno que ha de vir de 682 hira tambem em direitura a Goa o Socorro, porque em quanto não ha informação certa daquella parte, parece conveniente que o Socorro va a vossa direitura, digo a vossa direcção, e Se não arisque, hindo em direitura a Massambique. Escrita em Lisboa a 7 de Março de 1681. Príncipe.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Francisco de Tavora, viceroy of India, friend, I the prince greet you well. I have been pleased to resolve, for just motives conducive to my service which moved me to do so, that the reinforcements which are to proceed to Mozambique and the rivers shall go direct to Goa in your company, as many men being sent as the three ships can carry. The person whom I nominate to govern the rivers shall also embark in these ships, so that upon your arrival at Goa with this reinforcement, you may encourage that state. And with the information which you shall obtain after your arrival of the affairs of Mozambique and the rivers, you may send the governor to Sofala in the first monsoon, and also the men and assistance which you consider fitting, understanding, that in the monsoon of the coming year 1682 the reinforcements sent shall also proceed direct to Goa, because as long as no reliable information of that part is received, it appears advisable that the reinforcements should be under your direction, and not run any risk by proceeding direct to Mozambique.

Written in Lisbon, the 7th of March 1681.

THE PRINCE.

---

Francisco de Tauora vRey da India amigo. Eu o Príncipe vos envio muito saudar. Por justas concideraçoes do Serviço de Deos, e meu fry Serviço mandar fundar hum hospital na Ilha de Massambique não só para a cura dos Soldados, e moradores enfermos daquella Fortaleza, mas para todos os mais vaçallos que

aly portarem, assim das naos de Cambada como de viagem; e ordeney ao VRey Dom P<sup>o</sup> de Almeida vosso antecessor pella carta de que com esta vos mando remeter a Copia, comprase as cazas que se apontou tinha para isso todas as comodidades. E porque tinha o d<sup>o</sup> Hospital se ha de entregar aos relligiozos de Saõ Ioaõ de Deos por fundaçãõ para a Sua Religiaõ, e se lhe huõ de dar tres mil, e quinhentos cruzados todos os annos para os gastos do d<sup>o</sup> Hospital, e parecendo aos officiaes de Minha Fazenda, naõ ser esta quantia bastante a mais que parecer conveniente com declaraçãõ que as despezas que se fizeraõ Sejaõ na forma que sempre se fizeraõ nos Hospitaes das fronteiras deste Reino, dando se aos Relligiozos congrua certa para Seu Sustento de que naõ daraõ conta: encomendo vos muito, e mando ordeneis nesta forma se faça a fundaçãõ do dito Hospital se continue com elle dando para isso as ordens que forem necessarias, como espero do Zelo com que me Servis. Escrita em Lisboa a 22 de Março de 681. Principe.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Francisco de Tavora, viceroy of India, friend, I the prince greet you well. For just motives conducive to God's service and to mine, I have been pleased to command a hospital to be founded in the island of Mozambique, not only for the cure of sick soldiers and residents of that fortress, but also for all other sick people brought there in ships. I gave order to your predecessor, the viceroy Dom Pedro de Almeida, by a letter of which I command a copy to be transmitted to you with this, to buy the houses which it was stated offered every convenience for this purpose. As the said hospital is to be entrusted to the religious of St. John of God, to be founded by their order, they are to receive three thousand five hundred cruzados per annum for its expenses. And if the officials of my treasury are of opinion that this sum is not sufficient, the sum which appears fitting shall be added to it, upon declaration being made that the expenses incurred are such as are always borne in the hospitals of the frontiers of this kingdom. The religious are to be supplied with a certain allowance for their support, of which they shall give no account. I earnestly recommend and command you to give order for the said hospital to be founded in this manner, and to be con-



tinued accordingly, issuing the necessary instructions for this purpose, for which I trust in the zeal with which you serve me.

Written in Lisbon, the 22nd of March 1681.

THE PRINCE.

---

Francisco de Tauora VRey da India amigo. Eu o Principe vos envio m<sup>to</sup> Saudar. Hauendo mandado considerar o que me Representou aqui Dom Antonio Lançarote Principe de Queteue filho de Principe de Sofalla, que elle se Reduzira a nossa Santa Fé Catholica e que estaua cazado nesse Estado, e queria Recolher-se para Seu Reino, e por ser hum Principe pobre me viera buscar a este por não ter com que poder haviar-se me pedia toda ajuda, e fauor, e vendo o mais que alegou, Me pareceo ordenar vos que não achando que ha inconveniente em passar a Queteue como representa lhe concedais licença mandando dar lhe passagem, e quando não conuinha que Saya de Goa o acomodareis como vos parecer, e me dareis conta do que nisto obrardes. Lisboa 24 de Março de 681. Principe.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Francisco de Tavora, viceroy of India, friend, I the prince greet you well. Having commanded what was represented to me here by Dom Antonio Lançarote, prince of Quiteve, son of the prince of Sofala, to be considered: that he had become a convert to our holy Catholic faith, was married in that state, and wished to return to his kingdom, that being a poor prince he had come to this kingdom in search of me, and not having means to carry out his desire he asked me for assistance and favour; and considering what he further alleged, I think fit to instruct you that if there is no objection to his proceeding to Quiteve, as he represents, you shall grant him leave and command a passage to be given to him, and if it is not convenient that he should leave Goa, you shall satisfy him as you think fit. You shall send me a report of what you accomplish in this matter.

Lisbon, the 24th of March 1681.

THE PRINCE.

---

Alvara Sobre os Rios de Suphalla. Francisco de Tavora do Conselho de Estado de S. A. VRey e Capitaõ geral da India etc. Faço Saber aos que este Alvara em forma de Ley virem, e particularmente aos Deputados da Iunta desta Cidade de Goa do Comercio de Monss<sup>o</sup>, que S. A. foi Servido passar hum Alvara em forma de Ley por onde ordenou que fosse Liure p<sup>a</sup> todos Seus Vassallos, o commercio dos Rios de Cuama, extinguindo o Estanco das fazendas, mantimentos, e mercadorias que athe agora Corria pela dita Iunta, de q̄ o treslado he o Seguinte.

Eu o Principe como Regente e Governador dos Reynos de Portugal e Algarve, Faço Saber aos que este meu Alvara em forma de Ley virem, que mandando Considerar com toda a attençaõ as Cartas, Consultas, noticias, e papeis que nas Vltimas Naos vieraõ da India, e os q̄ se acharaõ na Secretaria de Estado; e se me offereceraõ por pessoas particulares Sobre o Comercio de Monss<sup>o</sup> e Rios de Sophalla, e bẽ examinada p̄ Ministros de toda a Supoziçaõ inteligentes nas materias da fazenda, Letras, e de estado. Fuy Servido Rezolver q̄ o dito Comercio Seja livre a todos meus Vassallos, assim deste Reyno, como da India e mais dominios, e Conquistas desta Coroa para que naõ haja Estanque algũ em todo o genero de mercadoria, e mantimentos q̄ p̄ contratos costumavaõ entrar nos Rios, e Sahir no tempo q̄ corria pelos Capitaens de Sophalla, e depois delles pela junta q̄ se formou em Goa p̄ Conta da minha Fazenda, que hey por bem se extingaõ, e porque a Iunta podera ter contrahido alguãs dividas, ou ter alguns effeitos metidos nos Rios, ou em Monss<sup>o</sup> p<sup>a</sup> o negocio q̄ administrava assim p<sup>a</sup> Satisfaçaõ dellas, como p<sup>a</sup> os Lucros q̄ pertencem a m<sup>a</sup> fazenda. Hey por bem q̄ as dividas se satisfacaõ pelos ditos effeitos q̄ houver em Monss<sup>o</sup> e dentro dos Rios, pertencentes a mesma Iunta, e que estes generos precedaõ nos Resgates, e vendas athe de todo Serem consumido naõ metendo a Iunta outros alguns de novo, alem dos Referidos, e satisfeitas as partes, ou em parte, ou em todo pelo procedido ajustadas as Contas pelos Ministros e officiaes da mesma Iunta de que prezia-tiraõ os q̄ forem necessarios athe aquelle tempo que bastar p<sup>a</sup> se findarem estes ajustamentos, e do q̄ se ficar devendo justificadas, e reconhecidas as ditas Contas pelo Governador da India, e VRey Dom Pedro de Almeida, e vistas por elle, mandara consignar o pagamento nos Rendimentos das Alfandegas que se erigiram, assy em Monss<sup>o</sup>, como naquellas partes dos Rios, que o VRey

julgar mais convenientes, impondo lhes aquelles direitos, assim da entrada como Sahida, q̄ ao VRey parecerem mais justo p<sup>a</sup> as despezas daquella Conquista, e pelo que respeita as dividas contrahidas pela Iunta dara consignaçoens na parte em quantidade que lhe parecer mais convenientes de Sorte q̄ se não falte a este pagamento, e as despezas necessarias daquella Conquista, e de Cantidadade que se der p<sup>a</sup> pagamento das dividas se fara Rateyo pelos aCredores p<sup>a</sup> q̄ cada hum Seja pago cada anno conforme a proporçaõ da Sua divida, para o que apresentaraõ os documentos por onde conste fazendo se os pagamentos com toda a aRecadaçaõ, p<sup>a</sup> que se não torne a repetir, e sendo cazo que vendidos todos os effeitos q̄ pertencerem a dita Iunta haja Sobejos, estes se applicaraõ as despezas de Monsambique, e Rios, e para q̄ se tenha noticia desta minha Rezulaçaõ, e possaõ os Vassallos, e naturaes uzar deste Comercio em utilidade Sua, e de meu Serviço, se publicara este meu Alvara na India, Mons<sup>a</sup>, e Rios e se registara nas partes necessarias o qual não passara pela Chanceleria, e valera como carta, Sem embargo da ord. do L<sup>o</sup> 2<sup>o</sup> tit. 39 e 40 em Contrario, e se passou por quatro vias, Manoel Roiz de Amorim o fez em Lixboa a 24 de Março de mil Seis centos oitenta, o Secretario André Lopes de Laura o fiz escrever. Príncipe. E p̄ quanto vindo o dito Alvara na monçaõ do anno pass<sup>o</sup> de 1680 em tempo do Governador meu antecessor lhe representou a dita Iunta por huã consulta as rezoens que se lhe offerecera p<sup>a</sup> se não dar a execuçaõ por cuja cauza convocou o dito Governador huã Iunta das pessoas do Conselho, e da Rellaçaõ, e Prelados das Religoens que deraõ Seus pareceres por escripto em confirmaçaõ do que se tinha representado na d<sup>a</sup> consulta com que se Rezolveo o dito Governador a dar conta a S. A., suspendendo o cumprim<sup>to</sup> do dito Alvara, e ora chegando eu do Reino na monçaõ de Setembro deste presente anno de 1681 a governar este Estado Com algumas Cartas que S. A., foi servido manda me escrever em corroboração do mesmo Alvara, me Resolvi em rezaõ de Suspençaõ passada a Convocar nova Iunta das pessoas do mesmo Conselho de Estado, e do da Fazenda, e Ministros da Rellaçaõ, onde se tornou ha ver o d<sup>o</sup> Alvara de Ley, e a Consulta da Iunta do Comercio, e pareceres que se deraõ, no q̄ convocou o d<sup>o</sup> Governador, e portarias que passou a mesma Iunta, e a Carta q̄ escreveo a S. A. dando lhe Conta da dita Suspençaõ, e tambem as Cartas que eu trouxe do dito Sñor em hum papel que p̄ Sua

ordem se me deu no Reino, em que se apontaraõ todas as difficuldades que se podia offerecer por huma e outra parte p<sup>a</sup> se haver de Conceder, ou naõ, o dito Comercio Liure, e sendo assim tudo visto na dita Iunta que convoqui se assentou que se desse inteiro cumprimento ao dito Alvara mayormente, quando constava delle q̄ S. A. tinha mandado Considerar com toda a atençaõ as Cartas, Consultas, noticias, e papeis q̄ foraõ da India, e os q̄ se acharaõ na Secretaria de Estado, e outros que se offereceraõ por pessoas particulares, Sendo todos bem vistos, examinados por Ministros de toda a Supoziçaõ intelligentes nas materias da fazenda, Letras, e de estado, de q̄ resultara mandar S. A. q̄ o d<sup>o</sup> Comercio fosse liure, como se declara no d<sup>o</sup> Alvara com q̄ naõ havia lugar p<sup>a</sup> Replicar, e deixar de dar Cumprimento a elle, e conformando me cõ o q̄ o d<sup>o</sup> Sñor foi Servido rezolver, e com o Assento da Iunta q̄ se tomou em m<sup>a</sup> prezença. Hey por bem, e mando que se de inteiro Cumprim<sup>o</sup> ao d<sup>o</sup> Alvara assim, e da maneira q̄ nelle se contem; e p̄ q<sup>uo</sup> S. A. ordena no d<sup>o</sup> Alvara que os generos q̄ a d<sup>a</sup> Iunta do Comercio tiver dentro nos Rios procedaõ nos Resgates, e vendas athe de todo Serem Consumidos, mandei ver este ponto no Conselho da Fazenda em m<sup>a</sup> prezença pelos Ministros Deputados delle, onde se considerou q̄ seria grande prejuizo da Faz<sup>da</sup> Real a d<sup>a</sup> preferencia, p̄ q̄ cõ esta noticia ninguem se Resolveria a mandar seus Cabedaes com q̄ a fazenda Real viria a perder m<sup>to</sup> nos Rendim<sup>os</sup> das Alfandigas, e naõ Seria possivel dar se breve expediente a venda das fazendas da dita Iunta; por se ter entendido q̄ a Cauza de se naõ ter vendido fora pela Ruim Calidade dellas, por cuja rezaõ naõ tinhaõ Sahida, e quando houvesse algumas que naõ fossem taõ Ruins se podia ter p̄ Certo que com a falta de Navio que o anno passado se perdeu em Quilimane q̄ tinha hido desta Cidade estaria ja vendidos as taes fazendas e p̄ todos estes Respeitos, e outros q̄ mais se consideraraõ no dito Conselho se assentou que os effeitos da Iunta, q̄ ainda estivessem em ser dentro nos Rios se vendessem sem preferencia alguma pelo estado da terra com intercessaõ do Governador e Capitaõ geral dos Rios, ou de quem Seu Cargo Servisse, o qual tomaria noticia, e informaçaõ da Calidade dos ditos effeitos, e do estado em q̄ se achavaõ p<sup>a</sup> conforme isto se lhes dar a Sahida que fosse possivel, e tendo taõbem Consideraçaõ a faculdade concedida no mesmo Alvara de poderẽ ficar por algum tempo na Iunta dos Ministros q̄ forem necessarios p<sup>a</sup> admiinistraçaõ os ditos effeitos; declaro p̄

este q̄ ficaraõ somente na d<sup>a</sup> Iunta o Doutor Miguel Nunes de Misquita Deputado, e Luis Conservador e o Deputado o Provedor Domingos Correa de Misquita, o Secretario Ioaõ de Lemos Valle, o Thei<sup>o</sup> geral Antonio Aranha de Barros Seu Escrivaõ Ioaõ Preto Matozo, e o Contador Gaspar de Madureira Supico, e todos os mais Deputados, e officiaes da dita Iunta, hey por extinctos p<sup>a</sup> naõ uzarem mais de Seus Cargos, e officios por Serem os nomeados bastantes para mandarem vender os ditos effeitos, e dara Satisfaçaõ as partes, e Sem meterem mais fazendas de novo nos Rios, os quaes Ministros, e os officiaes Serviraõ Seus Cargos, e officios em quanto se naõ venderem, e Continuarem os taes effeitos para de Seu procedido se pagarem as dividas que a dita Iunta esta devendo em tanto q̄ se der a dita Satisfaçaõ que constara por contas ajustadas pelos ditos Ministros, e officiaes nomeados, e depois de Reconhecidos p̄ mim ficaraõ extinctos os Seus Cargos, o officiaes q̄ por ora reservo p<sup>a</sup> este ministerio, cumprindose este Alvara inteiram<sup>te</sup> como nelle se Contem, Sem duvida, nem contradicãõ alguma, a qual se Registara na Secretaria do Estado, Iunta do Comercio, Rellaçaõ, Fazenda geral, Camara da Cidade de Goa, e mais Camaras das Cidades e Fortalezas do Norte, e nas Feitorias de Monss<sup>o</sup>, Quilimane, e Senna, e nas Alсандigas que de novo se eLegerem naquellas partes, e Se publicara em todos lugares publicos, e Costumados das ditas Cidades e Conquista de Monss<sup>o</sup>, p<sup>a</sup> q̄ venha a noticia de todos e valera como Carta, posto q̄ Seu effeito haja de durar mais de hum anno, Sem embargo da Ordenaçãõ do L<sup>o</sup> 2<sup>o</sup> tit. 40 em Contrario, e Se passou por varias, e naõ pagara os direitos da meya anata, nem da Chanceleria por Ser do Serviço de S. A. Sebastiaõ Ribeiro o fez em Goa a onze de Novembro de 1681. O Secretario Luis Gonçalvez Cotta o fez escrever. Francisco de Tavora.

Alvara em forma de Ley que V. Ex<sup>a</sup> manda passar em vertude do outro de S. A. nelle emcorporado, p̄ q̄ ha por bem q̄ se lhe dé inteiro cumprim<sup>to</sup> havendo por liure o Comercio dos Rios de Cuama p<sup>a</sup> todos os Vassallos do dito Sñor extinguindo a Iunta geral do dito Comercio, ficando Somente della os Ministros nomeados tudo na maneira, e com as declaraçoens assima Referidas. Para V. Ex<sup>a</sup> ver. Luis Gonçalves Cotta, no Sello Luis Monteiro da Costa Registado na Secretr<sup>a</sup> do Estado da India, em que se Registaõ as Provizoens do Serviço de S. A. Cosmo da Varga. Pagou nada por Ser do Serviço de S. A. Goa quatro de

Dezembro de mil Seiscentos oitenta e hum. Ioão Preto Matozo Reg<sup>da</sup> na Chanc<sup>a</sup> no L<sup>o</sup> das leys a f. 217, P<sup>o</sup> da Silva.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

*Charter concerning the Rivers of Sofala.*

I Francisco de Tavora, member of the council of state of his Highness, viceroy and commander-in-chief of India, etc., make known to those to whom this charter, of the character of a law, shall come, and especially to the directors of the council of commerce of Mozambique in this city of Goa, that his Highness has been pleased to issue a charter of the character of a law, by which he has commanded that the commerce of the rivers of Cuama shall be left free to all his subjects, the monopoly of the merchandise, provisions, and commodities being abolished, which has been held by the council up to the present time; of which charter the following is a copy:—

“I the prince, as regent and governor of the kingdoms of Portugal and the Algarves, make known to those to whom this my charter, of the character of a law, shall come, that having commanded the letters, council’s advice, reports, and papers which came by the last ships from India to be considered with due attention, and also those papers found in the office of the secretary of state and those presented to me by private persons relating to the commerce of Mozambique and the rivers of Sofala, which being well examined by ministers in every way qualified, learned in matters of the treasury, law, and state, I have been pleased to resolve that the said commerce shall be left free to all my subjects, both of this kingdom, of India, and of the other dominions and conquests of this crown, that there may be no monopoly of any branch of merchandise or provisions usually imported or exported from the rivers during the time of the contracts held by the captains of Sofala, and later by the council established at Goa on account of my treasury, which council I think fit shall be abolished.

“And as the said council may have contracted some debts, or may possess some merchandise at the rivers or at Mozambique belonging to the commerce of which it had the management,

both for the satisfaction of these debts and to obtain the profits belonging to my treasury, I think fit that the said debts be paid from the aforesaid merchandise which may be at Mozambique or at the rivers, the property of the said council; and that these commodities shall have precedence in the commerce and sales until they are all disposed of, no new goods being sent by the council besides those referred to.

“And the parties being satisfied, altogether or in part, by the proceeds, the accounts shall be settled by the ministers and officials of the said council, of whom a sufficient number shall remain in office until such time as this business is completed.

“And as to the debts which remain, the accounts thereof being verified and acknowledged by the governor of India, the viceroy Dom Pedro de Almeida, and examined by him, he shall command that they be paid out of the revenue of the custom-houses which are to be established both at Mozambique and at those places of the rivers which the viceroy judges to be most convenient, laying such duties on the imports and exports as he thinks most just, to defray the expenses of that conquest.

“And with regard to the debts contracted by the said council, he shall assign the payment of them to such parts and in such sums as he thinks most fitting, so that the payment thereof may not be neglected, and the expenses of the conquest be forthcoming. And the amount set aside for the payment of the debts shall be divided among the creditors so that each one may receive every year a sum proportionate to his debt, for which they will present the documents which give proof of it, due order being observed with regard to the payments, that they may not be repeated.

“And if after the sale of all the merchandise belonging to the council, there is a surplus, in such case it shall be employed for the expenses of Mozambique and the rivers.

“And that this my resolution may come to the notice of all, and the subjects and natives may make use of this commerce to their advantage and to that of my service, this my charter shall be published in India, Mozambique, and the rivers, and shall be registered in the necessary places, which charter shall not pass through chancery, and shall be as binding as a letter, notwithstanding the decree of book 2nd, records 39 and 40, to the contrary; and it is sent in quadruplicate.

“Drawn up by Manuel Roiz de Amorim, in Lisbon, the 24th of March 1680.

“The secretary André Lopes de Laure caused it to be written.

“THE PRINCE.”

And as the said charter came in the monsoon of last year, 1680, during the time of the governor my predecessor, and the said council represented to him in a resolution the reasons for which they considered the said charter should not be carried into execution, for which cause the said governor assembled a council of the members of the council, and of the supreme court, and the superiors of the religious orders, who gave their opinions in writing in confirmation of what had been represented in the said resolution, upon which the aforesaid governor resolved to give an account to his Highness, suspending the execution of the said charter.

I, upon my arrival from the kingdom in the monsoon of September of this present year, 1681, to govern this state, bearing various letters in confirmation of the said charter, which his Highness was pleased to command should be written for me, resolved, because of the said suspension, to convoke a new council of the members of the councils of state and of the treasury and the ministers of the supreme court, in which an examination was again made of the said charter, of the character of a law, and of the resolution of the council of commerce, the opinions given in the council which was convoked by the aforesaid governor, the decision taken by the said council, the letter written to his Highness giving him an account of the said suspension, and also the letters which I brought from the said lord and a paper that was given to me by his order, in which were stated all the objections that might be brought forward by either side as to whether the said free commerce should, or should not, be granted.

And all these papers being thus examined by the said council which I convoked, it was decided that the said charter should be carried entirely into execution, especially as it appeared that his Highness had commanded the letters, council's advice, reports and papers sent from India, and those found in the office of the secretary of state and others presented by private persons, to be examined with due attention, and being seen and examined by ministers in every way qualified, learned in matters of the treasury,



law, and state, as a result of this examination his Highness had commanded that the said commerce should be free, as declared in the aforesaid charter, whereupon there was no ground for opposing it and refraining from carrying it into execution.

And conforming with his Highness's resolution, and in accordance with the decision of the council taken in my presence, I think fit and command that the said charter shall be carried into execution completely, according to the manner therein set down.

And as to his Highness's order in the said charter that the merchandise which the aforesaid council of commerce may possess at the said rivers shall be given preference in the trade and sales until entirely disposed of, I commanded this point to be examined in the council of the treasury, in my presence, by the ministers and deputies thereof, where it was decided that the said preference would be greatly to the prejudice of the royal treasury, as upon this report no one would wish to send his merchandise, by which the royal treasury would suffer great loss in the revenues of the custom-houses, and it would be impossible for the sale of the merchandise of the said council to be effected with dispatch, as it is understood that the reason it has not been sold is that it is of bad quality, and therefore there was no sale for it, and if some of the articles were of better quality, it is certain that with the want of the ship which sailed from this city and was lost last year at Quilimane, they will be already sold. For all these reasons, and others brought forward in the said council, it was decided that whatever merchandise belonging to the council is still in existence at the rivers shall be sold without any preference whatever by the government of the land, through the medium of the governor or commander-in-chief of the rivers, or whoever holds this office, who shall obtain information as to the quality of the said merchandise and of its present condition, that in accordance therewith it may be sold as advantageously as possible.

And considering also the power granted by the said charter for the necessary number of ministers of the council to remain in office for a certain time, for the administration of the said goods, I declare by this that the following only shall remain in the said council: Doctor Miguel Nunes de Mesquita, deputy and judge conservador, the deputy and attorney Domingos Correa de Mesquita, the secretary João de Semos Valle, the chief treasurer

Antonio Aranba de Barros, his notary João Preto Matozo, and the accountant Gaspar de Madureira Supico, and I consider the appointments of all the remaining deputies and officials to be cancelled, that they may no longer hold their posts and offices, as the above-named suffice for the sale of the said merchandise and to give satisfaction to the parties, for they are not to send any new merchandise to the rivers. These ministers and officials shall hold their posts and offices as long as such merchandise remains to be sold, that from the proceeds thereof the debts owing by the said council may be paid, and the parties satisfied, which shall be proved by accounts settled by the above-named ministers and officials, and examined by me, when their posts and offices will be done away with, which posts I at present reserve to them for this purpose.

This charter is to be carried out fully according to the manner therein set down, without any objection or opposition whatever; which charter shall be registered in the office of the secretary of state, in the council of commerce, the supreme court, the general exchequer, the municipal board of the city of Goa and other municipal boards of the towns and fortresses of the north, in the factories of Mozambique, Quilimane, and Sena, and in the custom-houses which are to be again established in those parts. It shall be published in all the customary public places of the said towns and the conquest of Mozambique, that it may come to the notice of all, and shall be as binding as a letter, although the effect thereof is to last more than a year, notwithstanding the decree of book 2nd record 40 to the contrary. It is sent in quadruplicate, and shall not pay the duties of the half annat or of chancery, being for the service of his Highness.

Drawn up by Sebastião Ribeiro, at Goa, the 11th of November 1681.

The secretary Luis Gonçalves Cotta caused it to be written.

FRANCISCO DE TAVORA.

Superscribed: Charter of the character of a law, that your Excellency commands to be issued by virtue of his Highness's charter contained in it, which you think fit shall be carried into execution fully, leaving the commerce of the rivers of Cuama free to all the subjects of the said lord, and abolishing the general council of the said commerce, only the ministers named remain-

ing in office, according to the manner and statements stated above.

For your Excellency's examination.

LUIS GONÇALVES COTTA.

On the seal: Luis Monteiro da Costa.

Registered in the office of the secretary of state of India, where the orders relating to his Highness's service are registered.

COSMO DA VARGA.

Paid no fees, being for His Highness's service.

Goa, 4th December 1681.

JOÃO PRETO MATOZO.

Registered in chancery, in book 2nd of the laws, page 217.

PEDRO DA SILVA.

Francisco de Tauora vRey da India amigo Eu o Principe vos envio muito Saudar. A Caetano de Mello fuy Servido nomear por governador dos Rios de Sofalla em Moçambique, com titulo de capitaõ geral delles, por tempo de tres annos, naõ obstante haver de estar a vossa ordem, e com este posto ha de vencer oito mil cruzados de soldado por anno do dia que se embarcar para esse Estado, como vos constara da Pante que lhe mandey passar, e vos ha de apresentar para lhe dardes a posse do dito Posto e porque neste Reino Se lhe deraõ tres mil cruzados de emprestimo vos ordeno que nesse Estado os reponha de seus soldos. Escrita em Lx<sup>a</sup> aos 9 de Março de 682. Principe.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Francisco de Tavora, viceroy of India, friend, I the prince greet you well. I have been pleased to nominate Caetano de Mello as governor of the rivers of Sofala and Mozambique, with the title of captain general, for a term of three years, notwithstanding he is to be under your orders. And with this post he is to receive a salary of eight thousand cruzados per annum, dating from the day he embarks for that state, which you will see by

the order which I have commanded should be given to him, and which he has to present to you, that you may put him in possession of the said post. As a loan of three thousand cruzados has been made to him in this kingdom, I command you to recover this sum in that state from his salary.

Written in Lisbon, the 9th of March 1682.

THE PRINCE.

---

Francisco de Tavora vRey da India amigo. Eu o Principe vos envio muito Saudar. Havendo mandando ver o que me escreveo o governador Antonio Paes de Sande em carta de 24 de Janeiro do anno passado acerca dos inconvenientes, que por huma consulta lhe reprezentou a junta do Comercio de Monsabique sobre o Cumprim<sup>to</sup> do alvara que mandey passar para ser Livre o Comercio dos Rios de Sofalla a todos os vassallos deste Reino e suas Conquistas obrigando as razoes da dita consulta Convocar os consilheiros do Estado, cidade Rellaçãõ, cabbido, e Prellados mayores das Relligioens, e se determinara se suspendese a execuçaõ do dito alvara pello prejuizo que Rezultaria a meu serviço, e a Conservaçãõ da conquista de Moçambique, ordenando a junta Continvasse como de antes na Sua occupaçaõ athe outra ordem minha como mais particular entendereis das ditas cartas e consulta de que com esta se vos remete as copias. Me pareceo dizer vos que a Resolaçaõ que tomey ser Livre o Comercio dos Rios foy com tantas consideraçoens de tudo o que nesta materia podia ocorrer que não devo por hora alterar aquella resollaçaõ, nem as rezoens, que ajuntas de Goa da Contra isto, conduem couza que seja relevante mas porque Levastes ordem para vos informardes distinctamente do que mais convinha a meu serviço, e bem do estado nes particural vos ordeno que a minha resolaçaõ foy de que o Comercio fosse Livre e que se tiverdes achado que assim Convem o declareis e executeis nesta forma porem que se pellas rezoens que em contrario se allegaõ tendes continvado Com a suspençaõ do Alvara Como fez Antonio Paes de Sande procureis tomar todas as informaçoens necessarias e vejaes tambem as razoes que da India se apontaõ na Carta e Consulta referidas e Sc:bre tudo interponhaes vosso parecer para eu tomar resolaçaõ. Escrita em Lx<sup>a</sup> aos 15 de Março de 682. Principe.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Francisco de Tavora, viceroy of India, friend, I the prince greet you well. I have commanded what the governor Antonio Paes de Sande wrote to me in a letter of the 24th of January of last year to be examined, which related to the objections represented to him in a report of the council of commerce of Mozambique against the enforcement of the charter which I caused to be issued that the commerce of the rivers of Sofala should be free to all the subjects of this kingdom and its conquests. The reasons stated in the said report made it necessary to assemble the councillors of state, of the city, of the supreme court, the chapter, and the chief superiors of the religious orders, and it was decided to suspend the execution of the said charter, on account of the evil which would result to my service and to the preservation of the conquest of Mozambique, order being given that the council should continue in office as before until other instructions are received from me, of which you will find a more detailed account in the said letters and report, of which copies are transmitted to you with this.

I think fit to inform you that my resolution that the commerce of the rivers should be free was taken after much consideration as to what might occur in this matter, and therefore the said resolution should not for the present be altered, and the objections brought against it by the council of Goa do not relate to any question of importance; but as you have received orders to obtain exact information of what is most conducive to my service and to the benefit of the state, I command you, with reference to this matter of my resolution that the commerce should be free, upon finding that it is advisable, to carry it into execution and publish the charter accordingly, nevertheless if on account of the reasons brought forward against it, you have continued delaying the enforcement of the charter, as was done by Antonio Paes de Sande, you shall take means to obtain all necessary information, and you shall examine also the reasons given in the aforesaid letter and report sent from India, and you shall give your opinion upon all, that I may pass a resolution.

Written in Lisbon, the 15th of March 1682.

THE PRINCE.

Conde VRey da India Amigo. Eu o Principe vos envio muito Saudar Como aquelle que amo. Manoel Barreto Ponte fez hum papel em que descreveo tudo o que toca a Mossambique, o qual Remeteo a este Reino, e porque aquy se não acha e se entende estará em Goa. Vos ordeno o façaes buscar, e me enviareis na primeira monção. Aquella Christandade de Mossambique he tão dilatada, e fica tão distante de Goa se tem por Conveniente haver aLi Bispo. Encomendo vos concidereis esta materia, e achando que he Conveniente me aponteis os meynos Com que se podera Sustentar com Concideração a que El Rey de Monomotapa o pede, e de tudo me remeteréis vossa informação. Escrita em Lixboa a vinte e Sinco de Março de 1683. Principe.

*[English translation of the foregoing.]*

Count, viceroy of India, friend, I the prince greet you well, as one whom I love. Manuel Barreto Ponte has drawn up a paper giving a description of everything relating to Mozambique, which he sent to this kingdom. As it is not to be found here, and it is understood that it is in Goa, I command you to cause a search to be made for it, and to send it to me in the first monsoon. The said Christian settlement of Mozambique is so extensive and so distant from Goa, that it is considered advisable to send a bishop there. I charge you to consider this matter, and finding it to be advisable, you shall suggest to me the means by which it may be supported, bearing in mind that the king of Monomotapa asks for this. You shall send me your report upon the whole matter.

Written in Lisbon, the 25th of March 1683.

THE PRINCE.

Conde VRey da India Amigo. Eu El Rey vos envio muito Saudar Como aquelle que amo. Tendo respeito a Ioão Mendes Serqueira me haver Servido nas guerras do Reino por espaço de seis annos, e querer ir Continuar o serviço a esse Estado no Socorro que mandey aos Rios de Sofalla Me pareceo ordenar vos que o proveis aos nos Postos em que estiver acabar por seus Serviços que vos ha de apresentar Com esta Carta. Escrita em Lixboa o dezaSete de outubro de 683. Rey. Conde de Valde Reis.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. Bearing in mind that João Mendes Serqueira served me in the wars of the kingdom during the space of six years, and wishes to continue his services to that state in the reinforcements which I sent to the rivers of Sofala, I think fit to command you to appoint him to such posts as will be a reward for his services, of which a statement will be sent to you with this letter.

Written in Lisbon, the 17th of October 1683.

THE KING.

THE COUNT OF VALDEREIS.

Conde vRey da India Amigo. Eu El Rey vos envio muito Saudar Como aquelle que amo. Por se me representar aquy por parte de Damiaõ de Souza Fragozo haver perto de douze annos que assistia em meu Serviço nos Rios de Sofalla aonde por o Citio ser muy doentio padecia muitos achaques com grande perigo de Sua vida, e por essa Cauza, e outras muy precisas que dependiaõ de Sua assistencia queria passar para essa Cidade de Goa Com seus filhos. Vos encomendo que achando que naõ ha inconveniente na licença que Damião de Sousa Fragozo pede para se recolher dos Rios de Sofalla donde he morador lha Concedais para que va para essa Cidade Com sua Caza e familia. Escrita em Lixboa a Sinco de Fevereiro de 684. Rey. Conde de valde Reis.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. Representation being made to me here, on the part of Damião de Sousa Fragozo, that for nearly twelve years he has resided at the rivers of Sofala in my service, where, it being a very unhealthy country, he has suffered many attacks of illness, to the great peril of his life; and for this and many other very pressing reasons arising from his residence there, he wished to proceed to the city of Goa with his children. I charge you, if

there are no obstacles to granting the license for which *Damião de Sousa Fragozo* asks to leave the rivers of *Sofala*, of which he is a resident, to grant this license, that he may go to that city with his household and family.

Written in Lisbon, the 5th of February 1684.

THE KING.

THE COUNT OF VALDEREIS.

---

Por decreto de dezaSete de Novembro do anno passado manda V. Magestade se veja neste Concelho huma Carta de *Gaspar de Souza de Lacerda* que esta Servindo de *Loco Tenente do Geral dos Rios*, escrita de *Senna em tres de Julho de Seis Centos oitenta, e dous*, e pelo mais que não pertencia ao *Comercio dos Rios* se Consultasse Logo a V Magestade o que parecesse, nella Refere que o *VizoRey Francisco de Tavora* lhe ordenara abrisse os Rios para poderem Contratar todos os vassallos de V. Magestade; e que sentasse huma *Alfandega em Mossambique*, e outra em *quilimane* o que tinha feito para se pagarem os direitos de vinte por Cento de todas as *Fazendas*, porem lhe parecia mais vtil Correr este Contrato por Conta da *Fazenda Real em Razaõ* de que Com os Rendimentos destas *Alfandegas* se não podem fazer as despezas necessarias para a defença de *Mossambique e Rios*, e era muito preciso haver em *Quilimane* huma *Fortaleza de pedra, e Cal com boa Artelheria* para defença da entrada daquella *Barra* por quanto nella estavaõ muy praticos todos os *Estrangeiros da Europa*, e huma que se havia principiado nella era invtil para a defenssa por ser entulhada da terra e feita de paos. Que tambem Carecia ao *Porto de Quilimane* de hum prezido de *Cem Soldados* para *Segurança* daquellas terras sendo esta a gente de que se havia de povar por quanto os *Cazaes* que foraõ para aquellas partes só serviaõ de fazer despezas a *Fazenda Real*, e de discredito a nação *Portugueza* pelo mal que tem procedido e hindo soldados não faltavaõ mulheres naquellas partes Com quem *Cazassem e ficariaõ* aquellas terras, e Seus moradores liures dos ameacos de *El Rey de Manamotapa* que todas as horas esta ameaçando se ha de levantar o que nascia de pouca gente que havia pois havia povoação donde assistiaõ dous ou tres *Portuguezes*, e na principal daquelles Rios que era a feira de *Dambarare* por estar por todas as minas de ouro achara



somente tres porem tratara Logo de a mandar fortificar e goarnecer Com a gente que lhe foy possivel e lhe era necessario hum prezido de Sincoenta homens effectivos. Que tambem havia prejudicado muito a Fazenda Real as ordens que foraõ para que os moradores dos Rios Largassem as terras que haviaõ Comprado a El Rey de Manamotapa, e aos mais Regulos porque sendo nossas estavaõ mais bem povadas, e havia mais ouro pelo tirarem os Cafres que nellas habitavaõ e tanto que se largaraõ fugiraõ os moradores pello Certaõ dentro. e assim naõ havia quem tirasse o ouro mais que alguns Cafres Cativos daquelles Povos Portugueses que havia. Que a informaçã que se dera a V. Magestade sobre o Cobre naõ era Certa porque havia taõ pouca que se naõ achava Com facilidade e o Conduzillo Custava mais do que for se Comprado em Goa, e para o que V. M<sup>de</sup> mandara resgatar ficava buscando pessoas praticas para fazerem este negocio com as Roupas que lhe remetera o vedor da Fazenda. Que naquelles Rios se naõ necessitava de Hospitaes porem Só o de Medicos Sangradores, e Boticarios pellos naõ haver e juntamente de Cultivadores da India por serẽ aquellas terras taõ fortes que duas vezes no anno davaõ novidade.

Que Chegando a Monssambique lhe dera parte o Castellaõ daquella Fortaleza Diogo de Abreu de Lima e Como perdendose na entrada daquella Barra huma Nao Ingleza de duas que naquella oCaziaõ foraõ a ella mandaraõ os Inglezes da Nao perdida hum Buque prezo para a Fortaleza o qual entrando pelo Corpo da gualda dicera diante de todos os soldados que aLy estavaõ, que os Inglezes da sua Nao o intentavaõ matar acumulando lhe Culpas que elle naõ tinha cometido, e o que antes que o matassem nos descobria huma treizaõ que os Inglezes que tinhaõ Cometido na tomada da Nao nossa Senhora da Ajuda em que hia Antonio de Mello de Castro para o Reino de que o dito Buque dissera fora Catio, e hia na mesma Nao a qual tomaraõ os ditos Inglezes na altura do Cabo da Boa esperança aonde degolaraõ a Antonio de Mello de Castro Com a mais gente que hia em Sua Companhia, e roubaraõ a Nao e a meteraõ a pique e elle so escapara por ser pequeno, e que tambem tinha tomado huma embarcaçã nossa pequena que de Mossambique hia para o Brazil que dizeraõ ser a em que hia Manoel Iacome, e que tendo os Inglezes noticia da Confizaõ que o dito Buque fizera o mandaraõ pedir ao Castellaõ, que entãõ era daquella Fortaleza

Gaspar Baiaõ de Rezende, e Logo o mâtaraõ, e que mandando tirar devassa pello ouvidor geral do Crime Antonio de Souza sahiraõ Comprehendidos os officiaes Inglezes da dita Nao em Cujõ poder vinha o dito Buque em Comparecer do ouvidor geral, e do Castelaõ Diogo de Abreu de Lima, e do Capitaõ de Mar e guerra Francisco velles Rameires ordenara se prendessem os ditos Inglezes e se fizesse inventario do dito fato e se depositasse em maõ de Ioaõ Dias Ribeiro pessoa abonada, e fizessem os ditos prezos remetidos ao VRey com a devaça para mandar o que fizesse mais Conveniente ao Serviço de V Magestade; e que fazendo mais diligencias sobre esta materia achara que estas Naos de Inglezes naõ eraõ de El Rey da Inglaterra nem da Companhia e sem passa portes tinhaõ vindo a Mossambique dizendo faziaõ viagem para a Ilha de Saõ Lourenço, e para as Barbadas, e que vinhaõ aquella Fortaleza a vender suas mercancias e Se entendera serem mais Piratas que mercatores pellos muitos petrechos de Guerra que traziaõ nas Naos bem artilhadas, e a mercancia de Pouco momento.

Que a Fortaleza de Mossambique se achava Com pouca gente pois Sendo a Sua lotaçãõ de trezentos Soldados naõ aSistiaõ nella hoje mais que Cento e trinta a mayor parte delles bizonhos repartidos em quatro Companhias Cujos postos entendia eraõ escuzados em Razaõ de haver aly sempre hum Só Capitaõ da Infantaria o qual servia tambem do sargento mor do prezidio, e estes postos eraõ novamente acressentados depois que o Contrato Correrã por Conta da Fazenda Real sendo V Magestade servido se façaõ prezidios haviaõ de Ser as despezas muito grandes, e Com os Rendimentos das Alfandegas naõ fizessem Certos, poderiaõ faltar os efeitos para dellas e Só poderiaõ ter muitos avanços quando se tomasse outra vez por Conta de V. Magestade o Comercio daquelles pondo-se em melhor forma do que estiveraõ, e Com elle naõ faltariaõ Só Cabedaes para estas despezas mas tambem para as da India, e que se Censegueria havendo Ministro fiel que Corresse Com este negocio sem estar sogeito as disposiçoens de juntas que estes heraõ as que haviaõ dado perdas a Fazenda Real na mesma disposiçaõ que houve, e para se evitarem descaminhos e as grandes despezas que se faziaõ nas carregaçõens que chegavaõ molhadas e perdidas só havia de assentar a Feitoria no Porto de Quilimane pella melhor sahida que tinhaõ as Fazendas.

Que de todas estas Couzas poderia informar a V. Magestade com toda a verdade o Padre Domingos Delgado da Companhia de IEsus que diziaõ vinha para esta Corte por ser Religiozo de muita vertude e poderia dar todas as boas informaçoens a Vossa Magestade. Que tambem dava Conta a V. Magestade que algumas Cartas que de la vinhaõ de El Rey de Manamotapa eraõ feitas para aquelles que lhes pediaõ boas informaçoens para V. Magestade e Só o sello era do dito Rey que estes alcançaõ elles por pouco e nos informes que dava de pouco fruto que se fazia da Christandade no Seu Reino naõ era notta sua porque este Rey Só de Christaõ tinha o nome, e o viver era de Gentio porque guardava os ritos da Gentilidade e nunca assistia aos officios Divinos nem se Confeçava e os Cafres seguiaõ o mesmo, e assim os Missionarios que por la assistiaõ só faziaõ fruto com os naturaes que bauptizavaõ pequenos e logo morriaõ de que tudo havia dado Conta ao V. Rey Francisco de Tavora.

E sendo visto a Carta referida, Pareceo ao Concelho Representar a V Magestade que Gaspar de Souza insinua nesta Sua Carta que de todos os particulares della tinha dado Conta ao VRey da India, e Com elle tinha estas noticias e lugar de os poder averigoar melhor entende o Concelho que estara ja disposto na melhor forma que lhe parecesse Conveniente ao Serviço de V Magestade, e Concervação daquella Conquista de que he provavel avizara na primeira monçaõ. Lixboa oito de Fevereiro de 684.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

By a decree of the 17th of November of last year your Majesty commanded this council to examine a letter from Gaspar de Sousa de Lacerda, who is serving as acting commander of the rivers, written from Sena on the 3rd of July 1682, and to give your Majesty advice upon all that does not relate to the commerce of the rivers.

He states therein that the viceroy Francisco de Tavora commanded him to open the commerce of the rivers, that all your Majesty's subjects might trade there, and to establish custom houses in Mozambique and Quilimane, which was done, that a duty of twenty per cent should be paid on all merchandise; nevertheless he was of opinion that it would be more advan-

tageous if this commerce was undertaken by the royal treasury, because the revenue of the said custom houses would not suffice to cover the necessary expenses for the defence of Mozambique and the rivers, and it was most necessary that a fortress of stone and lime should be built at Quilimane and furnished with good artillery to defend the entrance to that river, as it was well known to all the European nations, and that a fort which had been commenced there was useless for defence, as it was built of wood and earth.

That further the port of Quilimane stood in need of a garrison of one hundred soldiers, for the protection of those lands, these being the men with whom the country should be peopled, as the married men who went to those parts were only a source of expense to the royal treasury and of discredit to the Portuguese nation, on account of their bad conduct, and if soldiers were sent there would be no scarcity of women for them to marry in those parts, and the said lands and their residents would be free from the menaces of the king of Monomotapa, who is constantly threatening to rise in rebellion, which is the result of the scarcity of men there, as in one town there were only two or three Portuguese residents, although it was the chief town of the said rivers, being the market of Dambarare, and situated among all the gold mines, nevertheless although only three Portuguese were found there he would immediately begin fortifying it and furnishing it with as many men as possible, and he required a garrison of fifty effective men.

That the orders issued for the residents of the rivers to give up the lands which they had bought from the king of Monomotapa and other petty kings had greatly prejudiced the royal treasury, because when the lands were ours they were better populated and there was a greater abundance of gold, as it was collected by the Kaffirs who inhabited them, and as soon as the lands were given up the inhabitants fled to the interior, and thus there was no one to collect the gold except a few Kaffirs who were slaves of such Portuguese as were resident there.

That the information given to your Majesty with regard to copper was not exact, as there was such a small quantity that it was difficult to discover it, and its transport cost more than if it were bought in Goa. And with regard to that which your Majesty commanded should be bought, steps were being taken

to discover experienced persons to undertake this business, with the cloth sent by the overseer of the treasury.

That no hospitals were required in the said rivers, but only doctors, blood letters, and apothecaries, as there are none there, and also some cultivators from India, as the lands are so fertile that they yield two harvests in the year.

That upon his arrival at Mozambique the castellan of the fortress, Diogo de Abreu de Lima, informed him that one of two English ships which had gone there on that occasion was lost at the entrance of the bar. The English of the lost vessel sent a captured Malay to the fortress, who on entering the guard house declared before all the soldiers who were there that the English of his ship had attempted to kill him, accusing him of crimes which he had never committed, and that before they killed him he would reveal to us the treachery of which the English had been guilty in the capture of the ship *Nossa Senhora da Ajuda*, in which Antonio de Mello de Castro was going to the kingdom, of whom the said Malay declared he was a slave, and he was on board the aforesaid ship, which was captured by the English in the latitude of the Cape of Good Hope, where they beheaded Antonio de Mello de Castro with all the men who accompanied him, and plundered and then sunk the ship, and he being small was the only one who escaped. And that they had also taken a small ship belonging to us, bound from Mozambique to Brazil, which was said to be the one in which Manuel Jacome sailed.

That the English, upon hearing of the confession made by the Malay, sent to demand him from Gaspar Baião de Rezende, who was castellan of the fortress at the time, and immediately put him to death; and that commanding the chief criminal judge, Antonio de Sousa, to make an enquiry into this matter, the English officers of the aforesaid ship in whose power the said Malay had come were convicted in the judgment of the chief judge, of the castellan Diogo de Abreu de Lima, and of the naval and military captain Francisco Velles Rameires, and an order was issued for the said English to be seized and for an inventory to be made of their effects, which should be deposited in the care of João Dias Ribeiro, a trustworthy person; and having taken the said persons prisoners, to send them to the viceroy, with a report of the enquiry, that he might give such

orders as he should consider most conducive to your Majesty's service.

And further enquiries having been made as regards this matter, it was found that these ships did not belong either to the English king or to the Company, and that they had come without passports to Mozambique, saying that they were bound to the island of Madagascar and to Barbados, and that they had come to the fortress to sell their merchandise. And from the quantity of military stores which the ships carried, they being well furnished with artillery, and the merchandise being of little value, it was gathered that they were rather pirates than merchants.

That there were few men at the fortress of Mozambique, since although its complement was three hundred soldiers, at the present there were only one hundred and thirty there, the greater part of whom were raw recruits, divided into four companies, and he gathered that these soldiers were useless, as there was never more than one captain of infantry there, who also held the post of sergeant major of the garrison, and their number had been recently increased, after the commerce was carried on by the royal treasury, and your Majesty desiring garrisons to be formed, the expenses would be very great; and as the revenue of the custom houses was not sure, funds might not be forthcoming to meet the expenses; and great profits could only be gained if the commerce was again undertaken on your Majesty's account, it being placed on a better footing than formerly; and in this way not only will there be funds to meet the said expenses, but also for those of India; and this end will be attained if this business is entrusted to a faithful minister, who is not dependent on the orders of the councils, as the latter were the cause of the losses to the royal exchequer when the said arrangement existed. To avoid the thefts and the great expenses which occurred when the cargoes arrived wet and ruined, it is only necessary to establish the factory at the port of Quilimane, which is more convenient for the exportation of merchandise.

That Father Domingos Delgado, of the Society of Jesus, who is said to have come to this court, will be able to give your Majesty reliable information upon all these matters, he being a religious of great virtue, and he will be able to supply your Majesty with all necessary information.

He further informs your Majesty that some letters which came from the king of Monomotapa were written by those persons who were asked to send reliable information for your Majesty, and that only the seal was the said king's, which they easily obtained. And that as to the reports he gave of the little fruit obtained from the Christian missions of this kingdom, he was not responsible for this, as the king was only a Christian in name, and lived like a heathen, observing the heathen rites and never attending the divine offices or going to confession, and the Kaffirs followed the same example, and thus the only fruit obtained by the missionaries residing there was with the natives whom they baptized when they were young and who died soon afterwards; and he had given an account of everything to the viceroy Francisco de Tavora.

The said letter having been examined, the council thinks fit to represent to your Majesty that as Gaspar de Sousa states in this his letter that he has given an account of all these matters to the viceroy of India, who is possessed of this information and has better means of verifying it, the council is of opinion that he will have already taken those steps which appeared to him most conducive to your Majesty's service and to the preservation of the said conquest, of which it is probable he will send information in the first monsoon.

Lisbon, the 8th of February 1684.

Conde VRey da India Amigo. Eu El Rey vos envio muito Saudar Como aquelle que amo. Por parte do Ambrozio Martis da Ponte se me representou que passando a esse Estado por Cirurgiaõ mor do Terço que foy para os Rios de Sofalla, e exercitando o dito Cargo Com grande trabalho, e Zello de meu Serviço e desuelardosse navera de todos os enfermos por não haver medico nem Boticario Com notoria Caridade, e por este Respeito ser provido no Cargo de Cirurgiaõ mor de Mossambique sem mais Soldo que o que vencia com o do Terço se achava com grandes empenhos, e achaques oCazionados das distancias a que lhe hera forçoço acodir em climas muy remotos doentios; E que por Ser Cazado nesta Corte, e Com filhos que Careciaõ do amparo de Sua vida a vos pedira Licença para poder tornar para este

Reino a tratar de Sua Cura, e familia que lhe naõ quizestes Conceder por ser provido por mim no Cargo que oCupava: E pareceo me ordenar vos (Como por esta o faço) que naõ havendo inconveniente Concedais ao Suplicante licença para vir para este Reino. Escrita em Lixboa a onze de Fevereiro de 684. Rey. Conde de Valde Reis.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. It has been represented to me, in the name of Ambrozio Martis da Ponte, that he went to that state as chief surgeon of the regiment which went to the rivers of Sofala, and discharged the said office with great diligence and zeal for my service, the charity he displayed in his vigilant care of all the sick, there being no doctor or apothecary, being notorious. For this reason he was appointed to the post of chief surgeon of Mozambique, the salary being no higher than that which he received as surgeon of the regiment, and he found himself greatly in debt, and in ill health occasioned by the distances he was compelled to travel to reach remote places in unhealthy climates. And as he was married in this court, and has children who are deprived of his protection, he asked license of you to return to this kingdom to recover his health and to attend to his family, which you refused to grant him, as he was appointed by me to the post which he holds. I think fit to command you, as I now do by this, to grant the petitioner leave to return to this kingdom, if there is no objection to doing so.

Written in Lisbon, the 11th of February 1684.

THE KING.

THE COUNT OF VALDEREIS.

---

Conde de Alvor VRey da India Amigo. Eu El Rey vos envio muito Saudar Como aquelle que amo. Antonio Correa de Saa que morreu em Mossambique estando por superintendente da fazenda, Remeteo a este Reino haverá nove para dez annos hum papel sobre a forma que se devia dar a aRecadação de minha fazenda, e Comercio dos Rios, e Manoel Barreto da Ponte Capitaõ



engenheiro, que morreu em hum naufragio hindo para Senna estando em cilimane mandou outro descrevendo os Rios, e os Costumes dos Rios que os habitaõ e Com quem partiaõ e das minas que ali havia ; e porque fazendose diligencia por estes dois papeis se não descubriã, e Como Continuaõ em Sy materias de importancia. Me pareceo ordenar vos (Como por esta o faço) procureis haver os dois papeis e que vos Remetais ao Reino nas primeiras embarcaçoens que partirem desse Estado. Escrita em Lixboa a vinte e quatro de Março de 1684. Rey. Conde de Valde Reis.

*[English translation of the foregoing.]*

Count of Alvor, viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. Antonio Correa de Sá, who died in Mozambique, when superintendent of the treasury sent to this kingdom about nine or ten years ago a paper relating to the form of management that should be adopted for my treasury and the commerce of the rivers.

And Manuel Barreto da Ponte, cap'tain of engineers, who was lost in a shipwreck on his way to Sena, when in Quilimane transmitted another paper describing the rivers, the customs of the rivers, the inhabitants, their neighbours, and the mines there.

As search has been made for these two papers, and they have not been discovered, and as they contain matters of importance, I think fit to command you, as I now do by this, to find means of obtaining them, and to send them to this kingdom with the first ships.

Written in Lisbon, the 24th of March 1684.

THE KING.

THE COUNT OF VALDEREIS.

---

Conde vRey da India amigo. Eu El Rey vos envio muito saudar como aquelle que amo. Hauendo mandado ver o que aqui me representou Dom Antonio da Cunha aSerca de lhe fazer pagamento pellos rendimentos das Alfandigas da Fortaleza de Massambique dos trinta mil xerefins que ficaraõ liquidos dos quarenta mil xerefins por que se tinha alvidrado a renuncia da Fortaleza de Sofalla do que lhe coubera a intrancia em Ianeiro

de 684 como respondera o Procurador da Coroa, e fazenda desse Estado e que por o dito rendimento não chegar a pagar ao prezidio, e mais despesas da dita fortaleza ficaria impossibilitado para hauer de ser pago, e com tanta demenuiçaõ no valor por que se costumaua renunciar a mesma fortaleza, recebendo grande dano em não Ser o pagamento dos trinta mil xerefins promptamente, como se fez a outros providos, a quem se pagou na Cidade de Goa pellos effeitos da Iunta de Massambique, Me pareceo dizer vos que ordeneis se paguem com toda a pontualidade dos effeitos de Massambique estar m<sup>tes</sup> precedendo as mais consignações por quanto eu as tomou aos donos das mures, e não he justo que se lhe dilatem os Seos pagamentos. Escrita em Lisboa a 23 de Março de 686. Rey. Conde de Valde Reis.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. Having commanded what Dom Antonio da Cunha represented to me here to be examined concerning the payment to him, from the revenue of the custom house of the fortress of Mozambique, of the thirty thousand xerafins due from the forty thousand xerafins which was the sum agreed upon for the renunciation of the fortress of Sofala, which it fell to his turn to enter in January 1684, to which the attorney of the crown and treasury of that state made reply that as the said revenue did not suffice to pay the garrison and the other expenses of the said fortress, it was impossible to make this payment; and that with the great decrease in the sum which it was usual to pay for the renunciation of the said fortress, he had suffered great injury from not receiving prompt payment of the thirty thousand xerafins, as was received by the other persons appointed to it, who were paid in the city of Goa with the goods of the council of Mozambique, I think fit to inform you to command this sum to be punctually paid from the merchandise of Mozambique this monsoon, rather than from other consignments, because as I took these rights from the owners of the fortress it is not just to delay payment for them.

Written in Lisbon, the 23rd of March 1686.

THE KING.

THE COUNT OF VALDEREIS.

Governador do Estado da India. Eu El Rey vos envio muito saudar. Havendo mando ver o que me escreveu entre outros particulares, Caetano de Mello de Castro Gov<sup>or</sup> dos Rios de Sofalla, em Carta de 24 de Junho de 686, acerca de se necessitar proverse aquella Conquista, e depois que fora p<sup>a</sup> ella lhe não chegaraõ nenhuns Socorros, e So naquella ocaziaõ Se Remetera dessa Cidade de Goa huma Companhia de 50 Soldados que mandava ficar em Mossambique por se achar muy falta de guarniçaõ aquella fortaleza, e que se deviaõ prover os ditos Rios de Soldados que hera a melhor gente para aquellas partes, porque se davaõ bem naquelle Clima os Moços, e brevemente se Remediavaõ tomando estado, com que Se evitavaõ despezas na fazenda real, Me pareceo ordenar vos (como por esta faço) que socorreis a Monss<sup>o</sup> de gente, e moniçoens necessarias, mandando para este prezidio aquelles Soldados que com o parecer dos Ministros de Letras se entender que devem hir para esta praça. Escrita em Lisboa 23 de Março de 1687. Rey.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Governor of the state of India, I the king greet you well. Having commanded an examination to be made of what Caetano de Mello de Castro, governor of the rivers of Sofala, wrote to me in a letter of the 24th of June 1686, relating, among other matters to the necessity of assisting that conquest, stating that since he had gone there no assistance whatever had been sent to him, and on that occasion only a company of fifty soldiers had been sent from the city of Goa, whom he commanded to be stationed at Mozambique, as that fortress was in great need of men; and that the said rivers should be provided with soldiers, as these were the best men to people those parts, that climate being suitable to young men, and matters would be soon remedied by their settling there, by which expense to the royal treasury would be avoided; I think fit to command you, as I do by this, to furnish Mozambique with men and the necessary stores, sending to that garrison such soldiers as in the opinion of learned officials should be sent to that fortress.

Written in Lisbon, the 23rd of March 1687.

THE KING.

Dom Rodrigo da Costa Ev El Rey vos envio muito Saudar. Por pr<sup>te</sup> de Jozé da Fonceica coutinho Se me Representou aqui hauer me Seruido nesse Estado Vinte dous annos ocupando os postos de Capitaõ de Armadas, e capitaõ da guarniçaõ de Mossambique e que passando aos Rios de Sofalla aonde aSiste ha noue annos hauia Seruido dous trienios de capitaõ, Feitor das Fortalezas dos Rios de que dera Suas e por Se achar falto de Saude, e lhe Ser precisamente necessario passar para esta cidade com Sua mulher me pedia lhe Concedece Licença para o poder fazer. E pareceo me ordenar vos (como por esta o faço) que naõ hauendo inconueniente Concedais ao dito Jozeph da Fonceica Coutinho a Licença que pede. Escrita em Lisboa a 16 de 8b<sup>vo</sup> de 687. Rey. O Conde de Valdo Reis.

[English translation of the foregoing.]

Dom Rodrigo da Costa, I the king greet you well. It has been represented to me here, on the part of José da Fonseca Coutinho, that he has served me twenty-two years in that state, holding the posts of commander of the fleets and captain of the garrison of Mozambique, and going to the rivers of Sofala, where he has resided nine years, he served two triennial terms as captain and factor of the fortresses of the rivers. And finding himself in failing health, and it being extremely necessary for him to proceed to this city with his wife, he begs me to grant him license to do so.

I think fit to command you, as I do by this, to grant the aforesaid José da Fonseca Coutinho the license for which he asks, if there is no obstacle to doing so.

Written in Lisbon, the 16th of October 1687.

THE KING.

THE COUNT OF VALDEREIS.

Governador do Estado da India. Eu El Rey vos envio muito saudar. O Conde de Aluor vRey que foy nesse Estado em carta de 24 de Ianeiro do anno de 686 deo conta que como lhe faltaraõ naquelle anno cartas de Caetano de Mello (porque sabindo dos Rios varias embarcaçoens se dizia que se lhe escrevera em huma

que se perdera no banco de Quilimane) ficara sem mais noticias daquella conquista que as que se lhe dera a Frey Antonio Pereira Vigario Geral nesse Estado que naquella monção hia Suceder no dito governo Dom Miguel de Almeida, que entendia serveria mui bem nelle por Ser prudente, entendido e Sobre tudo limpissimo de maons, que leuaua alguma gente; porem que sendo mais que lhe pudera dar era muito menos da que aly se havia mester, e que aSim o tivesse entendido para mandar Socorrer aquella Praça e aquellas terras com a que fosse possivel, e para confirmar a Dom Miguel, porque alem delle o merecer não estauão os Rios em estado de sofrer nouas experiencias de homens que ainda não erã conhecidos, e mandando eu considerar esta materia, aSim em ordem ao provimento que o Conde fez em Dom Miguel Como as diferentes dependencias, e consequencias que tras consigo a exação deste posto, e tambem da gente de guerra de que se nescessita nos Rios para se conservarem, e augmentarem, fuy Serv<sup>o</sup> Rezolver que não haja mais general nos Rios que Sejaõ governados pello Castellaõ de Massambique na nao que este anno vay de viagem para esse Estado se mandassem Sincoenta Soldados de Socorro para os Rios que deitem em Massambique quando o tempo não obrigasse a que a nao va em direitura a Goa porque neste cazo se lhe Remeterã desse Estado. De que vos mando avizar, e para que tendo entendido esta minha Rezoluçaõ executeis nesta conformid<sup>o</sup>. Escrita em Lisboa a 19 de Fevereiro de 1688. Rey.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Governor of the state of India, I the king greet you well. The count of Alvor, formerly viceroy of that state, reported in a letter of the 24th of January 1686 that as he had not received letters that year from Caetano de Mello, (it being said that he had written by a ship which was leaving the rivers with several others, and which was lost on the bar of Quilimane) he had no further information of that conquest than the reports given to Friar Antonio Pereira, vicar general of that state; that Dom Miguel de Almeida was to succeed in that monsoon to the said government, and would, he understood, discharge this office very successfully, being prudent, skilful, and above all of unimpeachable integrity; that he took with him a few men, but although

these were as many as he could supply him with, they were not nearly as many as were required there, which should be well understood, that all the men it was possible to send should be sent to that fortress and those lands; and that the appointment of Dom Miguel should be confirmed, because beyond the fact that he deserved it, the affairs of the rivers were not in a fit state to undergo new experiences with men who were not yet known.

I, having commanded this matter to be examined as regards the count's appointment of Dom Miguel and the different matters depending on this office and the consequences which the discharge of it entails, and also as regards the soldiers who are required at the rivers for their preservation and advancement, think fit to resolve that no general of the rivers shall be any longer governed by the castellan of Mozambique, and that a reinforcement of fifty soldiers shall be sent to the rivers in the ship sailing to that state this year, who shall be landed at Mozambique if the weather does not compel the ship to proceed direct to Goa, in which case they must be sent from that state. Of which I cause you to be informed, that understanding my resolution you shall execute it accordingly.

Written in Lisbon, the 19th of February 1688.

THE KING.

---

JUIZO  
SOBRE A CARTA DE ANTONIO ALVAREZ PEREIRA  
ESCRITA A SUA MAG<sup>de</sup>  
SOBRE OS RIOS DE CUAMA.\*

Varios meynos aponta em sua openião faceis pera a conquista dos Rios, q̄ irey apontando cõ as difficuldades q̄ me occorrẽ no exercicio delles.

Primeiro. Que se passem cazais para augmento das pouoações q̄ pode ser muitos dos q̄ andaõ mendigando polla Cid<sup>e</sup> de Goa, e q̄ se gaste cõ estes trinta mil #<sup>os</sup> da faz<sup>da</sup> real do primeiro anno. Estea trinta mil haõ de ser em roupas, q̄ he o meneo dos Rios e ja emcalhamos no contrato do Gou<sup>or</sup>. Cazais de Goa difficultosa-

\* Copied from a manuscript in the Bibliothèque Nationale, Paris. Département des Manuscrits. Portugais Vol. 53, folio 54.

mente a rancaraõ de Goa, porq̄ ha homẽs taõ cassados cõ a propria mizeria q̄ naõ daraõ huã passada, por naõ sahirem della, e quando os aja, saõ necessarias muito mayores despesas pera a paçage. Mais facil sera dos soldados do Prizidio de Mossambique ir passando algũs p<sup>a</sup> a conquista, porq̄ estes curtidos ja do clima, e noticiosos dos Rios, e lucro delles, teraõ por despacho a passagem, e em lugar destes podem ir outros da India para guarniçaõ da praça e a experiencia nos tem mostrado q̄ sem pedire despesas delRey metẽ podreiras, pera q̄ se lhes conceda a passagem.

Segundo. Que os foros q̄ la se pagaõ a ElRey uenhaõ em marfim, e q̄ este se mande a Dio, p<sup>a</sup> de la uirem roupas, pera os pagamentos da gente q̄ for entrando. Tornamos a encalhar no contrato do Gou<sup>o</sup>.

Terceiro. Que se mande cõ a gente q̄ for, homẽ q̄ la a gouerne e lhe reparta pedaços de terra aonde possaõ assistir. Supoem q̄ se fas huã noua colonia, em nouas terras, destituídas da cabeça. Auendo dentro tantos Capitaẽs, e sobre todos hũ Gou<sup>o</sup>.

Quarto. Que se ponha para a faz<sup>da</sup> real hũ matical por cabeça dos Naturais cada anno, q̄ todos pagaraõ cõ muita uontade por se uerem liures das tirannias q̄ la padecem assy dos Naturais seus superiores como dos nossos q̄ tem jurisdicãõ sobre elles. Naõ uy meyo mais efficaz p<sup>a</sup> rebeliaõ dos naturais e desemparo das terras do q̄ este; porq̄ se na mayor parte da Botonga se naõ acha hum graõ de ouro donde ha de tirar o Natural este matical, o cafe he taõ pobre q̄ naõ tem mais q̄ azagaya p<sup>a</sup> a cassa, e huã pelle sobre sy, e taõ leuadiço q̄ naõ tem cidade permanente, q̄ he o mayor impedimento de sua conuersaõ e cultiuacãõ na ley de xpõ, e q̄ fosse possiuel este matical, seria impossiuel a cobrança delle, se hum bazaruco naõ perseuerou na India, como se intentara hum matical nos Rios de Cuama? Se os naturais por este matical se quizerem liurar dos senhorios, assy dos seus como dos nossos, ja tiramos as terras aos nossos q̄ lhe foraõ dadas por seruiços e a respeito dos seus superiores, sem hauer outra causa cõ q̄ direito lhe podemos tirar as terras, e os Vaçalos por hum matical, q̄ se sopoem voluntario, na openiãõ do autor?

Este he Snor o juizo dos homẽs, o mesmo meyo q̄ a huns se representa facil, se fas dificultoso a outros, o juizo de V Ex<sup>a</sup> q̄ o mundo venera superior a todo juizo, sabera aplicar o facil, dispor o difficil, para q̄ em tempos futuros uejaõ aquelas terras, o q̄ esperaõ, lograr de felicidades cõ outro nouo Josuẽ Conquistador,

q̄ tudo aplaine e reparta terras cõ outros, sem tomar terras pera sy. O faxit Deus.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

*Opinion upon the letter of Antonio Alvares Pereira to his Majesty concerning the rivers of Cuama.*

He points out various means in his opinion proper for conquering the rivers, which I will proceed to set down, with the obstacles to their accomplishment which occur to me.

First. That married people be sent to increase the settlements, who might be of the many mendicants in the city of Goa, that thirty thousand cruzados be spent for this purpose from the royal revenue in the first year, and that the said thirty thousand cruzados should be in cloth, which is the currency of the rivers. Here we have already an obstacle in the governor's contract. Married people of Goa would be moved from Goa with great difficulty, for there are men so wedded to their own misery that they will not take a step to emerge from it, and though they were willing to emigrate much greater expenses would be required for their passage.

It would be easier for some of the soldiers from the fort of Mozambique to be sent into this conquest, because they are already accustomed to the climate, and have knowledge of the rivers and their riches. They would also take permission to go thither as a favour, and others could be sent from India to take their place in the garrison of the fort. Experience has proved to us that without asking for their expenses from the king, they send in petitions for leave to go thither.

Secondly. That the quit-rents due there to the king be paid in ivory, and that this be sent to Diu to be exchanged for cloth for the payment of the people who shall be sent there. Here we are again opposed by the governor's contract.

Thirdly. That with the people sent there some one be also sent to govern them and divide the portions of land among them where they reside. It is suggested that a new colony be founded in the new lands separated from the capital, with so many captains, and a governor over all.

Fourthly. That a poll-tax of a mitical per annum be imposed



upon the natives, who would all pay it willingly to free themselves from the tyranny of their native superiors and that of our people who have jurisdiction over them. I see no surer means than this of rousing the natives to rebel and to abandon these lands, for if in the greater part of Botonga not a grain of gold is to be found, where is the native to procure this mitical? The Kaffir is so poor that he possesses nothing but his assagai for hunting and a skin to cover himself, and so nomadic that he has no permanent city, which is the chief impediment to his conversion and training in the law of Christ; and if it were possible that he could pay this mitical it would be impossible to collect it. If the tax of a farthing was found impossible in India, how shall that of a mitical be attempted in the rivers of Cuama?

If the natives were willing by the payment of this mitical to free themselves from their masters, both those of their own nation and ours, we would be depriving our people of the lands given to them for their services, and with regard to their lords, without further cause what right have we to deprive them of their lands and vassals on payment of a mitical, which in the author's opinion would be voluntary.

Such, my lord, is the judgment of men: the means which some suggest as easy, others regard as full of difficulty. Your Excellency's judgment, which the world reveres as superior to any other, will know how to apply the easy means, and to dispose of the difficulties, that in future times those lands may enjoy all desired felicity, like that of another Josua, a conqueror who makes all difficulties smooth, and divides lands among others, reserving none for himself. God make it so.

---

#### MOÇAMBIQUE EM 1688.\*

Aos 8 de Agosto á vistamos a Costa de Ethiopia Oriental, aonde está á nossa Ilha de Moçambique, aparecia esta Costa vasta, e dilatada, q̄ hiá Correndo por muitas Legoas, e taõ de perto, q̄ ja hiamos vendo os palmares pellas prayas, representando pinheyrais no nosso Rn° de Portugal; já os olhos se entretrinbaõ,

\* From a document in the Library of the British Museum, written by a missionary of the Society of Jesus, one of twelve who went from Lisbon to Goa in the ship *Nossa Senhora da Conceição*. (20331, Folió 23.)

e faziaõ nous, com a vista de Aruores, q̄ há tantos mezes não tinhamos visto, mais q̄ as Aruores dos mastros; a noyte seguinte a passamos com a Nao a Capa, p<sup>a</sup> não escorrer, ou varar adiante de Monçambique com ó vento, q̄ era de viagem, de noyte a certas empulhetas, q̄ he o relógio por onde se repartem e rendem as vigias entre a gente do mar, q̄ vigia á quartos, atiraua a Nao huá pessa de artelharía, como he custume, das Naos da India, p<sup>a</sup> q̄ sendo ouvidas em Monçambique, nos mandassem pella menhaã Pillotos da barra.

Aos 9 ámanhacemos com Moçambique, a vista leuando nos á Fortaleza em hũ dos Baluartes huá bandeyra Real, e logo demos fundo, vieraõ os Pillotos praticos, á q̄ elles chamaõ Malemos, e nos meteraõ no Porto, aonde ancoramos; vieraõ logo os P. P. buscar nos para ó Collegio, recebendo nos nelle, pella Igreja Com muzica e repiques, couza, q̄ me trouche as lagrimas aos olhos q̄ fossem asim festijados, e ainda venerados os Missionarios, sendo eu hum delles, os P. P. nos hospedaraõ com huã charidade taõ ardente como he a terra aonde elles habitaõ, estaua acabando de Reytor ó P<sup>o</sup> M<sup>el</sup> Tr<sup>l</sup> restaua ja para o suceder vindo pouco de Goa, o P<sup>o</sup> Ant<sup>o</sup> de Azeuedo: Entrou com nosco de Sena, no mesmo dia hum Patacho, q̄ taõbem se chamaua da Conceypçaõ, como a nossa Naó, em Monçambique, fizemos escala athe ó dia 17 de Agosto, en q̄ tornamos outra vez á fazer nos a vella, p<sup>a</sup> á India, leuando com nosco p̄ Goa o P<sup>o</sup> M<sup>el</sup> Tr<sup>l</sup>; religioso de singular agrallo, e leuaramos taõbem, aó P<sup>o</sup> M<sup>el</sup> Soares, q̄ taõbem estaua para hir para ó mesmo Collegio, se não fora D. Miguel de Almeyda, q̄ despois de nos ancorados, tinha chegado de Sena, aonde tinha ido, e acabado de ser capitaõ Gn<sup>l</sup> dos Ryos, e passaua taõbem a Goa, e ó querer leuar na sua Nao, por ser especial amigo da Companhia.

No Porto de Monçambique se achauaõ com nosco sette Pataxos, de diuerças partes de Damaõ, de Dio, e ryos de Sena, e á Fragata, a q̄ chamaõ, do Risco, q̄ partia despois de nós, para esperar alguõs Pataxos, q̄ ainda não nauiaõ chegado. A nossa Naó lançou na fortaleza 50 homéns, como leuava por ordem, e tomou alguã fazenda Real; A mim me coube no tempo em q̄ estiuemos em Monçambique, pregar no Conuento de S. Domingos do seu Patriarcha, q̄ o Superior da Missaõ tinha tresladado á festa para á terra. e em outro dia preguey na festa q̄ os Pilotos fizeraõ em N. S<sup>ra</sup> da Saude, em hua Capella Capãs, q̄ está junto ao Hospital Real,

aonde assistem os charitativos filhos de S. João de Deos, não cuido, q̄ será fora de prepozito, q̄ em quanto nos detemos em Momçambique, detenhámos, á q<sup>m</sup> quizer ser leytor desta rellação, com huá breue noticia desta Ilha, porq̄ aderejava eu taõbem em algumas cartas de Missão, q̄ algumas vezes ouvi em Portugal.

*Breuissima noticia da Ilha de Moçambique, donde fizemos escalla.*

Naquelle costa Africana da Ethiopia Oriental, á q̄ com mais indiuidual nome chamaõ os Geografos, á Costa de Cafraria, vay á mesma Costa fazendo hua meya Lua com á terra firme, e na Obra, e entre os pontos deste semicirculo, está a piquena Ilha de Moçambique em 15 graos para o Sul, comprida hua meya legoa muito escassa, e de breuissima largura: rezaõ teue o Poeta Portuguez, p<sup>a</sup> dizer, Chamasse á piquena Ilha Moçambique, as Aruores, que tem saõ só Palmares, no pateo do nosso Claustro, vi Limoyros, Larangeiras, e Figueyras, como as do Reyno, de q̄ taõ bem há cantidade da banda da terra firme, como me disseraõ as mais fruitas, saõ como as do Brazil, Goibas, Papayos, Batatas, Bananas, etc. Tem huá fortaleza muito boá com 4 Baluartes, e huas Couraças para ó mar, m<sup>to</sup> boa Artelharia, pera sua defeza; pedirá de guarnição 300 homens; a cada sold<sup>o</sup> paga el Rey cada mez dois cruzados, e meyo, com duas Pangas e meyo de arros, e cada trez mezes, se lhes dobra esta paga, e quartel: Panga corresponde áo nosso alqueire, e segundo ouvi dizer, este soldado era bem pago, ao q̄ eu acrescentey, q̄ taõbem era bem merecido; Tem taõbem hum Castellaõ, q̄ val ó mesmo, q̄ Governador na jurisdicção, q̄ governa a Praça. Tem huã Alfandega, q̄ rendéra 50  $\text{€}$  cruzados, (segundo ouvi dizer) cada anno; em despachos de Marfim de q̄ vi as prayas cheyas de ambar e ouro: Tem taõbem hum Hospital Real, q̄ administraõ os Religiozos de S. Ioaõ de Deos, assistem nelle 7 ou 8 a cada hum dos quais dá el Rey 250 reys cada dia, e vestearia, e para gastos do Hospital 5  $\text{€}$  cruzados, de q̄ ó Administrador dá Contas, com seu surgiaõ mor, q̄ tem cada dia hum cruzado.

Tem caza de misericordia, e Igreja Colliada a q̄ chamaõ Scé, com seu Prior, e vigario geral, e hú só Beneficiado, com alguns Clerigos, mais huma Fregezia de S. Sebastiaõ cuja Igreja está no Castello, huã fermoza Capella de N. Sra da Saude, e outra de S. Antonio, a quem saudaõ, e saluaõ as Naós da India; não me

pareceu ó clima taõ maõ como sua fama, porq̃ o vezitanaõ as virações do mar, pella menhaá e tarde, he q̃ me deziaõ q̃ entaõ era Inuerno, sendo Agosto, e por isso parecia fauorauel ó terreno; he muito falta de agoa, esta Ilha, e por isso se vza m<sup>to</sup> de sisternas.

A mayor difficultade, he dar noticia da gente, asim no numero como na qualidade, q̃ habita esta Ilha, porq̃ quando hiamos dezenbarcando, vi tanta deuercidade nas prayas, q̃ estauaõ negrejando, e ainda entre os mesmos Ethiopes, tanta deuercidade nas modas, q̃ como as naõ podiaõ vzar nos vestidos, porq̃ naõ trazem mais, do q̃ ó q̃ serue para reparo da descencia, ó varia vaõ na cabeça, no diuerso modo com q̃ setos guiavaõ nos pendentes das orelhas, e no furar dos Beiços, em q̃ inxertauaõ hũ fio, com hua conta vermelha, nas manilhas dos braços, q̃ taõbem vzauaõ nos pês, como se nascessem destinados a Braga, e a Catiueyro, e tudo isto confundia á mesma distincão dos moradores; alem destes, q̃ saõ Cafres, ha Mouros, outros á q̃ chamaõ Lascares, outros Gentios; os Portuguezes, alem dos do prezidio, saõ poucos, alguns Mercadores, e homens de negocio, assás ricos, e o seu modo de vestir á Indiatca.

Achey (segundo me emformaráõ) q̃ hauiã na Ilha 15 Portuguezes, moradores fora do Castello, e 17 Canarins homens de negocio, Mouros, e Lascares, q̃ asim saõ de Seyta, e assim se chamaõ de nome os q̃ seruem de Pilotos, mestres, Marinheyros, e os gentios q̃ seruem os officios mecanicos da Republica por descençencia, e geraçãõ, sem poder passar a outro, 400 Cafres de seruiço dentro da Ilha, 10500 alem de outros, q̃ seraõ outros tantos da banda dalem na Cabeceyra, q̃ com alguns 15 Portuguezes compoem a freg<sup>a</sup>, q̃ cura o nosso P<sup>c</sup>, q̃ lá assiste com nome de vigario; As Embarcasões do Porto saõ humas canoas muito compridas de hum só paó, como as descreue Camoês, a q<sup>m</sup> chama, Armarias, e elles corchos, e Baloes. O Dinhr<sup>o</sup> saõ cruzados mais grossos, q̃ á nossa moeda de dois Tostoes; meyo cruzados mais grossos, q̃ ó nosso tostáo, moeda de prata, e só corre aqui Bacaruços, q̃ he moeda, q̃ parece de chumbo na cor, mas naõ na brandura, á q̃ elles chamaõ de Tutanaga, no valor, hum real, 2; 5; 10; 15; o outro dinhr<sup>o</sup> saõ pastas de oiro, q̃ correm por meticaes.

Há mais na Ilha hum Conuento de S. Dom<sup>o</sup> com sua Igreja muito fermoza, e ó nosso Collegio da Companhia, q̃ segundo ó q̃ ouvi, terã perto de 30 #; está edificado em quadro. q̃ de huma p<sup>to</sup>

a forma á Igreja, q̄ he do S. Xauier, de q<sup>m</sup> o Coll<sup>o</sup> toma taõbem ó nome, com seu Claustro, corredores de terra, e asima destes, os dos Cubiculos com sobrados, e cana de cal, todos varados em Ianellas sobre ó Claustro, está m<sup>o</sup> perto da praya, e sobre o Ancora de ouro, dos Nauios, tem prata em quantidade para o seru<sup>o</sup> da Igreja em bons ornamentos; e os Altares m<sup>o</sup> bem adornados; os Cachoés da Sancristia fasquiados de pretto, em banados; as argollas, e fechaduras doiradas, q̄ poco há tinha vindo de Goa; á Igreja m<sup>o</sup> capaz, com sua Torre de dois Sinos, e hum delles de boa grandeza, e som<sup>te</sup> tem trez Altares com seus retabulos doirados os sугeitos, q̄ ahi achamos, eraõ 4, o P<sup>e</sup> lteytor, q̄ acabaua M<sup>el</sup> fr<sup>e</sup>; ó q̄ lhe hauia de suceder ó P<sup>e</sup> Amaro de Azenedo, õ P<sup>e</sup> M<sup>el</sup> Soares q̄ era vigario da Cabaceyra, asim chamaõ a terra firme da banda de alem, e o Ir. P<sup>e</sup> frz q̄ era Procurador, vieraõ no mesmo tempo do ryo de sena os P<sup>es</sup> M<sup>el</sup> Marques, e ó l<sup>o</sup> Bernardo Roiz.

Estaõ outras duas Ilhotas dezertas, em q̄ naõ vi se naõ aruoredo, S. Thiago, e S. Jorge piodoar me há esta digressaõ, porq̄ taõbem nos a fizemos da nossa viagem, ancorando em Moçambique, q<sup>to</sup> mais q̄ pareça, q̄ á deuiamos á boa hospedajem, q̄ nos P. P. de Moçambique achamos.

Chegou taõ sadiã a Nao, q̄ só deixamos hu gurumete enfermo no Hospital, em lugar dos 50 soldados, q̄ deixamos, se meteraõ na Naó, muitos Cafres, q̄ os particulares compraraõ; asim nauegamos de Mosambique, com os Ponentes, que saõ os ventos de monçãõ, q̄ athe aquelle Porto achamos, q̄ á naõ tinhamos tido, ainda q̄ por beneficio da S<sup>ora</sup> da Conceyçãõ, nos naõ tinha faltado ventos faoreis, e prometiaõ, segundo a sopranaõ, de nos ácompanhar por muito tempo; O v<sup>or</sup> da fazenda real ficou m<sup>o</sup> mais affecto aos P. P. de Moçambique, porq̄ o P<sup>e</sup> Reytor lhe mandou offerrecer ó Collegio, aonde assistió o tempo, q̄ estiuemos em terra, hospedando ó os P. P. com á grandeza, q̄ prometia á Ilha, taõ falta de refrescos, mas naõ do mais; assistindo lhe com muzica de hua Capella de Canarins, q̄ há no Coll<sup>o</sup> com Timples, que os naõ ouvi melhores em Portugal. Hia na nossa Naó ó Capitão, e sota Piloto da Naó Xauier, q̄ poco ha se tinha partido na Ilha do Mascarenhas, junto á S. Lourenço e hoje está em poder dos Francezes, e tinha arribado á Moçambique, e agora determinaua de vir buscar, e conduzir, as fazendas, q̄ la ficauãõ, chamaue õ Capp<sup>m</sup> de mar, e guerra Dom<sup>os</sup> Luiz de Oliueyra, de cuja boca ouvi muitas vezes contar do seu naufragio.

[English translation of the foregoing.]

### MOZAMBIQUE IN 1688.

On the 8th of August when we sighted the coast of Eastern Ethiopia where lies our island of Mozambique, it appeared to be vast and extensive, stretching away for many leagues, and it was already so near that we could see the palm groves on the shore, resembling the pines of our kingdom of Portugal. Our eyes were delighted and refreshed by the sight of trees, the mast-trees being the only ones we had seen for so many months. The next night we lay to, so as not to drift past or run ashore before Mozambique, the wind being fresh. In the night at certain turns of sand-glasses, which are the clock by which the watches are divided and relieved among seamen, who do duty in turns, a piece of artillery was discharged, as is the custom of the Indian ships, which being heard at Mozambique they sent us the harbour pilots in the morning.

On the morning of the 9th Mozambique was in sight, the fortress saluting us by running up the royal flag on one of the bastions. Then we sounded, and the skilful pilots whom they call *malemos* came to us and brought us into port, where we anchored. The fathers came to conduct us to the college, receiving us into it through the church with music and peals of bells, a thing which brought the tears to my eyes, that the missionaries should be thus feasted and respected, myself being one of them. The fathers entertained us with a charity as warm as the land in which they dwell. Father M<sup>cl</sup> Tr<sup>l</sup> was finishing his term of office as rector, Father Antonio de Azevedo being shortly expected from Goa to succeed him. A vessel came in with us from Sena on the same day, also called the *Conception*, like ours. We remained in the port of Mozambique until the 17th of August, when we again set sail for India, taking with us for Goa Father M<sup>cl</sup> Tr<sup>l</sup>, a singularly charming religious. We would also have taken with us Father M<sup>cl</sup> Soares, who was going to the same college, if Dom Miguel de Almeida, who arrived from Sena after we had anchored, and having finished his term of office as commander-in-chief of the rivers, was likewise bound for Goa, had not wished to take him thither in his ship, being a special friend of the Company (of Jesus).

In the port of Mozambique there were with us seven vessels from different parts of Daman, Diu, and the rivers of Sena, and the frigate called *Risco*, which left after us, as it was waiting for some vessels which had not yet arrived. Our ship left fifty men in the fortress, and took in some merchandise belonging to the king. During the time we were in Mozambique I preached in the convent of S<sup>t</sup> Dominic, and another day I preached at the festival of our Lady of Health held by the pilots in a large chapel close to the royal hospital, which is served by the charitable sons of S<sup>t</sup> John of God. I do not think it is out of place, while we are at Mozambique, to detain whoever cares to be a reader of this narrative with a brief account of the island, for it was desired of me in several letters from the missions which I heard in Portugal.

*A very brief account of the Island of Mozambique, where we put into port.*

The coast of Eastern Ethiopia, which geographers more particularly designate the coast of Kaffraria, forms a half moon in the mainland, in which, between the points of the semicircle, lies the small island of Mozambique in 15 degrees south. It is scarcely half a league in length, and of little width, so that the Portuguese poet had good reason to say it is called the little isle of Mozambique. Its trees are palms, and in the court of our cloister I saw lemon, orange, and fig trees like those of Portugal, of which I am told there are also a quantity on the mainland. The other fruits are like those of Brazil, guavas, papaws, sweet potatoes, bananas, &c. It has a very good fortress, with four bastions and a rampart against the sea; very good artillery for its defence, and a garrison of three hundred men. To each soldier the king pays two cruzados and a half a month, with two and a half pangas of rice, and every three months this payment is made, with quarters. A panga corresponds to our alqueire, and as I have heard it said, the soldier is well paid, to which I may also add that his pay is well earned. There is also a castellan, who has the same authority as a governor, and rules the place. There is a custom-house, which yields fifty thousand cruzados a year (as I have heard) by the export of ivory, with which I saw the shores covered, of ambergris, and of gold. It has also a royal

hospital, served by the religious of St. John of God—of whom seven or eight reside there, to whom the king gives two hundred and fifty reis a day and clothes, and five thousand cruzados for the expenses of the hospital, of which the administrator renders an account,—with a chief surgeon, who has a cruzado a day.

It has a house of mercy and a collegiate church, which they call a cathedral, with a prior, vicar-general, one beneficiary, and several clergymen. There is also a parish church, of St. Sebastian, which is within the fortress, a beautiful chapel of our Lady of Health, and another of St. Anthony, who protect the health and safety of the Indian ships. The climate did not seem to me so bad as is reported, being visited by the sea breezes morning and evening, and I was told it was now winter, being August, which was the reason why the country seemed favourable. There is a great want of water in this island, and therefore cisterns are much used.

The greatest difficulty is to give an account of the population of this island, both as to their numbers and condition, for when we disembarked I saw so many varieties on the shore, who were black, and even among the Ethiopians themselves so many different fashions, which as they cannot display them in their clothes, for they do not wear more than decency renders necessary, they display upon their heads in the different ways in which they cut their hair, in their ear-rings, and the way of piercing their lips, through which they pass a thread with a red bead, in the bracelets on their arms, which they wear also on their feet, as if they were born to irons and chains; and all this confuses the distinction even of the inhabitants. Besides these, who are Kaffirs, there are Moors, others who are called Lascars, and other heathens. The Portuguese, besides those of the fort, are few, several merchants and business men, moderately rich, and their mode of dress is the Indian.

I found (as I was informed) that there were in the island fifteen Portuguese inhabitants outside the fortress, and seventeen Canarins, men of business, Moors, and Lascars who are from Seyta, and those are so called who serve as pilots, shipmasters, sailors, and the heathens who fill the mechanical offices of the republic by descent and generation, without being able to rise to anything else, four hundred Kaffirs in service in the island, fifteen hundred and odd who may be upon the other shore of the



mainland which they call the Cabeceira, who with about fifteen Portuguese compose the parish served by our father, who has the title of vicar. The craft in the port are canoes, very long and made of one piece of wood, as described by Camoens, these we call armarias, and they call corchos and baloes. The money is cruzados larger than our pieces of two testoons, half cruzados larger than our testoons, silver money, but the only currency here is bacarucos, which are coins resembling lead in colour but not in softness, a metal which they call tutania; these are worth one, two, five, ten, or fifteen reis. The other money is plates of gold, whose value is determined by miticals.

There is also in the island a convent of St. Dominic, with its very fine church, and our college of the Company, which according to what I have heard covers about 3000  $\ddagger$ . It is built in a square, formed on one side by the church of St. Francis Xavier, which is also the name of the college, with its cloister, corridors, ground, and above these cells with upper rooms of lath and plaster, all with windows overlooking the cloister. It is very near the shore, and besides the golden anchor of the ships, it has silver in great quantity for the service of the church, in the shape of fine ornaments; the altars are very well adorned, the closets of the sacristy in black bands with gilt rings and locks, lately brought from Goa. The church is very large, with a tower containing two bells, one of which is a good size. It has only three altars with their gilt altar-pieces. There were four clergymen there, the father rector who was just leaving, M<sup>el</sup> Fr<sup>e</sup>, who was to be succeeded by Father Amaro de Azevedo, Father M<sup>el</sup> Soares, who was vicar of the Cabeceira, as they call the opposite shore of the mainland, and Brother P<sup>e</sup> F<sup>ra</sup>, who was procurator. There also came at the same time from the river of Sena the fathers M<sup>el</sup> Marques and Bernardo Roiz. There are two other desert islands, in which I saw nothing but trees, Santiago and St. George. Pardon me this digression, for we were treated so well at Mozambique that it appeared due to the hospitality of the fathers there.

We reached the ship in such good health that we only left a boy sick in the hospital. Instead of the fifty soldiers whom we left, many Kaffirs were embarked, who had been bought by private persons. Thus we left Mozambique with the west winds, which are those of the monsoon, which we had not had until we

reached that port, though by the favour of our Lady of the Conception favourable winds had not been wanting, and these according to the time they usually blow promised to be with us some time. The inspector of the royal revenue was much attached to the fathers of Mozambique, for the rector sent to offer him the college, where he resided while we were on shore, the fathers entertaining him with such grandeur as the island allows, which wants for dainties, but for nothing else; serving him with music in a chapel of Canarins which is in the college, with timbrels such as I never heard better in Portugal. There went in our ship the captain and the under pilot of the ship *Xavier* which some time ago struck on the island of Mascarenhas, near Madagascar, and is now in the hands of the French, who had come to Mozambique and were now determined to seek and carry away the merchandise which remained there. The captain of sea and war is named Domingo Luiz de Oliveira, from whose lips I have often heard the account of his shipwreck.

---

Dom Rodrigo da Costa Ev El Rey vos emuio muito Saudar. Por pr<sup>te</sup> de Henrique de Faria Leitãõ natural de ourem Se me representou aqui estar Seruindo em os Rios de Sofalla a Vinte Sinco annos, e hauerem lhe morto na mesma conquista na huma oCazião de guerra a Seu Jrmaõ Bernardo Falcaõ de Faria, e neste Reino hauer fallecido Seu Pay ficando a May delle Suplicante viuua, e dezempurada com oitenta annos de idade, e elle com muitos achaques procedidos de china digo de clima da terra em que necessitaua curasce, e para o poder fazer, e uir aSistir ao dezêparo da dita Sua May, me pedia lhe concedessa Licença para poder vir a este Reino. e pareceu me ordenar uos (como por esta o faço) que naõ hauendo incõueniente concedais ao Suplicante a Licença que pede. Escrita em Lisboa a 14 de Março de 688. Rey. o Conde de Valdo Reis.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Dom Rodrigo da Costa, I the king greet you well. It has been represented to me here, on the part of Henrique de Faria Leitãõ, a native of Ourem, that he has been serving in the rivers of Sofala for twenty-five years, in which conquest his brother, Bernardo Falcaõ de Faria, was killed during a time of war, and

his father has died in this kingdom, leaving the petitioner's mother, who is eighty years of age, a widow and in distressed circumstances. And he has suffered many attacks of illness, caused by the climate of the country, and wishes to recover his health, to do which, and to come to the assistance of his mother in her helplessness, he begs me to grant him license to come to this kingdom.

I have thought fit to command you, as I do by this, to grant the petitioner the license for which he asks, if there is no objection to doing so.

Written in Lisbon, the 14th of March 1688.

THE KING.

THE COUNT OF VALDEREIS.

Dom Rodrigo da Costa. Ev El Rey vos envio muito Saudar Como aquelle que muito amo. Por ter ja cessado a occupação de Manoel de Fonceica que foi por Escriuaõ de Pagador geral de Sofalla, me pareceo ordenar uos (como por esta o faço) que achãdo naõ Ser o dito Manoel a Continuação dos tres mil reis que vencem cada mez no Tabaco. Escrita em Lisboa a 25 de Março de 688. Rey.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Dom Rodrigo da Costa, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love much. As Manuel da Fonseca, who went as secretary to the paymaster-general of Sofala, has ceased to serve, I think fit to command you, as I now do, that the said Manuel shall not continue to receive the salary of three thousand reis a month which was paid to him in tobacco.

Written in Lisbon, the 25th of March 1688.

THE KING.

Dom Rodrigo da Costa : Ev El Rey Vos envio muito Saudar. Tendo concideração aos Serviços que Ambrozio Martini do Ponte me tem feito em Cargo de Cirurgiaõ Mor da Terço que foi aos Rios de Sofalla e da Praça de Mossambique em que procedera com Zello e Satisfação e Caridade com os enfermos e ao mais que me Representou nesta corte donde se tornou a embarcar para

esse Estado, Me pareceo Recomendar vos (como por esta o faço) que vagando Cirurgiaõ mor de Goa tendais atençaõ o Seu prestimo e merecim<sup>to</sup>. Escrita em Lisboa a 14 de Março de 690.  
Rey.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Dom Rodrigo da Costa, I the king greet you well. Bearing in mind the services rendered to me by Ambrozio Martini do Ponte when holding the posts of chief surgeon of the regiment which went to the rivers of Sofala, and chief surgeon of the fort of Mozambique, which he discharged in a satisfactory and zealous manner, showing great care of the sick; and considering all that has been further represented to me at this court, whence he has taken passage to return to that state, I think fit to recommend you, as I do by this, when the post of chief surgeon of Goa becomes vacant to bear in mind his capability and merit.

Written in Lisbon, the 14th of March 1690.

THE KING.

---

Governador do Estado da India Ev El Rey vos envio muito Saudar. Sendo me presente a vossa Carta de 29 de Outubro de 88 em que me destes conta de haver Chegado o barco de Mossambique e que em tres annos naõ trouxera Couza alguma para a fazenda Real por Se hirem atenuando Cada dia mais os Rios: Como Se via da Carta do Cappitaõ Mor que me enviastes Sendo a Cauza deste damno a largueza com que todos entravaõ a negociar nos Rios e principalmente os naturaes desse Estado que eraõ os mayores inimigos que tinhamos Como mostrava a experiencia porque depois que foraõ os Canarins aos Rios Se detara liga no outro e que agora os naõ podem impedir por Serem os mercadores mais frequentes e empenhados no Comercio dos Rios, e que impedindose lhes ficariaõ as Alfandegas sem Rendimento algum: Sendo já tam pouco que se estava devendo aos Capitaens da fortalezas do Norte, a mayor parte do Seu Cabedal por naõ terem chegado os barcos que hiaõ ao Resgate e que os Inglezes frequentavaõ aquella Costa e principalmente o Cabo das Correntes o que se lhes naõ podia impedir a Respeito das Capitulaçoens: Sendo o presente Estado dos Rios materia de tanta Concideraçãõ

que vos não atrevieis a tomar a Rezolução nella, e que assim me dareis Conta para que eu Rezolvesse a que fosse Servido, e Sendo me tambem presente Com a vossa Carta outra do Vedor da fazenda deste Estado Thome de Souza Correa Escrita em 25 do mesmo mez e anno em que me Referia os Clamores que ouvera em Moss<sup>e</sup> por estarem perdidos aquelles moradores, se não se tornasse a fechar os Rios porque com a frequencia do Comercio não havia Canarim que a elles não levasse Roupas as quaes tem perdido a estimação por querer ser cada hum o que pr<sup>o</sup> as venda o que os Negros Conhecem : Esperando que lhas levem para terra a dentro em que se experimentava muito ma Correspondencia: tendo Crecido tanto o preço do ouro que val mais Sincoenta por Cento do que valia. Mandando ajuntar a estas Cartas todos os papeis e doCumentos que havia nas Secretarias sobre a sua materia fuy Servido mandala ver e Conciderar com a ponderação que pede a sua grande importancia por aquellas pessoas que Com experiencia e pratica me pudessem mais devirteracadamente aConcelhar o que Convinha ao meu Serviço a Conservação dos Rios e ao mayor bem desse Estado e Sendo vistos os Seus pareceres Hey por bem de Rezolver que os Rios se tornem a fechar e que se forme huma Comp<sup>a</sup> para elles de todos aquelles homens de Cabedal que quizerem intereçarsse neste negocio: Ficando o Comercio dos Rios somente permitido a dita Companhia, a qual Será obrigada a mandar dos portos de Dio Damaõ, e Chavl todos os annos embarçoens ou ao menos huma Cada anno de Cada hum dos ditos portos para os Rios para que assim não faltem os Rendimentos das suas Alfandegas, e se angmente o Comercio com vtilidade dos moraderes que vivem nas ditas terras; E esta Companhia não tera intervenção alguã nos pagamentos dos prezidios E ordinarias nem na nomeação dos postos militares, porque estes havieis de nomear na mesma forma que athe agora o fazieis, e os pagamentos se haõ de fazer per Conta da minha fazenda dos mesmos effeitos que a Comp<sup>a</sup> der para ella que procurareis sejaõ os mayores que for possivel e no provim<sup>o</sup> de Capitaõ que Governava Mossambique tereis Concideração a tudo o que pode ser necessario naquella fortaleza fechandose os Rios e Contratandose por Comp<sup>a</sup> na forma referida com que poreis grande Cuidado em que a pessoa provida neste posto tenha toda Capacidade de que ao presente se necessita. Para effeito de se ajustar e Contratar esta Companhia na forma mais Conveniente

ouvireis os pareceres de todas aquellas pessoas que Costumaõ votar em semelhantes materias e ainda as que pela experiencia poderem ter melhor voto para que se ajuste e Consiga Com as mayores vtilidades da minha fazenda dos Moradores dos Rios e dos intereçados da Comp<sup>a</sup> e porque fechandosse logo os Rios poderã não se ajustar a Companhia Com tanta brevid<sup>o</sup> que se escuze dar se lhe outra forma de Comercio com o parecer das pessoas que ouvires provereis de Remedio Conveniente no entretanto, ou administrandosse pela junta ou emCarregandosse a pessoas particulares ou Contratandosse por tempo que não prejudique ao intento de Conseguirse e estabelecerse a Comp<sup>a</sup> e a vossa prudencia e das pessoas Com que vos aConselhares deixo a melhor direcção do Remedio que se deve dar em quanto a Comp<sup>a</sup> se não Concluir, e me dareis miuda e individual conta assim dos vottos das pessoas que ouvistes como daquellas com que se ajustou a Comp<sup>a</sup> e dos meyo e dispoziçoens com que se achaõ para que este Comercio não so se assente e estabeleça mais para que prudentemente se possa Esperar que Careça e se augmente e do expediente que tomastes no entretanto que a Comp<sup>a</sup> se não estabelece e de quem nos Sois e do grande Zello e Cuidado com que me Servis espero que vos empregueis taõ eficazmente nesta materia que tenha muito que agradecer vos nella. Escrita em Lisboa a 20 de Março de 1690. Rey.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Governor of the State of India, I the king greet you well. I have before me your letter of the 29th of October 1688, in which you reported to me that the ship from Mozambique had arrived, and that for three years it had brought nothing whatever for the royal treasury, because the decadence of the rivers increased every day, as was seen by the letter from the chief captain, which you forwarded to me, the cause of this evil being the number of those participating in the trade of the rivers, and principally the natives of that state, who were our greatest enemies, as was shown by experience, because since the Canarins went to the rivers, the trade of the others was hindered, and at present it is impossible to keep them out, as they are the merchants who are the most numerous and the most interested in the commerce of the rivers, and by preventing them from trading

the custom houses would have no revenue whatever, their receipts being already so limited that the greater part of the money was owing to the captains of the fortresses of the north, as the ships engaged in the trade had not arrived ;

That the English frequented the said coast, and principally the Cape das Correntes, and on account of the capitulations, they could not be prevented from doing so ;

And the present state of the rivers being a matter of such importance that you feared to take any resolution concerning it, you send me an account thereof, that I may pass such resolutions as I find fitting.

I have before me, besides your letter, another from the overseer of the treasury of that state, Thomé de Sousa Correa, written on the 25th of the same month and year, in which he reports to me the outcry in Mozambique that the said residents would be ruined unless the rivers were closed again, because on account of the frequent communication there was not a Canarin who did not take cloth to the rivers, which had lost its value, as each one wishes to be the first to sell his cloth, which the negroes are aware of, waiting till they take the cloth into the interior, where they meet with a very bad reception, the price of gold having been raised to such an extent that it is worth fifty per cent more than its former value.

Having commanded all the papers and documents in the office of the secretary of state referring to this matter to be added to these letters, I was pleased to command the matter to be considered, with such deliberation as its importance demands, by those persons whose knowledge and experience render them most capable of advising as to what measures are conducive to my service and to the preservation of the rivers, and most profitable to that state.

And having considered their opinions, I think fit to resolve that the rivers shall be closed again, and a company be formed, composed of all the capitalists who wish to take part in this business ; the commerce of the rivers being open only to the said Company, which shall be compelled to dispatch several ships every year from the ports of Diu, Daman, and Chaul, or at least one ship from each of the said ports, to the rivers, so that by this means the revenue of their custom houses will not fail, and the commerce will be increased to the advantage of the inhabitants residing in the said lands.

This Company shall have nothing whatever to do with the payment of the garrisons and salaries, nor with the nomination of persons for the military posts, because you shall appoint persons to these posts in the same way as you have done up to the present. And the expenses are to be paid by my treasury from the merchandise with which the Company supplies it, and you shall have care that the greatest possible quantity is supplied.

As regards the appointment of a captain to govern Mozambique, you shall take consideration of all that the said fortress may require, after closing the rivers and making a contract for them with a Company in the manner stated above, and you shall have great care that the person appointed to this post is in every way capable of coping with the present needs.

That this Company may be established in the most advantageous manner possible, you shall obtain the opinions of all those persons who usually give their vote in similar matters, or even those who by their experience may give better advice, that it may be established and carried into execution with the greatest advantage to my treasury, to the residents of the rivers, and to the persons interested in the Company.

The rivers being immediately closed, as it may not be possible to establish the Company with such dispatch, the commerce is to be carried on in some other manner, and with the opinion of those persons whose advice you shall ask you shall provide a suitable remedy in the interim, the commerce being undertaken by the council, or entrusted to private persons, or contracts made for it during such time as shall not impede the execution of the design of establishing a Company.

I leave to your prudence, and that of the persons who advise you, to decide upon the best remedy to apply until the Company is established.

You shall give me a detailed and distinct account, both of the votes of the persons whom you consult, of the persons of whom the Company is formed, and of the means and regulations with which they are provided, so that this commerce may not only be established, but that we may reasonably hope that it will flourish and increase, and of what measures you take in the interim, while the Company is being established.

And I trust from such a person as yourself, and from the great zeal and care with which you serve me that you will take such



efficacious measures in this matter as will give me great cause to thank you.

Written in Lisbon, the 20th of March 1690.

THE KING.

Conde VRey da India amigo. Eu El Rey vos invio muito Saudar, Como aquelle que amo. hauendo visto, o que me escreuerão os Gouernadores desse Estado Sobre se deuer a boa direccão do Vedor da Fazenda Thomé de Souza Correa, o acharse hoje a Iunta do Comercio mui dezempenhada, e Com Concideranel Cabedal. Me pareceo ordenar vos, me avizeis do que tem Resultado dos Rios, e o que importa o Cabedal Com que se acha a mesma Iunta pera me ser presente esta materia. Escrita em Lisboa a 13 de Março de mil Seis centos nouenta e quatro. Rey. Conde de Alvor.

*[English translation of the foregoing.]*

Count, viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. Having seen what the governors of that state wrote to me, that to the good management of the overseer of the treasury, Thomé de Sousa Correa, is owing the fact that the Council of Commerce is at present free from debt and in possession of a considerable capital, I think fit to direct you to inform me what it has realised from the rivers and of the amount of capital possessed by the said Council, that I may be informed of this matter.

Written in Lisbon, the 13th of March 1694.

THE KING.

THE COUNT OF ALVOR.

Conde de villa verde VRey da India Amigo Eu El Rey vos envio muito Saudar como aquelle que amo. O Padre Frey Antonio da Conceição me escreveu por Carta de trinta de Dezembro do anno passado, por lhe parecer Conveniente ao augmento da Christandade dos Rios de Cuama eregirasse hum Seminario em Cena para nelle se doutrinarem os filhos dos Portuguezes, e dos Cafres Regulos daquellas partes o fora

Requerer a Goa, e lhe havieis difrido em Conselho da Fazenda, que as terras que estivessem e fossem Chaindo em Comisso se applicassem ao dito Seminario, e que assim me pedia quizesse entregar administração delle a Sua Religião do Patriarcha Santo Agostinho da Provincia deste Reino. Ordeno-vos informeis com vosso parecer neste Requerimento. Escrita em Lixboa a 29 de Novembro de 694. Rey. Para o Conde de villa verde VRey da India. Conde de Alvor.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count of Villaverde, viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. Friar Antonio da Conceição wrote me a letter on the 30th of December of last year, stating his opinion that it would be conducive to the increase of Christianity in the rivers of Cuama to establish a seminary at Sena for the religious instruction of the sons of the Portuguese and of the petty Kaffir rulers of those parts. He had been to Goa to present this petition, and states that you had answered him, in the council of the treasury, that the forfeited lands and those which shall be forfeited should be made use of for the said seminary. Therefore he begged me to entrust the administration of it to his order, being the order of St. Augustine of the province of this kingdom.

I command you to send me your opinion upon this petition.

Written in Lisbon, the 29th of November 1694.

THE KING.

For the count of Villaverde, viceroy of India.

THE COUNT OF ALVOR.

---

Conde de Villaverde VRey da India Amigo. Eu El Rey vos envio muito Saudar Como aquelle que amo. viosse a vossa Carta de 11 de Dezembro do anno passado, em que me dais Conta dos grandes enteresses Com que se acha minha fazenda Com correr por Conta della o negocio dos Rios de Sofalla devendosse o bem Estado delle ao Cuidado e inteligencia do Governador Thome de Souza Correa, a quem não primitistes a licença de vir para o Reino por entenderdes Convinha a meu

Serviço dilatarse mais naquella praça hum anno. E pareceu ordenar vos mandeis huma rellação do Estado em que se acha a fazenda Real da Praça de Mossambique, e dos interesses que se tem tirado de estarem fechados os Rios e do Cabedal Com que se acha para se saber por este meyo o que se tem obrado na administração destes effeitos. Escrita em Lixboa a 14 de Dezembro de 694. Rey. Para o Conde de villa verde vRey da India. Conde de Alvor.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count of Villaverde, viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. I have seen your letter of the 11th of December of last year, in which you gave an account of the large profits gained by my treasury from the commerce of the rivers of Sofala, which was undertaken on its account, the successful condition of the said business being due to the care and intelligence of the governor, Thomé de Sousa Correa, to whom you refused a license to come to the kingdom, understanding that it was to the advantage of my service for him to remain another year in the said fortress.

I think fit to command you to send a report of the state of the royal treasury of the fortress of Mozambique, the profits obtained by the closing of the commerce of the rivers, and the capital possessed, that by this means I may be informed of what has been accomplished in the administration of this business.

Written in Lisbon, the 14th of December 1694.

THE KING.

For the count of Villaverde, viceroy of India.

THE COUNT OF ALVOR.

---

Conde Villa Verde VRey da India Amigo Eu El Rey vos envio muito Saudar Como aquelle que amo. Os deputados da junta do Comercio dos Rios de Sofalla me representaraõ pellas Cartas que escreveraõ em vinte e hum de Dezembro de 691 e 6 de Dezembro de 693 em que deraõ Conta do Estado em que se achava o negocio do Comercio de Massambique o parecerem Nes grandes os Soldos que os Governadores desse Estado Concederaõ

do Governador Thome de Souza Correa quando o nomearaõ p<sup>a</sup> a governança e Superitendencia da Fortaleza de Mossambique mandando lhe dar dez mil Cruzados do Soldo Cada anno Seis pelo governo, e quatro pella Superitendencia, o que se devia Restringir por Ser em grande damno do Cabedal do dito Comercio, e pareceo me dizer vos que Com Thome de Souza Correa se naõ pode alterar os Soldos que se lhe arbitraraõ pello governo poreo que da que em diante se naõ dem mais que seis mil Cruzados ao Castellaõ que podera servir juntamente de Superitendente sem ter liberalidade por que se avalia que estes seis mil Cruzados lhe bastaraõ para sustentar o encargo desta oCupaçaõ. Escrita em Lixboa a 1<sup>o</sup> de Fevereiro de 695. Rey. Para o Conde villa verde VRey da India. Conde de Alvor.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count of Villa Verde, viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. The deputies of the council of commerce of the rivers of Sofala have represented to me, in their letters of the 21st of December 1691 and the 6th of December 1693, in which they gave an account of the state of the commerce of Mozambique, that they were of opinion that the salary granted by the governors of that state to the governor Thomé de Sousa Correa when they appointed him to the government and superintendence of the fortress of Mozambique was too high, giving order for him to be paid a salary of ten thousand cruzados per annum, six for the government and four for the superintendence, which should be retrenched, as it occasioned great loss to the capital of the said commerce.

I think fit to inform you that no alteration can be made in the salary which it was decided to pay to Thomé de Sousa Correa for the government, nevertheless for the future no more than six thousand cruzados should be given to the castellan, who can also hold the office of superintendent without further payment, as it has been decided that the said six thousand cruzados will suffice for the discharge of this office.

Written in Lisbon, the 10th of February 1695.

THE KING.

For the count of Villaverde, viceroy of India.

THE COUNT OF ALVOR.

Conde de Villa Verde VRey da India Amigo. Ev El Rey vos envio muito Saudar como aquelle que amo. Mandando ver o que me escrevestes Sobre alguns particulares deste Estado, Sendo hum delles o da Iunta de Comercio de Mossambique dar as maos com o Comercio do Brazil por Ser asy mais conveniente ao meu Serviço e aos meus vassallos. Me pareceo dizer vos, que Sendo esta companhia feita com a minha fazenda se deve continuar, porem que Se nella entrarem os effeitos dos particulares de nenhuma maneira Se deve Establecer porque Sera desta maneira ofender e deficultar a Companhia geral que deste Reino se detrimina fazer de que vos avizo para o terdes assim entendido. Escrita em Lisboa a 13 de Março de 1696. Rey.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count of Villaverde, viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. Having commanded examination to be made of what you wrote to me with reference to various matters of that state, one of which was that the council of commerce of Mozambique should take part in the commerce of Brazil, as this would be more advantageous to my service and to my subjects, I think fit to inform you that if this company is formed in connection with my treasury it should be continued, but if the merchandise of private persons is received by it, it should by no means be established, because it would thus give offence and impede the general company which it has been determined to establish in this kingdom. Of which I send you information, that you may be advised thereof.

Written in Lisbon, the 13th of March 1696.

THE KING.

---

Conde de Villa verde VRey da India Amigo. Ev El Rey vos envio muito Saudar Como aquelle que amo. Viosse a vossa Carta de 8 de Dezembro de 695 em reposta a que se vos havia escripto sobre se naõ dar daqui em diante mayor soldo que o de seis mil Cruzados ao Castellaõ de Mossambique que podera ser vir juntamente de superintendente, e como Representaes que Com a noticia dos seis mil Cruzados de soldo ninguem tem

pedido o posto de general dos Rios, depois que se aSentou no Conselho desse estado Se mandasse por volo pedirem della Com instancia ; Me pareceo dizer vos que a ordem que se vos mandou neste particular se deve guardar inviolavelmente. Escripta em Lisboa a 26 de Janeiro de 1697. Rey.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count of Villaverde, viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. I have seen your letter of the 8th of December 1695, written in answer to the one sent to you relating to the salary of the castellan of Mozambique, that from henceforward it should not be more than six thousand cruzados, and that he might also hold the post of superintendent. You represent that after the notice of the six thousand cruzados as the salary no one has applied for the post of general of the rivers, and that after the decision of the council of that state you had received pressing applications for it.

I think fit to inform you that the order given to you in this matter is to be observed inviolably.

Written in Lisbon, the 26th of January 1697.

THE KING.

Conde de Villa verde VRey da India Amigo. Ev El Rey vos envio muito Saudar Como aquelle que amo. Viosse a vossa Carta de dez de Dezembro de mil Seis centos noventa e Sinco, em Reposta a que se vos havia escripto sobre a Rellaçaõ do Estado em que Se achava a fazenda Real da Praça de Monssambique enteresses que se tinhaõ tirado, e Cabedal Com que se achava para se saber o que os Ministros da junta de Monssambique tinhaõ obrado na administraçaõ de seos effeitos ; e Como ja naõ ha esta junta, vos ordeno mandeis a Conta de que importou o meu Cabedal que se entregou a nova Companhia. Escripta em Lisboa a 31 de Janeiro de 1697. Rey.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count of Villaverde, viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. I have seen your letter of the 10th of December 1695, in answer to the one addressed to you

relating to the state of the royal treasury of the fortress of Mozambique, the profits gained, and the capital of which it was possessed, that it might be known what the officials of the council of Mozambique had accomplished in the administration of its property; and as this council is no longer in existence, I command you to forward an account of what the capital amounted to which was delivered to the new Company.

Written in Lisbon, the 31st of January 1697.

THE KING.

---

Conde VRey do Estado da India am<sup>o</sup> Eu El Rey vos envio muito Saudar como aquelle que amo. Vy as vossas cartas em que me daveis conta da forma em que haviéis estabelecido a companhia do comercio nesse Estado, cujas condiçoens me foraõ tambem presentes, e vos agradeço muito o grande Zello, e cuidado com que haviéis tractado de estabalecer, e conseguir a dita companhia, e porque a gravidade desta materia he de a concideraçãõ para que se naõ venha a Seguir dano a esse Estado do mesmo Remedio que se lhe applicaua para o Seu augmento, e concervaçãõ, fuy servido o mandar ver as condiçoens por Ministros, e pessoas de toda a supozicãõ e que desse Estado tinhaõ as mayores noticias e experiencias e lhes pareceo que as condiçoens se deviaõ modificarem alguma parte por serẽ algumas contra a Razaõ, e justiça, e outras contra os mesmos interesses que se esperaõ do comercio da companhia, a qual deue tambem ser Reciproca aos homens de negocio deste Reino, porq̃ sendo só para os moradores desse Estado naõ Somentẽ deixaria de ser conveniente, mas ficaria muy prejudicial e de grande dano para a India, e para o Reino, e assim vos mando Remeter as condiçoens com as modificaçoens nas margens, chamareis aos deputados, e lhe persuadireis o quanto convem a meu Serviço ao mesmo bem da companhia, que as condiçoens se practicaõ assim com boa emendadas; e q̃ Seja Reciproca aos moradores deste Reino que entrarem nella; e espero, que a boa intençaõ, e vont<sup>o</sup> com que elles dezejaõ Servir me, e enriquecer, e augmentar a terra em que viverem, que naõ duvidem em que na forma Referida podera so continuar a companhia com Segurança, e conveniencia de hunos, e outros vaçallos, e quando o que eu naõ espero naõ queira mostrar

pellas declaraçoens, e emendas que se fizeraõ as condiçoens, nem queiraõ consentir, que os Vaçallos deste Reino se enteressem nella havereis logo a dita companhia por levantada, e se Reduziraõ todas as couzas a Seu primeiro estado como se tal companhia naõ houvesse; e porque os mesmos Deputados entenderaõ que se devia mandar nesta monçaõ algum cabedal deste Reino athe a quantia de trezentos mil xerafins mandei ouvir as pessoas que pareceo queraõ mandar agora alguns effeitos das quaes vos mando Remeter huma lista, que com pouca differença contem a mesma Soma dos trezentos mil xerafins, os quais continuando-se a companhia como espero se haõ de mandar Receber, e passarem se conhecimentos as pessoas que entregarem, e fareis que para este Reino se Remetaõ generos, e effeitos segundo o avizo que fizer o Procurador da mesma companhia Francisco Carvalho de Oliveira, e os homens de negocio pellos quais mandey conferir com o mesmo Procurador as materias mercantes, que foraõ Luis Coroea da Paz Antonio e Bertholameu Manzoni Domingos Maciel, e Ioaõ Pereira do Lago, e para as Remessas se estabalecera caxo, e Thezr<sup>o</sup> porque naõ se fazendo Reciprico o comercio da India para Portugal naõ basta p<sup>o</sup> os vaçallos deste Reino se interessem na companhia só para o comercio da India, e Sobre a forma em que se deue fazer com este Reino, e se escrevem aos Deputados os mesmos homens de negocio; fazeis que es deputados da companhia Remetaõ huma conta das carregaçoens que tem feito, e dos Retornos dellas da qual se possa ver os interesses que produzem, e se convira pasar-se a companhia geral que se intentaua fazer que he aqui sera mais conveniente a meu serviço e de mayores vtilidades a esse Estado, porque cem esta noticia se entende, e que nesta monçaõ se devia Somente ajudar o cabedal da companhia com a Remessa que faz dos trezentos mil xerafins, e esperarse a Reposta com as noticias que se pedem para entaõ se entrar mais Segura, e prudentemente na concideraçãõ de estabalecer-se a companhia geral que pede tantos mayores cabedues como vos he presente, espero do Zello cuidado, e trabalho com que haveis conseguido o estabalecimento da companhia que procureis com a mesma efficacia o Seu augmento, e que para este effeito concorraõ, e vos ajudem todas aquellas pessoas que como bons vaçallos tem procurado o meu Serviço, e o mesmo bem desse Est<sup>o</sup> no augmento da companhia, e como conheceis o q̄ convem que ella se continue,



e augmente não tenho que Recomendar-vos novamente, antes muito que agradecer-vos no que tendes obrado, e no que espero obreis. Escrita em Lisboa a quatorze de Março de 1697. Rey.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, viceroy of the state of India, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. I have seen your letters in which you give me an account of the manner in which you have established in that state the company of commerce, the conditions of which have also been laid before me, and I thank you much for the great zeal and care which you have shown in establishing and bringing into effect the said company.

As the importance of this matter is such that care must be taken that no evil may result to the state from the very remedy which has been applied for its prosperity and preservation, I have thought fit to command the conditions to be examined by ministers and persons in every way qualified for the purpose, and who possess the greatest knowledge and experience of that state; and they were of opinion that the conditions should be modified to a certain extent, as some were contrary to right and justice, and others were contrary to those very advantages which were expected from the commerce of the company, which commerce should be reciprocal as regards the merchants of this kingdom, as if it is only open to the residents of that state, it will not only cease to be beneficial, but will become most prejudicial and of great damage to India and to the kingdom.

Therefore I command the conditions to be transmitted to you with the modifications inserted in the margin, and you shall summon the deputies and convince them how conducive it is to my service, and to the advantage of the company itself, that these alterations should be made and that the commerce should be reciprocal as regards the residents of this kingdom who take part in the company.

Their good intentions and the good will which they show in their desire to serve me and to enrich and improve the land in which they live lead me to hope that they will be convinced that only in the manner referred to can the company be continued with safety, and with advantage to the subjects of both states.

And if, which I do not expect, they will not agree to the

declarations and alterations in the conditions, and will not consent to subjects of this kingdom entering the company, you will forthwith look upon the said company as seditious, and will let things be placed on their former footing, as if such a company had never existed.

As the said deputies understood that in this monsoon a certain capital to the value of three hundred thousand xerafins, was to be sent from this kingdom, I commanded those persons to be questioned who it was understood wished to send certain merchandise at the present time, of which I forward to you a list, which with little difference is of the said value of three hundred thousand xerafins, and if the company is continued, as I hope, order is to be given to receive the goods and to give receipts to those who deliver them; and you shall cause commodities and merchandise to be sent to this kingdom, according to the information supplied by the procurator of the said company, Francisco Carvalho de Oliveira, and the merchants whom I commanded to confer upon matters of commerce with the said procurator, these merchants being Luis Coroea da Paz, Antonio and Bartholomeu Manzoni, Domingos Maciel, and João Pereira do Lago.

A treasury shall be established, and a treasurer appointed for the remittances. And if the commerce from India to Portugal is not made mutual, the commerce of India only is not a sufficient inducement to move the subjects of this kingdom to take part in the company. The aforesaid merchants must write to the deputies concerning the manner in which the commerce is to be carried on with this kingdom, and you shall see that the deputies of the company forward an invoice of the cargoes which they have sent, and the profits on them, by which may be seen what profit is made, and whether it is advisable to establish the general company which it has been attempted to form in this place, and which will be more conducive to my service and of greater advantage to that state; because failing this information, it is decided that in this monsoon the company is to be assisted only by a remittance of the value of three hundred thousand xerafins, and to await reply upon the information demanded, so as to be able with more safety and prudence to enter upon the question of establishing a general company, which requires a very much larger capital, as you are aware.

The zeal, care, and labour with which you have carried into execution the establishment of this company lead me to hope that you will have similar success in increasing it, and that all those persons who like good subjects have worked for my service and for the good of that state will join with you and assist in the extension of the company.

As you are aware how advisable it is that the company should be continued and increased, I have nothing further to recommend to you, but much to thank you for, both for what you have accomplished and what I hope you will accomplish.

Written in Lisbon, the 14th of March 1697.

THE KING.

*Copia das condiçoens da companhia da India que foraõ aprovadas com as declaraçoens q̃ vaõ expressadas a margem dellas.*

*Condição primeira.*

Que esta companhia constara dos cabedaes com que os vaçallos de S. Mag<sup>o</sup> deste Estado quizerem interesar-se nella para o que se poraõ e ditaes em todas as praças que haverem de concorrer os que quizerem entrar com suas porçoens, e promessas; as quais se Recolheraõ em hum cofre de tres chaues, que estará no lugar que decretara a Iunta da administração desta companhia, a qual tambem Rezolvera as pessoas que haõ de ter as ditas chaues.

2<sup>a</sup>.

Que Sua Magestade entrara nesta companhia com os barcos, e fazendas capazes de se Receber que tiver na Iunta da administração de Massambique que ficara extincta com esta companhia a qual tomara ao dito Sñor as fazendas que estiverem em Ser nos portos de Maçambique e Rios em que se acharem pellos preços que lhe custaraõ postas nos ditos lugares, para que a sua Real Sociedade anime a seus vaçallos, e juntamente aSegure com este proprio e se naõ valer do cabedal da d<sup>a</sup> companhia em caso da nescessidade, pois em que o tiver Seu naõ puxara pello alheo: e ainda desta sua porção se naõ valera vRey, ou Governador algum sem que se julgue precisa indispensavel a nescessid<sup>o</sup> pellos

mesmos deputados da Junta por que neste cazo sendo estremoza o perigo não se poderá dispender o Cabedal Real, mas ainda no que for possível da companhia que liberalmente offerecem os interessados para a Segurança das terras de defença da Coroa vtitud\* e concervação da mesma companhia; e mais que tudo para o augmento da fée Remedio de tanta Christandade deste Estado Sercado de infleis inimigos.

## 3ª.

Que os Vise Reys ou Governadores deste Estado entraraõ nesta companhia com quinze mil xerefins, que he a metade do Seu soldo para que interessados nella Zelem cõ mais cuidado o Seu augmento, e este dinheiro só o poderaõ tirar se quizerem hindo para o Reino, e quem lhe Succeder no governo entrara com a mesma quantia, de Sorte que quem governar a India tenha sempre durante o Seu governo na companhia este empenho, e o Feitor ou Thezoreiro que costumaõ fazer o pagamento deste Soldo, o não fara, nem na Matricula geral se lhe dira a folha sem primº constar estar inteirada a companhia desta quantia.

## 4ª.

Que os Dezembargadores Vedor da Fazenda, e Provedor mor dos Contos deste Estado Seraõ obrigados a entrar nesta companhia ao menos com mil xerafins cada hũ para que este proprio interesse os avive mais na exaçaõ das diligencias tocantes a ella.

Em margem : *Reprovada athe não Serẽ admetidos.*

## 5ª.

Com condiçaõ que hauerá Sinco deputados para administraçaõ desta compª os quais Seraõ dos mais interessados nella quando nelles concorra o prestimo nescessario e estes primeiros de sua creaçãõ Seraõ nomeados pello ViceRey, e pello tempo adiante sendo nescessario eleger algum em falta de outro a Junta nomeara dous por consulta ao VRey ou Governadores para confirmarem huns dos dous consultados, e nesta mesma forma tera a dita Junta eleciaõ de Secretario Thezoreiro Iuiz conservador, e Promotor fiscal, que Seraõ dous Dezembargadores deste Estado; os qº Sendo elleitos a mais votos da Junta Seraõ pellos VReys con-

firmados; e para Salario dos Sinco deputados Secretario, Thezor<sup>o</sup> Iuiz Conservador, e Promotor fiscal se tiraraõ a sinco por cento de tudo o lucro que cada anno tiver a companhia, para repartir pellas ditas pessoas, e no cazo que naõ haja lucro naõ teraõ couza alguma.

Em margem : *Que se lhe dá Salario certo.*

6<sup>a</sup>.

Que a dita Iunta independentemente sem carecer da confirmação do governo nomeara os feitores, admenistradores, superintendentes que lhe parecerem nescsarios p<sup>a</sup> administração do commercio, e lhe taxara os ordenados que lhes parecer e fara a cada hum o Regimento que ha de guardar.

Em margem : *Sendo somente insuzaõ mercancial.*

7<sup>a</sup>.

Que nenhum dos officiaes da Iunta a saber Deputados Thezoreiros Feitores, admenistradores, superintendentes, ou comier<sup>o</sup> seraõ obrigados a dar conta nos contos, nem em outro tribunal, mas só as daraõ a dita companhia por sua junta sem embargo de S. Mag<sup>o</sup> ser Socio nella; porem ninguem se despachara neste Estado, nem entrarara em m<sup>o</sup> alguma sendo devedor a companhia, para o que sera obrigado a mostrar folha corrida pella junta.

Em margem : *Se permitira somente o q̄ dispoem a condiçaõ seguinte pera q̄ os feitores e mais officiaes q̄ servire na companhia devem correr folha no juizo de sua concervatoria.*

8<sup>a</sup>.

Que a fazenda da Iunta se cobrara executivamente com todo o privilegio, que em direito, e leis do Reino tem a fazenda Real e os Feitores e administradores da companhia assim o declararaõ as pessoas com quem em nomem della contratarem.

9<sup>a</sup>.

Que o Iuiz conservador da companhia sera privativo nas Suas cauzas Crimes e Civeis em que a companhia for Autora ou R. com

inhibiçãõ a todos os ministros, e processara por sy os feitos, e os despachara a final em Rellaçãõ cõ dous ministros como faz o Iuiz dos feitos da Faz<sup>a</sup> Real, e passando a cauza de Seis mil xerafins haverá apellaçãõ para a Caza da Sup<sup>o</sup> de Lisboa no effeito de volestivo Somente, e o dito Juiz conservador, e Promotor fiscal terãõ os mesmos privilegios, preeminencias, e prerogativas que tem os juizes dos Feitos, e Procurador da Fazenda Real e o mesmo Iuiz conservador Sera tambem privativo nas cazas crimes, e Civeis dos Deputados, e mais officiaes que actualm<sup>te</sup> Servirem a companhia, ainda que naõ seja sobre couzas que a ella toquem, e isto Sejaõ autores, ou Reos.

*Em margem : Nos crimes Somente em todos ezeptuando os ezeptuados e no civil só nas cazas em q̃ ambas as partes fore<sup>m</sup> m<sup>re</sup> em Goa, Ilhas adjacentes, Salcete, e barden.*

## 10.

Que hauendo negocio graue de ponderaçãõ em que seja necessario ouvir algumas pessoas praticas, poderaõ os Deputados da Junta mandar chamar a ella as pessoas que lhe parecer, assim dezinteressadas na comp<sup>a</sup>, como das que a naõ forem, e Seraõ obrigados a hir a seu chamado com pena de prizaõ naõ obedecendo.

*Em margem : Ezepto as pessoas de mayor condiçãõ q̃ tem foro de fidalgo aos quaes charaõ o VRey.*

## 11.

Que esta companhia estancara e apropiara para Sy todo o comercio de Mombaça, na forma que hoje o tem os Capitaens daquella Fortaleza, e assim mais todo o negocio de Massambique para os Rios, e sua costa athe o Cabo das Correntes inclucive na forma que athe hoje o tem estancado a fazenda real pella sua junta do comercio, e se daraõ a comp<sup>a</sup> de Graça os armazens que S. Mag<sup>a</sup> tem na Fortaleza de Maçambique, naõ estando ocupados com fabricas, e petrechos de Guerra para recolher suas fazendas.

## 12.

Que por quanto he preciso deixar aos moradores de Maçambique, e Mombaça para seu Sustento, e povaçãõ daquellas terras

taõ necessarias a este Estado algum negocio o poderaõ elles fazer do mesmo modo que agora o fazem em Mombaça, tendo o Seu Capitaõ o comercio, e em Massambique estando fechados os Rios por Sua Mag<sup>o</sup>, porem huns, e outros seraõ obrigados a comprar a dita companhia os generos que quizerem para o contrato, e todo o marfim, ambar, e tartaruga que Resgatarem o venderaõ a companhia, com perca de o perderem para ella, e a terça parte por quem os denunciar; e quanto ao preço dos generos que comprar a companhia e dos que elle a companhia venderem se fará no primeiro anno entre elles, e a companhia o preço conveniente a todos que inalteravelmente se guardará em quanto durar a companhia, a qual terá atençaõ a fazer lhe todo o fauor possivel para q̄ a mesma companhia convem estarem bem pouadas aquellas Praças, e a dita comp<sup>a</sup> pagará a S. Mag<sup>o</sup> a Renda do Remagaõ em Mombaça como athe aqui o fazem Seus Capitaens pello preço que o dito P<sup>a</sup> a tem arendada este anno de 1694.

Em margem : *Se fará Somente o q̄ se fazia correndo por conta de S. Magestade.*

## 13.

Que ficará no arbitrio da comp<sup>a</sup> a pagar as liberdades de Maçambique p<sup>a</sup> os Rios aos officiaes dos barcos, e assim mesmo as que os Feitores, e mais pessoas tiverem por provizoens a dinheiro extinguindo lhes, ou assignando lhes a cada hum generos separados e diversos da liberdade do outro como de presente fez Sua Mag<sup>o</sup> pella Sua Junta do comercio dos ditos Rios qual a comp<sup>a</sup> parecer mais conveniente, e o que ella nesta particular Rezolver podera levar cada hum para Seu Regimento e naõ o guardando perdera a importancia da d<sup>a</sup> liberdade, e concorrera nas pennas crimes que merecer Sua transgressaõ de degredo, ou outra pena corporal.

Em margem : *Que podendo ajustar-se se ajuste e quando naõ seraõ na mesma forma e modo que se obraua no tempo dos Capitaes.*

## 14.

Que por quanto os Relligiozos que aSistem nos Rios nescessitaõ das fazendas para seu vzo, a companhia se obrigara a dar lhes dentro nos Rios, e vesteria, e mais necessario p<sup>a</sup> Sua natural

indizencia pellos mesmos preços que custarem a companhia os ditos generos postos nos mesmos Rios, e Se fara na Iunta de Goa Regimento que para o nescessario de cada Igreja, ouvindo Seus procuradores que daraõ em Goa a Iunta Seos Roês do que haõ mister nos Rios e juraraõ ao pé dos Roês como o que elles conthem he nescessario precisamente para o vzo das Igrejas dos Rios, e Seos Religiozos, e presentando tambem as provizoens que para este fim lhe foraõ concedidas, e isto mesmo se praticara com os hece<sup>as</sup> que entrarem nos Rios com cargo de santo officio.

## 15.

Que alem de se estancar para a comp<sup>a</sup> o comercio de Maçambique para os Rios e sua costa como fica dito na condiçaõ onze ficara no arbitrio da mesma companhia e deputados della o estancarem tambem o negocio para Maçambique, e Mombaça assim desta Cidade de Goa, como das mais praças que na corte tem este Estado achando os deputados ser conveniente: e neste cazo Recascira a companhia o valor das merces das Capitancias das Praças, pagando aos proprietarios dellas a alvidraçaõ taxada pello aSento do concelho da Fazenda deste Estado pella qual se pagaõ athe aqui estas merces e na mesma forma ficara no arbitrio da comp<sup>a</sup> poder estancar, e apropriar aSim qualquer negociaçaõ de que athe o presente for comua aos particulares, e vaçallos do Estado ainda que para os portos que lhe naõ Saõ Sugeitos.

*Em margem: De todo este capitulo Somente se pode permitir q̄ possaõ estancar o negocio dos Rios para dentro na forma q̄ o tinhaõ os Capitaẽs, e estava pela fazenda Real, e bengale, e os dous destritos de Ormuz e Mecca.*

## 16.

Que no cazo que a companhia tome assi a negociaõ das Praças do Norte para Maçambique, e Mombaça como os providos com as Capitancias dellas que forem Capazes de as Servirem por sy fiquem prejudicados no comercio que lhes tira a companhia ainda q̄ lhes ha de por isto pagar a dita alvidraçaõ lhes ficara açãõ para Requerer a S. Mag<sup>e</sup> o recareimento deste prejuizo, e achando o d<sup>o</sup> Senhor que alem do que lhe ha de dar a companhia por este Respeito o contrato que elles haviaõ de fazer era esencial e devido ao provimento das merces que lhe estavaõ



feitas das ditas Capitánias, S. Mag<sup>o</sup> por Sua Real grandeza mandara Remunerar com outras merces de postos off<sup>tes</sup> ou aldeas, e fazendas que forem vagando sendo elles preferidos aos mais pertendentes conforme os Seus merecimentos, e perda que lhes seguir.

Em margem: *Fica Reprouada pello q̄ se tem determinado.*

## 17.

Que visto estarem impedidas as viagens para Moçambique Mombaça, assim de Goa, como das terras do Norte sera sua Mag<sup>o</sup> servido não conceder mais alguma de nouo, e fazendo-se não sera por conta da companhia.

Em margem: *Que S. Magestade não dará mais viagens mas de q̄ houver merces compradas a companhia.*

## 18.

Que para a companhia ficara apropriada viagem para a China, e outrosy para as Viagens de Macao ou de Goa para Timor, e se tomara por estanco para a companhia todo o Sandolo que se puder tirar da dita Ilha: e quando a companhia não possa por algum inconveniente estancar a dita viagem, o fara na mesma forma que o Governo da India o costuma dar aos particulares, sem que prejudique a Cidade de Goa, digo de Macao nos dous terços da carga, e querendo a companhia fazer esta viagem não a fara outra pessoa sob penna de perder o barco, e carga p<sup>a</sup> a mesma companhia.

## 19.

Que visto a companhia não tirar a Cidade de Macao os dous terços da carga dos barcos que fazem a Timor a Sacar o Sandolo que he o que se ha de repartir por baguiação entre os pobres ficara na escola da Cidade de Macao o largarem a companhia o Sandalo dos ditos dous terços pello preço que na chegada da Nao correr em Macao para todo ficar estancado na mão da companhia pois não he em prejuizo dos moradores, ou a companhia se obrigara a levar dos ditos moradores o seu dr<sup>o</sup> Repartido na forma da baguiação a Responder para Timor cō o premio do Risco, por que athe agora o costumaõ dar, e aSim ficara fazendo

a companhia a carga do barco, ficando os moradores com emolumento dos dous terços, para q̄ elles façãõ boa carga com a moeda ordinaria, e Corrente.

*Em margem: Naõ se admite a condiçãõ 18 e 19, fazendo-se estanco q̄ nella se propoem porque se entende q̄ Será Ruina de Macao.*

## 20.

Que querendo os moradores da dita Cid<sup>a</sup> de Macao entrar nesta companhia o poderaõ fazer no tempo limitado nestas condiçoens e os que tiverem porçaõ nesta tal companhia naõ entraraõ nos dous terços de bagiaçãõ das viagens para Timor que ficaõ para os pobres, e entrando no bague por Sy ou em nomem alheo perderaõ a porçaõ q̄ no dito bague meterem a metade para quem denunciar, e a metade para a fazenda da companhia.

*Em margem: Nem se admita esta condiçãõ pela rezaõ dos antecedentes.*

## 21.

Que Sera o Estado da India obrigado a dar a fretes, ou por certo preço, a companhia os barcos que tiver artelhados, e Com a Soldadesca da Sua lotaçãõ, e outro Sy toda a madeira que for necessaria a comp<sup>a</sup> para a fabrica, e concerto dos Seos barcos a podera mandar cortar em baçaem, e mais partes do Estado, pagando a pello mesmo preço que S. Mag<sup>a</sup> a toma pellas suas embarcaçoens.

*Em margem: Quanto aos navios ficaõ ao arbitrio do VRey dandose de maneira q̄ naõ façãõ falta a defença daquelle estado pagando a Companhia os fretes, e ao soldadesca, e quanto as madeiras se daraõ a avença das partes.*

## 22.

Que nas armadas que de ordinario mando o Estado para Ormus podera a companhia embarcar de hida, e volta as fazendas que lhe parecer, pagando o frete a Sua Mag<sup>a</sup> naõ carregando porê as naos de sorte que fique impedido o exercicio para a peleja a que vaõ destinados pello credito da Coroa pois desta

Sorte sem prejuizo da navegação, nem estorvo para os combates, he justo tenha a companhia esta conveniencia, e o mesmo se praticara hindo qualquer Fragata de Guerra para outro porto.

Em margem : *Que só na volta poderaõ carregar na forma da Condição.*

## 23.

Que dos generos em que a companhia negociar pagara ao dito Sñor os direitos em Suas alfandigas, como qualquer particular sem ter privilegio algum nesta materia.

## 24.

Que as naos e barcos da companhia lograraõ os mesmos privilegios que gozavaõ os que nauegavaõ no tempo que o comercio correo pella Fazenda Real para assim Serem mais Reputados ; e os Serviços que fazerem as pessoas ocupadas pella comp<sup>a</sup> assim no mar como na terra haverá S. Mag<sup>e</sup> por bem de os Remunerar com as honrras, e premios que da pellos Serviços proprios feitos a Sua Coroa visto q̄ esta companhia se forma para aumento, e concervação da India, e propagação de nossa Santa feé, e so as pagas, e Soldos Seraõ pagos pella comp<sup>a</sup>.

Em margem : *Que S. Magestade tera atençaõ a estes Serviços pera lhes mandar dar a Remuneração conforme os merecimentos.*

## 25.

Que nenhum VRey Governador ou Capitaõ mor outro algum ministro de guerra, justiça ou fazenda se intrometerá nos particulares da companhia, e guardaraõ em tudo as condiçoens, aSim como ellas Saõ, e Se dexaõ intender sem interpretação, ou controversia alguma ; antes daraõ toda ajuda, e fauor aos deputados admenistradores, e Feitores della, por Ser muito conveniente ao Serviço de Sua Magestade, e o que o contrario fizer se haverá o dito Senhor por mal Servido delle, e alem disso ficara obrigado a todas as perdas, e danos que der a dita companhia por qualquer modo que Seja e Se acrescentara esta condição por capitulo no Regim<sup>to</sup> das Rezidencias para Ser preguntado nellas.

## 26.

Que esta companhia durara por tempo de doze annos, e approvendo a S. Mag<sup>o</sup>, e aos mais interessados que se prorogua por mais tempo se continuara na mesma forma todo o tempo que se ajustar; e Sempre no fim della lha concedera S. Mg<sup>o</sup> mais tres annos para Recolherem os effeitos q̄ tiverem espalhados pellos portos com os mesmos privilegios de via exentua.

## 27.

Que em cazo que S. Mag<sup>o</sup> não admita esta companhia, ou lhe não confirme estas condiçoens, e lhe Reproue alguma, poderaõ os interessados largar a d<sup>a</sup> companhia sem q̄ se lhes impida a cobrança de Suas fazendas que andarem espalhadas nos lugares de contracto, dando lhe tempo de dous annos para isso; e quando nos Rios lhes fique alguã fazenda lha tomara S. Mag<sup>o</sup> pello preço que ella lhe tiver custado posta nos ditos Rios, como a companhia agora toma a que tiver a junta do comercio do dito Sñor nas mesmas feitr<sup>as</sup> dos Rios.

## 28.

Que acabados os tres annos primeiros se dará balanço aos generos e avanços q̄ o comercio nellas tiver produzido, e o que importarem os ditos lucros se Repartirá em tres terços dous dos quais se entregaraõ logo aos interessados, e hum ficara no monte mayor da Sociedade, para se hir engroçando o Seu cabedal, e depois deste trienio se fará a mesma Repartição dos lucros em cada hum anno; e achando a companhia que no fim do primeiro, ou Segundo anno pode convenientemente fazer a Repartição e entrega dos ganhos o podera fazer na Sobre dita forma sem esperar o fim do trienio.

## 29.

Que S. Magestade concedera a comp<sup>a</sup> que possa mandar hir do Reino daquelles generos que S. Mag<sup>o</sup> manda para a Ribeira das naos de guerra, digo das naos de Goa os que lhe fizerem necessarios p<sup>a</sup> os aprestos dos Seos barcos, e que estes hiraõ nas curvas do d<sup>o</sup> Sñor sem lhe pagarem fretes.

*Em margem: Pagando e tendo preferencia aos estranhos para ocupar estas curvas.*

## 30.

Que nesta companhia Seraõ Socios os vaçalos do dito Senhor moradores nas terras Sogeitas a este Estado, e Será livre poderem-se interessar nellas assim Ecclziasticos como menistros, e os moradores de cada terra se lhes aSina por tempo limitado para poderem meter seu cabedal na companhia dezde o dia que se fizer para isso avizo a dita terra te della vir sobre este particular a primeira reposta.

*Em margem: Que aos menistros ficara respon<sup>a</sup> e quo ao tempo de seis annos.*

## 31.

Que durante esta companhia não concedera S. Magestade outra alguma no Estado da India em qualquer dos portos della.

## 32.

Que Sucedendo confirmarse para a Cam<sup>a</sup> o fisco Real por crime de leza Magest<sup>o</sup> Divina ou humana, ou por outro algum a parte com que algum dos interessados tiver entrado ou haja alquerido na companhia se não podera dezanexar della este cabedal athe se acabar, ficando a faz<sup>a</sup> Real participante nesta parte do principal, e avanço.

## 33.

Que Suposto os interessados da companhia durante o tempo della não possaõ tirar o Seu cabedal comtudo lhes he premetido vendelo doalo, ou trespussalo em todo, ou em parte a pessoa, ou pessoas que lhes parecer, e nos livros da companhia se poraõ as verbas necessarias para se saber a parte com que fica o cedente e a que ha de hauer o cessionario ficando logo feita nouaçãõ Real, e verdadeira em fauor do comprador ou cessionario, como se elle fora o mesmo que houvera entrado, e de Sua mãõ tivesse a companhia Recebido o dinheiro, e estando nos livros da companhia nota de alguma gloza na parte de que se vender passará ao

cessionario que he o mesmo que se costuma fazer no Reino em os juro Reaes. E com os herdr<sup>os</sup> dos interessados se praticará o mesmo que se aponta.

Em margem : *Poderaõ os ezeutados ficando os seus bens na companhia na forma q̄ fica determinado no caso da venda e Confiscação.*

34.

Que S. Magestade em tudo o mais em que se puder aplicar a esta companhia o concedido por Suas condiçoens a comp<sup>a</sup> da Junta Geral do Brazil lhe conceda os mesmos poderes, juridiçoens, liberdades e prerogativas no tocante a administração capitaens, e officiaes que haõ de Servir nos navios desta companhia, e nas praças do Estado.

Em margem : *Concede-se lhe a q̄ se lhe puder aplicar das juridiçoens e liberdades da companhia do Brazil.*

35.

Que por quanto os barcos da companhia haõ de navegar por seu Risco, e da comp<sup>a</sup> ha de ser a perda que houver nos combates que tiverem com os inimigos que encontrarẽ que fazendo os taes algumas prezas seraõ estas para a fazenda da companhia como se concedeo a comp<sup>a</sup> do Brazil, e a companhia fará a Repartiçaõ com os Soldados como se faz nas prezas que os barcos da Coroa tomaõ, e alem disso dará os quintos das ditas prezas a S. Magestade ou a pessoa a quem o dito Senhor tiver feito merce dellas.

Em margem : *Naõ se duvida do q̄ se pede nesta condiçaõ, e as prezas do q̄ tiver havido se deve declarar q̄ os quintos pertencem ao VRey.*

36.

Que os provimentos todos dos off<sup>os</sup> que por mar ou terra houverem de Servir a esta companhia do Cabo de Boa Esperança para dentro os consultara a Junta os VReis, ou Governadores na forma que he concedido a dita companhia do Brazil exep<sup>to</sup> os capitaens das praças, porque estes naõ tem dependencia alguma da comp<sup>a</sup> nem esta lhe ha de pagar os Soldos.

Em margem : *Deverse tirar esta exeriaõ.*

37.

Que durante esta companhia que hora se forma para etertemento do Cabedal ou para subsistir no cazo que os homens de negocio de Portugal não venhaõ na sociedade geral conforme suas condiçoens servira esta companhia a S. Mag<sup>o</sup> em cada hum anno com hum donativo de vinte mil cruzados para o dito Sñor Reforçar o Socorro das naos que ha de mandar a India, os quaes se daraõ em Goa ao feitor do d<sup>o</sup> Sñor para os mandar para o Reino, como pertença do Seu cabedal, e isto offerecem alê dos trinta e tres mil cruzados que ha de dar em cada anno em Mossambique para o Sustento do prezidio daquella Praça, como davaõ os Capitaens della a saber 30 votos pello comercio dos Rios, e tres pello da Angola; e subsistindo-se esta companhia achando-se com mais opulencia do que prometem estes principios acrescentaraõ esta porçaõ de 20 votos conforme sua possibilidade para o dito Sñor Socorrer com mayor subzidio de Naos e gente a este Estado.

38.

Que protestaõ de não prejudicar nos bens, e pessoas dos commissarios, e deputados que fazem da Iunta da companhia qualquer Requerimento que se mover sobre se hauer feito esta companhia da India Somente com estanco do Comercio de suas praças visto o snõr Conde VRey Segurar o levara S. Mag<sup>o</sup> em Gosto por ordem que tem para isso e a vontade dos interessados ser de Servir a S. Mag<sup>o</sup> no possivel aos quaes se deve noticiar por editaes a creaçãõ desta companhia noua p<sup>a</sup> concorrerê com suas promessas, e haverá vista destas condiçoens o Doutor Procurador da Coroa para em tudo ficarem solenes.

Estas condiçoens com as Rezuluçoens a margem dellas se Remeteraõ a India ao Conde Vice Rey na moncaõ do anno passado de Março de 1697. Saõ trinta e oito condiçoens.

Mendo de Fois Pereira.

*[English translation of the foregoing.]*

Copy of the conditions of the Company of India which have been approved of, with the amendments written in the margin.

## First Condition.

That this Company shall have as capital the sums with which his Majesty's subjects of this state wish to take part in it, of which a notice is to be posted up in all the public places, that those who wish to join must come forward with their shares and engagements, which will be deposited in a box of three keys, to be kept in a place decreed by the council for the administration of this Company (*i.e.* board of directors), which will also decide what persons are to have the keys.

2<sup>nd</sup>.

That his Majesty will join this Company with the ships and suitable merchandise possessed by the council of the administration of Mozambique, which will be abolished upon the establishment of this Company, and the Company shall take over from his Majesty whatever merchandise is found at the ports of Mozambique and the rivers, at the prices it has cost when landed at the said places, so that his royal partnership may animate his subjects, and his share will protect the property of the said Company from being seized in a case of necessity, since having property of his own in it he will not take the other. And neither viceroy nor governor shall make use even of this his share, unless the aforesaid directors consider it to be an absolute and indispensable necessity, and in this case, the danger being extreme, not only the royal funds may be expended, but as much of the Company's as are generously offered by the shareholders for the safety of the lands, the defence of the crown, the advantage and security of the Company itself, and above all for the increase of the faith and the benefit of so many Christians surrounded by infidel enemies.

3<sup>rd</sup>.

That the viceroys or governors of this state shall take shares in this Company to the amount of fifteen thousand xerafins,



which is the half of their salary, so that being shareholders in it they may have greater zeal and care in advancing it, and they may withdraw this sum only if they wish to return to the kingdom, and their successors in the government must enter the Company with the same sum, so that the governor of India shall always hold this share in the Company during his government, and the factor or treasurer who usually pays his salary shall not do so, or enter his account in the general ledger, before ascertaining that he has shares in the Company to this amount.

4<sup>th</sup>.

That the chief judges, the overseer of the treasury, and the chief accountant of this state shall be compelled to take shares in this Company to the amount of at least one thousand xerafins each, that this personal interest in it may move them to greater diligence in the execution of measures relating to it.

In the margin: *Disapproved of, and they must not be admitted.*

5<sup>th</sup>.

It being decided that there shall be five directors for the administration of this Company, possessing the necessary qualifications for this purpose, who shall hold the largest shares in the Company, they shall be nominated in the first place by the viceroy, and afterwards when it is necessary to elect a director to replace another, the council (i.e. board of directors) shall appoint two candidates for the viceroy or governor to confirm the appointment of either one or the other; and in the same way the said board of directors shall elect a secretary, a treasurer, a judge conservator, and a promoter fiscal, who shall be two chief magistrates of this state, and these being elected by the board with a majority of votes, their appointments will be confirmed by the viceroys. Five per cent of all the yearly profits of the Company shall be set aside for the salaries of the five directors, the secretary, the treasurer, the judge conservator, and the promoter fiscal, to be divided among them, and if there should be no profits they shall be paid no salary whatever.

In the margin : *Let a fixed salary be paid to them.*

6<sup>th</sup>.

That the said board of directors, independently and without the government's confirmation, shall nominate the factors, administrators, and superintendents that they think necessary for the administration of the commerce, and shall fix the salaries that they think fit and give to each one the instructions he is to follow.

In the margin : *Being instructions relating to commerce only.*

7<sup>th</sup>.

That no officials of the council, namely directors, treasurers, factors, administrators, superintendents, or commissioners, shall be answerable to any other tribunal than the Company through the council, even though his Majesty is a partner in it; nevertheless no such person shall leave this state, or enter into any business whatever, being a debtor of the Company, for which reason they shall be compelled to present a certificate from the council stating them to be free from debt.

In the margin : *This is only allowed on the following condition, that the factors and other officials serving the said Company shall have certificates from the judge conservator.*

8<sup>th</sup>.

That the property of the council shall be effectually recovered, with all the privileges which the royal treasury enjoys by the laws and rights of the kingdom, and the factors and administrators of the Company will explain this to those persons with whom they have dealings in the Company's name.

9<sup>th</sup>.

That the judge conservator of the Company shall have primary jurisdiction in criminal and civil cases in which the Company is either the plaintiff or the defendant, to the exclusion of all the ministers, and shall proceed on his own authority in such cases, and give final sentence with the concurrence of two ministers, as

does the judge of the cases of the royal treasury ; and if the matter exceeds six thousand xerafins, an appeal may be made to the appellate court of Lisbon, and the said judge conservator and promoter fiscal shall have the same privileges, pre-eminence, and prerogatives as are enjoyed by the judges of actions and the attorney of the royal treasury, and the said judge conservator shall also have primary jurisdiction in criminal and civil cases relating to the directors and other officials who are actually serving the Company, even though these cases have no bearing on the Company, and whether the above-named are plaintiffs or defendants.

In the margin : *In all criminal cases, only excepting those already excluded, and as regards civil cases, only those in which both the parties are residents of Goa, the adjacent islands, Salcete, and Bardes.*

10<sup>th</sup>.

That when an important matter is being conferred upon, in which it is necessary to consult certain persons of experience, the directors shall have power to summon those persons whom they think fit, whether they are shareholders in the Company or not, and these will be compelled to attend, under penalty of imprisonment if they do not obey the summons.

In the margin : *Excepting persons of high rank, who hold patents of nobility, whom the viceroy must summon.*

11<sup>th</sup>.

That this Company shall monopolise and appropriate all the commerce of Mombasa, in the same way as at the present time it is monopolised by the captains of that fortress, and also all the trade from Mozambique to the rivers and the coast to Cape Correntes inclusively, in the same manner as at the present time the monopoly is held by the royal treasury by means of its council of commerce, and a grant will be made to the Company of the storehouses belonging to his Majesty in the fortress of Mozambique, wherein to store its merchandise, if they do not contain military effects.

12<sup>th</sup>.

That as it is necessary to leave some trade to the residents of Mozambique and Mombasa for their maintenance and that the said lands may be populated, which is so necessary to that state, they may carry on trade in the same manner as they now do in Mombasa, where the commerce belongs to the captains, and in Mozambique where the rivers are closed except to his Majesty, nevertheless both one and the other shall be compelled to buy all the commodities they require for trade from the said Company, and all the ivory, ambergris, and tortoise shell that they buy they shall sell to the Company, under penalty of forfeiting it to the Company, the third part to go to the informer. And with regard to the price of the commodities which they buy from the Company or which they sell to it, a price convenient to all shall be settled between themselves and the Company in the first year, which price shall be unalterable as long as the said Company exists, and the Company shall have care to give them every possible assistance, as it is to its own advantage that the said places should be well populated. And the said Company shall pay his Majesty rent for the trade in Mombasa, as its captains have done up to the present, paying the sum for which it has been leased this year, 1694.

In the margin: *Let nothing be done but what was done when it was undertaken on his Majesty's account.*

13<sup>th</sup>.

That it will be left to the Company's pleasure to buy the trading privileges from Mozambique to the rivers granted to the officers of ships, and also those which by order have been granted to the factors or other persons, cancelling these privileges by paying sums of money or assigning to each one a different and separate kind of commodity, as his Majesty does at the present day through his council of commerce for the said rivers, and the decision which the Company takes upon this point shall be followed by each one, under penalty of losing his right to the aforesaid privilege and of being held guilty of a criminal offence deserving of banishment or of other corporal punishment.

In the margin : *If it is possible to settle this, let it be settled, and if not, let it be placed on the same footing as during the time of the captains.*

14<sup>th</sup>.

That as the religious who reside in the rivers have need of merchandise for their own use, the Company shall undertake to supply them with it in the rivers, and also with clothes and other necessaries required by their characteristic poverty, at the cost to the Company of the said commodities when they reach the aforesaid rivers ; and a rule shall be established in the council of Goa that its agents shall be consulted upon the requirements of each church, who shall give an account in Goa to the council of what is required in the rivers, and shall make oath that what it contains is absolutely necessary for the use of the churches of the rivers and their religious, presenting also the orders which were granted to it for this purpose ; and the same will be done as regards persons who enter the rivers commissioned by the holy office.

15<sup>th</sup>.

That besides the Company's monopoly of the commerce between Mozambique and the rivers and that coast, as has been defined in the 11<sup>th</sup> condition, it will be left to the Company's pleasure and that of its directors to monopolise also the trade to Mozambique and Mombasa, both from this city of Goa and also from all the other places that this state possesses along the coast, if the directors think fit ; and in this case the Company will pay the value of the grants to the captains of the forts, paying the proprietors of these the sum decided upon by the council of the treasury of this state, which shall be the price paid for these grants up to the present. And in the same way it shall be left to the Company's pleasure to monopolise and appropriate in this manner any trade which up to the present has been open to private people and to the subjects of the state, even though it be with foreign ports.

In the margin: *None of the points of this section can be granted, excepting only that the Company may be allowed to monopolise the trade of the rivers to the interior, in the same way as the monopoly was held by the captains and by the royal treasury, and also the trade of Bengal and the two districts of Ormus and Mecca.*

16<sup>th</sup>.

That in the event of the Company thus appropriating the trade between the places of the north and Mozambique and Mombasa, as the persons appointed to the captaincies of these forts, and who are capable of discharging this office, will suffer loss by the commerce being withdrawn from them by the Company, even though they are paid the sum decided upon, they shall have the right to appeal to his Majesty for compensation for this loss, and if his Majesty finds that the trade which they were to have was an essential and necessary part of the grants made to them, his Majesty by his royal power will command grants of other posts, or offices, or villages and farms falling vacant, to be bestowed upon them, preference being given to them over other candidates, according to their merits and the loss which they suffer.

In the margin: *This condition is set aside by the decision which has been passed.*

17<sup>th</sup>.

Seeing that voyages to Mozambique and Mombasa both from Goa and the lands of the north will be prohibited, his Majesty will be pleased not to grant any other licenses for the future except on account of the Company.

In the margin: *That his Majesty will not grant licenses for any other voyages than those purchased from the Company.*

18<sup>th</sup>.

That the Company shall have the monopoly of voyages to China and also of voyages from Macao or Goa to Timor, and that it shall have the monopoly of all the sandal-wood which can be obtained from the said island. And if there is any obstacle

which prevents the Company from holding the monopoly of the said voyages, they shall be undertaken on the same conditions upon which the government of India usually grants them to private persons, without the city of Macao losing its right to two thirds of the cargo, and if the Company wishes to undertake this commerce, no other person shall undertake it, under penalty of forfeiting the ship and cargo to the said Company.

19<sup>th</sup>.

That seeing the Company does not take from the city of Macao the two thirds of the cargoes of the ships which make the voyage to Timor to obtain sandal-wood, which has to be divided among the poor, it shall be left to the discretion of the city of Macao to sell the said two-thirds of the cargoes of sandal-wood to the Company at the current price in Macao at the time of the arrival of the ships, so that the Company may have the monopoly of it all, as this will not be prejudicial to the residents, or the Company will undertake to receive the money of the said residents and expend it in Timor, paying the sum which up to the present it is usual to pay for insurance against danger, and in this way the Company will obtain cargoes for the ships, and the residents make profit on the two thirds, so that they may do well with their ordinary expenditure.

In the margin: *Conditions 18 and 19 are not accepted, and the monopoly mentioned therein cannot be established, as it is considered that it would be the ruin of Macao.*

20<sup>th</sup>.

That if the residents of the said city of Macao wish to join this Company they may do so, during the time fixed in these conditions, and those who hold shares in the said Company may not take part in the two-thirds of *bagiaçao* of the voyages to Timor, which must be left to the poor, and if they take part in the *bage* for themselves, or in another's name, they shall forfeit the sum which they have put in the said *bage*, half being paid to the informer and half to the Company's treasury.

In the margin: *This condition is not accepted, for the same reason as the foregoing.*

21<sup>st</sup>.

That the state of India shall be compelled to let the Company hire at a fixed price the ships which are furnished with artillery and the soldiers who are assigned to them. And to obtain all the timber which they require for the building of their ships, the Company may give order for trees to be cut down in Baçaem and other parts of the state, paying the same price as his Majesty pays for the timber for his ships.

In the margin: *As to the ships, it is left to the viceroy's discretion to supply them in such a manner that their loss may not be felt for the defence of the state, the Company paying for the soldiers and for the hire of the ships. And as to the timber it must be supplied at the price agreed upon by the different parties.*

22<sup>nd</sup>.

That the Company may send what merchandise they think fit on the outward and homeward passages in the men of war which the state usually sends to Ormus, paying his Majesty freightage for it, nevertheless they shall not load the ships so as to prevent them giving battle, which is the purpose for which they are destined, for the honour of the crown, because in this way, not being an impediment to navigation or to battle, it is just that the Company should enjoy this convenience; and this shall apply to any frigate sailing to another port.

In the margin: *That they shall be allowed to freight the ships in accordance with this condition, only on the return voyage.*

23<sup>rd</sup>.

That the Company shall pay duties like any private person to the king in his custom houses, upon the commodities in which they trade, enjoying no privilege whatever in this matter.

24<sup>th</sup>.

That the Company's ships and vessels shall have the same



privileges as were enjoyed by those which sailed during the time when the commerce was carried on by the royal treasury, so that they may be held in greater esteem, and his Majesty will be pleased to reward services rendered by persons employed by the Company at sea or on land, with the honours and rewards which he gives for services rendered to his crown, as this Company is formed for the prosperity and preservation of India, and for the propagation of our holy faith, and the Company alone will pay the salaries and wages.

In the margin : *That his Majesty will have care to command that these services be rewarded in a fitting manner.*

25<sup>th</sup>.

That no viceroy, governor, or commander in chief, or any minister of war, or civil minister shall interfere in the Company's private business, but shall observe all the conditions, as they are written down and are understood, without any dispute or misconstruction of them ; and shall afford every assistance and favour to the directors, administrators, and factors of the Company, as this is most conducive to his Majesty's service, and anyone who acts to the contrary shall be considered by the king as acting against his service, besides which he shall be responsible for whatever losses and damages he may cause to the said Company ; and this condition shall be added to the instructions for the trials, that they may be questioned upon it.

26<sup>th</sup>.

That this Company shall remain in existence twelve years, and if his Majesty and the other shareholders approve of the time being prolonged, it shall continue to exist on the same footing during such time as is agreed upon, and when the Company comes to an end his Majesty shall grant it three years more to collect the effects which it possesses distributed among the ports, with the same privileges during liquidation.

27<sup>th</sup>.

That in the event of his Majesty's prohibiting this Company or not confirming these conditions, or rejecting some of them, the

shareholders may abandon the said Company without impediment being offered to them in recovering their goods which are distributed among the trading establishments, being allowed two years for this purpose. And if any merchandise should be left at the rivers, his Majesty shall take it over from the Company at the price which it cost at the said rivers, as the Company is buying at the present time from the king's council of commerce the merchandise it possesses in the said factories of the rivers.

28<sup>th</sup>.

That at the end of the first three years the Company shall balance its accounts and see what profits it has made upon the commodities in which it trades, and the sum of the said profits shall be divided into three parts, two of which shall be given over to the shareholders, and the third part shall remain in the Company's treasury to increase its capital, and after the first three years this distribution of the profits shall take place every year. And if the Company finds that it can conveniently make this distribution and give over the profits at the end of the first or second year, it may do so in the above manner, without waiting for the end of the third year.

29<sup>th</sup>.

That his Majesty will grant to the Company license to give order to be sent from the kingdom what they require for the equipment of their ships from the materials which his Majesty sends to the docks at Goa, and the said materials shall be sent in the king's ships free of charge for freight.

In the margin: *Paying, and having preference over other goods in the freighting of these ships.*

30<sup>th</sup>.

That his Majesty's subjects resident in the lands subject to this state shall be partners in this Company, and both the clergy and ministers shall be free to take part in it; and the time appointed for the residents of each land to put their capital into the Company shall be from the day information of this is sent to the said land till the first answer to this matter is forwarded.

In the margin: *That the ministers shall be free to take part within six years.*

31<sup>st</sup>.

That while this Company exists his Majesty shall not grant license for any other to be established in the state of India, in any port whatever.

32<sup>nd</sup>.

If a shareholder for the crime of high treason, divine or human, forfeits to the royal exchequer the sum with which he joined, or which he has gained in the Company, this sum may not be withdrawn from the Company until it is brought to an end, when the sum and the profit on it shall be given to the royal exchequer.

33<sup>rd</sup>.

It being settled that the shareholders may not withdraw their capital while the Company exists, nevertheless they are free to sell, give, or transfer the whole or part of it to the person or persons whom they think fit, and the necessary transfer shall be entered in the books of the Company, showing what sum is left to the shareholder, and what sum is to be given to the grantee, and forthwith a genuine and true novation shall be made in favour of the buyer or grantee as if it had been he who had joined the Company, and the Company had received the money from his hands, and if there are notes or remarks in the Company's books referring to the portion which is being sold, they will be transferred to the grantee, as is done in the kingdom in the royal registers, and the same shall be done as regards the heirs of shareholders.

In the margin: *The executors may do so, leaving the property in the Company, as in the case of sale or confiscation.*

34<sup>th</sup>.

That his Majesty will grant all such privileges which can be applied to this Company as were granted in the conditions of the General Company of Brazil, granting to it the same powers, jurisdictions, privileges, and prerogatives concerning its adminis-

tration and the captains and officers who are to serve on board the Company's ships, or in the possessions of the state.

In the margin: *The jurisdiction and privileges of the Company of Brazil which are suitable to this Company are granted to it.*

35<sup>th</sup>.

That as the ships sail at the Company's risk, and loss suffered in battle with enemies whom they may encounter falls upon the Company, if the said ships should capture prizes these shall be the property of the Company, as was granted to the Company of Brazil, and the Company shall make the distribution among the soldiers, as is done with prizes captured by ships of the crown; and besides this they shall pay the fifth of the said prizes to the king or to the person to whom he has granted it.

In the margin: *No objection is made to what is asked in this condition, and it must be stated that the fifth of the prizes is the viceroy's property.*

36<sup>th</sup>.

That the board of directors shall consult with the viceroys or governors upon the appointments of all officers who serve the Company by land or sea, from the Cape of Good Hope inland, in accordance with the concession made to the Company of Brazil, excepting the captains of the forts, as these depend in no way upon the Company, and it has not to pay their salaries.

In the margin: *This exception must be removed.*

37<sup>th</sup>.

That while this Company which is being formed lasts, to maintain its capital or to support itself, in the event of merchants of Portugal not joining the general association in accordance with the conditions, this Company shall make a donation of twenty thousand cruzados per annum to his Majesty, that he may reinforce the ships which he has to send to India; which sum shall be paid to his Majesty's factor at Goa to be forwarded to the kingdom, as belonging to his capital; and they shall present this sum in addition to the thirty-three thousand cruzados

which they have to pay in Mozambique every year to maintain the garrison of the said fortress, as the captains did, namely thirty thousand for the commerce of the rivers and three for that of Angola. And if the Company continues and finds itself with greater wealth than these beginnings promise, this sum shall be increased by twenty thousand if it is possible, that the king may assist this state with a greater number of ships and men.

38<sup>th</sup>.

That the commissioners and directors shall not suffer in their goods or persons from any suit brought against the board of directors upon the ground that this Company of India was formed to have the monopoly of the commerce of its possessions only, seeing that the count viceroy certifies that his Majesty approved of it by an order, which he has to this effect, and the shareholders are willing to serve his Majesty as far as possible; and proclamations should be issued notifying them of the formation of this new Company, that they may come forward with their engagements

And these conditions shall be examined by the learned attorney general of the crown, that every formality may be observed.

These conditions with the resolutions added in the margin were forwarded to India to the count viceroy, in the monsoon of March of last year, 1697.

There are thirty-eight conditions.

MENDO DE FOIS PEREIRA.

Conde de villa verde vRey da India Amigo. Ev El Rey vos envio muito Saudar Como aquelle que amo. Havendo visto o que informastes sobre a pertençaõ que tinha o Padre Frey Antonio da Conceiçaõ Relligiozo de Santo Augustinho, para que se concedeu a sua Relligiaõ a administraçaõ do Seminario que Convinha se crescece em sena para o augmento da Christandade dos Rios de Cuama, no que achaveis deficuldades porem que quando tivesse effeito este Siminario naõ era Conveniente darsse a Relligiaõ do Santo Augustinho, pellas desordens que sucediaõ,

e em Convenientes que se encontravaõ nas missoens de haver nellas Relligiozos de diverças ordens Como se exprimentara ja na dos Rios entre os Padres da Companhia e de Saõ Domingos que nelles assistem principalmente em Sena aonde chegaraõ quazi a tomulto, e nesta Concideraçã Me pareceo ordenar vos que o seminario dos Rios se entregue aos Relligiozos da Companhia de IEsvs, que a experiencia tem mostrado saõ de mayor dezinterece e mais Convenientes ao serviço de Deos, e Conversã das almas; e porque ensinuaes Convem que na missaõ dos Rios haja huma Relligiaõ Somente pella razaõ que na Vossa Carta apontais, vos ordeno informeis de Como as missoens das terras dos Rios saõ administradores no temporal, e espiritual e assim tambem as das Ilhas de Timor, e Sollor que administraõ os Relligiozos de Saõ Domingos. Escripta em Lx<sup>a</sup> a 15 de Março de 1697. Rey.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count of Villaverde, viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. Having seen your report concerning the petition of Friar Antonio da Conceição, a religious of the order of St. Augustine, for the administration of the seminary which it is advisable to establish at Sena for the increase of Christianity in the rivers of Cuama to be granted to his order, to which you find obstacles, because when this seminary is established it will not be advisable to entrust it to the order of St. Augustine, on account of the dissensions and difficulties which have occurred in the missions when there have been religious of different orders residing in them, as occurred at the rivers between the fathers of the Society of Jesus and the Dominicans who reside there, and chiefly at Sena, where they almost occasioned a riot, in consideration whereof I think fit to command you to entrust the seminary of the rivers to the religious of the Society of Jesus, who, as experience has shown, are more disinterested and more zealous for the service of God and the conversion of souls.

And as you suggest in your letter that it is advisable there should be only one order in the mission of the rivers, for the reason which you state, I command you to obtain information as to how the missions of the lands of the rivers are administered as regards spiritual and temporal matters, and also the lands of

the islands of Timor and Solor, which are administered by the Dominicans.

Written in Lisbon, the 15th of March 1697.

THE KING.

---

Conde de Villa Verde vRey da India Amigo. Ev El Rey vos envio Muito Saudar Como aquelle que amo. Havendo visto o que reprezentastes Sobre as Conferencias que tivestes Com o Bispo de Cochim Dom Fr. Pedro Pacheco acerca das noticias dos Rios, e da Rezoluçãõ que no Conselho desse Estado se tomara nesta materia entendendosse Ser Conveniente para o augmento delle Concedesse que todo o Reinol que fosse a India acabados os outo annos de serviço pudesse sem mais Licença voltar para o Reino, fuy servido Rezolver se não deve alterar o Regimento e estillo sempre Observado Com as pessoas que se embarcãõ para esse estado; e Sobre a Comonicaçãõ das terras dos Rios Com as de Angolla Me pareceo ordenar vos que Comunicando Com os Conselheiros que vos assistem, e mândando ouvir tambem nos Rios a Henrique de Faria Leistaõ, e a Joze da Foncequa Coutinho, e a outros pessoas praticas dos certoens sobre a materia que Contem o papel que aqui se me deu e Com esta se vos envia informeis do que vos parecer sem executardes Couza alguma antes da minha rezoluçãõ. Escripita em Lisboa a 15 de Março de mil seis centos noventa e seta. Rey.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count of Villaverde, viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. Having seen what you represented to me concerning the conferences which you held with the bishop of Cochin, Dom Friar Pedro Pacheco, with reference to the reports from the rivers, and the resolution passed by the council of that state upon this matter, it being understood that it would be conducive to its advancement to grant that all those who go to India from the kingdom, after completing their eight years of service, should be free to return to the kingdom without further license, I have thought fit to resolve that no change shall be made in the rules and customs always observed as regards those persons who go to that state.

With regard to the communication between the lands of the rivers and those of Angola, I think fit to command you to confer with the councillors who assist you, and to command the advice of Henrique de Faria Leistão and Joze da Fonseca Coutinho to be asked in this matter of the rivers, and the advice of other persons who have experience of the interior upon the matter stated in the paper which was given to me here, and which is forwarded to you with this. And you shall send your opinion without taking any action whatever before receiving my resolution.

Written in Lisbon, the 15th of March 1697.

THE KING.

---

Conde VRey do Estado da India amigo. Ev El Rey vos envio Muito Saudar Como aquelle que amo. A offerta que os Deputados da Companhia do Comercio desse Estado fazem dos vinte mil Cruzados para se Reforçar o Socorro das Naos aLem dos trinta e tres mil cruzados que ha de dar a Companhia em Mossambique são de taõ pouca Consequencia para aliviar as despezas que neste Reyno Se fazem Com as expediçoens da India que deveis procurar que se augmente de sorte que ao menos se dem os Sincoenta mil Cruzados que nas primeiras Condiçoens que se fizeraõ neste Reino Se prometiaõ, porque só o que a Companhia Se larga em Mossambique era de muito mayor utilidade para a minha fazenda, e Como a Companhia he taõ interessada nos Socorros que se lhe Remeterem desse Reino este mesmo donativo se vira as Converter em vtilidade sua espero que nesta materia obreis Com o cuidado e eficacia que de vos me posso prometer para que a vossa boa diligencia Se deva augmentarse este donatiuo quanto for possivel e nunca sera menos de Sincoenta mil Cruzados que se haõ de Remeter a este Reino, ou pagar nelle dos effectos que se mandarem. Escripta em Lxª a 15 de Março de 1697. Rey.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, viceroy of the state of India, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. The offer made by the deputies of the company of commerce of that state to supply twenty



thousand cruzados for the aid of the ships, besides the thirty-three thousand which are to be supplied by the company in Mozambique, is of so little importance in decreasing the expenses of this kingdom for the expeditions to India, that you must take steps to cause the sum to be increased, so that they may give at least the fifty thousand cruzados which were stipulated in the first conditions drawn up in this kingdom, because what the company contributed in Mozambique alone was of much greater importance to my treasury. And as the company is so greatly interested in the assistance which is sent to them from this kingdom, this very donation will be to their advantage.

I trust that you will act in this matter with all the care and efficacy which I may expect from you, so that by your diligence this donation may be increased as much as possible, and may never be less than fifty thousand cruzados, which must be transmitted to this kingdom or paid in it with the merchandise which is sent.

Written in Lisbon, the 15th of March 1697.

THE KING.

Conde VRey da India am° Eu El Rey vos envio muito Saudar como aquelle que amo. Como nas condiçoens que se Remeteraõ desse Estado para a noua companhia do Comercio se acharaõ algumas que de justiça e outras que da conveniencia da mesma companhia se deviaõ emendar, e Se vos Remetem emendadas para que estando por ellas os Deputados da companhia se continue guardando-se as ditas condiçoens, e quando naõ se extinga como tambem no cazo que a companhia se naõ faça Reciproca aos vaçallos deste Reino que nella se mandaõ interessar naõ podiaõ hir as ditas condiçoens confirmadas na contingencia de estarem por ellas, ou naõ os ditos Deputados, e de se hauer de continuar, ou extinguir a dita compauhia, e assim hey por bem que quando a companhia tenha o bom effeito que lhe espero que possaes em meu nomem aprovar as condiçoens na forma que se vos Remetem aprovadas e emendadas; e porque os Deputados da comp<sup>a</sup> me pediraõ lhe confirmasse os alvaras que lhe haveis passado, e alguns privilegios, os quaes naõ podem hir confirmados pella Razaõ Referida na confirmaçaõ que fizeres das ditas condiçoens passareis alvara, e o que pediaõ por conceçaõ particular estando

nas mesmas condiçoens nellas ficara confirmado ; e hey por bem que nellas metaes que a companhia se podera chamar Real, e que se possa obrigar executivam<sup>te</sup> as pessoas que tiverem prometido entrar nella e o não fizerem achando-se com a possibilid<sup>e</sup> para o fazerem ; e porque os Deputados me Representaraõ que para o aumento da comp<sup>a</sup> que dezejauaõ, e sua preheminencia lhe era nessesario privilegio para tres Sogeitos para Capitaens e Castelaens das Fortalezas de Massambique Mombaça, Dio, e Damaõ, e Chaul lhe concedeo Somentes que sobre os provimentos de Mombaça e Massambique ouvireis aos Deputados da companhia procurando acomodar estes provimentos de modo que Sem se faltar ao meu Serviço, e acomodem os interesses da companhia, e Como as condiçoens confirmadas haõ de Ser a Ley da companhia se deve nellas comprehender tudo escuzarem aluaras aparte, e neste particular obrareis com o acerto que de vos me prometeo. Escrita em Lisboa em dezaseis de Março de Mil Seis centos noventa, e Sete. Rey.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count, viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. Among the conditions forwarded from that state relating to the new company of commerce, some were found to require alteration, either in justice or for the advantage of the company itself, and they are transmitted to you with the alterations, so that if the directors of the company approve of them these conditions should continue to be observed, and if not they should be annulled.

In the event of the company not making the commerce reciprocal as regards the subjects of this kingdom who wish to take part in it, the conditions cannot be confirmed, whether the directors approve of them or not, whether the said company is continued or abolished.

Thus, if the company meets with the success which I expect, I think fit that you shall in my name confirm the conditions as they are transmitted to you confirmed and amended.

As the directors of the company have asked me to confirm the orders and various privileges which you have granted to them, which cannot be confirmed for the reason referred to, when you shall confirm the said conditions you shall grant them the order.

And any particular concession for which they have asked, if stated in the said conditions, will be confirmed with them.

I think fit that you shall insert in these conditions that the company may be called royal, and shall have power to legally compel those persons to join who have promised to join and have not done so, if it is within their means to do so.

As the directors represented to me that for the increase and pre-eminence of the company which they desired to form it was necessary to grant them the privilege of appointing three persons as captains and castellans of the fortresses of Mozambique, Mombasa, Diu, Daman, and Chaul, I grant them only the nominations to Mombasa and Mozambique. You shall ask the opinion of the directors of the company, and endeavour to settle this question of the appointments in such a way as without being prejudicial to my service may further the interests of the company.

As the approved conditions are to be the company's law, everything must be contained in them, to the exclusion of all separate orders; and you shall act in this matter with the prudence which I expect from you.

Written in Lisbon, the 16th of March 1697.

THE KING.

Conde de villaverde VRey da India amigo. Eu El Rey vos envio muito Saudar como aquelle que amo. Vendo o que me escrevestes em carta de quinze de Dezembro do anno passado acerca das noticias que tivestes dos Aljofres que se acharão na Costa de Senna e de hauerdes encarregado ao Thenente General Ioze de Fonceca Coutinho desta diligencia que vos avizou Ser couza de pouca consideração e de nenhum lucro, sendo que por pessoas particulares, e praticas daquella Costa achastes que estes aljofres se davaõ nas costas, e Rios das terras do mesmo Iozeph da Fonceca o q' por conveniencias particulares prohibia a pescaria delles como o fazião os mais moradores dos Rios com as minas da prata que ha dous annos se haviaõ descuberto. Me pareceo ordenar-vos façais toda a diligencia e esgoteis todos os meynos para se averiguar se ha estes aljofres, e se são de tal qualidade que possaõ ter o valor que se procura, e principalmente quando este exame se pode fazer a taõ pouco custo, e Rezultar delle huma

conveniencia mui importante. Escrita em Lisboa a 31 de Agosto de 1697. Rey.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count of Villaverde, viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. I have seen what you wrote to me in a letter of the 15th of December of last year concerning the information you had received of the seed pearls which were found on the coast of Sena, stating that you had entrusted the matter to the lieutenant general José da Fonseca Coutinho, who informed you that it was an affair of little importance, and there was no profit to be gained from it, and that you were informed by private persons with experience of that coast that these seed pearls were to be found on the shores and rivers of the lands of this same José da Fonseca, who for his private interest impeded the fishery of them, in the same way as the other residents of the rivers had acted with regard to the silver mines which were discovered two years ago.

I think fit to command you to employ every measure and to take all possible means of ascertaining if these seed pearls are to be found, and whether they are of such quality that they may be as valuable as report says, especially as this enquiry can be made with very little cost, and very considerable profit may result from it.

Written in Lisbon, the 31st of August 1697.

THE KING.

---

Conde de Villa verde vRey da India amigo. Eu El Rey vos envio muito Saudar como aquelle que amo. Hauendo visto a conta que me destes da contenda que ahy houve o anno passado sobre os Requerimentos que na junta das missoens fez o vigario Geral de S. Domingos da Cidade de Goa contra o P<sup>o</sup> Fr. Antonio da Conceição Administrador da Christandade dos Rios de Sena e Requerimento que fez o mesmo Administrador aSerca do provimento das Igrejas daquella missão, e dizimos da prata que noua mina de Senna se descobrirá para fundar Igrejas e Sustentar os Ecclziasticos, e juntamente se erigir naquellas terras hum nouo Tribunal de missoens. Fuy servido conformar-me

com o que pareceo a junta das missoens desse Estado com as duas declaraçoens de que os dizimos da prata não podem pertencer ao administrador por me tocarem como Mestre das ordens, e ao administrador lhe não pertencer mais que a congrua que lhe foy determinada, e de que se ordena ao Provincial de S. Domingos que ponha todo o cuidado emprover as missoens da India de Relligiozos e cleriza de que me pareceo auizar vos para terdes entendido a Rezolução que fuy servido tomar nesta materia. Escrita em Lisboa a oito de Novembro de 1697. Rey.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Count of Villaverde, viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well, as one whom I love. Having seen the account which you gave me of the contention which was carried on in that place last year concerning the suit brought before the council of the missions, by the vicar general of the Dominicans of the city of Goa, against Friar Antonio da Conceição, administrator of the Christian religion of the rivers of Sena; and of the suit brought by the aforesaid administrator with reference to providing for the churches of that mission, and to the tithes of the silver from the new mine of Sena if it is discovered, with which to found churches and maintain the clergy, and to establish a new tribunal for the missions in that country.

I have thought fit to conform to the opinion of the council of the missions of that state, with the two declarations that the tithes of the silver cannot belong to the administrator, as, being master of the orders, they are my due, and that the administrator has no claim to anything beyond the allowance which it was decided to pay him; and that order shall be given to the provincial of the Dominicans to take every care in providing the missions of India with religious and clergy; of which I have thought fit to inform you, that you may be advised of the resolution which I have taken in the matter.

Written in Lisbon, the 8th of November 1697.

THE KING.

---

Vizo Rey e Capitão General do Estado da India amigo. Eu El Rey vos envio muito Saudar. Os Relligiozos Dumunicos e

particularmente o Vigario Geral do convento de S. Domingos dessa Cidade de Goa me enviaraõ apresentar o grande Serviço que tem feito a Deos nosso Senhor, e a esta Coroa nas missoens de Sofala continuando aquellas Christandades com grande Zello e fervor, e procurando ao mesmo tempo as conveniencias desse estado em tudo o que pode depender da sua diligencia, e industria pedindo-me que para evitar ao diante serem perturbados na posse das ditas missoens que tem continuado por espaço de Cento e vinte annos (como em algumas ocazioens tinhaõ experimentado) lhe confirmasem o districto dellas para que os naõ perturbem outros Relligiozos, nem Sejaõ molestados por outra juridiçaõ; e porque os ditos Relligiozos pellas suas letras virtudes, e Serviços saõ juntamente merecedores de todo o fauor, e protecçaõ Fuy Servido Rezoluer, que satisfazendo elles as condiçoens com que lhe foraõ concedidas as ditas missoens, e provendo as com todos os Religiozos que para ellas forem necessarios, e naõ exedendo os termos do dstricto que lhe compete, e de que estaõ carregados os naõ inquietem nellas outros alguns Relligiozos, nem jurisdicaõ, naõ me privando porem em rezaõ desta conceçaõ de mandar para as ditas terras os mais missionarios ainda que sejaõ de outras Relligioens se acha que necessitarem delles, guardando sempre a ordem de separaçãõ dos direitos q̄ experimentarem mostrando ser grande vtilidade para o augmento das ditas missoens de que vos mando avizar para que tenhais entendido, e nesta forma o façais executar e desta minha Rezoluçaõ e Conceçaõ mandareis passar Proviçaõ aos ditos Relligiozos quando pella sua parte se vos Requeira. Escrita em Lisboa a 17 de Março de 1698. Rey.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Viceroy and commander in chief of the state of India, friend, I the king greet you well. The Dominicans, and principally the vicar general of the Dominican convent of Goa, have sent to represent to me the great services they have rendered to God our Lord and to this crown in the missions of Sofala, and that they are continuing the said Christian missions with great zeal and fervour, and at the same time furthering the interests of this state in every way which depends on their diligence and

industry. They beg me, in order to avoid their being molested for the future in their possession of the said missions, as has happened on several occasions, to confirm to them the district of the missions which they have held for the space of one hundred and twenty years, so that they may not be disturbed by other religious or molested by other jurisdictions.

And as the said religious, by their learning, virtues, and services, are in every way worthy of favour and protection, I have been pleased to resolve that if they comply with the conditions upon which the said missions were granted to them, and provide them with as many religious as they require, and do not go beyond the limits of the district which belongs to them and which is entrusted to them, they shall not be disturbed there by any other religious or jurisdiction, nevertheless this concession does not deprive me of the power to send other missionaries to those lands, even though they be members of other orders, if it is found that there is need of them, the separation of the rights which they shall enjoy being always enforced, it having been proved that this order is of great utility in increasing the said missions.

I commanded you to be advised of this that you may be informed thereof, and cause it to be carried into execution accordingly. And you shall command an order in accordance with this my resolution and grant to be forwarded to the said religious, when on their part they request you to do so.

Written in Lisbon, the 17th of March 1698.

THE KING.

---

VRey da India Amigo. Eu El Rey vos envio Muito saudar. O Conde de Villa Verde vosso antecessor, me deo conta por Carta de 3 de Janeiro do anno passado, do bem que Francisco de Azavedo de Sande tem Servido nesse Estado, e de que por este Respeito o havia provido no posto de Capitaõ mor dos Rios, quando Vagara por falecimento de Lançarote de Sexas, e que lhe parecia seria de grande aproveitam<sup>to</sup> para minha Fazenda no cargo de superintendente da Alfandega esta Resoluçãõ por varias ordens minhas em que o não haja, e que isto Mesmo se tem declarado ao Conde de Villa verde vosso antecessor, as quaes deveis guardar inviolavelmente, não prometindo que se

continue no exercicio delle. Escrita em Lx<sup>a</sup> a 29 de Janeiro de 1699. Rey.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well. The count of Villaverde, your predecessor, in a letter of the 3rd of January of last year gave me an account of the good services rendered in that state by Francisco de Azavedo de Sande, and that for this reason he had appointed him to the post of commander in chief of the rivers, when it should be left vacant by the death of Lançarote de Sexas.

And the count was of opinion that he would greatly benefit my treasury in the post of superintendent of the custom house, but according to the resolution contained in several of my orders he was not to be appointed to it, and this was made known to your predecessor the count of Villaverde, which orders you must observe inviolably, not permitting him to fill this office.

Written in Lisbon, the 29th of January 1699.

THE KING.

---

V Rey da India Amigo. Ev El Rey vos envio muito Saudar. Por Ser conveniente a meo Serviço, e augmento da fazenda Real desse Estado, que Luis de Mello de Sampayo, [a quem o Conde de Villaverde Vosso antecessor entregou do governo dos Rios de Sofalla] nao continue mais nelle; Vos encomendo, que logo o Mandeis apartar do tal governo, nomeando outrem em se considere aquellas partes Necessarias para fazer o que convem ao Meo Serviço, e no que for necessario aSy para as defensas dos Rios, como para os Mais que se encaminhar em beneficio delles disporeis o que tiverdes por Mais conveniente, e o que não poderes Remedear, Sendo necessario que Se vos Remeta deste Reyno dareis de tudo Conta para Se vos enviar; pondo toda a delligencia na Conservação daquella conquista, por Ser a mais importante, que hoje tenho em Meus dominios; e como dos Soldados das Provincias, que passão ao Socorro de Mombaça poderaõ muitos querer ficar neste Estado: Me pareceo ordenar vos, que acabada a expedição de Mombaça Segundo a gente que



ficar nesse Estado Mandeis para os Rios a que puderes, e lhe mandeis polvora, e balla e officiaes de ferreiros, e Sarratheiros. Escrita em Lx<sup>a</sup> a 9 de Março de 1699. Rey.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well. It being conducive to my service and to the improvement of the royal exchequer of that state that Luis de Mello de Sampayo, to whom your predecessor entrusted the government of the rivers of Sofala, should not continue in this post, I command you to order him forthwith to withdraw from the said government, and you shall appoint another who possesses the necessary abilities to accomplish what is conducive to my service.

As to what is necessary for the defence of the rivers, and all other measures to their advantage, you shall take such steps as you consider most convenient, and of what you cannot remedy without assistance from this kingdom, you shall send a full account, that what you require may be forwarded to you, giving every care to the preservation of that conquest, which is the most important that I have at present in my dominions.

As many of the soldiers from the provinces who go to the assistance of Mombasa may desire to remain in that state, I think fit to command you, upon the conclusion of the campaign of Mombasa, according to the number of men remaining in that state to send as many as possible to the rivers, and you shall send there powder, shot, blacksmiths, and locksmiths.

Written in Lisbon, the 9th of March 1699.

THE KING.

VRey da India Amigo. Ev El Rey vos envio muito Saudar. Havendo visto o que Luis de Mello de Sampayo escreveu ao Conde de Villa Verde vosso antecessor de Mossambique, Sobre varios particulares pertencentes aquella praça, e particularm<sup>te</sup> Sobre as Minas dos Rios, e novos haveres que nelle Se hiaõ descobrindo e prometiaõ grandes intereçes; e como o dito Conde VRey me naõ deo Conta do que mandara obrar neste particular. Me pareceo ordenar vos, que vendo e examinando este negocio disponhaes, o que tiverdes por mais acertado. Escrita em Lx<sup>a</sup> a 9 de Março de 1699. Rey.

[English translation of the foregoing.]

Viceroy of India, friend, I the king greet you well. Having seen what Luis de Mello de Sampayo wrote to your predecessor the count of Villaverde with reference to various matters in connection with the fort of Mozambique, and especially with regard to the mines of the rivers and the new riches being discovered there, which gave promise of great profits; and as the aforesaid viceroy sent me no account of the orders he had issued in the matter, I think fit to command you, after investigating and examining this matter, to take such measures as you consider to be the most prudent.

Written in Lisbon, the 9th of March 1699.

THE KING.

---

Dom Pedro por Graça de Deos Rey de Portugal, e dos Algarves daquem, e dalem Mar em Africa Sñor de Guiné &c. Faço saber a vos Vedor da fazenda geral do Estado da India, que eu mandey carregar pella Repartição de Tenencia geral da Artelharia por conta do Cabedal de minha fazenda nas quatro Naos, que nesta monção vaõ a esse Estado dous contos, duzentos, Sincoenta e hum mil, duzentos, e Sincoenta empregados nos materiaes, que conthem a Rellação incluza assinada por Duarte Texeira chaves Tenente General da Artelharia entregues aos Mestres dellas, os quaes mandareis cobrar, e por em aRecadação beneficiar, e aplicar o Seu valor ao ditto Cabedal na forma de minhas ordens que Cumprireis com esta; e a Feitor de Mossambique ordeno por Carta da data desta, que cobrem dos Mestres das dittas Naos os materiaes, que mando para provimento daquella fortaleza, e Rios de Sofalla; e lhe ordeno, que vos faça avizo de Como lhe ficaõ carregados em Receita para os abonares no ditto Cabedal El Rey nosso Sñor o mandou pello Marquez de Alegrete dos Seus Conselhos do Estado, e Guerra Gentilhomê de Sua Camara, e Vedor de Sua fazenda; Mancel de Azavedo Barros a fez em Lisboa a dezoito de Março de mil Seis centos, noventa, e nove annos; Manoel Guedes Pereira o fez escrever; Marquez de Alegrete. Conforme o proprio.

LUIS SOARES DA COSTA.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Dom Pedro, by the grace of God king of Portugal and of the Algarves, of the seas on both coasts of Africa, lord of Guinea, etc., make known to you the superintendent of the general treasury of the state of India, that I have commanded two million two hundred and fifty-one thousand two hundred and fifty reis to be charged to the office of the lieutenant general of the artillery for my treasury's share in the four ships sailing to that state in this monsoon, to be expended upon the effects mentioned in the enclosed report signed by Duarte Teixeira Chaves, lieutenant general of the artillery, delivered to the masters of these ships. This sum you shall cause to be recovered, and being collected you shall advantageously expend it in accordance with my instructions, which with the present order you shall carry into execution.

And I send order to the factor of Mozambique, by a letter of the date of this present, to receive from the masters of the said ships the materials which I send for the provisioning of that fortress and the rivers of Sofala; and I command him to inform you what he has received.

The king our lord has commanded this through the marquis of Alegrete, of his councils of state and of war, gentleman of his bed chamber, and superintendent of his treasury.

Drawn up by Manuel de Azavedo Barros in Lisbon, the 18th of March 1699. Manuel Guedes Pereira caused it to be written.

MARQUIS OF ALEGRETE.

In conformity with the original.

LUIS SOARES DA COSTA.

---

V Rey e Capitaõ geral do Estado da India Amigo. Ev El Rey vos envio m<sup>to</sup> Saudar. O Administrador das Christandades de Mossambique e Rios de Senna, e o P<sup>o</sup> Frey Henrique Travaços Provincial da Relligiaõ de S. Domingos do Estado da India me Representaraõ: o Administrador, queixando-se da falta de Missionarios, apontando as fundaçoens de Muitas Igrejas e Missoens, que se podem fazer de novo, e pedindo os dizimos da

prata, ou a terça parte dos quintos para se distribuirem nellas, formando-se para este effeito huã Iunta em Seïna, ou Tete: o Provincial dando-me Conta dos Muitos Missionarios que tem mandado para os dittos Rios, e p<sup>a</sup> as Ilhas de Timor, e dos Requezitos, que nelles concorrem, insinuando qual pode ser a Cauza do Zello do d<sup>o</sup> Administrador; E mandando eu Considerar estas Cartas na Iunta das Missoens deste Reyno, me pareceo dizer-vos, que sempre he conveniente fazerem-se novas Ig<sup>ias</sup>, e Missoens nas partes que forem necessarias para mayor gloria de Deos, e vltidades das Almas, mas que primeiro o he Conservar as Christandades feitas, que fazer outras de novo. Que tambem naõ Sõ he conveniente, mas necessario, que os Ministros, que assistirem nas Igrejas, tenhaõ congruas, com que só poderem Sustentar, e que por esta mesma Cauza se deve ter grande consideraçã em as Novas fundaçoens, para que de se fazerem Muitas se naõ venhaõ a perder todas por falta de meyo; Que o zello do Admenistrador pode ser bom, e que, sendo assim pode naõ ser bem ordenado. Que o Provincial se tem mandado Muitos Missionarios, ou os que bastaõ satisfaz ao que devia, que se os naõ mandoze deve ser advertido da sua obrigaçaõ, e que a continue, ou satisfaça em os Repetir, procurando, que sejaõ os Mais capazes; que sobre os dizinnos, ou terça parte dos quintos se deve observar a pratica, e estillo desse Estado da India, e que Nunca pode Convir que em todo elle haja outro Iunta das Missioẽs mais que na Cidade de Goa, que he a Metropoli de todo o Oriente. Pello que nesta forma mandareis escrever tanto ao dito Administrador, como ao d<sup>o</sup> Provincial, accressentando ao Admen<sup>or</sup> que vos proponha tudo o que se lhe offerecer nesta materia para que o possais conferir na Iunta das Missoens desse Estado, declarando-vos as Rendas que tem os Conventos de Saõ Domingos, e os da Comp<sup>a</sup>, e os Relligiozos que assistem nelles, as Missoens em que se occupaõ, como foraõ antes e como se achaõ agora, em que distancias se achaõ e quaes saõ as terras dos Pontentados, em que se podem fundar de novo, como saõ recebidas nellas, ou como o podem ser. E de tudo me dareis Conta com os fundamentos do que parecer na Iunta, e com o vosso. Escrita em Lx<sup>a</sup> a 22 de Março de 1699.

Rey.

[*English translation of the foregoing.*]

Viceroy and commander in chief of the state of India, friend, I the king greet you well. The administrator of the Christian churches of Mozambique and the rivers of Sena, and Friar Henrique Travaços, provincial of the Dominicans in the state of India, have represented to me :

The administrator complaining of the scarcity of missionaries, and pointing out that many new churches and missions might be founded, asking for the tithes of the silver, or the third part of the fifths, to be distributed among them, a council being formed for this purpose in Sena or Tete.

The provincial reporting the number of missionaries whom he has sent to the said rivers and to the islands of Timor, and that they possessed the necessary qualifications, and insinuating what may be the cause of the said administrator's zeal.

Having commanded these letters to be examined in the council of the missions of this kingdom, I think fit to inform you that it is always advisable to found new churches and missions in places where they are required for the greater glory of God and the benefit of souls, but the preservation of the Christian churches already established should be considered, before founding new ones.

Also that it is not only advisable, but necessary, that the ministers residing in these churches should be granted an allowance by which they may maintain themselves, and that for this very reason great care should be given to the question of new foundations, that by establishing many churches we may not lose all for want of means.

That the administrator's zeal may be good, but being so may not be well regulated.

That if the provincial has sent a great number, or a sufficient number, of missionaries, he has complied with his obligation, and if he has not sent them, he must be reminded of this duty and required to comply with or fulfil it, by sending missionaries, and seeing that they are the most capable.

That as to the tithes, or the third part of the fifths, the rule and custom of that state of India must be followed.

And that at no time can it be advisable to establish another

council of missions in all that state, beside that in the city of Goa, which is the metropolis of all the east.

Therefore you shall command the said administrator and the said provincial to be written to, to this effect, and to the administrator you shall add that he must inform you of his opinion upon this matter, that you may confer upon it in the council of missions of that state, making known to you the revenues enjoyed by the convents of the Dominicans and of the Society of Jesus, the religious who reside there, the missions in which they labour, the former and present state of the missions, at what distance they are situated, which are the lands of the potentates where new missions could be founded, and how they are or might be received there.

You shall give me an account of all, with the reasons upon which the council's advice is based, and with your own opinion.

Written in Lisbon, the 22nd of March 1699.

THE KING.

LONDON :  
PRINTED BY WILLIAM CLOWES AND SONS, LIMITED,  
STAMFORD STREET AND CHARING CROSS.







K5427



1950  
1951  
1952  
1953  
1954  
1955  
1956  
1957  
1958  
1959  
1960

Widener Library



3 2044 105 340 822